

EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE  
COUNTRY TEACHER



THE MACMILLAN COMPANY  
NEW YORK • BOSTON CHICAGO DALLAS  
ATLANTA SAN FRANCISCO

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED  
LONDON BOMBAY • CALCUTTA MADRAS  
MELBOURNE

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY  
OF CANADA, LIMITED  
TORONTO





*Jules Adolphe Breton, courtesy of The Art Institute of Chicago*

### **Song of the Lark**

This is a suitable picture for a country schoolroom.

# EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

A Textbook and a Handbook of  
Country-School Practice

BY

FRANK J. LOWTHI

*Former Principal of Rural-Teacher Training School  
Jamestown, Wisconsin*

*Revised and Enlarged Edition*

NEW YORK

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

REVISED EDITION COPYRIGHTED, 1936,  
BY THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

---

All rights reserved—no part of this book may be reproduced  
in any form without permission in writing from the pub-  
lisher, except by a reviewer who wishes to quote brief  
passages in connection with a review written for inclusion  
in magazine or newspaper

---

Printed in the United States of America  
Set up and electrotyped Published September, 1936.

Reprinted June, 1941, May, December, 1942.  
January, 1944 April, 1945 July, 1946

TO THE MANY LOYAL AND APPRECIATIVE YOUNG  
WOMEN, WHO, FOR A GENERATION, IN HIGH SCHOOL,  
NORMAL SCHOOL, AND INSTITUTE, BY THEIR FINELY  
RESPONSIVE SPIRIT, INSPIRED AND ENCOURAGED THE  
AUTHOR OF THIS BOOK TO SERVE THEM.



## PREFACE

The first edition of this book was published in the autumn of 1926. Since then the text has been used throughout the United States by rural teachers and by rural-education classes in high-schools, normal schools, and teachers' colleges. In this period of nearly a decade certain changes in educational standards and practices have made a revision seem important and desirable.

In preparing this revision the author has again kept in mind the everyday problems of the average rural teacher. The book will, it is believed, continue to be practically helpful to rural teachers in service. Moreover, it is thought that the revision may be more particularly adapted than was the older volume for use in teacher-training classes; such use has been one of the writer's specific objectives. Instead of the former six parts comprising twenty-four chapters, the present volume of twenty-six chapters simply discusses general problems of *management* in Part One and problems of *teaching and learning* in Part Two. Former chapters have been revised; seven old chapters have been discarded; nine new chapters have been written.

The subject matter of these chapters has to do with guiding objectives, essential principles of school practices, and general teaching-learning procedures. For more detailed and specific treatment of techniques the teacher and student will find references to an abundance of helpful books, bulletins, manuals, and other desirable information of practical interest to teachers. Attention is called especially to the first chapter in Part One, dealing with the general problems of rural education, and to the new chapters in Part Two which treat of human behavior; of provision for individual differences; of the unit plan of instruction; of the use of activities in the rural-school program; of principles of character education; of health activities in the

rural school; and of problems of testing and examination. It is thought that the young student and teacher will find these discussions both interesting and useful in furnishing a trustworthy introduction and basis for further study and investigation.

It is not uncommon for some writers on rural education to overlook or to minimize to some extent the difficulties of existing rural-school conditions. The average rural teacher is not commonly looking for abstract discussions of educational philosophy, but rather for concrete suggestions on how to solve her many immediate daily problems of management and of teaching. This book is written because of the conviction, the result of much experience in rural-teacher preparatory work and in supervision, that there is need for a textbook and a handbook of this particular type. Its aim is to serve not only as a guiding reference book on many of the problems of the actual rural teacher, but also as a useful and usable textbook for young men and women who are *preparing* for rural-school teaching. The book is adapted for class use in preparatory institutions, including teachers' colleges, state and county normal schools, and high-school training classes; also in summer schools, institutes, extension work, and other study groups. The older edition was included in the reading-circle recommendations or similar lists of several states and counties, and this revision is also adaptable to such use.

The writer wishes to acknowledge his indebtedness and his appreciation to Dr. Bess Goodykoontz, Assistant United States Commissioner of Education, for the introductory or preview statement on problems of rural education, in Chapter One, to Dr. David Segel, Federal Office of Education, for valuable advice concerning the chapter on modern measurements, to Dr. Walter H. Gaumnitz, specialist in rural-education problems, Office of Education, for various suggestions, information, and materials, to Dr. C. E. Ragsdale, University of Wisconsin, for critical readings of the first two chapters of Part Two; to Miss Mildred B. Richmond, Midland College, Fremont, Nebraska, for Chapter Twenty on the use of activities in the

rural-school program, to Dr H W Schmidt, Wisconsin State Department of Education, for expert advice on problems of equipment, to Mr Walter H Buthman, Bisberne Advertising Company, Chicago, for advice concerning schoolroom furnishings, to Dr. W J Osburn, formerly of Ohio State University, for assistance with problems of tests and measurements; to the State Educational Departments of Oregon, Illinois, and Pennsylvania for materials pertaining to rural-school daily programs, and, lastly, with especial gratitude to Dr C. C Van Lieu, of The Macmillan Company, for most helpful editorial readings, personal assistance, and pertinent advice.

F. J. L.

August, 1936



## CONTENTS

### PART I. PROBLEMS OF RURAL SCHOOL MANAGEMENT

CHAPTER		PAGE
I	PRESENT-DAY PROBLEMS IN RURAL EDUCATION	1
II	A GOOD BEGINNING FOR THE YOUNG TEACHER . . .	27
III	PERSONALITY, AN ESSENTIAL FOR SUCCESS . . .	42
IV	TEACHER HEALTH, A VITAL PREREQUISITE . . .	58
V	SOCIAL AND BUSINESS RELATIONS OF THE TEACHER	72
VI.	RURAL SCHOOLHOUSE EQUIPMENT AND CARE	87
VII	HEATING AND VENTILATING THE ONE-ROOM BUILDING .	117
VIII	PLAY SUPERVISED AND UNSUPERVISED . . .	134
IX	CURRICULUM, CLASSIFICATION, AND CLASS PROGRAMS	156
X	PROBLEMS RELATING TO CONTROL	184
XI	A BETTER AND A SOCIALIZED NOONDAY MEAL . . .	200
XII.	PARENT AND TEACHER WORKING TOGETHER	218
XIII	GUIDANCE IN PARTICIPATING CITIZENSHIP	237
XIV	RURAL SOCIAL-CIVIC MEETINGS . . .	257

### PART II PROBLEMS OF TEACHING AND LEARNING

XV	ELEMENTARY IDEAS ABOUT HUMAN BEHAVIOR . . .	272
XVI	HOW WE LEARN . . .	297
XVII	MOTIVATION THROUGH PROBLEMS AND PROJECTS . . .	324
XVIII	PROVIDING FOR INDIVIDUAL DIFFERENCES . . .	355
XIX	UNIT PLAN OF TEACHING AND LEARNING . . .	377
XX.	THE ACTIVITY PROGRAM IN THE RURAL SCHOOL . . .	403
XXI	DIRECTING STUDY ACTIVITIES IN THE RURAL SCHOOL .	428
XXII	RECITATION OBJECTIVES AND PRACTICES . . .	450
XXIII	CHARACTER EDUCATION PRINCIPLES AND PROCEDURES	468
XXIV	HEALTH ACTIVITIES IN THE RURAL SCHOOL . . .	495
XXV	MEASURING MENTALITY AND ACHIEVEMENT . . .	530
XXVI	PROBLEMS OF TESTING AND EXAMINATION . . .	565

## CONTENTS

## APPENDIX

	PAGE
PROFESSIONAL BOOKS FOR ELEMENTARY TEACHERS . . . . .	591
ENCYCLOPEDIAS . . . . .	596
UNIT TEACHING-LEARNING MATERIALS . . . . .	597
SUGGESTED DAILY PROGRAMS FOR ONE-TEACHER SCHOOLS (PENNSYLVANIA) . . . . .	598
EXPLANATORY NOTES TO THE PENNSYLVANIA PROGRAMS	604
INDEX . . . . .	607

EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE  
COUNTRY TEACHER



# EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

## CHAPTER I

### PRESENT-DAY PROBLEMS IN RURAL EDUCATION

The following summary of the general problems in rural education by Dr Bess Goodykoontz, Assistant United States Commissioner of Education,<sup>1</sup> seems to the writer an excellent introduction to the more detailed discussions of this first chapter:

Practically all the problems in rural education relate themselves to the task of providing educational opportunities to rural children equal in quantity and quality to those furnished urban children. These problems may be grouped into five general headings as follows:

(a) *Finance.* Districts, counties, and states which are weak in economic wealth and productivity must receive assistance both in terms of leadership and money. Available resources must be surveyed, better methods for allocating tax burdens and distributing tax monies must be found, and workable plans for equalizing school support must be evolved. In the case of the weak states it may be necessary to secure support from the Federal Government or from the large foundations.

(b) *Centralization.* Rural education must cease to be entirely a local responsibility, isolated, individualistic, and haphazard. An administrative unit, populous and extensive enough to furnish a high grade of education for all children 5 to 18 years of age, seems a necessity. This means a comprehensive scheme of consolidation with all successive levels and types of education made accessible and adjusted to the desirability for and ability of the child to travel, to live away from home, to work independently by means of correspondence-contract lessons, itinerant teachers, home projects, etc.

(c) *Improvement of personnel* Teachers need to be trained for teaching in rural schools. Facing a more difficult task they need more

<sup>1</sup> Quoted with Dr Goodykoontz' kind permission.

## 2 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

training than the urban teacher, they need more actual contact with and practice in rural teaching. If stability and tenure are to obtain, they need salaries not only equal to but higher than those paid in cities. Teachers especially trained to teach in only one or two grades should not be allowed to teach in the one-room schools, *i.e.*, the rural schools should no longer be made to serve as a recruiting and proving ground for city school staffs. Rural teachers should have the benefit, stimulation, and help of a sufficient number of highly trained supervisors and administrators. It is unfair to the rural child that the better trained, more mature, more experienced, and better paid city teachers should receive the supervision, guidance, and assistance of these officers when teachers inferior in all these respects receive little or none of these advantages.

(d) *A training fitted to modern life.* The rural child should be made as proficient in the fundamental processes as any other American child. He should be given the same opportunities for as much culture, he should be made to understand the interplay of social and economic forces, he should learn to value and appreciate rural life, he should have the best there is in vocational and educational guidance, including information about the various professions and industries, he should have extensive opportunities to study biology and general science, and he should be guided in the development of a high moral character. Those choosing to become farmers should be able to round out their public school education with a training in the rudiments of scientific agriculture, including agricultural economics. All this work of necessity must have a rural reference because the mind furnishings, thought categories, environmental background, etc., of the rural child have been gleaned from rural sources. There is, on the one hand, the problem in rural communities of providing a curriculum which is not the old traditional, purely cultural sort, chiefly designed for purposes of consumption and expected to eventuate in a college training; and on the other hand, rural education must avoid the extreme of providing an education solely directed toward making farmers and keeping farm children on the farm. Rural education should be in terms of life activities for life, wherever that life is eventually lived. Since progressive movements in education make slower headway in rural communities than elsewhere, this matter of getting away from the stereotyped, single-textbook type of education which is chiefly interested in mental discipline and aristocratic culture is a problem which is particularly difficult and challenging in the rural school.

(e) *Materials for instruction.* Such progressive movements in instruction as recognition of individual difficulties, pupil activity, socialized recitation, long-unit assignment, and problem and project methods

## PRESENT-DAY PROBLEMS IN RURAL EDUCATION 3

are dependent for their success upon a wealth of teaching materials. Not much progress along these lines can be made until better and more extensive library facilities are provided in rural schools. Most rural schools are greatly lacking in this respect. If better library facilities were provided either locally or by means of county or state agencies, a much richer educational experience could be afforded the rural child.



*Courtesy of Office of Education, Washington, D. C.*

Also America, 1935 A. D.

When will all country boys and girls get a square deal in education?

**America's greatest educational problem.** Dr. Walter H. Gaumnitz, senior specialist in rural education problems, Federal Office of Education, wrote recently as follows concerning the problem of our rural schools.

As a group our farm schools today constitute our chief educational problem. They are the 'mired wheel' of our school system. Many students of farm problems have come to feel that the chief instrument for permanent farm relief is better education. They point out that,

#### 4 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

uneducated, the farmer loses out in his competition for existence with the highly trained city groups. Whether the truth of these claims be granted or not, America needs in the future to give much more serious thought to the improvement of its rural schools.

If you wish to get a picture of rural education at its worst, read the entire article by Dr. Gaumnitz in the December, 1934, issue of *School Life*. In contrast with this dark picture, read on the next page also the description by F. S. Lathrop.

Dr. Ellwood P. Cubberley in the preface to his *Rural Life and Education*<sup>1</sup> states that "The rural-school problem of today is a social even more than an educational problem, and is the result of a long national evolution, coupled with recent profound changes in rural life itself. The rural-school problem is inseparable from the rural-life problem, of which it is but a phase." This statement was written several years ago, but it is as true today as when first made. The essential problems of rural life and rural education have remained practically unchanged for a long series of years. The social and economic difficulties and the actual crisis of the nineteen-thirties have only accentuated the problems of the farmer and of the farmer's schools. The financial straits in some states have presented an alarming condition in the field of rural education. It is becoming increasingly evident that state and federal governments must lend their support to rural education. "The tides of population may ebb and flow between city and country. Amidst all social and economic changes, the education of the farm child for twentieth-century citizenship in a democracy remains a baffling problem and a continuing challenge."

**Purpose of this chapter.** This chapter is presented here in order to furnish some background for what is to follow in succeeding chapters, as well as to give a bird's-eye view of the entire field, so that the young student and teacher may have some perspective and some appreciation of the magnitude of the enterprise of rural education in America. If this great nation is to maintain its position as the foremost democratic

<sup>1</sup>Published by Houghton Mifflin Company

government of the world, it will be of utmost importance to see to it that all the children of all the people are given equal educational opportunity. We have more or less complacently or indifferently accepted the educationally underprivileged condition of the country child as an inevitable national heritage. We cannot, as a great people, afford to continue such an attitude. Boys and girls in farm communities have a right, as American citizens, to as good a general education as their town and city cousins. As a measure of national self-interest and self-protection, such an opportunity should be made possible with the minimum of delay.

**Meaning and importance of rural education.** In this book the writer considers chiefly the teacher of the one-room rural school in which, as a rule, only children from farm homes are found. In the publications of the Federal Office of Education, however, the term rural education is used in a more comprehensive way. A bulletin issued by the Commissioner of Education in 1932 makes this statement: "Accordingly, this study defines as rural schools those which are under the administrative supervision of county, district, or other superintendents of schools and which are located in the open country or in villages and towns of fewer than 2500 population."

Rural education is important because of its influence upon such a large proportion of the population. About one school child in three comes from the farm. There are at least ten million of them in our public schools. In 1934 there were 139,180 one-room schoolhouses, a decrease of about 30 per cent in 20 years. About 20,000 larger buildings were built in place of the one-room buildings closed. For the entire country 57.6 per cent of all public-school buildings were one-room in 1934. Rural education is of the utmost importance because agriculture itself is our greatest industry. In addition, the rural school is the only institution to further the physical, mental, and moral welfare of the school child when the home cannot or will not take the responsibility. Over two hundred thousand teachers in one-room and two-room rural schools are charged with the task of

## 6 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

training boys and girls for citizenship in a democracy It is a tremendous undertaking

**Rural education one phase of the rural-life problem.** It is impossible to consider problems of rural education apart from those of the rural community. The social, civic, and economic conditions of farm families are very closely related to the work and influence of the rural school. If one is to understand the various aspects of rural education, it is essential to know the rural-community setting and to trace the changes which have come about through a century of evolution. At the present time (1935-1936) agriculture offers some of the most perplexing conditions ever faced by this country. Bound up with these material, social, economic, civic, and financial problems we find the conditions, needs, and difficulties of rural education. The rural school goes up or down as the farmer goes up or down. It is quite apparent that these excessive fluctuations are abnormal and harmful. If the status of rural education is to depend wholly upon the economic status of the farmer, then rural education will never be an adequate preparation for American citizenship. Moreover, the fortunes of the farmer should not be so perilously uncertain, likewise, the efficiency of the one-teacher rural school should not be wholly determined by the immediate school funds available at any one time in the district. This problem is discussed later in this chapter.

**Rural education of nation-wide significance.** Many persons bred in urban communities with but little knowledge of rural life and education can scarcely realize the place of rural education in our national life. Agriculture is at the head of our list of industries in both numbers employed and in the value of the product. It exceeds, in actual money involved, the *combined* valuations of railroads, oil, electricity, lumber, and iron and steel. If agriculture fails, then all else fails. Our very life is dependent upon the farmer. How important it is that farmers have the intelligence and the capacity for management which will enable them to make the most of their opportunities. The rural school has a large place in determining the character and the

intellectual effectiveness of large numbers of farmers. If farmers were more efficient and if agriculture could be placed on a more scientific basis, fewer farmers would be needed. Again, farmers are American citizens as are town dwellers. They constitute a most important part of our citizenry. It is a commonplace that urban and rural people should understand not only one another but also the common problems of our civic life. If every farmer were a high-school graduate with special training in the applied sciences, what a vast difference it would make in his comprehension of rural life and education. Too many farmers are the victims of traditional practices. More education of the right kind would tend to liberalize their minds. Rural education should not mean a rural life for every person. The type of training offered should enable each person to determine his future for himself. Children and young people on our farms should be guided in choosing their life careers, whether agricultural or otherwise, just as should urban children.

**Critical conditions produced by the depression.** The years of the depression have wrought havoc with the farmer and with the farmer's schools in very many places. Many farmers in some sections of the country have suffered great hardships. Thousands have lost their farms, and many who were once prosperous are now destitute. The low prices for farm products often have not paid for the cost of production. If it had not been for federal and state relief measures, thousands and tens of thousands of farm families would have suffered even more than they did for the bare necessities of life. Cattle have starved to death for want of feed. The depression, combined with the lack of moisture and with the devastating dust storms, has brought about conditions never before experienced in this country. Rural education, as a result of these economic conditions, has likewise been hard hit. Hundreds and thousands of rural schools have been closed or terms have been greatly shortened. Teachers' salaries have been reduced, often below a subsistence level. In 1933 more than 84,000 rural teachers received less than \$450. The "blanket code" minimum for

## 8 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

unskilled factory labor was \$728 in that year. Why have schools lacked funds? Largely because of top-heavy mortgages, tax delinquencies, tax limitations, closed banks, lower assessments and changes in wealth in various states. If you were a farmer and had to answer this question, what would you do. Shall I save my farm or shall I save our school? While the suffering and the want in industrial centers have been unprecedented, many of our rural people in certain states or portions of states have gone through an experience in recent years which has been nothing short of tragical.

Conditions vary in different states. When one is discussing rural education in the United States, it is well to keep in mind the fact that even in the worst days of the depression the rural school situation has varied all the way from no schools at all to conditions that have been very good, *i.e.*, practically normal. There are efficient schools with excellent, trained teachers, and there are rural schools so bad as to make a most disheartening picture. Between the two extremes are thousands of fair or average schools operating for a year of nine months with fairly respectable buildings and at least average instruction. In a number of states conditions have been desperate; even during prosperous times rural school conditions in certain sections are always indeed deplorable—shacks for buildings; untrained, immature teachers, very little equipment, and a term of only a few months. Many of the consolidated schools, and there are over 20,000 of them, have continued on a fairly decent level of effectiveness. Other consolidated schools have been in about as bad a way as many one-teacher schools. The Federal Office of Education has gathered data from all the states which demonstrate that rural education is far from being wholly bad. However, although the situation is not uniformly good or bad, the general trend today is not at all satisfactory or favorable.

In *Collier's* for June 8, 1935, there appeared an article by H G Wells, the noted English writer, on "The New America," in the course of which he makes these statements:

## PRESENT-DAY PROBLEMS IN RURAL EDUCATION 9

While the Louisiana senator is shouting for colleges, the South is faltering even in the work of elementary education. Just as I write this, I chance upon a well-informed article by Avis D. Carlson, and I learn that last year a third of a million of American children were out of school and receiving no education at all because there was no money to pay the teachers. There were the schoolhouse, the children, and the teacher. And they were at a standstill. It is not a question of assembling them, but of their dispersal; the unpaid teachers had been starved out and the schools shut down. In Georgia 1318 schools, with an enrollment of 170,790, were closed. In Alabama, 81 per cent of all the children in rural schools are taking an enforced vacation, and in Arkansas, over three hundred schools were open for sixty days or less during the year. There was no money forthcoming.

This is appalling reading for one who clings to the hope that America will lead the world toward the organized world order. Education is the cardinal function in a modern civilized state. A modern state has no use for illiterates. They are only one step removed from defectives, and a sheer burden on the state.

**Need for facing the facts.** There is a tendency on the part of some who write and speak on rural education to ignore or minimize the existing problems. Some have thought that the solution of the prevailing teaching weaknesses, for example, could be found in an activities or project curriculum. Anyone who knows rural-school conditions will understand at once that such a proposal, if attempted to any large extent, must, in the nature of the case, result in failure. One has only to consider the personality of the average rural teacher and the limitations of her school equipment and environment, to realize that anything but a modified form of so-called progressive education, is doomed to failure. This is not to say that many progressive ideas should be ignored when there is a possibility of using them. How much they can be utilized depends on the school, the teacher, the supervision, the funds available, and many other factors. The rural school must be considered as it now is, though to be sure, no two are exactly alike. Progress will be made when we start from known facts. In some states there is excellent supervision, in others practically none. Some states have modern

## 12 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

to these questions. If the small, independent farmer is doomed to ultimate extinction, then what will be the solution of rural education? Will all small schools gradually be absorbed into larger ones? Many people hope that the home-building type of farmer will remain as an integral part of our national life. Cubberley describes him as "loyal to his country neighborhood, treasuring his rural friendships. His pride was in his broad and well-kept acres, his horses and stock, his home, his barns and machinery, and his family. He was strong, virile, conscious of his personal worth, opinionated, and with a keen sense for values, politics, and often for religion." He is still here in many sections. Will he remain? Or will he be destroyed by some great economic octopus of modern invention? Will a farm peasantry be the final solution? We cannot believe that America will tolerate such a condition.

**Social-economic influence of inventions.** Applied science, research, and discovery are making life in both town and country entirely different from what it was fifty years ago, a generation ago, yes, even twenty years ago. Farm people need no longer be isolated. They now have the automobile, the telephone, the rural-mail and parcel-post systems, the radio. They can get to town easily to see the movies or to attend lectures, musical programs, or other instructional or entertaining attractions. The coming of good roads and the automobile have brought a revolutionary change in rural life. Many a farmhouse is now lighted by electricity and heated by a furnace. There is hot and cold running water, a good bath room, a sewage system, kitchen conveniences, vacuum cleaners, etc. Electricity is used for power in many ways. It is used by the farmer and by the farmer's wife. It must be freely granted that no doubt the majority of farmers do not have any or all of these modern aids to more comfortable living. In the work on the land we now find tractors, gang plows, and other modern machines and implements. In dairy sections practically all farmers have silos and many now use milking machines operated by electric motor or gas engine. Farmers in most states can now

get very useful government agricultural bulletins. Soil analysis is now common. The agricultural agent is doing much to promote the cause of modern farming. Fertilizers can now be used with accuracy, rotation of crops is commonly practiced, the use of legumes for enriching the soil is commonplace. This does not by any means end the story, but use your imagination to see the far-reaching social-economic implications.

**Influential organizations aiding in the solution of rural-life and rural-education problems.** It would be almost impossible to enumerate all of the agencies which have been and still are more or less active and effective in rendering a social, economic, or educational service to rural communities. In his book on *Rural Life and Education*, Dr. Cubberley classifies rural service agencies into six groups: (1) church organizations; (2) young people's organizations; (3) library organizations, (4) farmers' organizations, (5) agricultural-improvement organizations, and (6) community-center organizations. Familiar names are the Farm Bureau, the Grange, Y. M. C. A., Y. W. C. A., Boy Scouts, Girl Scouts, 4-H Clubs, Campfire Girls, boys' and girls' agricultural clubs, and other clubs of many kinds, dairymen's associations, farmers' unions, the Non-Partisan League, co-operative stores, county agents, county home-economics demonstrators, farmers' institutes, parent-teacher associations, creamery associations, cheese makers' organizations, and many others. We find some of these organizations in all parts of the United States. The activity and value of any organization will be determined by local needs and leadership. In some states the 4-H Clubs are very strong. The writer has known this organization to conduct county fairs with much success. It is not too much to say that with sufficient funds available the home, the church, and the school in co-operation with other institutions and organizations should be able to bring about tremendous changes for the better in the civic, social, and educational life of many rural communities during the next quarter century.

**Social-civic life in rural areas.** In many rural communities throughout the country there has always been enough leadership

## 14 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

and public spirit to make the district a most desirable neighborhood in which to live. The people are sociable, friendly, and willing to work together for the common good. Meetings and programs at the church, the school, the town hall, or some other place are frequent, educational, and enjoyable. In such communities we find men and women with ideas and ideals. They sense their social and civic obligations. They are able to think and to plan for others and for the welfare of the entire group. Often we find people in such neighborhoods who have received their inspiration in some outside school or from some leader whom they have known. High-school graduates, and college graduates, even, are living on farms and taking their part in the work of rural betterment. Many times a teacher of good mentality and personality will do much to arouse a community spirit and to bring people together for their social and civic welfare. Unfortunately in many rural neighborhoods we do not have the requisite leadership or the interest of the people. The chief concern is with the material things of life. More corn is raised to feed more hogs, to buy more corn to feed more hogs, and so on and on. Spiritual values do not mean much. It is indeed a sad and dreary spectacle. Such conditions make a demoralizing community rather than an uplifting community in which to rear boys and girls and young people for life and American citizenship.

**Outstanding needs in rural education.** The needs in rural education are many and obvious to anyone who carefully studies the difficulties involved. There have been criticisms and suggestions in great variety and number particularly during the past twenty-five years. But the problem remains largely unsolved. Combining small schools has been of much value; in this way over sixty thousand one-teacher schools have been eliminated during the past twenty-five years. It is very apparent that the great need is for an entirely different school system. It may be freely admitted that an ungraded rural school with all eight grades is not an ideal teaching and learning situation. It is, however, true that there are some one-teacher schools

that are doing good, even excellent, work. In such cases the teacher has unusual personality and teaching ability, as a rule. Very likely, no matter what progress is made by consolidation, we shall still have for a long time to come many one-teacher schools in various parts of the country. If these can be managed and taught by high-grade teachers the educational outcomes can undoubtedly be made of great value. This will be notably evident if seventh- and eighth-grade pupils can be taken care of elsewhere. But the teacher cannot do it all, other factors must be radically improved. A list of prominent needs today includes at least the following: a better system of rural schools, improved buildings, a modern curriculum, well-prepared and mature teachers, more effective supervision, more money, greater interest on the part of rural people, improved attendance, and more rural high schools offering rich and well-balanced courses of both a practical and cultural character.

**Ten persistent problems.** In the Research Bulletin of September, 1931, published by the National Education Association, ten problems of rural education are listed as follows in the form of questions.

1. How can better units of administration be provided?
2. How can more adequate financial support be secured?
3. How can rural boys and girls be kept in school?
4. How can the curriculum be vitalized?
5. How can better teaching be done in rural schools?
6. How can rural people be kept interested in their schools?
7. How can better trained teachers be provided for rural schools?
8. How can secondary-school opportunities be extended to rural boys and girls?
9. How can rural school buildings be made more attractive and useful?
10. How can rural teachers be given helpful supervision?

At the conclusion of this list of problems the Research Bulletin has this paragraph:

These ten problems may be further subdivided into many more, but they represent a convenient basic list to which the various issues in rural education can be referred. The arrangement of the ten problems

## 16 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

does not represent an attempt to place them in order of importance. While all the problems mentioned are highly important, their relative significance will vary among different communities and states.

**More money a constant need.** For most rural schools more money has always been a real and a serious problem which the farmers have had to face. Too often funds which might have been available for schools were lacking because taxpayers and school boards have not understood the situation or have been unwilling to make necessary and important expenditures. As this revision is being written in 1935 and 1936 the lack of money is still making conditions critical for hundreds and thousands of schools. It is gradually coming to be realized that we sorely need a different system for securing adequate revenue for schools. The old method of depending on local property taxes has been found wanting. We now see that if rural education is to be anything like it should be, not only must we obtain school funds by the use of other forms of taxation, but use must also be made of larger taxing units. It is becoming increasingly apparent that the state must make provision for all forms of public education by suitable state-wide methods of taxation. At this time, with such a startling number of tax delinquencies, it is found that dependence upon the old system is entirely out of the question. Some states have made successful use of a sales tax. But whatever the form of taxation, the state and the nation are in duty bound adequately to support rural education, as well as all other types of public education.

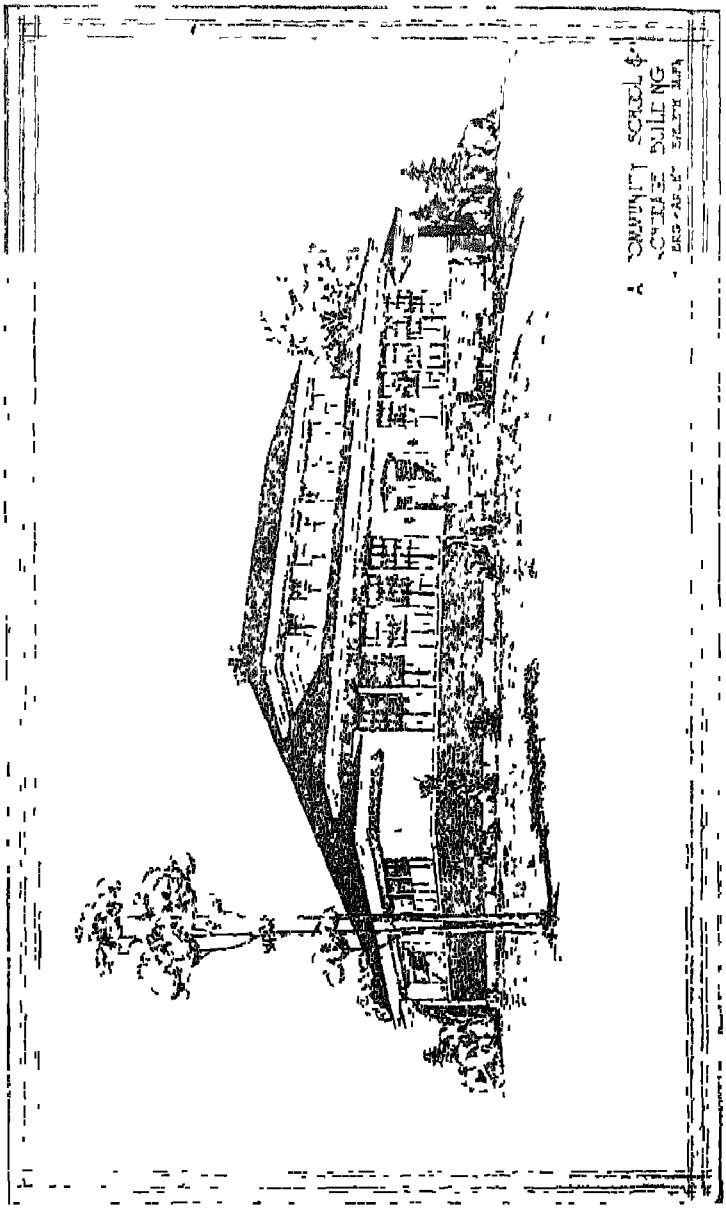
**Administrative systems need reorganization.** In the Research Bulletin, already cited (page 238), we find the following statement: "Nothing is more unanimously agreed upon both by educational leaders and students of government than the inadequacy of the present unit (the district) for administering rural schools in most states. Repeated studies show that too small units are excessively expensive and educationally ineffective. Many authoritative studies of state school organization emphasize the need for thinking of education in terms larger than the small rural district." Each state will have its

own plan of administration, but all agree as to the urgency of the problem. Here are some typical opinions from different states: "The small school district is an almost insurmountable obstacle to the type of school organization required by a modern rural population." "The district unit is expensive and ineffective, and present-day needs in rural education call for its abolition." "The district system is largely responsible for the glaring inequalities in education." "This system (the district) may have answered a need in the day when it was established, but that day is long since gone." The Research Bulletin indicates that the larger units now in use or proposed are these: consolidated district, superintendency union, township unit, the community unit, and the county unit. According to the above research study, a good unit of school administration will include, as far as possible, these conditions:

1. An effective unit is large enough and financially strong enough to co-operate efficiently with the state and other agencies in financing a good elementary school program.
2. An effective unit reduces as far as possible the number and extent of inequalities in ability to finance a complete elementary and secondary educational offering.
3. An effective unit retains and develops local interest in an understanding of the school program.
4. An effective unit provides competent, nonpolitical control.
5. An effective unit assures progressive professional supervision.
6. An effective unit reduces gross differences in the educational offering available to different groups of children.
7. An effective unit provides an adequate and varied curriculum.

**What problems are solved by consolidation?** It is true that consolidation, with its correlative of transportation, may not solve every problem of rural education, but it goes a long way in that direction. There are of course some objections to consolidation of rural schools but we shall here list only the conspicuous advantages of the system. The advantages certainly greatly outweigh the disadvantages.

1. Consolidation is often more economical; but if it does cost more, parents get far more for their money. In hundreds and thousands of cases they are surely not getting great returns today.



Courtesy of E. H. Berg, Architect, Breckinridge, Minn.

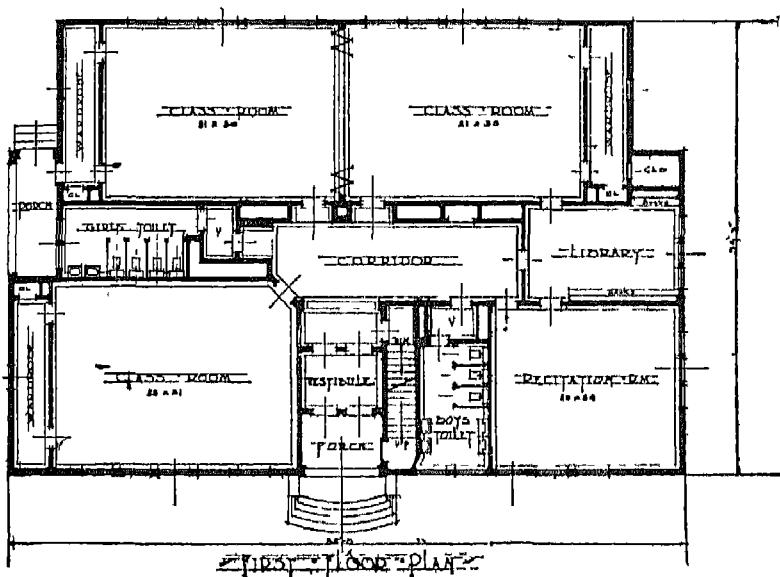
Consolidated school and teacherage

2. Consolidation gives much better educational advantages in practically every case

3. The transportation system is the means of increasing the percentage of attendance greatly and of reducing tardiness to a minimum.

4. Conveyance in good school buses conserves the health of the children

5. The moral hazards to character of the walk to and from school are removed



*Courtesy of E. H. Berg, Architect, Eveleth, Minn.*  
Community school—school-floor plan

6. There is of course a much improved system of grading as one teacher has only one or two grades instead of eight. This results in greater interest as well as in greater effectiveness of teaching.

7. The number of board members is greatly decreased and usually the number of teachers.

8. Valuable additional practical and cultural subjects, such as music, art, domestic science, manual training, and others, are made possible.

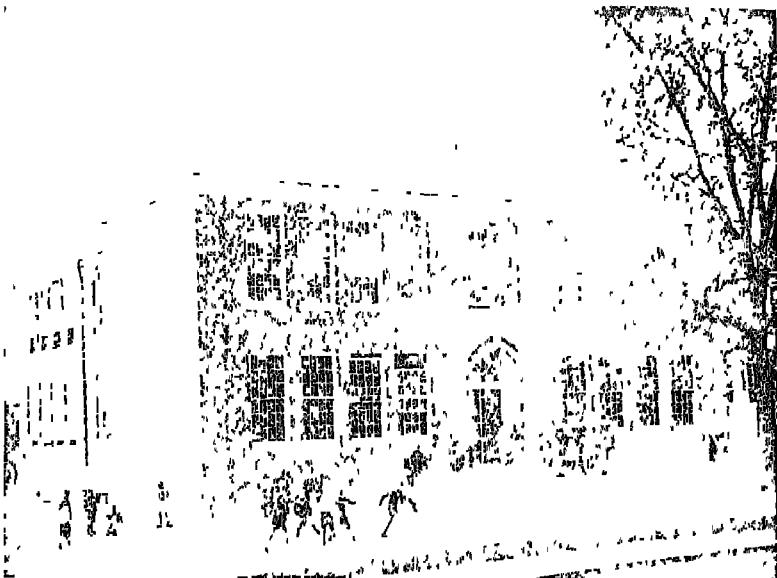
9. The building and equipment are usually a vast improvement over the little red schoolhouse

10. The transportation system is an inducement to build better roads.

## 20 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

11 A community-center building is provided for the entire consolidated district in which the people may carry out a great variety of educational, social, and civic programs

**Inadequacy of the old curriculum.** Probably the average rural teacher is subject-minded instead of child-minded, as she should be. The rural teacher thinks in terms of units, topics, books, and lessons to be learned and recited. In this respect



*Courtesy of Office of Education, Washington, D. C.*

**Little red schoolhouse, 1935 Virginia edition**

she is not so different from many of the teachers in town schools. When we use the term curriculum we mean, of course, the entire content and nature of the educational program of pupil activities. The curriculum is not merely a number of subjects. Primarily it is made up of human experiences. What does the average rural school offer in the way of rich life experiences which will result in desirable knowledge, habits, skills, attitudes, tastes, appreciations, and ideals? The course of study in most states is not particularly well adapted to the rural school and

rural environment. The course is framed chiefly for the use of teachers in graded systems. One prominent educational need of today is a vitalized curriculum for rural schools. It will not be the same in all states and it will never be completed. A good curriculum is a growing organism; it is never a finished product. Although we are living in an age of marvelous changes, too often the rural child not only is not given a chance to understand, but is also not prepared to take his place in this modern world. The rural boy and girl need a varied, balanced program, much more than the three R's and much more than drill upon the fundamentals. They need music, art, science, literature, household arts, and manual arts. They need daily to engage in activities which constitute real living in themselves and which will prepare for fulness of adult living in the days to come.

**The problem of getting better teachers.** In many states the quality of the teaching has distinctly improved during the last quarter century. At the present time many young women who are working in rural schools have been trained for a year or more in teachers colleges, county normals, high-school training classes, or elsewhere. A much smaller number of young men are also teaching in these schools. These young people are often high-school graduates; their course in the training institution has prepared them specifically for their work. It is, however, unfortunately true that hundreds of rural schools are still being taught by immature, untrained teachers, many of whom have little, if any, high-school education. A rather large number of teachers colleges and state normal schools are now offering courses in rural education, but in many states there are not enough teachers specifically trained for the rural school positions. For the one-teacher school very specialized preparation is necessary. Today the minimum of preparation for such positions should be graduation from high school, plus at least two years of professional training. Although, as this chapter is being written, there are probably one or two hundred thousand unemployed teachers, it is still true that large numbers of rural schools are being taught by very poorly prepared teachers.

## 22 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

Better salaries and living conditions, higher standards of certification, and improved training facilities will result in more trained teachers for rural schools

The typical one-room rural teacher of the United States is a young woman about twenty-three years of age, of native American stock, and of farm or small-town background. Her preparation includes four years of high-school education with approximately one year of professional training, secured frequently in summer sessions or in the graduate year of high-school training classes. She teaches from twenty to twenty-five children through the eight grades of the elementary curriculum for a school year of eight months, and remains only one or two years in the same school. Her median annual salary is \$883 and her total service in rural schools averages about three years, after which she marries or transfers to grade teaching or continues her education, usually in a state teachers' college.<sup>1</sup>

The above was written by Professor Mabel Cainey on "The Preparation of Teachers for Rural Schools" in the Thirty-first Year Book, Part I, *The Status of Rural Education*, published in 1931. Whatever else may be true in 1935, the median annual salary is now much less than when Miss Cainey wrote. In fact, hundreds receive less than one half of \$883.

**Need for better supervision.** "Administrative supervision is as old as American education; instructional supervision is yet in its infancy." Except for a few conspicuous instances in some states effective supervision of rural schools does not exist. There are over 3000 county superintendents, but their chief work is usually clerical rather than instructional. They are for the most part administrative officers. Dr. Cubberley states in his *Rural Life and Education*. "Only in some of the New England States, in Maryland, New Jersey, Utah, and in most of the Southern States, is anything approaching effective supervisory organization as yet to be found." It is impossible for a single county superintendent without assistance to give anything like effective supervision to his rural schools. Consolidation of rural schools is of distinct help in solving this problem, but in many states there is very little done in this direction. Some

<sup>1</sup>Quoted by permission of The National Society for the Study of Education.

principals of consolidated schools are able to devote part of their time to supervision, but in most cases all of their time is devoted to teaching. How is the problem of rural-school supervision to be solved? Few people realize the magnitude of the task of the average county superintendent. But this official, as a rule, has little assistance and he or she is generally paid a small salary. Until the office of county superintendent is taken out of politics and until the need for an adequate supervisory force is understood, rural schools will remain practically without supervision in the majority of states and counties. The average county superintendent has well over a hundred teachers and schools to visit. These often cover a large area which makes much traveling necessary. If each superintendent could have two supervising teachers for each hundred schools, the gain in effective instruction would be marked. If one supervisor could devote her entire time to the instructional supervision of fifty rural schools, the teachers would be securing effective help. It is evident that our system is at fault, and radical reorganization is a necessity. Instead of blaming the county superintendent, let us direct our criticisms at a system of which he and his constituents are the victims.

**Arousing an interest in education.** A rather common lack of genuine interest in schools on the part of large numbers of parents and taxpayers, both urban and rural, is one of the conspicuous obstacles to educational progress. School men and women should do much more than has been done to sell education to the public. Every legitimate effort should be made to furnish taxpayers with correct information and to overcome the attitude of indifference. By the use of the public press, by circulars, posters, school exhibits and fairs, and in many other ways it is possible to give school patrons the facts so that they may be able to draw unbiased conclusions from them. In rural districts it is entirely possible to increase interest and to bring about a more friendly attitude of co-operation. Rural teachers can make use of school newspapers, of mothers' meetings, of evening programs, of parent-teacher associations, and of other

## 24 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

means to call attention to conditions and needs of the school. A continuous program of wise publicity is not only proper, but it is also necessary, if the work of education is to receive adequate support. Teachers and superintendents have been too modest and have held themselves too much aloof. The public school is an institution of public concern and its work and problems should be widely understood by the people.

On page 267 of the Research Bulletin entitled "The Outlook for Rural Education" is given a list of thirty publicity methods used in rural schools. Among the most effective ways of arousing interest, let us say in appropriating funds for a new building, are personal interviews, community meetings, public addresses, news items and editorials in newspapers, circular letters, personal letters, and school surveys. Other means of presenting education to the public are school reports, exhibits, circulars and handbills, publicity bulletins, and school newspapers. A rural teacher will probably secure the best results through mothers' meetings, school programs, school exhibits, and a good school newspaper. The best advertisement of all is a good teacher who is able to interest parents through the good work and progress of the children.

**Educating all the children of all the people.** Is it not actually a menace to our form of government to have a large class of our population without adequate preparation for American citizenship? If this government of the people, by the people, and for the people is to be perpetuated, then boys and girls and young people in country districts should receive a liberal, well-balanced education which will fit them for living and for making a living. No special effort should be made to educate country children only for life in the country. They should study a wide range of subjects which will enable them to decide for themselves where their lot shall be cast. Every young person who is capable of taking a four-year high-school course should have the opportunity to do so. Why are not country young people entitled to the cultural subjects, along with the practical, as well as those who live in urban centers? The

fact of the matter is that our modern American life is becoming so complex and involves so many situations for wise individual choice that any training for any group anywhere short of the broad needs of American life is, from a national point of view, unwise and even suicidal. Probably the large majority of rural school-board members today do not have even an eighth-grade education. How can we expect them in most instances to make correct decisions in the field of rural education?

Can rural life today be made attractive and satisfying? The distressful years of the early nineteen-thirties have brought to the forefront social and economic conditions and needs which demand our most careful thought and unselfish effort. With practically a fifth of the population, rural and urban, suffering from a lack of the bare necessities of life, large numbers of thinking people have seriously doubted the soundness of our American system so far as the production and distribution of wealth are concerned. This nation possesses more wealth than any other nation in either hemisphere, and still want stares us in the face on every hand. Is it possible for the average rural home to be a good home? Is it possible for such a home to have modern conveniences and comforts? Is it possible for the average farmer and his family to enjoy a sense of security? We are here concerned primarily with rural education, but this is only a part of the larger question of the entire life of country people, old and young. Unless rural conditions and opportunities can furnish a satisfactory response to the natural craving of men and women for the good life, one with some attractiveness and pleasure, then it will be a sad day for all of us. Rural people are now able to inform themselves of conditions everywhere. Will they, as a class, be satisfied to go on living the life of underprivileged people in this land of great natural resources and of democratic ideals?

#### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

- 1 State why the rural-school problem is our greatest national educational problem

## 26 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

2 Just how could the right sort of rural education liberalize the minds of the rural population? What type of education is the right kind? Outline its content.

3. What type of citizen should be found on our farms? What is the effect of the tenant system upon this problem? Need a tenant be an undesirable type of citizen? Discuss

4. Discuss the problem of large-scale production on enormous tracts of land by large companies *versus* the system of small land holdings operated by the independent farmer

5. Of all the social organizations mentioned that bear on rural life which ones do you know something about personally? Give illustrations of some of the benefits which you know have been secured.

6 Is not the need for more money the outstanding need in rural schools? How can rural education receive much better financial support?

### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

1. BRIM, O G—*Rural Education*; The Macmillan Company. 1923.
- 2 BUTTERWORTH, J E.—*Rural School Administration*, The Macmillan Company. 1927
3. CARNEY, MABEL—*Country Life and the Country School*; Row, Peter-  
son and Company 1912.
4. CUBBERLEY, E. P.—*Rural Life and Education*; Houghton Mifflin  
Company 1922.
5. DUNN, FANNIE W—*A Rural Curriculum; An Outstanding Need in  
Rural Schools*, Office of Education. 1926.
6. GAUMNITZ, W H—*Availability of Public School Education in Rural  
Communities*, U S. Department of the Interior, Office of Education  
Bulletin, No. 34, 1930, Washington, D C, Government Printing  
Office
7. NATIONAL EDUCATION ASSOCIATION, Research Bulletin—*The Out-  
look for Rural Education*. September, 1931
- 8 NATIONAL EDUCATION ASSOCIATION, Research Bulletin—*School  
Revenues and New Methods of Taxation*. January, 1930
9. Thirtieth Year Book, Part I—*The Status of Rural Education*; Public  
School Publishing Company. 1931.

## CHAPTER II

### A GOOD BEGINNING FOR THE YOUNG TEACHER

To confront a room full of alert, active boys and girls in a country school and so to plan and direct their activities from the start that they are all kept profitably busy is no small task. It is quite impossible to overstate the importance of getting started right. The beginner cannot afford to fail before she gets fairly under way. In order not to fail she must be so fully prepared that she will at once be master of the situation.

Not only must the children be kept profitably employed, but their co-operation should also be secured from the very start. The work of beginning school in a town or city is small compared with the problems of the rural teacher on the first day. In a city system the duties of the teacher are outlined by the city superintendent, who usually gives detailed directions for doing the work. Not so in the country school, however. Here the teacher must work out her own salvation, sometimes with some perturbation of spirit during the first week or so. If she be a wise young woman, she will keep all of her misgivings to herself. If she is well prepared physically, mentally, and morally, she will come through with colors flying before the first month is over.

### SIZING UP THE SITUATION IN ADVANCE

A rural teacher sometimes has unnecessary difficulty in beginning school because of failure to study her problems in advance. It may sometimes happen that a teacher will get into a district and school where the difficulties are of such a nature that she is likely to lose out because of certain weaknesses of personality. A preliminary canvass of the field would probably have revealed facts, which, once realized, might have

## 28 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

resulted in a decision to go elsewhere. Of course no young person should be a "quitter" once the task is begun, but it is the part of wisdom to know one's problems and to know them in time to make it possible to decide what to do on the basis of adequate knowledge.

The author does not mean to advise the beginning teacher to side-step difficulties or even real hardships; but we are best able to grapple with our problems when we know exactly what they are. Since there are several factors or elements in the situation which confronts this rural teacher, it is the purpose in this section to offer some suggestions which will assist the beginner to make at least a tentative diagnosis of her probable prospects.

The teacher will need to be careful in seeking information. If her predecessor is an intelligent and entirely trustworthy person, she can be of much assistance to the beginner. Often the county superintendent or a supervising teacher is in possession of facts which will prove useful. Sometimes an honest, discreet landlady will be able to help. The members of the board are, by virtue of their positions, in duty bound to furnish the teacher such information as she should have to make her work more successful. Many times they fail to do this, however, before accepting the position, therefore, the teacher should possess herself of as many facts as possible, using any available sources of information. To teach a rural school successfully in districts like some which the author has known requires courage and even genuine heroism. If the young man or woman has determination, sizing up the situation will result only in a stiffening of the vertebral. The six paragraphs which follow will aid in the process of visualizing and of realizing the problem.

**The people** It will be well to ascertain the names of the families in advance, as well as the number and the names of the school children in each home, if possible, something as to the loyalty and co-operation of each family will also prove to be useful information. If there has been lack of harmony in any case, some knowledge of this may serve as the ounce of prevention. Some parents and children can always be counted upon to

work with the teacher; sometimes there are others of a different character. From some homes the children will come regularly and promptly, but in other families the opposite practice prevails. It will be useful for any teacher, especially a beginner, to know such facts as these so that she may govern herself accordingly.

**The board.** Before school begins the teacher should know the names of her board members, where they live, and what children they will send to school. It will be helpful to know which members will probably do their duty and which ones are likely to shirk their responsibilities. The attitude relative to expenditure of money for the school is important, and board members vary greatly in this respect. If the teacher had difficulty with the board the preceding year, it may be well to know the causes and the outcome. A teacher who uses good judgment, and who is thoughtful and courteous, will get along satisfactorily with the average board if she also faces her work with courage and confidence.

**The pupils.** The teacher will naturally learn most about her pupils after school begins, but before the first day, if practicable, she should know the number and the names of the children of school age in the district, together with their ages and grades. It will be advisable to know how many are beginners and who they are, likewise those who may expect to complete the common school course at the end of the year. If any pupils caused trouble the preceding year, are retarded in their work, are below normal mentally or physically, or are evilly inclined, information concerning these children will prove valuable to the teacher when she makes her plans for the opening of school. It will be quite unwise, however, for any teacher to manifest a suspicious attitude or to be prejudiced against any child. No matter about last year, start the new one with a clean slate. Don't look for bad conduct but be prepared for whatever comes.

**The building.** A careful inspection of the schoolhouse and the outbuildings should be made sufficiently in advance so that proper repairs can be made before the first day. Often window lights are broken and the curtains are in bad condition. The

## 30 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

stove and stovepipe will need attention; all ashes and soot should be cleaned out so that the stove will work properly. If last year's teacher had just criticisms of the building, the facts should be ascertained. No teacher should agree to work in a building or under physical conditions which will endanger her health or that of her pupils.

**The equipment.** It is best to procure a checking list of necessary and desirable items of equipment, and then sometime before school opens to discover existing conditions, such as whether there is plenty of dry wood and kindling, whether the ventilating system is in good working order, and other matters of this sort. Make sure that the drinking water is not contaminated and that there is a clean water tank with a faucet or a clean bubbler. Individual paper drinking cups to be used only once are the best solution of the drinking-cup problem. Take note of the supply of supplementary readers and individual dictionaries; see that there is plenty of educative seatwork material on hand. Look for maps, bulletin board, flag, bookcase, and, in general, make sure that all essential tools for school work are in readiness for business.

**The boarding place.** All matters pertaining to the boarding place—how far it is from the schoolhouse, the character of the people, the probability of having good food and a desirable room, and the like—should be settled in advance. If difficult children live in the home, the teacher should consider that problem carefully. Especially should the influence of the people in the home upon the teacher and upon her school be taken into consideration. The problem of the boarding place must not be left to an easy-going, thoughtless solution. The trial-and-error method of solution may prove embarrassing and costly. It is better to do some thinking in advance. See Chapter V, Social and Business Relations.

### BEFORE SCHOOL OPENS—OTHER CONSIDERATIONS

**Go to the district and to your building before the first day.** In order to have the building cleaned and necessary supplies

ready for the first morning, you may need to go to the school building with your board two or three weeks ahead of time. Some board members are proverbially negligent in getting ready for the first morning; if you want everything in good shape, you may need to repeat your requests and to go after what you want. Specifically, the following matters need attention in addition to what has already been mentioned. (a) All weeds and tall grass should be cut, (b) the steps should be in repair, (c) the lock should be a good one and in order; (d) there should be hooks enough for the clothing of all the children; (e) there should be a shelf or cupboard for dinner pails, and another for books and supplies.

**Get the register and other records at least a week before school is to open.** You should also have the census list, or some complete list, giving the names and ages of all your prospective pupils. Study the register carefully and especially learn how to pronounce all of the names readily. In some districts this may require a little study and practice. There should be a record of the classification of your school so that in advance of your actual need for the facts you will know which pupils are to be in each class.

**Learn all about the textbooks.** There should, of course, be a desk copy of each textbook. In case there is not, it will be well for the teacher to find a copy of every text somewhere and to have a general idea of the nature of it before the first morning. It is now the practice in many states and counties for the teachers to leave a record of the pupils in each class, how far they have gone in each text, and where they should begin the first day. If such a record is available, it will be highly useful. If not, try to get the facts in some other way.

**Be sure the building is cleaned.** Do this, even if you must take a hand in such cleaning yourself. The board should do its duty and have the building thoroughly cleaned. But if they do not, enlist the sympathy and support of a couple of the good mothers. Then, with plenty of hot soft water, soap, and cleaning powder, see that a good job is done. The cleaning and reno-

vating must certainly include the outbuildings, which in some districts are a disgrace to our American civilization. It will not usually be necessary for the teacher actually to do the cleaning herself, but she should see that it is done.

**Visualize your problems.** By the use of your imagination and your thinking powers you should be able to picture the conditions which will confront you the first day. Your problem is to get ready for what you must do. Above all things have on hand plenty of interesting tasks for everybody. The little folks who cannot read or study should have suitable work or else go out to play.

**Get acquainted.** It will be a great asset to the young teacher, or to any teacher in a new school, if she can become acquainted in advance with the members of her board and with some of the leading people of the district. Should there be any troublesome pupils in the district, it may be possible for a friendly, socially minded teacher to get on the right side of these boys or girls through cordial association before school opens.

**Prepare physically and mentally.** It will surely be a serious mistake if the teacher is not in good trim in both mind and body for the first day. It will never do to begin school tired out or in a doubtful, hesitating frame of mind. It goes without saying that a teacher whose health is not good starts with a definite handicap. But granting good health, the teacher should have had several nights of sound sleep together with plenty of outdoor exercise and regular meals of wholesome food. To start in below par physically is to invite failure. The nerves must be steady, with a good supply of reserve energy. Then, too, the teacher should have wholly, unreservedly, made up her mind that she is going to succeed. She has conscientiously made preparation, now with confidence she is fully determined to succeed. She must not fail, she must fully make up her mind that she will win out. Her state of mind will have much to do with her success. If she is ready, she need have no fears.

**Consult your county superintendent.** Every beginning teacher, at any rate, should talk matters over with her county

superintendent before her school opens. This official can give many helpful suggestions because of personal experience with local, district conditions and problems. The superintendent will be able to give good advice concerning both the pupils and the people of the district, including the board. Have a good talk with your superintendent, ask questions, and get a state course of study if you do not have one.

**Get well settled in your boarding place before the first day, if practicable.** Everything is new and untried to the young schoolmistress. If she can make sure of a good place in the district where she can be comfortable and feel at home, it will have much to do with her peace of mind and her success. Get on good terms with the people in your boarding place at once. Be friendly and cordial from the start and all of the time. The teacher must not allow shyness to get the best of her. To this end she may well cultivate the attitude of friendliness.

**Write down what you will say and do.** Every beginner certainly should put down on paper the entire procedure for the first day and perhaps for the first week. If she intends to make a few remarks to the school, which is not at all necessary, she should know exactly what she is going to say. It is not a time, however, for much talking on the teacher's part. The main thing is to proceed to business at once and to see that everybody keeps busy all day with work that is interesting and worth the doing. Such work must be planned out before the first day.

#### WHAT TO DO THE FIRST DAY

**Be on hand early the first day.** Read the chapter about Amy Kelly in *The Evolution of Dodd*.<sup>1</sup> It will also be well to find out how Jean Mitchell solved her problems. See references at end of this chapter. Amy would have done better had she looked after the cleaning the previous week, but she and Dodd Weaver became good friends through the cleaning business. In any case, the teacher should be the first one on

<sup>1</sup> SMITH, WILLIAM HAWLEY—*The Evolution of Dodd*; Rand McNally and Company

hand the first morning, even if she has to be there by seven o'clock. For several mornings she should get an early start.

**Provide seatwork.** If among your resources there is plenty of seatwork material you will be fortunate. In addition to such materials don't neglect to have suitable suggestions for work on the blackboards. You may have study questions, lists of words or phrases, language material, good examples (not problems) in arithmetic, a map to copy and fill in, an outline to work from, a flower to draw, a diagram to draw and study, and anything else that will prove both interesting and educational.

**Keep yourself free.** You must be able to have general oversight of all pupils all of the time. Don't get immersed in a class exercise and forget your school. Don't emphasize the hearing of lessons the first day, if you ever do—and you should never make this mistake. On this first day maintain a consciousness of the whole situation, do not get sidetracked by any pupil or group of pupils. Any undue absent-mindedness or stupidity on the teacher's part the first day may cause her trouble. She needs to have both her ears and eyes open, but without any attitude of suspicion whatever.

**Do not bother too much about the question of enrollment.** If you do not get every detail as to name, age, and birth date the first day, it will make no great difference. You can usually get the names gradually during the day. If you have a plat with a little rectangle for each desk in which you write the name of the pupil, you will find this an aid in associating the name with the face. The older pupils can write their names, ages, dates of birth, and other data you need on slips of paper.

**Be on time.** Begin on time, close on time, have full recess periods and a full noon hour. Possibly longer recess periods than usual might be useful to you the first day. The writer believes that all the pupils in a rural school need two full fifteen-minute recess periods every day, and a full sixty-minute noon period. The smaller pupils need much longer periods out of doors. See Chapter IX for discussion of Program.

**Have singing the first day.** The writer would begin the first morning by having the children sing some song all know, if possible. Don't trust to the spur of the moment but have the words either on the blackboard, or on mimeographed sheets, or in enough song books to go around. Be sure that you can make the singing go or don't attempt it. Every rural school should have singing every day.

**Study your pupils.** For the first day you should arrange your work in such a way that you will have opportunity to get at least an approximate idea of the temperament of each child. Of course they will size you up all day, and it will be well for you to be somewhat noncommittal. Maintain a quiet reserve. Be self-controlled and courteous. Use your best endeavors to avoid unpleasant incidents the first day and the first week. An ounce of prevention is often worth several pounds of cure.

**Don't settle the seating problem the first day.** Perhaps to some extent pupils may at first choose their own seats, but you should make it plain that you will reserve the right to change the seating later, if necessary; it will usually be necessary. Use tact; do not hurt the feelings of your children if you can avoid it. On the one hand do not make seating a big problem; but on the other hand, perhaps during the second week, it is your right to reseat the school. The best way is to change seats gradually, and not all of them at once. Make changes without commotion in a courteous, friendly, businesslike way.

**Interest the children with something new the first day.** The first day is a good time to teach something new about weeds, leaves, birds, trees, or something in the natural environment of the children. If the children are able to report at night that they have learned something they never knew before, the parents will be pleased as well as the children.

**Be ready with your program.** For this first day the teacher should have a very definite program of classes, perhaps it will be better to have even this temporary program posted where all can see it. It is not necessary to include all the classes the first day, but there should be work in reading, language, spelling,

arithmetic, and writing. It will be possible to get things to going in the morning on the basis of the reading and arithmetic classes. Additional work in other subjects can be assigned from time to time. It will be useful for the teacher to get a sample of each child's ability in writing during the first day.

**Do not forget the younger pupils.** For the smaller pupils particularly, it will pay the teacher to have in readiness some suitable stories and pictures which can be used as needed. If the teacher is prepared to tell two or three stories well and if she has some picture exercises worked out, the means will be at hand for profitable seatwork as well as for class exercises.

**Enter into the games.** At recess time or during the noon hour you may be able to teach the children some new game either out of doors or inside. Make up your mind from the start that you will supervise the play at least part of the noon hour. You can easily learn some games to teach the children. See Chapter VIII on Play.

Enlist the co-operation of pupils in various ways. Perhaps the yard will need cleaning up, or several things will need to be done to put the schoolroom into good condition before nine o'clock or during the day. Most children enjoy doing something for the teacher and for the school, and this co-operative work is an excellent means of creating a good school spirit. The individual desks and the library case may receive attention before the day is over; there are many other housekeeping details.

#### SETTING THE PACE THE FIRST TWO WEEKS

**Stimulate self-activity in pupils.** It is important that pupils form the habit as soon as possible of doing their work for themselves. A teacher is under constant temptation to talk too much and to help pupils in the wrong way or too much. A teacher fails in her duty unless she constantly makes use of the principle of self-activity and unless she understands that the only means of pupil growth and development is through pupil participation.

**Keep class records.** The teacher needs to start the practice the first two weeks of keeping a record of the work of each

class. In some school registers there are spaces for such a record; if there are not, it will then be an easy matter to procure a well-bound notebook in which to set down the needful facts. A rural teacher will find it much easier to keep her records each day and week, rather than to attempt to do it all at the end of the month or term.

**Keep a school history.** One of the most valuable habits a rural teacher can form is that of recording in a special book all the main events of the year as they take place. This may be called a diary or school journal, but the writer prefers to use the expression, *history of the school*. Mention special holidays, programs, mothers' meetings, vacations, visitors—everything noteworthy, in fact. This is good training for upper-grade pupils.

**Plan for public exercises and mothers' meetings.** Make plans and preparations these first weeks for a simple program of regular class work, and of speaking and singing which may come the last Friday afternoon of the month from two to four o'clock. This program will be best motivated if teacher and pupils keep in mind that on this last Friday afternoon there is to be a mothers' meeting to which every mother in the district is invited. Work of various kinds should be posted on the bulletin board. Arrangements may be made to serve light refreshments at the close of the program.

**Make clear, definite assignments and hold pupils responsible for doing their work well and on time.** Here, again, the first two weeks are significant in setting the pace for the year. It is a teacher's business to lay out the work and to see that it is done. Give all clearly to understand that you expect them to work and to do what they are asked to do. Be sure, however, that you do not set unreasonable tasks. During the first two weeks you may discover lazy pupils who make a business of shirking. You cannot conscientiously let these people go. They must do their work. See that all of your pupils get the idea that you expect results and that you will not accept imperfectly prepared lessons. When the rural teacher makes use of carefully

## 38 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

directed study activities and well-motivated, socialized, class-discussion exercises, together with other modern techniques, she will find that her pupils will work and learn much better.

**Nip trouble in the bud.** Keep your eyes open to note what is going on. Don't allow difficulties or bad situations to develop so far that you lose control. If you see trouble brewing in any quarter, don't hesitate, go after it and head it off. You do not wish to call on board members or parents for help unless it is absolutely necessary. Many times teachers have difficulties which are largely due to the fact that they hesitate, are indecisive, and do not act promptly when action is necessary. Don't permit any pupil to talk importunately or to argue unduly with you. This does not mean that pupils should not be permitted courteously to express their own judgments. Such expression should be encouraged.

**Discover the leaders.** In every school there are always some children, one or more, who possess the qualities of leadership. They mold the public opinion of the school, and they influence the conduct of other pupils. If these natural leaders are of good character and well-disposed, they will aid the teacher in her work. If, however, they are actuated by bad motives, then the teacher needs to study the problem. Find out early who these people are—these pupils who may cause trouble. Get them to help you in all sorts of ways. Place them on important committees. Give them to understand that you expect them to help you to run the school right. Grant them some privileges. Trust them as much as you can. Do you remember the wise saying of that wise man, Benjamin Franklin, to the effect that if you wished to win over your enemy, you must *ask him to do you a favor?* Try to make some profitable use of that principle in human nature in your dealings with your pupils.

**Relate school work to life.** During these first two critical weeks—for such they may be if you have a hard school—do all you can to relate the work of the school to life outside of school. Make your school work as real as possible. Keep constantly appealing to the children's experiences. Utilize the farm envi-

ronment all you possibly can. Show the children that you know many things outside of books. Realize that the school is life, not merely preparation for living. If you don't know country life and conditions as well as you should, begin at once to study and learn. You may learn much from your older pupils, if you are judicious.

**Keep personal records.** It will be of distinct value for you to start to keep personality or character records during the first two weeks, or at least during the first month. Procure some strong cards, measuring about four by seven inches, made of manila tagboard or similar material. On these cards useful information as to the children's bodily conditions or health may be recorded, and the results of intelligence tests, achievement tests, and class work may be set down. From month to month this card should show the progress of each pupil physically, mentally, and morally. The young teacher or the student in training will find useful suggestions in another book by the author entitled *The Country Teacher at Work*. Read Chapter IX of that book on Keeping Records and Making Reports. Note particularly the discussion of the need for a complete and continuous history of the child's progress during all of his school life. Illustrative samples of record cards and report cards are given in that volume.

**Work with your board.** Do not leave your board out of your reckonings. Go to them for advice, but do not expect them to solve your own immediate school problems. You should keep friendly with all the members of your board. At the end of the month arrange to have a meeting of the board at the school-house. Be sure that you are ready for that meeting. Let the board know what you are doing and do not hesitate to enlist their assistance in ways that are proper and right. Do not hesitate to ask courteously but persistently for any necessary supplies or equipment. Many rural teachers are too shy in making known to both board and parents the essential needs of the school. Rural teachers should have standards and ideals and should understand the requirements of a rural school.

Never mind about your predecessor. She was probably not an angel; neither are you. The shortcomings of last year's teacher are now "ancient history," as Foch said. It will do nobody in any situation any good to talk much about the weakness of the other fellow. You may well aim to become a creditable predecessor for your successor, and the realization of such an objective will keep you fairly busy.

### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

- 1 State five useful facts which a county superintendent should tell a beginning teacher about her school and district.
- 2 List some helpful seatwork material for first-grade pupils for the first week.
- 3 Examine three or four different kinds of registers to see what provision is made for keeping any record besides that of attendance and punctuality.
- 4 Do you think it makes any difference whether a young teacher fully makes up her mind to succeed? Discuss the problems of mental attitude and the will to do.
- 5 Make out as complete a list as you can of the things which you feel you will need to do the first day. Go into detail, and make your list as helpful as possible for a beginner.
6. Make out a seating plat for a room with six rows of desks and five desks to a row. Write in fictitious names for the pupils, giving age and grade in each rectangle. Assume that three pupils are quite inclined to be mischievous.
7. Name a dozen new facts or ideas in nature study, geography, and biography, which you can teach the first day. Why something new the first day? Name two stories, two pictures, two games, and two songs you may find it useful to know well for your opening days.

### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

1. ALMACK, J. C., AND LANG, A. R.—*The Beginning Teacher*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1928
2. BARNES, INA G.—*Rural School Management*, The Macmillan Company. 1928
3. COLEGROVE, C. P.—*The Teacher and the School*, Charles Scribner's Sons. 1922.

A GOOD BEGINNING FOR THE YOUNG TEACHER 41

4. EELLS, H. L., MOELLER, H. C., AND SWAIN, C. C.—*Rural School Management*, Charles Scribner's Sons 1924.
5. SALISBURY, ALBERT—*School Management*, Row, Peterson and Company. 1911.
6. WRAY, ANGELINA—*Jean Mitchell's School*, Public School Publishing Company. 1902.

## CHAPTER III

### PERSONALITY, AN ESSENTIAL FOR SUCCESS

What is personality? By personality is meant the sum total of all that we are in body, mind, spirit, and character. People vary in personality because they possess different ideas, ideals, and habits. No two persons can possibly have the same personality because different experiences have molded their lives in different ways. We know a person's personality by the way he reacts to situations. How he thinks, what emotions have become habitual with him, whether or not he can be counted upon to act when action is necessary—these are all vital characteristics of anyone's personality. This book deals with the rural teacher. We know that some rural teachers, like those in urban schools, are weak and others are strong in personality. The teacher of weak personality has but little influence. She is largely a hearer of book lessons. There does not proceed from her character that personal force and influence which should pervade all the work of every school.

On the other hand, the strong teacher is constantly to be reckoned with. In everything that she does her personality exerts a distinct influence upon the lives of the boys and girls in her school. The teacher of strong personality usually possesses surplus nervous energy which means that she has vigorous health. She teaches out of the abundance of her energy. She is strictly honest in all things at all times; she is sincere, she is a worker, she loves boys and girls. She maps out her own programs, she is alert and decisive in action, she possesses common sense. This teacher takes large views of the problems which confront her. She is not small and mean in her estimates of life and of its responsibilities. She thinks clearly; she is cheerful and good-natured, she can make up her mind on a course of action.

and stick to it That is, she is not vacillating; neither is she obstinate nor unreasonable in her relations with her pupils, the parents, or the board. She has a normal, wholesome, integrated personality

**Essential attributes of personality.** As has been said, one's personality is simply the aggregate of his attitudes, abilities, interests, ideas, ideals, and habits The list is a long one It would pay any teacher to make out a score card of say twenty-five personal qualities, and then to check herself to see where she stands. Mark each attribute on the basis of one hundred. For example, a teacher may mark herself 100 on honesty, but only 60 in initiative She may be worth 95 in sympathy, but only 65 in accuracy Try it out, it is an interesting problem For the successful prosecution of any enterprise, such as teaching a country school, for example, certain personal characteristics or habits are indispensable A successful country teacher needs energy, enthusiasm, self-confidence, interest in people and affairs, persistence, willingness to co-operate, ability to take defeat gracefully, ability to read rapidly, the desire for and the habit of reading good books, old-fashioned grit, gumption, common sense (sometimes an uncommon quality), average native capacity to understand and appreciate, good health, self-reliance, sympathy This is quite a list, but try your hand at making it an even twenty-five Of the seventeen named above, which ones do you think should be omitted?

**Score yourself.** Underline the adjectives or adjective phrases, used to describe the following thirteen items, which most closely apply to you, personally

1. *Scholarship*—superior, good, fair, poor
- 2 *Ability to hold attention of class*—marked, fair, slight
- 3 *Success in teaching*—decided, good, moderate, poor
4. *Success in managing*—decided, good, moderate, poor
- 5 *Spirit of pupils*—interested, boisterous, mannerly, rebellious.
- 6 *Teacher's voice*—pleasing, shrill, indistinct, too high, fair, poor, good
7. *Appearance of your schoolroom*—tidy, ordinary, unsatisfactory.

## 44 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

8 *Your decoration of room*—attractive, overdone, unattractive, lacking

9. *Discretion*—marked, moderate, lacking

10 *Social activities*—excessive, reasonable, lacking, questionable

11. *Your teaching*—rambling, mechanical, stimulating, showing initiative, requiring independent thinking on essentials, confined to text, topical

12 *Your questions*—thought-provoking, suggesting answers, can be answered by *yes or no*, irrelevant, vague, repeated.

13. *Your personality characteristics*—slow to react, disorderly, unruly, serious, harsh, lax, irritable, unreasonable, courteous, enthusiastic, firm, cheerful, patient, impatient, sarcastic, too talkative, too rapid in speech, wasteful of time, accustomed to scold.

**Personality, the product of integrations.** The multitude of varying experiences which everyone has during life is in some way unified into a consistent whole which we call personality. The process of unification of experiences and of one's many-sided experiences into a human individual and mentality is termed *integration*. This integrating of experiences may be complete and normal, and in that case the result is a well-rounded and balanced development. Then the personality is consistent and true, a more or less ideal personality. Relatively complete integration of experiences into a unified self is the chief characteristic of a normal person. We are all composites of different selves, and we are indeed fortunate if these selves are not in conflict with one another. In this connection, read the chapter by William James on "The Self." Such conflict results in a warped or dwarfed personality. The teacher should be a person of a well-rounded, normal, balanced, wholesome personality. If she has such a personality she will exert a healthful influence upon her pupils. If she is emotionally unstable, if she is anti-social, or if she entertains peculiar ideas, her influence cannot be wholesome.

**Health and personality.** Health of the body and mental health are very closely related. When the bodily machine fails to function normally, especially when the nervous system is not well nourished or is in some way disturbed, then there is sure

to be more or less of a change in personality. It is now well known that lack of suitable and sufficient vitamin intake or maladjustment of the endocrine glands will result in deficiencies and derangements of the various organs and systems of the body. The growth and development of personality is no doubt largely dependent upon the way in which the physical organism functions. Every teacher should make a study of the relationships between mind and body. It is highly important that the teacher be well nourished. She needs a vigorously flowing stream of life-giving blood, because this blood feeds the brain and all other parts of the central nervous mechanism. It is, of course, vital that the process of oxidation should go on in a normal way for it is by this means that nervous energy is produced. A country schoolroom may be anything but a healthful environment, particularly in the winter season. The rural teacher should understand the close relation between physical conditions and mental development.

**Fatigue and personality.** Dr. Burnham<sup>1</sup> states that

Fatigue opens the door to all forms of disintegration. The tired child is likely to be dull, slow, irritable, naughty. The weary workman is inefficient, blunders, and has many accidents. The weary audience is inattentive, wriggles, squirms, and whispers. This is true whether the group of listeners be the school class or the crowd in the auditorium. Fatigue has many disintegrating effects, varying with the degree of fatigue and the individual make-up of the person. Special care should be taken to avoid overfatigue. . The aim of hygiene is to develop power of attention and the ability to resist fatigue.

The teacher should understand the relation between fatigue and personal reactions. If a person is in normal health, ordinary fatigue need not cause much concern. It is the cumulative fatigue day after day, due to abnormal conditions of the nervous system, that should lead one to pause and find out the causes of the trouble. Now may be the time for the expert diagnosis of a competent physician. From any point of view, fatigue is a condi-

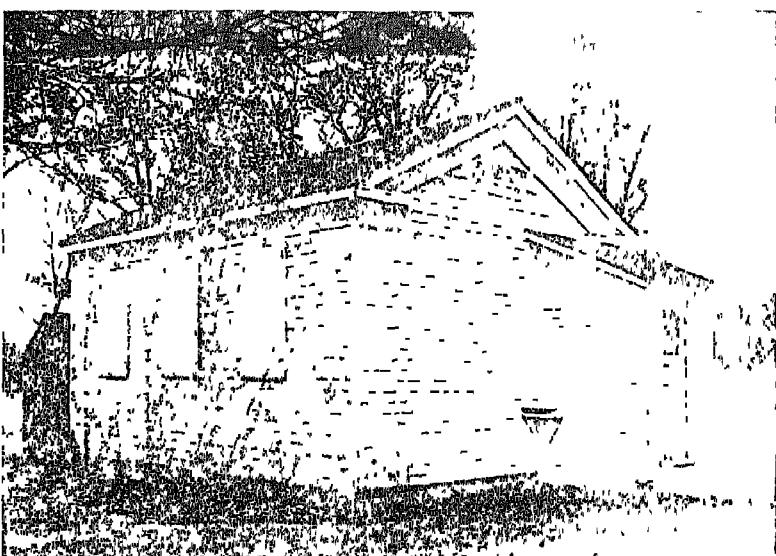
<sup>1</sup> BURNHAM, W. H.—*The Normal Mind*, D. Appleton-Century Company, 1924. Used by courteous permission.

tion which has a direct bearing upon the development and the expression of personality. The formation of good habits and skills will lessen much fatigue which may be due to inadequate training of the central nervous system.

**Three important essentials.** Every teacher may well give some thought to three necessary prerequisites for mental health and efficiency. Dr Burnham calls these the task, a plan, and freedom to work the plan. These are essential both for the teacher and for the child. The task may be large or small. Some may call it the project, and in pedagogic terms it may be a project or an activity. The vital matter is that the task must be one's own and one in which there is an inherent personal interest. This certainly may be true of the rural teacher's work. If she likes her job, she will be willing to do anything to make it successful. She will make definite plans to realize her purposes. If this rural teacher is permitted to determine her own goals and her own methods, at least largely, she will develop initiative and a sense of personal responsibility. If she is required to work in a cast-iron system, she can never develop true teacher personality. This does not mean, of course, that proper supervisory guidance is an evil thing. On the contrary, it may be helpful and healthful. But effective personality and effective educational processes, both for teacher and child, are determined by freedom in choosing one's own purposes as well as in forming plans for their realization. This is really the central idea of the system of progressive education. How few realize that true personal freedom and normal personal development are the result of individual choice, both of the goal and of the means for reaching it!

**The objective attitude.** The most healthful and normal attitude of mind is found when purpose, thought, and plan are externalized. Happy is the teacher and happy is the child who can become immersed in the work at hand, with self and selfish interests pushed aside by the intense interest in the objective task of the hour. Very much of our suffering and defeat is due to an overdevelopment of the subjective attitude. Many people find it next to impossible to consider any matter apart from their

own personal welfare. This is an unfortunate habit of mind which is sure to cause trouble and pain. If one has the power of directing his attention upon worth-while problems external to the self, it will not only increase his efficiency but also his satisfaction and happiness. People with normal personalities are accustomed to facing reality and are willing to play the



Old Frances E. Willard Schoolhouse, Wisconsin

In this building Frances Willard attended school as a country girl, and here, as an eighteen-year-old schoolmistress, she taught her first school.

game of life according to the rules laid down by society. In a good school we shall always find both teacher and pupils giving attention to significant tasks. Because of her heredity and her training, the teacher is effectively accomplishing her purposes and helping in the solution of real problems of personal value to her pupils. The objective attitude dominates the school, and teacher and pupils are both working upon worthy tasks of genuine personal interest.

**Teaching is personal.** In order to have a school there must be pupils to teach, a teacher to teach them, and a place to carry

on the teaching process Garfield said that for him the essentials of a first-class school would consist of a log with Mark Hopkins on one end and himself on the other. This was, indeed, a great tribute to a remarkable teacher; it illustrates the fact that the teacher is the outstanding influence in the school environment. As is the teacher, so is the school. Good equipment,



*Courtesy of E. L. Ray, Evanston, Ill.*

Frances E. Willard

including suitable textbooks, is certainly important, and method, or technique, is likewise a significant factor in successful teaching. But no method will work itself, the procedure will succeed only as a teacher of right personality is back of all teaching details, no matter how modern the building or how complete the teaching accessories.

**The tone of the school.** The emotional tone of the school, or the spirit of the school, is one of the most evident as well as one of the most important attributes of the school. It does not take an observing and thoughtful supervisor long to judge a school and to get at its dominant tone or spirit. It goes almost without saying that the spirit of a school is largely a reflection of the

teacher's spirit As is the teacher, so is the school Are teacher and pupils on friendly terms? Is there an atmosphere of success? Are teacher and pupils co-operating cheerfully and effectively? Is there a spirit of work? Are the right motives being used to get the work done? These are vital questions

In some of the schools which the author has visited the problem of discipline was almost entirely absent because the system of the school and the spirit in which the work was done were such that the children had no time or desire for mischief or for going against the teacher's wishes The teacher is a real leader, not a driver She suggests, she makes careful plans, her assignments are clear and explicit, the children know just what to do, and they are anxious to see that the school is a success During recitations the conversational tone and method prevail There are no loud talking, no wrangling, and no jangling There is a quiet, friendly, co-operative accomplishment of definite purposes Some schools need to be toned up, others need toning down, and paradoxically, not a few need both. The author believes that he can usually get at the controlling tone of any school in a short time The reciprocal attitude of teacher and pupils soon manifests itself Every teacher will do well to analyze her own motives and to test her characteristic attitude and spirit If she finds herself peevish, faultfinding, fretful, gloomy, irritable, cross, inclined to argue over trifles, she will do well to make some self-analysis of her motives, attitudes, and habits It is most unfortunate for a teacher to spread the poisoning contagion of an irascible, unhappy spirit in a school of susceptible and impressionable boys and girls.

**Contagion of teacher personality.** It has already been indicated that the teacher is the essential element in determining the success of any school In this connection attention is called to the fact that children are natural imitators, and that character in large part is *caught* and not *taught* The average child is quite helpless in this matter, for either consciously or unconsciously, or both, he will imitate the teacher in all sorts of ways He will copy the teacher's faults as well as her virtues. He will

do as the teacher does, in some measure, even in the matter of personal mannerisms—ways of standing, walking, talking, reading. Some pupils read with the rising inflection and answer questions in the same way because the teacher does. What a responsibility this places on the teacher, for whether she wishes it or not, she is a constant example before her school for better or for worse! It cannot be otherwise.

Pupils imitate a teacher's ways of thinking. If the teacher is a clear, logical thinker, the children will learn something of this important ability even though the teacher may not directly teach it, as she should, of course. If the teacher is a person who sets up clearly defined problems for solution and then proceeds to solve these problems in accordance with effective procedures, pupils will unconsciously learn this way of doing. If the teacher is a mechanically minded person who uses her memory chiefly and accepts book statements without challenge, pupils will do likewise, to their detriment. If the teacher is cheerful, the pupils will be cheerful; if the teacher is a grouch, the pupils will tend to become grouchy. If the teacher is optimistic, the pupils will imitate her state of mind; and it is easy to make children into little pessimists if they are obliged to associate with a gloomy, doubting teacher.

**The intangible influence of personality.** A teacher teaches by what she *is* more than by what she *says*. Long years ago Bishop Huntington wrote an essay on "Unconscious Tuition." The unconscious influence of a teacher is hard to get at in mathematical terms, but it is there, nevertheless. There is a subtle emanation of spirit which goes out from the inner life of a teacher no matter what she thinks, or says, or does. In our day we are becoming pretty thoroughly committed to the idea of measurement; standard tests and measurements have no doubt come to stay. We are measuring intelligence and we are measuring the achievements of boys and girls; but who ever heard of measuring a mother's love or the good a teacher does if that teacher is a high-minded young man or woman? The fact of the matter is that the finer spiritual forces and values

cannot possibly be measured. The contagion of a teacher's example is far too spiritual an influence to get at through any score card or by means of the most delicate tests yet devised. A teacher who loves beautiful pictures, a teacher who takes delight in *The Daffodils*, or *The Bugle Song*, a teacher who enjoys *A Perfect Day*, or *Love's Old Sweet Song*, or *The Song of the Lark*, or Corot's *Spring*—such a teacher can hardly transfer her appreciations over to boys and girls by direct instruction. But if she loves beautiful music, beautiful pictures, and beautiful literature, the boys and girls will catch her spirit. If she does not love good things, then so much the worse for her and for the children under her charge.

**Can personality be changed?** There is no doubt about it, whatever. Every young teacher can change her ideals, her ideals, and her habits; therefore she can change her personality and her moral character. Were this not true, the situation would, indeed, be a discouraging and even hopeless one. Too many young teachers are apt to say "Well, I was born that way; our family has certain inevitable characteristics, my temperament is thus and so, and it is useless for me to try to change. I cannot do it." Such talk is very injurious, indeed, and does not take into account the tremendous possibilities of education, re-education, the changing of ideals, and the forming of new habits. The author has witnessed definite and even pronounced modifications of personality in young men and women time and again. This has been one of his most encouraging experiences as a supervising high-school principal and in the work of preparing rural teachers.

Let us suppose, to illustrate, that a young woman has a quick temper. She can learn to control it, just how to do this should be made an immediate, personal problem for her and for those who are supervising her. Another beginning teacher finds that she does not keep up the loose ends. She is unsystematic in her thinking; her room is in disorder most of the time. Here is a rather common difficulty. How can we help her? How can we diagnose the trouble? Then what steps are to be taken?

defined plan of remedial measures. One could go on at length citing deficiencies and noting the possibility of change. Of course no young woman will change her personality unless she takes herself in hand. If she is indolent, indifferent, and lacking in energy, she will go on in the same old way from one year's end to the other. If the supervisors find this to be the case, means should be discovered to eliminate such a hopeless individual from the county force of teachers. Possibly she will get married, then the problem of shiftlessness will be transferred from the school to the home. In such an event, her influence upon school children will be removed, at any rate.

**Personalities of fiction.** Every teacher should be a reader of good fiction. Such reading is not only of a recreational, leisure-time character, but in such books we often find suggestions of indirect, if not direct, value in carrying on the work of the school. The successful teacher is a constant student of human nature because she is dealing daily with this rather uncertain quantity. Everything is grist for her mill. She cannot have too liberal a background of knowledge and experience; much useful material is found in books not intended primarily for teachers—good biography, for example.

Most rural teachers undoubtedly read *Jean Mitchell's School*.<sup>1</sup> There are lessons in it for the young teacher which exemplify the everlasting truth that the teacher's personality is by far the largest factor in the work of the school. Jean Mitchell had her troubles; but her ingenuity, her thoughtfulness, her love for boys and girls, her desire really to help—all enabled her to solve her problems. If you have not read the story you will enjoy it as well as profit by the reading.

And there is that old, yet always new, story, *The Hoosier Schoolmaster*.<sup>2</sup> Here Edward Eggleston sets forth some of those great and inevitable truths of our human relationships which all teachers need to know. The young schoolmaster made good

<sup>1</sup> WRAY, ANGELINA W.—*Jean Mitchell's School*, Public School Publishing Company.

<sup>2</sup> EGGLESTON, EDWARD—*The Hoosier Schoolmaster*, Grosset and Dunlap.

Discover how he won out Some other stories having useful lessons for teachers are *The Brown Mouse*, *The Fairview Idea*; *Persimmons*, *Emmy Lou*, *Glengarry School Days*, *Beside the Bonny Brier Bush*, *Rebecca of Sunnybrook Farm*, *The Story of a Great Schoolmaster*, *A Son of the Middle Border*, *A Schoolmaster of the Great City*, *Anne of Green Gables*, *The Rural School from Within*, *Phelps and His Teachers*, *The Story of a Western Schoolmaster*

**They did more than teach.** *A high-school principal* He was a college graduate, and when he became principal of a little town school in a middle western state he was not yet thirty years of age He had great faith in education and in boys and girls. He changed the course of study and made it more practical. He introduced the objective and experimental method of study in physics, physiology, and other sciences Apparatus was purchased and the work in science was placed upon an entirely different basis He inspired his young people to complete the high-school course and to go on to higher schools He expected a good deal of his students and most of them responded Incidentally, he was a first-class baseball pitcher; so he became the idol of many of the boys He is mentioned here because he exerted a virile, wholesome, uplifting influence on his high-school students, inspiring them to be and to do

*A county superintendent of schools* This very able man was a gentleman of the old school There was a finish to what he said and did which was an inspiration to the young men and women who were fortunate enough to begin the big business of teaching in his county He was very particular in his dress and in everything pertaining to his personal appearance In all details he carried out examinations and conducted institutes and teachers' meetings in most excellent style He was an accomplished public speaker, a master in the use both of oral and written English From this fine, scholarly gentleman the young teacher learned many of the ennobling courtesies and amenities of life Teaching took on new meaning, and honor loomed large as one of the essential qualities of mind and heart which animate the good teacher.

## 54 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

**What can you do about it?** If a teacher believes that personality is the determining element in the teaching business, that personality can be changed, and that one does not have to accept herself always as she now is—if she believes all this, there are several things she can do:

*One* *Make a study of the nature of personality.* Get such a book as *The Personality of the Teacher*,<sup>1</sup> by Charles McKenny, and make a study of the elements of personality. The author discusses sympathy, sincerity, dynamic knowledge, good breeding, growth in personality, the joy of living. You will find such a book useful in getting started.

*Two* *Make out a score card for your own use.* Select ten of your most characteristic elements of strength and ten of weakness. You can easily mark yourself upon these points, or better yet get some honest friend to mark you on each one, using a scale of 100. Your list of ten positive elements might be the following, for example. (1) health, (2) honesty, (3) sincerity, (4) sympathy, (5) industry, (6) initiative, (7) thoughtfulness, (8) kindness, (9) courtesy, (10) spirit of service. Your list of ten undesirable traits of character might include these: (1) procrastination, (2) untidiness, (3) carelessness, or thoughtlessness, (4) inaccuracy, (5) unpunctuality, (6) conceit, (7) unresponsiveness, (8) inattention, (9) indistinctness of speech, (10) habit of not seeing things—unobserving.

If a teacher does not sense her shortcomings she will never improve. The best way is carefully to formulate the problem and then to study it scientifically by use of a score card and in other ways.

*Three. Read good fiction and good biography.* Many a useful lesson in personality may be learned in this way. For example, what a universal truth Robert Louis Stevenson enforces in *Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde*. One cannot read about the lives of such virile personalities as Lincoln, Irving, Horace Mann, Mary Lyon, Harriet Beecher Stowe, Frances E. Willard, William Cullen Bryant, and scores of others without learning many

<sup>1</sup>Row Peterson and Company.

useful lessons and without getting some inspiration for better living and teaching.

*Four Take part, as found practicable, in the affairs of the community and in professional circles* A teacher will develop her personality, for example, if she does her duty at teachers' meetings A chance to serve on a committee or to appear on a program is a chance to grow in personality

*Five Look upon all your relations with your pupils as an opportunity to develop personality.* If you cannot, for example, speak forcefully and effectively, each day in school will give you a chance to improve in this regard if you will consciously make the effort. Cultivate clear, distinct utterance, clear thinking, and logical analysis of subject matter

*Six Seek the acquaintance of men and women of character and influence* Character is caught rather than taught, and the mere association with persons of large mental and moral caliber will do much to enlarge the life and the personality

*Seven When things go wrong in school, as they surely will at times, try to find out what is the cause of the trouble* Many times the teacher is at fault rather than the children. Maybe the teacher lost her self-control, was too hasty in her judgment, or was careless in laying out the work for the class. It will often happen that the teacher will discover her own personal shortcomings to be the real cause of the difficulty Self-analysis and self-criticism are needed if the teacher is to get on to higher levels of life.

*Eight Visit some good teacher and try to discover why she succeeds* Nine times out of ten her success will be due to a certain combination of essential personal qualities, which you will do well to analyze and to view in their bearings and relations School visitation is an excellent opportunity to study personality.

*Nine Make a careful study of the character of one or more pupils in your school.* You will find it useful to rule a sheet of paper so that you can record items concerning the pupil's character from time to time In some school systems accurate personality records are kept, and passed on from year to year

and grade to grade. You can make a beginning in this direction, and you will personally be the gainer.

*Ten Teach boys and girls, don't teach subjects* When a child does not know or cannot do, find out the cause. In other words, form the habit of mental analysis and personal diagnosis. Instead of teaching mechanically, teach intelligently, which means that you will study carefully the way in which human personality grows and develops.

*Eleven Make an honest effort to know something about your own personality* This can be done without undue self-consciousness or introspection. Get some idea of your own shortcomings and weaknesses. Endeavor to strike a happy medium between extreme humility and excessive egotism. We should all think well of ourselves but not too highly.

*Twelve Try consciously and persistently to form good new habits which will take the place of old unfortunate habits* Study such a book as James Alexander's *Thought Control in Everyday Life*, published by Funk and Wagnalls Company. Read and apply the section on how to break bad habits and form good habits. Any ambitious, forward-looking young teacher should be making continual progress in improving her personality.

*Thirteen Cultivate the objective attitude of mind* Dr Burnham stresses the importance of the objective attitude in maintaining mental health and in furthering a wholesome personality. The teacher who is able to keep her own feelings and personal desires out of her problems will have much less trouble in dealing with her pupils. Deal objectively with disciplinary difficulties, if you wish peace of mind. Read Dr Burnham's chapter on objectivity in his book, *The Wholesome Personality*.

*Fourteen You will succeed best with children if you have a sense of humor.* Within limits encourage your humorous tendencies, if you have any, and do not take yourself too seriously. There is no use in being overserious about one's problems. Many of them will solve themselves, if let alone. In the meantime, relaxation and amusement now and then is normal and healthful for all of us.

*Fifteen* Make your personal appearance as attractive as you possibly can Attention to one's teeth, hair, hands, fingernails, shoes, collars, etc., will be time well spent It will pay good dividends for any teacher to dress neatly, tastefully, attractively.

### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1. Write out a list of twenty-five attributes of personality which you can use in studying the characters of your pupils

2 Just why is the tone or spirit of the school so important a matter? Indicate in some detail what sort of a spirit you would like to have in your school!

3 In the case of some teacher who has been an inspiration to you, what qualities of mind and heart were the basis of the helpful influence?

4 Is it worth while to train boys and girls to think straight? What effect has the habit of clear, accurate thinking upon successful living? What damage can be caused by muddy thinking?

5. Write a list of ten important lessons in the business of teaching which you get from *Jean Mitchell's School* Criticize this teacher from the standpoint of some instructions you have received in your training experience

6 What lesson in personality do you get from Stevenson's *Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde*? Has human nature changed much since this story was written?

### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

- 1 ALMACK, J C , AND LANG, A. R —*The Beginning Teacher*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1928
- 2 BAGLEY, W C., AND MACDONALD, MARION E —*Standard Practices in Teaching*, The Macmillan Company 1932
- 3 BURNHAM, W H.—*The Wholesome Personality*, D Appleton-Century Company 1932
- 4 JASTROW, JOSEPH—*Keeping Mentally Fit*, Garden City Publishing Company. 1928
- 5 LOWTH, FRANK J —*The Country Teacher at Work*, The Macmillan Company 1930.
- 6 MORGAN, JOHN J B —*Keeping a Sound Mind*, The Macmillan Company 1934
- 7 OVERSTREET, H. A —*About Ourselves, A Psychology for Normal People*, W. W. Norton and Company. 1927

## CHAPTER IV

### TEACHER HEALTH, A VITAL PREREQUISITE

Good health a vital need. Good health is of the utmost importance for all classes of workers, but the teacher's need for bodily vigor is seen to be especially urgent when the nature of her work is considered. If there is anything wrong with the teacher's physical machine, the effect will be shown in the character of her work and in her personal relations to her pupils. By the use of her will power she can rely on her nerves, but that is a wasteful and inefficient way of doing; ultimately there will be a day of reckoning. Every teacher who desires to succeed and to make the most of herself personally must necessarily make a study of the problem of personal health and hygiene. This is not a simple matter, but one which requires thought and effort the same as any other problem. Every great thinker (witness the testimony of Emerson and Carlyle) has realized that without health no genuinely significant work can be done by most people for long in this world. Thomas Carlyle, an intellectual giant, and a writer of lasting literature, suffered all his long life with a most distracting digestive malady, no doubt curable by modern, scientific medicine or surgery. Only by the exercise of consummate will power was he able to carry on. Herbert Spencer, another illustrious example of great intellectual achievement in the nineteenth century, was able to work only a few hours each day because of ill health. Whittier suffered all his life from preventable headaches. A teacher cannot be truly interested in her work or enthusiastic in carrying it out if she suffers very much from headaches, indigestion, colds, or nervousness.

A recent study made by the Office of Education reveals that, among the major defects found in the physical examina-

tions of teachers, defective vision, defective teeth, diseased tonsils, flat feet, and overweight were common. Chief errors in personal hygiene shown by physicians' examinations of teachers included insufficient recreation and exercise and not getting enough fresh air. The survey developed, also, that teachers commonly eat an excess of carbohydrate foods, drink insufficient water, and habitually use patent medicines of some sort.

**Need for surplus nervous energy.** A teacher's work is of such character that what she needs physically most of all is surplus nervous energy. She must have a reserve of nerve force, a good margin of safety, if she expects to do her work well and to be happy in the doing. If day by day she is overdrawing her capital of energy, she is heading toward certain disaster; moreover, such a life loses all the pleasure and zest in the daily round of duties. The work of the teacher has to do with personal relationships in which there must be constant social adjustments in order to maintain harmonious conditions. Such adjustment positively demands a good supply of nervous energy. The teacher must keep fit for whatever may come during the day. She is dealing in spiritual and moral values rather than with mere things. She should preserve a delicate touch and a sensitiveness to the more subtle motives and promptings of her pupils. To be quick in appreciation and in fineness of spiritual discernment requires nothing less than a reservoir of reserve force as the necessary physical basis. No teacher who lives too close to an uncertain margin of health can ever exert the best influence on her pupils. Character, influence, happiness, all depend in the long run on a dependable reserve stock of vitality.

**Habits—good and bad.** No person can maintain health without the intelligent cultivation of right habits and the elimination of bad habits. If a teacher habitually uses the wrong kind of food, she will ultimately pay the penalty. If she eats too much protein and too little of fruits and vegetables, her body will suffer sooner or later. If a teacher does not sleep with her window open, she should not be surprised if she has a dull headache in the morning and feels mentally inert and stupid.

No teacher can afford to omit at least an hour of outdoor exercise every day in the year. If her digestive system fails to function properly, it may easily be due to the fact that she does not walk enough in the open air or that her eating habits are wrong. There may be a lack of certain vital nutrients or insufficient bulk in the diet. Many teachers do not drink nearly enough water. It will be a most healthful procedure for the teacher to make a business of drinking several glasses of water during the day, whether actually desired or not. The average rural teacher needs an abundance of good sleep—not less than eight hours. She will find that her work goes better, as a rule, if she is in bed by nine-thirty and up by six-thirty. If the teacher is below par in health, it will pay her to make a thorough canvass of her daily habits to find out wherein she may be violating nature's laws. We are learning to control germ diseases, but troubles due to wrong personal habits are on the increase.

**The problem of nutrition.** The average rural teacher may understand the problem of the balanced ration so far as milk production is concerned, and she may teach this very well in the agriculture class. But has she studied the problems of her own nutrition? Does she have three suitable meals a day? Is she eating the right kinds and the right quantities of food? Such questions cannot be answered without a study of the facts of the case. If a teacher eats a good deal of the heavy proteins or of starchy foods, if she drinks much tea and coffee, if she does not eat plenty of fruits and vegetables each day, it will hardly be possible for her body to be properly nourished. A wise teacher will cultivate a taste for a variety of foods. The writer recalls his early experience as a rural teacher and the effect upon him of a too monotonous diet in which too much fatty food ultimately caused disturbance of the digestive machinery. Bulky food materials containing cellulose, raw foods, foods to supply vitamins and mineral salts, foods containing protein in vegetable form—such matters require thought, if the problem of nutrition is to be successfully solved. It will

pay any teacher to make a careful study of the problem of human nutrition. She should be well informed as to sources and functions of the various vitamins and the mineral salts. Note the references at end of this chapter.

**Mental hygiene.** The body influences the mind, and the mind has much to do with controlling body conditions. In the case of the teacher it is of the greatest importance that she keep her mind in a healthful state. This means self-control, poise, serenity, freedom from worry. There are many things which may well cause a teacher to worry, but she must early make up her mind not to worry. She needs to cultivate the habit of dropping her schoolroom cares and problems at certain times and resolutely turning her attention to other matters.

Many a teacher worries about her work because she is not planning it properly. It will pay such a teacher to take time on a Saturday or on some other day to get her bearings and to outline a plan of procedure that will give her more freedom. A teacher must not become a slave to her school or to her work. She needs relaxation and amusement of a natural, wholesome sort. The teacher must somehow eliminate that fatal feeling of hurry, which robs the working day of all its joy. By carefully planning the details of her work, she will have time to do it all without hurry or worry. Mental hygiene is largely a question of controlling attention. Our lives are determined by our interests and by what we give attention to day by day. Several good books bearing on mental hygiene are listed in the bibliography at the end of this chapter. Read especially the books by Annie Payson Call, such as *The Freedom of Life* and *Everyday Living*, and those by Dr. Walton on *Why Worry?* and *Those Nerves*.

**Colds and catching cold.** No teacher, nor anyone else for that matter, can afford to have a cold. A cold is serious business, not so much perhaps because of the immediate discomforts or effects, but rather because of possible remote results leading to serious diseases, such as pneumonia, tuberculosis, or affections of the heart, kidneys, and other organs. Teachers should know

and appreciate the fact that colds are of germ origin and that they are highly contagious. A poorly ventilated schoolroom is one of the best places in the world for the spread of colds. If the teacher or any pupil remains in school with a cold, all the others are inevitably exposed to the contagion. A teacher should do all in her power to avoid contracting a cold. If she has vigorous health, that in itself constitutes a valuable safeguard through bodily resistance. Germs do not have as good a chance with a perfectly healthy body. A cold can often be nipped in the bud by the use of a hot bath and by drinking large quantities of hot lemonade or some other hot drink. This must be done within a couple of hours of the warning symptoms, if the cold is to be headed off. Soak the feet in hot water, drink several pints of something hot, stop eating, and go to bed where you can sweat and rest. Sometimes weeks of suffering and loss of time and work can be prevented in this way. A hot camphor sling—about ten drops of camphor in a glass of hot, sweetened water—is useful in some cases if taken within a very short time after the first premonitory symptoms of chilliness and stuffiness in the nasal passages. The camphor acts as a cardiac, circulatory stimulant.

Colds are often favored by digestive disturbances, derangement of the eliminative organs, intestinal stasis, or lowered vital resistance. Failure to breathe sufficient fresh air or to drink enough water will often further the cold infection, especially if the wrong habit is long continued. Many people who take a cool bath regularly every morning find that they are less subject to colds. The water should be cold enough to produce a definite nervous and circulatory reaction, which can be augmented by vigorous rubbing until the skin is red. Some people add a little sea salt or rock salt to the water. If walks in the open every day are combined with this bathing, the vital resistance may be built up and colds avoided or their frequency and severity reduced. One should always consult a physician if any measures calling for the use of prophylactic vaccines or serums are contemplated. The main reliance of most of us, no

doubt, should be the building up of our resistance, and therefore immunity, by natural means. If we can develop enough of the *antibodies*, as they are called, the fighting army will be strong enough to destroy the invading germs. Vitamins A and D seem to have value in developing our powers of resistance. Teachers may well consider the value of cod-liver oil or other similar oils for themselves and their pupils.

**Headaches.** Teachers should know that there are many kinds of headaches and that they are due to a variety of causes. No teacher is warranted in going on day after day with a headache. The cause should be ascertained and suitable remedies applied. The only sensible and safe thing to do is to consult a good physician. The worst possible thing to do is to take headache tablets or powders. A headache is a great handicap in teaching and interferes greatly with the work of the school. It is not too much to say that a teacher may easily lose control of the situation if she is subject to repeated headaches. Many times the cause of the headache is defective vision. The only proper course in such a case is to go to a competent oculist or optometrist and be fitted with suitable glasses. The world then becomes a better place to live in for many a person who for years had been suffering from defective eyesight with its accompanying physical and mental strain and inconveniences. It frequently happens that headache is due to indigestion and intestinal stasis. The best remedy is plenty of vegetables and fruit, several glasses of water a day, the use of bulky foods in various forms, and more out-of-door exercise and fresh air.

Persistent, chronic intestinal stasis, the great American malady and the indirect cause of certain functional and some organic diseases, can in the majority of cases be greatly alleviated or cured by taking one or two tablespoonfuls of sterilized bran three times a day, at mealtime or after the meal, using two or three glasses of water each time to aid in swallowing the bran. Bran is safest when mixed with food. If this causes any difficulty or does not correct the condition, a competent physician should be consulted. Nothing can be more harmful than

the habitual use of laxative drugs or of other drugs. Some teachers have formed the aspirin habit, which may cause much physical damage. Bran in certain instances aggravates a spastic condition and it should not be used in cases of irritable colon or spastic colitis. Mineral oil is often helpful in conjunction with bran or agar. Many persons now make use of psyllium, flax-seed, or agar, with much benefit. Bran bread is wholesome and may be used regularly unless there is known to be a definite spastic condition. Both bulk and lubrication are necessary. The reason yeast is often useful is because of the large percentage of vitamin B which has a definite influence upon the intestinal tract. Read the book *How to Live* and send to the Metropolitan Life Insurance Company for their brochure entitled *Dyskinesia*. Proper strength and tone of the abdominal and intestinal muscles, the results of adequate and regular exercise, are important.

Headaches are in some cases due to anemic conditions, either the red blood cells lack hemoglobin or there are not enough red corpuscles, due frequently to malnutrition. A teacher in this condition should consult a competent physician. Perhaps most headaches are of the congestive variety, due to intestinal stasis and toxemia. Poisons are generated in the system, absorbed into the blood stream, and irritate the nerves. Worry and nervousness are causative elements in the headache of neurasthenia. Read some of the books listed below, they will help to cultivate a more rational, happy, optimistic philosophy of life, which the teacher surely needs as much as any worker in any occupation.

**Clothing and health.** Every teacher should strive to dress as becomingly and attractively as her income and financial status will permit. She should try to dress neatly and tastefully in clothing which perhaps may not be, and need not be, up to the minute in style, but which is still not conspicuously out of style. Good clothes are a distinct asset to the teacher, the art of dressing in good taste is one that not all teachers acquire. It should be acquired in the interests of personal satisfaction and pleasure.

as well as for the effect upon the pupils and patrons. Aside from the question of appearance there is the larger problem of health. At the present time there seems to be a tendency for some young women to clothe themselves too thinly. No doubt the opposite extreme is also a mistake. But is there not a happy medium? In the schoolroom the temperature should be kept from 65° to 70°, the nearer the first figure the better. A teacher should dress accordingly, so that she will neither be uncomfortably warm nor dangerously chilly. For out-of-doors a rural teacher requires outer clothing according to the weather. She should certainly have warm coats, a good raincoat, a pair of adequate rubbers, and lighttop galoshes or overshoes for cold and snow. For the rainy day she should have an umbrella that will protect her—perhaps one at the schoolhouse and one at the boarding house. These requirements are mentioned because many young women are notoriously negligent in such matters. At no time, except when facing a cold wind, should the throat or chest be bundled up, but the head and ears need protection in cold weather. The modern tendency to expose the throat and upper chest more than formerly is probably a healthful one, on the whole, if not carried to extreme. But a wise young woman uses clothing to conserve her energy as well as to beautify her person. There is reason in all things, but some modern young women seem a bit unreasonable in their attire as related to personal health. Their standards of dress are evidently not always determined by good sense. A rural teacher needs to be sensible in dress and in other ways for her own sake and for the sake of her personal influence.

**Exercise and recreation.** If any teacher fails to secure a sufficient amount of outdoor exercise and proper recreation and relaxation, both she and her pupils are sure to suffer and to be the losers thereby. Nothing can quite take the place of vigorous walking in the open air—say, one, two, or more miles each day. If the teacher will arrange to walk in the morning before school and again in the evening after school, she will find it making a difference in her teaching efficiency as well as in her feeling of

vigor and well-being. No rural teacher should remain at the school building as a rule after about four-thirty, certainly not much later many evenings in the week. As a rule, she will need to get to the rural schoolhouse about eight in the morning. The exercise of the teacher has for its purpose not so much development of a very strong muscular system, but rather the improvement or maintenance of adequate breathing capacity, vigorous digestion, a sound nervous system, a strong heart, and good blood well circulated. A teacher cannot teach well unless she has an adequate supply of well-oxygenated blood which is pumped to all the tissues and organs by a vigorous heart. Recreation should mean literally *re-creation* for the teacher. Sometimes it is rest and sleep and sometimes it is exercise. Many amusements instead of building up have a tendency to weaken. A teacher needs social diversion, unquestionably; but if social pleasures do not increase vitality and efficiency, they are presumably of the wrong sort.

**Sleep.** It is during sleep that the process of bodily repair and reconstruction goes on most effectively. This is particularly true of the nervous system. Work and fatigue break down or deplete the nerve cells, and rest and sleep restore the depleted energy. The teacher cannot have that poise, serenity, and self-control, which every successful teacher must have, unless she has an abundance of energy. To maintain a good reserve of nerve force the restoration process must go on every twenty-four hours. The average teacher cannot do her best work on less than eight hours of sleep; when possible this might well be increased to nine or ten—on Friday, Saturday, or Sunday night, for example. Many a young woman makes a great mistake by not getting enough sleep. If the feeling of drowsiness and fatigue becomes quite pronounced about nine o'clock in the evening, it is usually unwise to combat it. The best thing to do is to go to bed and then to get up and do the necessary school work in the morning. The “early to bed and early to rise” adage has much truth in it; in any case it should never be interpreted to mean anything less than adequate sleep for a teacher.

**Saturdays and Sundays.** These days may constitute either an opportunity or a limitation, depending upon the way the teacher makes use of them. No doubt Saturday will be the teacher's opportunity for doing a good bit of necessary physical work in the way of cleaning, washing, mending, and sewing. The physical tire of a Saturday spent in a reasonable amount of physical labor is a worth-while outcome of a well-spent and profitable day. If the teacher will plan in advance for this day, she will be less likely to waste her time or to overdo. Perhaps a portion of the day can well be spent on school work, it may be that a part of the afternoon can be spent out-of-doors or in some form of wholesome recreation or amusement. Unquestionably Sunday should be a day of genuine rest, a day for quiet reading or for strolling somewhere in nature's restful and beautiful out-of-doors. It is a day for a change of mental attitude as well. Doubtless the teacher should go to church regularly and perhaps to Sunday school; but she should not, in the writer's opinion, teach a class in Sunday school unless she possesses more than the average amount of physical energy.

**Work and worry.** There are twenty-four hours in the day, and there is ample time to do one's work and to enjoy life as well if a rational time adjustment and schedule are planned and carried out. There is time to do one's work, but there should be no time for worry. Worry is always a useless, wasteful process. It only tears down and destroys "Worry is a complete circle of inefficient thought whirling about a pivot of fear." "The worst enemy of efficiency, as well as the best ally of nervousness, is worry." The only way to eliminate worry from our lives is to live rationally, that is not entirely a simple matter. We shall not cease to worry simply by saying "I will not worry"; rather will worry be exorcised only by a genuine effort to live according to the laws of nature in all ways—physically, mentally, and morally. If a teacher is below par physically, if a teacher cannot or will not think clearly, if a teacher is not wholly honest and honorable with herself and with others, then she may indeed have true cause for worry. It never pays to

worry about school affairs. The best thing for a teacher to do is to close the door upon her school troubles when she goes home at night. A working teacher who plans her work carefully and who is filled with the spirit of service will have little chance for worry. The cure for worry is carefully planned, wholesome, serviceable work, combined with honest observance of the well-known laws of mental and bodily hygiene.

**Physical examination.** Every young woman teacher would find it advantageous to carry some life insurance if possible. In her attempt to secure such protection, she must necessarily undergo a general physical examination. But whether examined for life insurance or not, a complete physical examination by a well-qualified physician every year is a modern precaution against disease which is becoming increasingly common. Such an examination will often disclose lung weakness, heart deficiencies, diseased tonsils, or disturbances of the eliminative organs such as the kidneys, liver, and intestinal tract, very often these diseased conditions, if taken in time, can easily be remedied. No doubt thousands of young persons have died of tuberculosis, diabetes, Bright's disease, and other diseases, which could easily have been remedied if taken in time.

Shortly after this chapter was first written the author had intimate personal knowledge of the case of a young woman teacher who became the victim of acute Bright's disease, or nephritis. About one year before her death, when having her eyes examined for new glasses, her oculist told her that the condition of the optic nerve indicated the need for a urinary analysis. She made rather light of her physician's suggestion, with the result that the dread disease developed and inside of twelve months resulted in her death. Had the necessary test been made in time and had remedial measures been taken at once, this untimely death might very likely have been prevented. Many young women at the present time are suffering from chronic appendicitis which at any time may become acute and dangerous. An examination would disclose a tender, sensitive appendix. Thousands of young women throughout the

United States are having trouble with goiter which might often be entirely controlled if the right measures are taken in time. In the field of disease an ounce of prevention is often worth much cure.

A physical examination before the day of actual need when disease has become deep-seated has saved many a life. It is better to be safe than sorry. Intelligent teachers make use of modern medical knowledge and skill, especially in the fields of examination, diagnosis, and prevention.

**The fifteen rules of hygiene.** The following rules are taken from the best book on personal hygiene of which the writer knows, *How to Live*, written by Professor Irving Fisher of Yale and Dr. Eugene Lyman Fisk,<sup>1</sup> formerly chief medical adviser of the Life Extension Institute. Every teacher should own a copy of this book. Many revised editions have been printed, there is a recent one, copyrighted in 1933. It is sound, conservatively up-to-date, and filled with valuable material relating to the conservation of personal health. Read a discussion and amplification of these rules in the *World Book Encyclopedia*, 1935 edition, under the title "Life Extension."

1. Ventilate every room you occupy
2. Wear light, loose, and porous clothes
3. Seek out-of-door occupations and recreations
4. Sleep out, if you can
5. Breathe deeply
6. Avoid overeating and overweight
7. Eat sparingly of meat and eggs.
8. Eat some hard, some bulky, some raw foods each day.
9. Eat slowly and chew the food well.
10. Evacuate thoroughly, regularly, and frequently
11. Stand, sit, and walk erect
12. Do not allow poisons and infections to enter the body
13. Keep the teeth, gums, and tongue clean
14. Work, play, rest, and sleep in moderation.
15. Keep serene

<sup>1</sup> FISHER, IRVING, AND FISK, DR. EUGENE LYMAN—*How to Live*, Funk and Wagnalls Company. Quoted by courteous permission of the publishers.

## 70 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1. What do you understand by surplus nervous energy? Write five sensible rules which you believe would, if followed, secure surplus nervous energy, providing there is no organic trouble

2 If you are not in good health, make a thorough canvass of all your habits of eating, sleeping, drinking, exercising, and of your mind to find out, if possible, whether any such habit may be the cause of your trouble Modern diagnosis and remedial measures work wonders for many, many cases.

3 Write out a series of menus for a week, including breakfast, luncheon, and supper—twenty-one meals. See that there is variety and that the meals are properly balanced—proteins, carbohydrates, and fats. Let us assume that the teacher takes her lunch box to school. Don't forget mineral salts, bulkage, and vitamins

4 Do you like celery, spinach, greens, ripe olives, olive oil in your salad dressing, most fruits, and vegetables? If not, why not? Is it merely prejudice and bad self-education? Will it not pay good dividends to cultivate a liking for practically all vegetables?

5. Explain this sentence. "Mental hygiene is largely a question of controlling the attention" Suppose you have the pernicious habit of worrying, how can you quit it? How about the "expulsive power of a new affection" in this instance?

6. "The teacher must eliminate that fatal feeling of hurry" Why must she, and how is it fatal? Is that hurried feeling a form of worry? Read Annie Payson Call or Dr. Walton.

### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

1. FISHER, IRVING, AND FISK, E L—*How to Live: Rules for Healthful Living Based on Modern Science*; Funk and Wagnalls Company, 1933 This is a book that every teacher should read. Write to this company for a price-list of their health literature
2. AMERICAN MEDICAL ASSOCIATION—*Hygeia Magazine*, Chicago. This is a good magazine for teachers and schools Write to the Association for descriptive circulars and price-lists.
3. LIFE EXTENSION INSTITUTE, New York City. Write to them for pamphlets describing their work.
4. METROPOLITAN LIFE INSURANCE COMPANY, New York City. This company publishes a long list of valuable health brochures.
5. MASSACHUSETTS SOCIETY FOR MENTAL HYGIENE, No 3, Joy Street, Boston, Mass Procure a list of their publications,

TEACHER HEALTH, A VITAL PREREQUISITE 71

6. ROSE, DR MARY SWARTZ—*Feeding the Family*, The Macmillan Company 1924.
7. UNITED STATES PUBLIC HEALTH SERVICE. Send to Superintendent of Documents, Washington, D. C., for price-list No. 51, entitled *Health*. It is free.

## CHAPTER V

### SOCIAL AND BUSINESS RELATIONS OF THE TEACHER

Any teacher soon finds that among her qualifications for the teaching position are certain social and business abilities and skills which contribute to her success and determine the net result of her work as much as her knowledge of the techniques of instruction. A rural teacher has social and business relations with many persons; her personality manifests itself in no way more strikingly and effectively than in her standards, attitudes, and habits in such contacts. Sometime, more intelligently and more completely than now, the training of a rural teacher will take into account the entire life, experience, and associations of the one who essays, not only to teach, but to assume community leadership.

**Try to be a good mixer.** A teacher must necessarily come into contact with the people of her district in one way or another. Her human relationships constitute a large part of her work and of her problems. Teachers differ markedly, however, in their mixing qualities, as do other people. Some are by nature very human and social, while others are inclined to be diffident, retiring, even aloof, perhaps, and rather silent. If a rural teacher meets people easily and good naturally, if she has time to talk pleasantly about all sorts of things and with all sorts of folks, she possesses a real personal asset and her influence is more extended and helpful. Moreover, this ability to be democratic and to get on to the level of the people of the neighborhood will be of direct assistance to her in her school work. For example, if a rural teacher wins over the mothers to her support and to her plans and policies for the school, it will make her work go much more easily. Invite the mothers to your school for a mothers' meeting, when they come, be the

agreeable hostess. Keep on good terms with everybody, if possible, by taking the initiative in the matter of friendliness. The writer has noted repeatedly that social intelligence seems to count for more in the success of a rural teacher than general intelligence. High intelligence is apparently not so important as address, tact, sympathy, and power in leadership. Here is a field for investigation. It does not seem to be altogether a matter of the I. Q.

**Avoid factional entanglements.** It will never do for the teacher, who belongs to all the people of the district and who is the servant of all, to become too intimately associated with any select group or coterie of the community. In all her social relations the teacher will find it wise to take a large view of her relations to others, no matter to what church she belongs or whether she is the member of any social organization or not. She must not permit herself ever to hold aristocratic, exclusive, or exclusive views in this important matter of social contacts. Children who go to her school come from all sorts of homes where different religious and political beliefs prevail and where the fathers and mothers belong to a variety of social organizations. But the school is a democratic institution established to give education to all the children of all the people. More than one teacher has failed because of her narrowness and bigotry in religious views or because of political and social affiliations. A teacher must be big enough to take in all, to see good in all, to be willing to serve all.

**A teacher's amusements.** Every teacher must deliberately plan to have a regular time for recreation, amusement, and social diversion if she is to be an efficient worker. All work and no play make Jack a dull boy and Jill a dull girl. The teacher will find herself growing stale and stupid unless she relaxes, laughs, sings, and plays in many ways with both young and old. How can a teacher find suitable amusements while teaching a rural school? For one thing, visiting the people of the district will, for those who are socially constituted, be a never-ending means of social diversion, recreation, and amuse-

ment. For the socially minded teacher meeting and talking with people will have a wholesome, tonic effect upon her nervous system and upon her general mental and physical health. Aside from such visiting, the author believes that a rural teacher should, along with other recreational activities, go to see a first-class movie, when occasion offers and it is possible to find such pictures as Lincoln, America, Birth of the Nation, The Barretts of Wimpole Street, David Copperfield, Treasure Island, Little Women, or some of the masterpieces of George Arliss, such as The House of Rothschild, The Iron Duke, and several others. She will, however, show good judgment if she omits entirely the cheap, vulgar shows, of which there are so many in our day.

A rural teacher owes it to herself, also, to hear good music of all kinds as often as possible. This will develop her mind and heart as almost nothing else can do. If the rural teacher will buy a season ticket to a good entertainment course, comprising lectures, good music, and other features, such an investment will be well worth the price of the ticket. The rural teacher should, if possible, belong to at least one woman's club and take part on its programs. It will be of definite value to her, also, to be a member of one of the fraternal organizations for women, of which there are now several. A rural teacher should hear good speakers, both men and women, frequently—speakers on a variety of topics. A well-conducted dance is certainly a very proper and wholesome form of amusement. There must be right conditions, right people, right forms of dancing, the right place, reasonable hours, or dancing will do harm instead of good. A teacher should get out-of-doors as much as possible—before and after school and during recesses and the noon hour. If in addition to the above this rural teacher is also a good silent reader and a lover of good reading matter, she will have available at all times a never-ending source of entertainment, culture, recreation, and amusement.

**Don't do it.** This book is written largely for young women—let us say young women from eighteen to twenty-five years of

age—and the author wants to say to them with emphasis: *You cannot afford to do anything which will bring you under any suspicion or put you in a compromising position in the community.* At the present time young people of both sexes are doing things in their social relations which, to say the best, are lax; morally they border on the line of dangerous laxness. The rural teacher, or any other young woman for that matter, who permits herself to associate with young men of questionable morals is worse than foolish; she may be courting that which is worse than death itself. The modern extensive use of the automobile, especially for "joy riding," is closely related to this problem, such use of the car has come to be a positive menace to the moral integrity of society. A rural teacher must keep herself morally clean and above suspicion and reproach, or the board should take immediate steps to discharge her. No rural teacher has a moral right to go to dances or to other late-hour social functions on school nights, as a general practice. When she signs her contract, she agrees to sell her best energies and abilities to the district for whatever salary she receives. She owes it to the district to have surplus nervous energy with which to carry on her work. In a general way, if a young woman engages in any form of amusement which weakens, degrades, or causes any sort of regret, she will some day be more than sorry. She should realize that she will surely pay the penalty sooner or later.

**The teacher and her board.** You should know your board and endeavor to keep on good terms with them. Consult with them as occasion demands and secure their full and cordial co-operation in carrying on the work of your school. Don't decide matters which the board have the legal or moral right to decide. A rural teacher should not be willing to let the members of her board be mere figureheads who do nothing except to see that she gets her monthly paycheck. It is not too much to say that it would be very helpful, indeed, if the teacher could meet all the members of her board together every month or two. Why not arrange to have them meet at the

schoolhouse every sixth or eighth Monday evening from four to five o'clock, to go over the conditions and needs of the school? The rural teacher should know what she needs and study how to present her requirements definitely and effectively to her board members. When she asks for books and supplies of any sort she should be able to state exactly what she wants, how much it will cost, and where to purchase it. She should know what quality of erasers and crayon she desires and just what and how many supplementary readers her school should have. No matter whether the board is businesslike or not, the teacher should be. When the board meets, the teacher should have on paper all the facts and points which she desires to present. Let the board know that your judgment is sound and that you expect to get what you ask for promptly. Be sure you are right in asking for things, and that you discriminate between necessities and luxuries. Sufficient blackboard space is a necessity, but a teacher can get along without a xylophone or an expensive mimeograph, though a good hectograph has become a necessity.

**The teacher in her boarding place.** A rural teacher certainly needs a good boarding place where she can have a comfortable, quiet room and plenty of wholesome, nourishing, appetizing food. If there is any such place in the district, the teacher ought to be given first consideration notwithstanding the merely personal desires of those selfish persons who may say it is no business of theirs whether the teacher is taken care of or not. It is the business of the entire district to see that the teacher is well located. If this boarding place can have a genuine home-like atmosphere, where the people have proper ideals of life and where there are books, papers, and magazines, that is greatly to be desired. Usually it is well for the teacher not to go to a home to live where there are children, especially school children. When one or more children from such a home go to school, unpleasant and embarrassing situations may arise because of happenings in home or in school or because of the teacher's personal relations to the pupils. It is likewise undoubtedly

best for the teacher to live in a home where the people have a good social standing in the community. At least there must be nothing questionable in this regard. A wise young teacher will be particular as to what she says and does in her boarding place. She cannot safely do any gossiping herself and should listen to just as little of such talk as possible. It is to be hoped that our teacher will show a helpful attitude. It will not harm her to wipe the dishes occasionally, for example, or to offer to do some other light chore. She should make herself as agreeable as possible and as little of a nuisance as may be. A suitable boarding place may have much to do with a teacher's happiness, efficiency, and influence.

**The teacher and her county superintendent.** The county superintendent is the educational chief and is expected to be the educational leader of the county. By legal right he is given power and authority to determine many questions. It is the duty of every teacher in the county to co-operate with her county superintendent in every possible way. Unless a teacher can loyally support her superintendent, she owes it to him, to the schools, and to herself to resign. While she is teaching in the county, she has no option, there must be loyal co-operation whether she likes the superintendent personally or not. The rural teacher will be asked to make out reports of various kinds, to keep a plan book, to attend certain meetings, and to do other things. In all such matters there is only one sensible course of action and that is active and cheerful co-operation. If every rural teacher in the county would promptly answer all inquiries, fill out blanks carefully, and send them in on time without any, or at the most one, request from the county superintendent, the work of that often overworked individual would be much lightened. It will pay any rural teacher to keep in touch with her county superintendent and to ask for help in solving her school and teaching problems. Usually the county superintendent can give valuable assistance in cases of failure to comply with the compulsory school-attendance law, or of failure on the part of the board to do their plain duty when

repeatedly asked by the teacher. Be friendly with your superintendent, ask him to attend evening meetings, tell him about conditions in your school, and secure his active support and co-operation. Don't expect too much of him, but don't try to get along without him.

**Business and financial considerations.** 1 *Your business reputation* Every rural teacher must necessarily have business relationships with the county superintendent, the supervising teachers, if any, the faculty of the teacher-training institution, if there is one, the members of her board, the publishers of her school journal, the company furnishing school supplies, her landlady, the stores where she buys her clothing, and her banker. How does she do business? Does she pay all her bills promptly and meet all her obligations in a wholly honorable, trustworthy, and businesslike fashion? Does she answer letters promptly and fully as well as courteously? Does she return borrowed material promptly without being asked to do so? Does she fill out and send in reports on time without the need of a second request? Does she keep her register well all of the time? A rural teacher needs to have on hand a good supply of paper and envelopes, post cards, black ink of good quality, pens, penholders, and blotters. If she is not supplied with these necessary articles, it simply indicates carelessness and lack of business principles and habits. It is really as easy to answer a business letter within twenty-four hours, assuming that the answer is available, as it is later, and usually much easier. Habits of procrastination are probably partly hereditary—a family shortcoming—and partly a result of bad training or bringing-up. In any case they are usually more or less disastrous in their social consequences. It adds to a teacher's prestige and influence if she has a good business reputation. Good housekeeping and good business habits may turn out in the end to be as important as good teaching.

2 *Business and the school* There are many favorable opportunities in connection with all the work of the school to form good business habits. A good business man keeps up the

loose ends The material with which he deals is in order; he knows where to find it He labels shelves, boxes, and goods so that time will not be wasted in the transaction of business A rural teacher may find many useful lessons or suggestions in any good store, bank, or factory. One of the best lessons which a teacher can inculcate is the lesson of promptness, accuracy, and dispatch in the transaction of the business of the school. In the rural school good teachers today make use of the committee system When a pupil is placed on a committee, it is both his and the teacher's duty to see that the work is done right For example, suppose a pupil has been appointed to take the temperature of the room each hour, to record it, and to regulate the heating and ventilating system. Here is a definite chance for very direct and helpful training in the right way to do such a task The ruled cardboard for the temperature should be neatly made out, all the columns properly headed, and the figures neatly entered. Pupils should learn, too, that successful business men do not forget A school should be conducted according to business principles It can be done and is very much worth while, because of the effect upon the developing minds and characters of the boys and girls

*3 Do business with a bank* When you get your first month's salary, go to a safe bank and deposit your money. If you are a wise and prudent young woman, you will always place a certain percentage of your salary in the savings department. The rest of it you can use to open a checking account; then you can pay nearly all of your bills by means of checks. In that way you will have a receipt for your payment which may be the means of avoiding embarrassing difficulties When you deposit your money in the savings department, you get a certificate of deposit or perhaps a pass book in which the entry will be made For your checking account the cashier will give you a pass book in which your deposit will be entered. He will also give you a check book, and you will be required to leave your signature so the bank will know it in the future Always sign your name in the same way Learn from the cashier just how to fill out a

check, for there are a right way and several wrong ways. After you begin to pay your bills by means of checks, you could not be induced to go back to the old way. You can then pay your landlady by check at the end of each week or month, you can pay for your teacher's magazine with a check through the mail; you can pay all your bills for clothing, doctor, and dentist in this way, and it will be much safer and in every way more satisfactory. Learn how to do your banking business right from the start and avoid trouble and embarrassment for yourself and for those with whom you do business.

4 *Making out a budget* Every rural teacher earns money and spends money. Presumably some of them save some money, all may do so. Many, however, do not save at all, possibly a few save too much. Some are spendthrifts and some are "close," as we say. It goes without saying that everybody who earns should save something, the only kind of saving which counts is systematic saving. In order really to save, a teacher must definitely plan to save. The reason so many do not save is that they do not adopt a definite system of saving. What is needed is wise saving and wise spending, rational economy, real thrift, not miserliness or stinginess. Several years ago the Treasury Department at Washington issued a very helpful little booklet, entitled *How Other People Get Ahead*, which is no longer published. Here are some striking excerpts:

Thrift means good management. Thrift means spending less than you earn, saving systematically. Put your money to work. You work for money, make it work for you. To get ahead, you must have a simple and definite plan. Hit or miss methods won't do, in the accumulation of money they are positively fatal. Do not read further until you see the truth of this statement. Learn to distinguish between luxuries and necessities, and don't be neutral. Keep track of all disbursements. Find out if you are wasting money, then plug the leak. Andrew Carnegie expressed it completely when he said "The best way to accumulate money is resolutely to bank a portion of your income, no matter how small the amount."

Teachers will receive useful information by writing to Savings Division, American Bankers Association, New York City, or

to the Household Finance Corporation, with offices in many cities of the United States. The John Hancock Mutual Life Insurance Company, of Boston, also publishes literature concerning budgets.

The way to get on to a sound financial basis is to make out a budget for the entire year and then adhere closely to the budget. In order to make clear what is meant by the budget plan, a typical budget is presented herewith. If a young person starts right in money matters early in life, it will mean very much to him or her in all the years to come. If he starts wrong, with bad ideas of spending and saving, there may be lifelong failure, or a continued hand-to-mouth existence. Form the budget habit, store up provident years for yourself and for those dependent upon you. Read the author's chapter on "Thrift for Teacher and Pupil" in his book *The Country Teacher at Work*. Can you criticize such a budget as the following:

AN ESTIMATED, SUGGESTIVE BUDGET FOR THE RURAL TEACHER<sup>1</sup>

Salary—9 months at \$100	\$900 00
<i>Savings and Expenditures</i>	
1 Savings bank	175 00
2 Board and room (36 weeks)	250 00
3 Clothing	200 00
4 Church, charity, gifts	50 00
5 Professional advancement, books, magazines, meetings, etc	50 00
6 Life insurance	25 00
7 Sickness and accident insurance	25 00
8 Carfare and other transportation	25 00
9 Doctor and dentist	30 00
10 Oculist and optician	15 00
11 Amusement and recreation	30 00
12 Miscellaneous expenses	25 00
Total	\$900 00

<sup>1</sup> Ten years ago, in 1925, the average salary for one-teacher schools for all the states was approximately \$735. The average school year at that time was about seven and one-half months, of twenty days each. Today both the salary and the school year have been decidedly reduced. Many rural teachers have recently received \$400 for the year, or less. In some states rural schools have been in session only three or four months, or less. Many schools have been closed entirely and many teachers have received no pay whatsoever. However, the author believes that a nine-months year is none too long and that \$100 a month is not too large a salary. So he leaves the budget as above.

## 82 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

Note that this budget does not provide for the other three months of the year, including possible attendance at a summer school. Very many rural teachers either engage in some earning occupation during at least a part of the summer vacation, or they provide for their necessary expenses in some other way.

*5. Applying for a school* A young teacher does not always show the best judgment when applying for a school, some suggestions pertaining to this important business are offered here for the guidance of the teacher.

*a* Do not apply for the school in your home district, as a rule. This applies particularly to beginning teachers. It will usually be unwise to go into a school where you are well known because some children might take advantage of that situation and make the problem of control and management more difficult.

*b* Find out how large and how difficult the school is likely to be for which you are applying. Do not attempt a too large or a too difficult school the first year. Inexperienced teachers often overestimate their ability to handle a school because they do not realize how much there is to do.

*c* Many school boards do not hire their teachers until after the annual school meeting, which may occur as late as July; but there is really no excuse for this. An increasing number of boards are now engaging their teachers in April, May, and June, all should do so, in the writer's opinion. A teacher should go after a position with the intention of getting it. She must not sit down and wait for slow, unbusinesslike school officers to move.

*d* Some teachers do not object to going some distance from home or from a railroad; often there are good schools and good salaries in such localities. Not every teacher can find a school quite as conveniently located as she would like. Today many rural teachers own cars and are quite independent in the matter of transportation. Many districts have erected garages for the teacher's use.

*e* Never undermine someone else in order to secure a school. To do so is unethical, unprofessional, and never justifiable.

*f* When writing to a school clerk, enclose a self-addressed stamped envelope. Be businesslike and to the point in your letters. Be especially careful about the form of the letter, the spelling, the capitals, the punctuation, the legibility of the writing, and the general appearance and neatness of the letter.

*g* If you do not know that there is to be a vacancy in the school for which you apply, ask to be considered an applicant if a change of teachers is contemplated by the board. You can often find out whether there is to be a vacancy by writing a preliminary letter to the teacher or to the clerk.

*h* In your letter state briefly the schools you have attended and those from which you have graduated. Refer to one or two well-known people who can give information about you. The beginning teacher had better say nothing about salary in her first letter.

*i*. Find out how many months of school the district has in a year. Learn who is to build the fire, to furnish seatwork materials, to clean the school building, and to do other janitor work.

*j* A personal interview with the members of the school board is desirable, as well as an inspection of the building, equipment, books, and register. Remember there are two sides to this business of applying for a school. You are in the market to sell your personal services. It is the duty of the district to furnish you a suitable place with adequate equipment in order to carry on your work.

*k* Make special inquiry about your boarding place. You should get settled once for all in September so that you will not need to change later. Get the school board to assist you, if necessary, in finding a good boarding place. You will need to use good judgment in this matter.

*l*. In your interview with the school board be as businesslike and as pleasing in your personal bearing as possible. Find out all you can about the school and the district. In the matter of salary don't sell out too cheaply and don't play the "hold-up" game. If you do the first, you are not true to yourself; if you are guilty of the second, you cannot honorably justify yourself.

6 "*Is it so nominated in the bond?*" Shylock wanted to know what was specified in the contract, every rural teacher should know what is in her contract so that when she signs her name to the document, it will be with the full intention of carrying out her part of the agreement, both in letter and spirit. Most boards are willing to give the teacher a written contract, though with practically all boards it is probably equally true that their word is as good as their bond. If there is only an oral agreement, in ninety-nine cases out of a hundred, no doubt, the teacher will have no trouble. Nevertheless, it is just plain business practice for the teacher to ask for a written contact in which will be set forth all the terms of the mutual agreement. An adequate contract will comprise such items at least as the following: salary of teacher and when to be paid, the promise of the board to furnish a suitable building with adequate equipment, stipulations as to janitor service, what shall be done about holding school on Saturdays (in one state it is legally permissible to carry on the school, not to exceed four Saturdays a year), definite understanding as to buying seatwork material; a copy of the teacher's certificate with standings, and other needful items, such as the number of the district and the name of the town and county. Blank contracts can easily be secured. In some states the form of the contract is fixed by law. Both teacher and board should have a copy of the contract. The contract is signed by the teacher, and it should be signed by all members of the board. It would hardly be wise for a teacher to begin work in a school where one member of the board refused to sign her contract. As a rule, she cannot afford to start with such a handicap. When a teacher signs a contract, she is legally and morally bound to keep it. If for some prime reason she might wish to sever her connection with the school, she should always take the matter up with the board and get their consent to release. No honorable young woman will ever "jump" her contract, and no square-dealing school board will ever dismiss a teacher without good and adequate reasons. The contract should contain plain provisions concerning th

matter of holidays and settle the problem of closing school on account of sickness. This is sometimes a rather puzzling question so far as it relates to the teacher's making up time. There should be a complete understanding about all such matters. See form for a teacher's contract in the author's book *The Country Teacher at Work*.

7 *The problem of insurance.* The author of this book believes that every young teacher who is able to do so should have his or her life insured and should also carry a sickness and accident policy. There are now many good safe companies writing a variety of policies. As a mere saving proposition life insurance is a first-class investment. If a young woman eighteen to twenty years of age will buy a 20-payment life policy for \$1000, it will not cost her much more than twenty-five to thirty dollars a year; at the end of twenty years she will be given several options in disposing of her interests. If the teacher will write to one or more companies selling sickness and accident insurance she will learn some interesting and helpful facts. See the advertisements in school journals. If a teacher is ill with the "flu" for several weeks, it will be most convenient to receive enough money to pay her doctor and nurse. No thinking person who canvasses all the facts can fail to see that life insurance and sickness and accident insurance are not only right and proper, but also the wisest procedure for the average teacher, whether she has people dependent upon her or not. Every young person should buy life insurance up to a fair amount, according to size of income. If you buy an endowment policy it will cost you considerably more than a straight life or a 20-payment life policy.

#### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1. Make out an order, including quantity, quality, price, etc., for crayons, erasers, rulers, a map of Europe, a drinking fountain, two curtains, and some educational seatwork material for first grade. Consult the catalogue of a supply company.

2. Address James Brown, clerk, a model application for a school, being particular about the materials and facts you use, the form of the letter, and the English.

## 86 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

3 Find an up-to-date school register somewhere which is approved by the state and county superintendents, and then learn how to fill in all parts.

4. Tell how to do business with a bank, giving all the details of starting your account, making deposits, and drawing checks. Write out a check in proper form to pay for your first week's board. How is a check indorsed?

5 Why should a young woman get her life insured? What kind of a policy would be a good one for her? About how much would you get at the end of 20 years if, insured for \$1000, you then cashed in on a twenty-payment life? What is better than a cash-payment option? What are the other options at the end of twenty years? Do you know of any person over sixty years of age, now living on an assured income in the form of an annuity, which he paid for during a period of thirty to forty years? In order to secure an annuity of \$100 a month for the rest of one's life, starting at sixty-five, how much would the premiums amount to, and for how long a period of time must they be paid?

### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

- 1 ALMACK, J C , AND LANG, A. R —*The Beginning Teacher*; Houghton Mifflin Company 1928.
- 2 BAGLEY, W C., AND MACDONALD, MARION E —*Standard Practices in Teaching*, The Macmillan Company. 1932
- 3 KIRKPATRICK, M G.—*The Rural School from Within*, J B Lippincott Company 1917
- 4 LOWTH, F. J —*The Country Teacher at Work*, The Macmillan Company 1930,
- 5 MARSH, J F —*The Teacher Outside the School*, World Book Company. 1928
- 6 WALSH, M J —*Teaching as a Profession*, Henry Holt and Company. 1926.

## CHAPTER VI

### RURAL SCHOOLHOUSE. EQUIPMENT AND CARE

**Purpose and limits of chapter.** There is no attempt in this chapter to give a complete or detailed discussion of the grounds, building, and equipment. An entire book would be needed for that purpose. If the teacher or student desires such a careful analysis and description of conditions and needs, it will be easily possible to find them in other sources. Volumes have been written on this subject. Conditions in different states vary from very poor to very good. There are still some log schoolhouses, at the other end of the scale we find beautiful modern buildings with every convenience for good work. The latter are, sad to say, still in the small minority.

**Location and grounds.** The yard should be of adequate size, never less than one acre and much better two or three acres. It is not the purpose here to go into detail relative to the selection and laying out of the school site. Just why certain school grounds were chosen by the taxpayers in the early days has often been a source of amazement and conjecture. We have seen schoolhouses set upon low, marshy pieces of ground, or upon barren, rocky, and windy hilltops. Land was cheap in the early pioneer days, but still the cheapest and worst sites in the district were many times set aside for the schools, places of ugliness and discomfort to the generations of teachers and of boys and girls to follow. The school building would best be located on a gently sloping hillside where it will be protected from the cold winds and where it will have plenty of sunlight. The surroundings should be quiet and beautiful. If possible, there should be a natural background of attractive landscape.

**Care of the yard.** The soil should be rich and have good drainage. This will make it possible to have the trees, shrubbery,

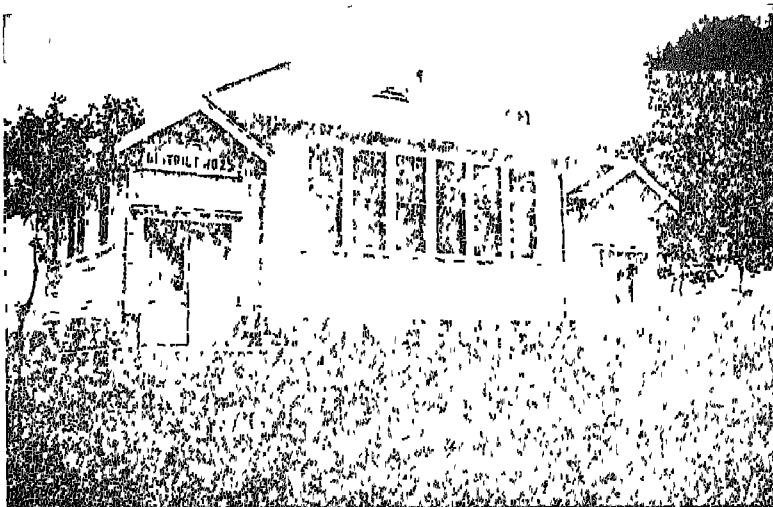
and flowers which should be found on every school ground. The teacher must take things as she finds them, however, and make the best of existing conditions. The first thing to do in September is to see that the weeds and grass are cut, raked up, and burned. This should be done the first week. Then the teacher and the children should pick up all sticks and stones and perhaps rake the entire yard. If wood is kept out-of-doors, it ought to be piled up in neat-looking tiers, this will also be a good job for the teacher and children. The woodshed, if there is one, should be thoroughly cleaned out and put to rights. During the fall about all the teacher can do is to see that the yard is kept in good order.

Early in the spring, as soon as conditions will permit and the teacher and pupils have cleaned up the yard, it may be possible to arrange for a flower bed and to start some vines which will partially hide the unsightly outbuildings and the woodshed. "The location of the schoolhouse cannot be changed, but the surroundings may be made beautiful. Trees and shrubs, vines and flowers may be induced to grow in apparently unfavorable places. Desolate playgrounds may be made shady and delightful. Ugly fences and buildings may assume lovely and graceful shapes. Corners and odd places may be made spots of beautiful color . . . It is certainly due pupils in a school to have as much beauty about them as possible. The beautifying of the school grounds will not only give them pleasure through the eye, but will create in them a love for growing things which will be of benefit to them all their lives "<sup>1</sup>

The following trees are suitable for school grounds where they can be grown: elm, Norway maple, basswood, white oak, white ash, sugar maple, tamarack, cutleaf birch, wild black cherry, Russian mulberry, and Colorado blue spruce. Among shrubs suitable for the school yard the following are worthy of mention: sumach, prickly ash, spirea, wild rose, cranberry, elderberry, syringa, hydrangea, purple or white lilac, weigelia, button-bush, oleaster, dogwood, honeysuckle, witch hazel, and willow.

<sup>1</sup> BARNES, INA G.—*Rural School Management*, The Macmillan Company

Rural school building. The following description of the general construction of the building is taken from the author's book entitled *The Country Teacher at Work*. For further details concerning the rooms and the interior arrangements see chapter sixteen of that volume.



Courtesy of State Department of Public Instruction, Lincoln, Nebr.

A modern rural school building

If possible the building should face the south. This is especially desirable in northern climates. In many states a northern exposure is likely to make heating more difficult and the entrance and exit of teacher and pupils much less comfortable. The building should be of what is called the cottage type, with the principal room a rectangle in the ratio of three to four. The old boxcar type is as exceedingly common as it is unsightly. The exterior can be given a pleasing appearance at small additional cost. If the entrance is from the south, windows can be placed on either the east or west side, depending on the point of the compass the children face. The vestibule requires windows or a door with lights, or both. Everything should be protected from the weather with the exception of the concrete platform outside.

The building can be constructed of hollow tile, stone, brick, concrete blocks, wood-stucco, or wood, as best determined by local conditions. In an early day many rural schoolhouses were built of logs,

and on the prairies in pioneer times sod buildings were not uncommon. Today the building should be constructed with a solid, well-laid, water- and damp-proof foundation. The roof should be made of fireproof material which is also impervious to the weather. The walls should be weather proof and of air-cell construction, put up by conscientious workmen. A country schoolhouse can be pleasing in exterior appear-



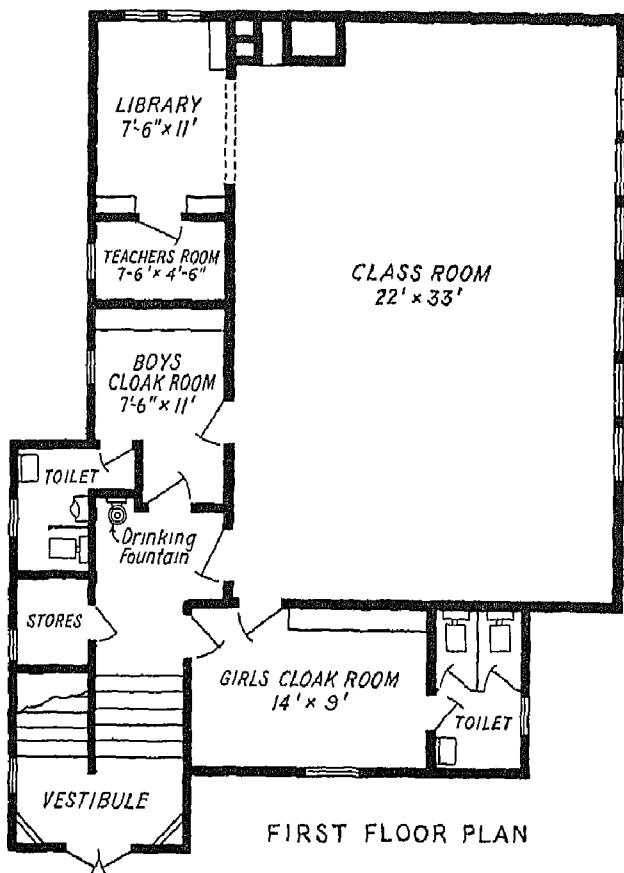
*Courtesy of State Department of Public Instruction, Lincoln, Nebr*

**Something different in rural school architecture**

ance and also conveniently arranged inside, as is proven by hundreds of modern instances all over the United States. The exterior effect will be determined by the style of architecture and by the appropriateness and freshness of the paint. The little red boxcar type of country schoolhouse is a blot on the landscape, and, as fast as possible, it should be eliminated.

**What of floors?** If you have a hardwood floor, you are fortunate; but if you have an old wide-board, pine floor, it may be kept clean much more easily if you will have it painted. The best color for this is dust color, as it shows tracks less than other colors. Give the floor at least two coats of paint. Once a week at least it should be mopped and wiped dry. There is a little device for wringing out mops that will help you to keep your

hands out of the dirty water if you are obliged to do your own janitor work. This device is inexpensive, and can be bought at



*Courtesy of State Department of Public Instruction, Madison, Wis.*

#### Floor plan of modern rural schoolhouse

The playroom, kitchen, another store room, furnace room (with work bench), fuel room, and well room are all to be found in the basement.

hardware or general-supply stores for a small sum. You can buy mop pail and wringer for about two dollars. Some such appliance should be found in every rural schoolhouse. If the floor is oiled it will not need to be mopped so often, of course.

A good deal of mud will be left outside if the front doorstep is provided with at least two good foot scrapers and a good-sized steel or cocoa door mat, all of which can be purchased for very little money. The teacher should make an effort to have a new hardwood floor placed over the old pine board floor. The new double floor will make the building warmer and drier. The new floor can be put in during the holiday vacation.

**Washable paint for walls and ceiling.** The walls and ceiling should harmonize with the woodwork, as has been stated. A light tan or a warm cream color with lighter cream ceiling make a good combination. The walls should be painted if possible with two or three coats, and the surface should be left soft and not glossy. This kind of soft surface was formerly procured by the process of stippling, but today the same or a better result is obtained by the use of flat paint. Washable flat paint is best for woodwork, walls, and ceiling. There should be no glary, reflecting surface anywhere in the schoolhouse. Whitewash is not desirable because it is too white, wall paper is unsanitary and not in good taste for a schoolroom. Washable flat paint, put on so as to have a soft finish, is decidedly the best. Rough plaster is unsatisfactory because it gathers so much dust. It is therefore unhygienic and becomes increasingly unsightly.

**Hygienic and restful color schemes.** The general color scheme of the room will have much to do with the effectiveness of pictures or other means of decoration which the teacher uses. If the walls and ceiling do not harmonize or if only primary, unmodified colors have been used, it will not be possible to remove the bad impression without a complete change of scheme. It is not too much to say that nervousness, irritability, headaches, disorder, and general discomfort and friction may be caused by a fundamentally wrong color scheme.

In deciding on the shades and tints to use, the location of the building must be taken into account. If the room receives a good deal of sunlight, then there should be a predominance of grayed tones. On the other hand, if most of the light comes from the north, then tints of red and yellow will be appropriate.

Bear in mind that a suitable tone of red, for example, is usually a soft, reddish buff, merely a suggestion without the aggravating effects of vivid reds. A good rule is: Use plain colors in soft dull tones.

The spectral colors must be dulled to produce the soft tones. The right tints of the middle three—yellow, green, blue—probably make the best colors to use. Some teachers and others prefer greenish grays, sedge greens, stone greens, or very light olive greens, but in those states where there are many dark days these are not suitable and should not be used. The ceiling may very well be light cream color, as a rule, but never pure white. There is a long list of neutral greens, or greenish grays, which are very restful to the eye and which can be used in southern states where bright days predominate. Remember that red irritates, blue depresses, but that the soft, neutral tones of gray-green, tan, or buff are pleasing and usually satisfactory. Never use any very dark or any very bright colors.

Light grays, bluish grays, light-green grays, or gray-green tones are satisfactory if there are many clear, bright, sunshiny days. These are delicate, desirable tones, but the usual painter seems quite unable to get them right. They are not recommended by the best authorities for the northern states. Challman says that blue gives an impression of coldness and incivility, but cream, gray, lemon, straw, and light olive-green suggest cheerfulness and vivacity, harmony and good taste. Tan tones for the north and gray-green tones for southern sections or states would probably be all right. The shades, tints, tones, or hues must be soft, dull, soothing, and restful to eyes and nerves.

Field experience has shown that where the blues, greens, and grays are chosen for the northern states, they soon pall upon both teacher and pupil. The grays are cold, while the blues and greens are usually exaggerated colors. It seems next to impossible for the average small town painter to get away from sky blues and Kelly greens, in most instances.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> SCHMIDT, H. W.—*State supervisor of buildings, Wisconsin*

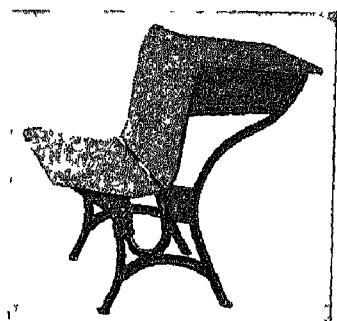
**School desks and their arrangement.** In the average country school there needs to be a good-sized teacher's desk with plenty of drawers and a top of ample dimensions, a seat and a desk for each child, adapted in each case to the size of the pupil, a comfortable chair for the teacher, at least one extra chair for a visitor, a bookcase of adequate dimensions, and a worktable or reading table with two or three chairs.

At the present time the teacher often finds it a more convenient and effective arrangement to use a light, movable table for her own desk. Instead of a heavy teacher's desk with many drawers the teacher now quite commonly uses adequate cupboard space. A suitable metal case with lock and key may be used to keep everything which was formerly kept in desk drawers. The tendency today is to have all desks of the easily movable type, including the teacher's desk.

At the present time it is quite common to find some make of phonograph in addition to the above. If these pieces of furniture harmonize in color, the effect will be much more pleasing. Many times the pupils' desks are of a displeasing, bright color, instead of the natural wood color, suitably varnished. Quarter-

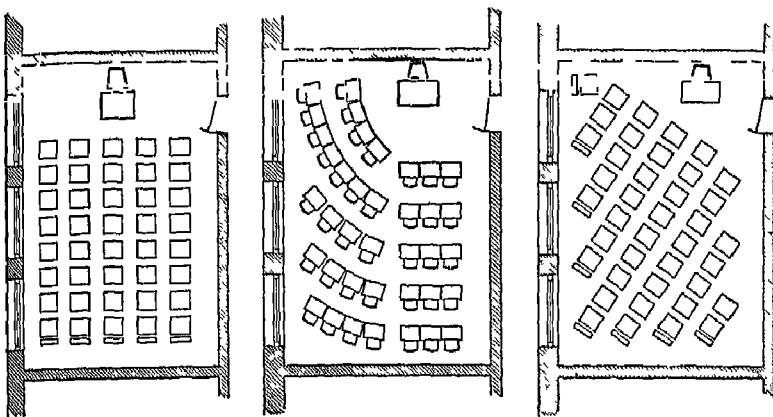
sawed oak in a dull walnut-brown finish or hard maple in a suitable walnut brown with metal parts of a harmonizing tan are clean, neat, and easy on the eyes. The desks and other furniture, if wisely selected, will add much to the general appearance of the room.

The arrangement of the pupils' desks, if symmetrical, will add to the generally attractive appearance of the room. Undoubtedly the best desks are those which are separate from the seats, both desks and seats being adjustable to various heights. However, it is quite common to find that adjustable seats and



*Courtesy of American Seating Company*  
American tubular steel desk No. 1

desks are not adjusted. They are left in the same adjustment month after month and year after year, sometimes with one side of the desk lower than the other, to the physical detriment of the pupil. Adjustable desks should be adjusted; as they often are not adjusted, in the absence of a janitor, about five sizes of the nonadjustable type would probably be better for the average country school. In arranging these in rows,



*Courtesy of American Seating Company*

Plan A

This is the usual arrangement of desks, particularly when desks are screwed to the floor. It is a bad arrangement because of relation of pupil to light.

Plan B

This plan is more highly regarded and is called the quadrant plan. This plan provides a better lighting result. Movable desks quickly shift to any desired arrangement.

Plan C

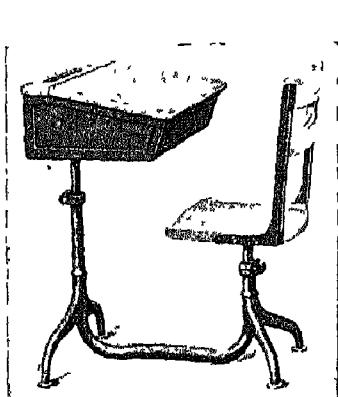
This is the plan now being used in many schools. The pupils sit in a diamond-shaped arrangement facing the front of the room.

#### Seating arrangements in the classroom

only desks of the same size should be placed in a row. Five rows with five seats to the row would accommodate most country schools. The smaller seats should be in the middle of the room. Some authorities advise placing the desks for the smaller pupils in the outer rows near the windows.

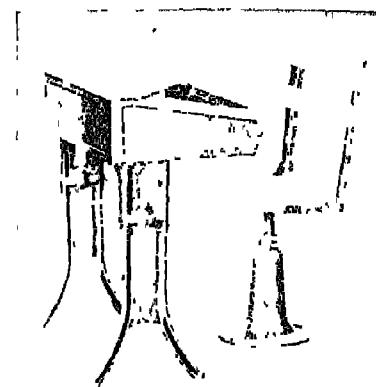
It has always been customary to place the desks in rows parallel to the sides of the room, particularly when seats and desks are in fixed positions. This does not permit of as good pupil adjustment to light as the "quadrant" plan, or the diag-

onal plan, illustrated on the last page. If movable seats and desks are used either type of plan is practicable. Some schools are now adopting this new form of classroom seating. "The purpose of either the diagonal or the quadrant arrangement is to insure lighting over the left shoulder and to avoid the possibility of glare from windows in front or within the range of vision. Neither of these arrangements would therefore be advisable in a room where there are windows on both sides."<sup>1</sup>



*Courtesy of American Seating Company*

American Universal Desk



*Courtesy of American Seating Company*

Steel adjustable desk and  
chair—lifting lid

It will pay teachers and boards who contemplate buying desks to investigate the American Universal Desk which is the most acceptable type of movable, adjustable desk and seat and is now made in three sizes for schools. The Universal has a separate desk and seat, both adjustable. The seat has a swivel device permitting ample movement either way. This classroom seat and desk may be placed in rows, or it may be moved into any position for group study or recitation purposes. The book box is deep and spacious with a pencil trough across the front inside the box. The top may be set level or at an intermediate slope half way between. Since strong steel tubing is used, the

<sup>1</sup>In a letter to the author from H. E. Bennett, Research Advisor of American Seating Company

weight does not hinder ease and freedom of movement. The seat has a saddle shape, without ridge at rear edge, thus allowing a proper and comfortable posture. These desks cost more, but they are guaranteed to give one hundred per cent service. They must be adjusted to each child and they must be kept adjusted.

If the fixed or stationary type of seat and desk is desired the American steel adjustable design with a lifting lid will meet every requirement. There is an inclined swivel seat with a self-adjusting back slat. An adjustable lid tension prevents slamming which is very annoying. The lid is adjustable at level or at an intermediate slope. Wood parts are finished in brown and metal parts in tan enamel.

There is now on the market a new type of desk known as the American Universal Better-sight Desk. The sliding and tilting top permits the pupil to move the lid back and forth as well as to tilt it at any desired angle. This device seems to meet both posture and eye requirements and to avoid all glare. The various slopes of the lid make it possible to read, write, or draw without assuming unnatural and unhealthful postures and without subjecting eyes to unnecessary strain.

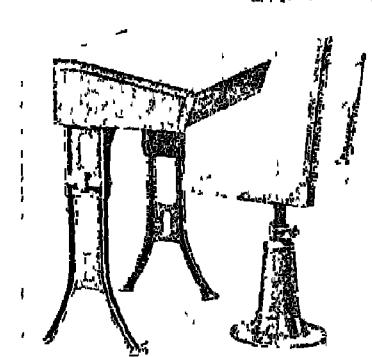
Many teachers do not realize the importance of a good sitting posture. A natural, healthful posture is one in which there are no harmful strains or pressures. It is a comfortable position and favorable to good work. There should be no tilting backward or sidewise. The feet should rest squarely on the floor with no pressure behind the knees. If well-fitting seats and desks are used, a normal, healthful posture may soon be made habitual.



*Courtesy of American Seating Company*

American Universal Better-sight Desk

and therefore automatic and natural. The back should provide support between hips and shoulder blades. If a pupil slides down, slumps, or sags at the waist, with shoulders falling forward, conditions are wrong and unhealthful. Habitual bad postures result in spinal malformation and injury to the vital organs, and such postures very often lead to eye strain.



*Courtesy of American Seating Company*  
Steel adjustable desk and chair—  
open box

to have the ratio one to four. Usually, however, the ratio is one to eight, nine, ten, or more. Many teachers are careless and allow the windows to be covered by curtains, in part at least, when such covering is not needed to shut out the direct rays of the sun. The following suggestions are made as the result of actual observation and experience:

- 1 Watch the constantly changing conditions during the day in the matter of admission and control of light.
- 2 Keep shades rolled to the top of the window unless the sun shines directly into the room.
3. When the sun's rays enter the room directly, draw the curtain to shut out the bright light. Raise the shade as soon as the position of the sun will permit.
- 4 Keep the curtains on the north side of the room rolled to the top of the window all the time, all day long. Don't touch them during the day.
- 5 Adjust the shades on the east side of the room in the morning. Then, as soon as possible, when the glaring rays will permit, raise the curtains to the top and leave them so the rest of the day.

6. Do not think you need to keep the upper half of the windows shaded in order to have them look well. This is an inexcusable practice which should not be tolerated in a rural school.

7. Cover completely the windows which your pupils must face all day.

8. If the roller spring does not have enough tension you can increase its force by pulling the curtain down full length, taking the roller out of the brackets, and then rolling the curtain up and replacing it in the fixtures at each end. Some take the roller out of the brackets, release the dog with a fork or hammer claw, and then twist the spring until tight enough. The first method is usually the more satisfactory.

9. Do not let a curtain remain in a state of disrepair. Either fix it yourself or get someone to do so at once. You may need to take the curtain to town. Often the spring is broken and a new one will be needed.

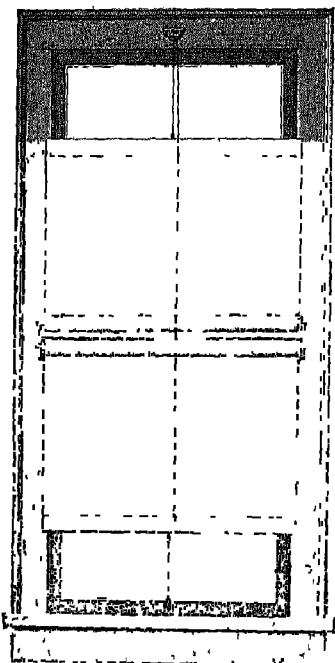
10. Get some good quality of curtain cord, then place a new clean cord of good length on each curtain. To be obliged to stand on a chair to adjust curtains is evidence of bad housekeeping.

11. A teacher may be directly responsible for serious injury to the eyes of pupils through carelessness, ignorance, or neglect in the matter of lighting, no teacher wishes to be accused of criminal negligence.

Much ignorance has been shown in the selection of shades for the rural school building; the young teacher should know what is right, because the shades may be made both useful and ornamental if properly selected and hung. The chief purpose of shades is to shut out glaring sunlight. The rule should be to admit all the light possible without producing a glare or without making it necessary for a teacher or any child to face an unshaded window. The purpose and the practice should not be the same in the school as in the home, as the two problems are quite different.

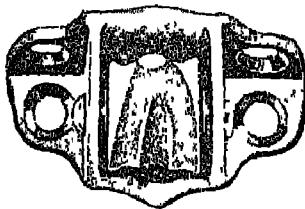
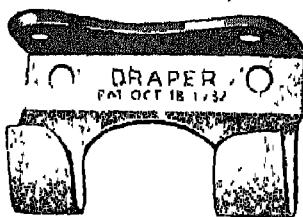
The worst possible shade practice is to be found in the old, wholly undesirable, green shade of opaque material hung from the top of the window and usually drawn to the middle so as to look uniform from the outside. Everything about this arrangement is wrong—the material, the color, the hanging, and the teacher's adjustment. One kind of material is translucent, light, waxed, strong muslin, although today tan-colored, strong, cotton-duck shade cloth is recommended by those who are

informed. This is a pliable fabric of uniform texture which will wear well and look well. The best colors are white, cream, gray, lemon, straw tan, or very light olive-green, all, of course, to harmonize with the walls. There should be two curtains for each window, except perhaps for windows on the north side;



*Courtesy of Luther O Draper Shade Company, Spiceland, Ind.*

**Double roller shade**

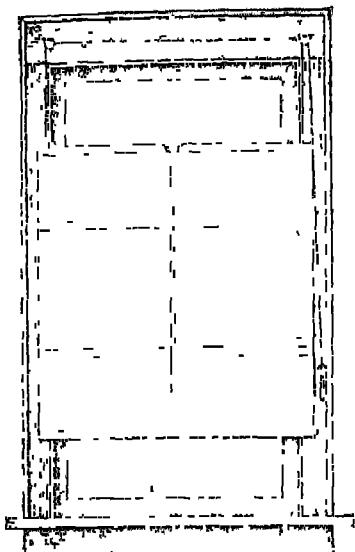


**Draper pulley bracket**

By its use shades are demountable as a complete unit for cleaning purposes

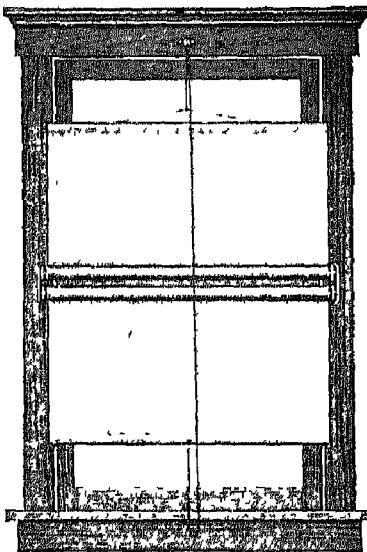
these two curtains should be placed where the two sashes come together, the top one to roll up and the bottom one to roll down. Then the curtains should be adjusted during the day so that all the light possible will be admitted from hour to hour. It is well to have a trustworthy curtain committee in the rural school. On cloudy, dark days every square inch of window surface should admit light. Besides the two-curtain plan another successful one is to have the curtain roller move up and down by

means of a cord and pulley arrangement. The rural teacher may write to the Luther O Draper Shade Company or the Oliver C Steele Manufacturing Company, both of Spiceland, Indiana, or to some other reliable school supply company which will send interesting and instructive illustrated literature.



*Courtesy of O C Steele Mfg Co,  
Spiceland, Ind*

Double cord Steeleco shade



*Courtesy of O C Steele Mfg Co,  
Spiceland, Ind*

Single cord Steeleco shade

The curtains or shades in a rural schoolhouse should be of such material and so hung as to stand hard usage. There will probably be much handling by teacher and pupils each day in manipulating the shades to control the admission of light. At the present time an increasing number of superintendents and other school officials are showing a decided preference for the tent- or awning-cotton duck, which wears well and admits a soft, diffused light when drawn. This material may be purchased in white, gray, or light-tan colors. Instead of rollers many now make use of a double cord and pulley mechanism, which is easy to operate and does not readily get out of order. The

'shade folds instead of rolling on spring rollers. As one or more of the spring rollers in almost every rural school are often out of order, folding shades should be investigated by teachers and boards.

**Solving the blackboard problem.** Blackboards are a necessity from the standpoint of instruction; they can be made to serve a useful decorative purpose as well. Various materials are used for blackboard surface, probably slate is the most durable and generally satisfactory. Some teachers prefer hyloplate, because it has a softer writing surface than slate and because a desirable soft, dull shade of green liquid slating can be used whenever repair is needed, which will be every year or two. The reslating is not difficult; with a wide, special slating brush the teacher can do the work in a short time. Try out the slating on a small piece of board first, and tone down the green, should a green tint be used, if it is too pronounced. The hyloplate can be purchased in varying widths and of any required length. *It must be placed on a smooth, flat, level surface and a little allowance should be made for expansion. It must be fastened down very firmly so that there is no possibility of warping.* If care is taken in placing it, such a board will last for many years.

It should be stated here, in all fairness, that some authorities never recommend hyloplate. The use of green slating is also anathema to many school people, largely no doubt because a too pronounced green is used. It should be so dark a green as to verge into black. Many superintendents will have nothing but natural slate, which is of course the most durable, and possibly, on the whole, the most satisfactory. One difficulty with the use of liquid slating is that, for some time after a fresh coat has been applied, the marks do not erase readily and considerable washing is found necessary. Rubbing crayons into the fresh surface is a helpful procedure, it should be done. Slating is much preferred to the rough, chipped, scaly boards so often found in rural schools.

If it is necessary to use common boards or plaster for a blackboard, it will be advisable to cover the surface first with heavy manila paper, which must be glued down firmly so that no air

bubbles or blisters are left. Then if two or three coats of a good quality of liquid slating, which may be purchased of any school-supply house, are placed upon this manila paper surface, a usable board will be the result. The blackboard surface should always be dull, never shiny or glary.

It will pay rural school boards, county superintendents, and rural teachers to investigate the Sterling slate blackboard. This is a composition board, not natural slate. It is guaranteed not to warp, and to last as long as the building lasts. It is produced by the same people (the Weber-Costello Company, Chicago Heights, Ill.) who have put out hyloplate for fifty years. You can get Sterling slate in  $3\frac{1}{2}$  foot or 4 foot widths and in any length desired up to 8 feet. Write some reliable general supply house and ask about this excellent blackboard material, or write direct to the Weber-Costello Company.

A metal board is now on the market. It is hard, unbreakable and impervious to moisture. It has a black, velvety surface, easy to erase. It may be cleaned in any way desired. This board will wear for an indefinite number of years. It never needs resurfacing. It is easy to install. It costs more than natural slate or Sterling.

For the rural school the board should be about 42 inches wide and extend to within 26 inches of the floor. This will be low enough for the small pupils and not too low for teacher and older pupils. The rural teacher may ornament the upper border of the board with white or colored stencil figures, which should be changed occasionally and seasonally. It is better, however, in a rural school, not to use the blackboard for decorative purposes. If blackboards are placed between windows, pupils should not be asked to look at work on such boards any more than is necessary, as it is injurious to the eyes to do so. It will pay rural teachers to make use of noiseless, dustless, all-felt erasers and a good quality of dustless crayon. Keep dust out of the air as much as possible.

**The rural teacher as a housekeeper.** Every rural teacher should be a good housekeeper, not only because she desires the

room to present a neat and orderly appearance, but also because of the sanitary values of cleanliness and orderliness. As one enters a rural schoolroom, housekeeping conditions are at once evident, whether good or bad. If the teacher has formed good habits in the way she cares for the building, evidence of this will be manifest on every hand. Her desk will be in good order, all surfaces will be free from dust, the curtains will be in good condition; the stove and stovepipe will not be unsightly; the water container and the cups, if there are any, will be clean. As the visitor goes about the room, it will be apparent that the teacher has devoted thoughtful attention and care to the various schoolroom appointments. The dirt has not been *covered* up; it has been *cleaned* up. It is evident that the teacher knows the value of soap and hot water. If an investigation is made of cupboards, bookcases, drawers, and shelves, it will be discovered that school materials are kept sorted and piled or laid out in some orderly fashion. There is the debris and the confusion of the day's work, which is inevitable, but at the end of the day all is put to rights. The children should be taught how to keep their own belongings in order and they should assist the teacher in keeping the entire room in as good condition as possible. Many rural schoolrooms are so lacking in conveniences that extra care will be needed in order to have a school home that is even fairly decent and respectable.

**Cleanliness next to godliness.** The schoolhouse should be kept clean for both sanitary and aesthetic reasons. It must be thoroughly scrubbed before school opens in the fall, and it will need a complete general cleaning of floor, walls, and furniture several times during the year, preferably once a month, if possible. The teacher must secure the co-operation of the board and of as many mothers as possible, if she expects to get the best results. She may on occasion lend a hand herself, thus showing her interest and setting a good example for others.

The teacher should have correct ideals of cleanliness and should make sure of a thorough job. Everything should be cleaned, and all old, dilapidated articles destroyed. In many

country schools there is an accumulation of debris which is of no use to anybody and which serves only to gather disease-breeding dust. Clean out the library case, that catchall for all sorts of rubbish, and don't forget closets, cupboards, and other out-of-the-way places.

Effective cleaning cannot be done without plenty of soft, hot water, soap, and cleaning compound or powder. The water pail, tank, or whatever the container of drinking water may be, and all cups as well, require scrubbing and scalding very often, at least once a week. Scalding means the use of boiling, not warm, water, and plenty of it, to kill germs.

The modern way of sweeping is to make use of a push brush and plenty of sweeping mixture or compound which can be purchased in small drums from any school-supply house. The teacher will also need one good, ordinary broom beside the floor brush. Sweeping should always be done at night and the dusting as early in the morning as possible. Use every precaution to keep dust out of the air, because schoolroom dust may be and often is laden with disease germs. When the teacher sweeps at night, she should open the windows and door so that as much of the dust as possible will blow out. If the floor is of hard wood and if it has been properly oiled during the year, the dust problem will not be so great.

It is well to have a dusting committee, and the dusting should be done thoroughly and regularly every morning. If several pupils are equipped with well-oiled dustcloths of good size they can soon go over all the surfaces within reach—ledges, window casings, desks, shelves, teacher's desk, maps, stove, and all such exposed surfaces. A feather duster should never be used, as it only flicks the dust from one surface to another. Buy or make several dustcloths a yard square and wash them frequently. They should be of soft cheesecloth, oiled or chemically treated. The object of dusting is to remove the dust from the room. Dustcloths should not be used to clean blackboards.

**Appreciation of beauty.** The lives of all of us would be different, we should be happier and better friends and neighbors, if

we were more capable of understanding, appreciating, and admiring the beautiful in nature and in humanity. The person who loves flowers, music, beautiful pictures, or beauty in any form finds life more worth the living. Beyond question the time to begin to cultivate a love for the beautiful is in early life. It is during the impressionable years of the child's life that a real beginning should be made by his teacher and parent to develop in him habits of appreciation. If the school can be made a beautiful place inside and out, the silent, daily influences of such surroundings will produce an unconscious though abiding influence for good in the child's life. If the schoolhouse is clean and the woodwork, walls, and ceiling are harmoniously tinted, if three or four classic pictures like the Gleaners, Avenue of Trees, or Moorland and Mist hang on the wall, they will teach an aesthetic and moral lesson day by day that will have permanent influence upon the child's life.

The good, the true, and the beautiful are closely related. Beauty is uplifting. It is easier to be good among beautiful surroundings. Dirt, filth, disorder, cheap decorations, gloomy rooms, all pull life down and make honor and honesty more difficult. Parents and teachers have no right to surround young, growing children with degrading influences. Every effort should be made to assist the easily influenced child in order that he may develop normally in his aesthetic and moral nature. If the school is made an attractive place there will be less trouble in the matter of regularity of attendance. Children will be anxious to attend a school where the physical environment pleases them and helps them to make the most of themselves. Who can overestimate the good effect of a new, up-to-date building, artistically painted and decorated and set upon a large plot of ground, where several varieties of trees and shrubs are placed in harmonious groupings and where in season are found beautiful flowers—this and a clean, well-kept building at all times? Will not such conditions and surroundings be a distinct educational influence for all, young and old alike, in the district?

**Plants and flowers.** If the teacher loves growing plants and flowers, she will be able to make use of them to beautify her room and to train her pupils to appreciate the beauties of nature. Unless the building is kept warm at night and over the weekend, the problem of keeping plants will be practically unsolvable. However, if the plants can be kept from freezing, a primrose or two and a begonia will add much to the brightness and cheerfulness of the room. Decorative pines which do not freeze can also be secured in small sizes in pots. One or two of these will add a most acceptable touch of green freshness during the dark days of winter. If plants are kept in school they should be well cared for; a committee to look after them is the best plan. In the fall and spring children love to bring flowers, both wild and tame, for the teacher and for the school. Suitable vases should be provided, and not too many flowers should be brought at any one time. A rural schoolroom can be made a most beautiful place in the fall with goldenrod or wild roses, later with tinted sumach leaves and decorative branches of various kinds. In the spring there is a profusion of blossoms which can be utilized. Children delight in doing something for the school and for the teacher; here is a chance to teach many useful lessons.

**Selection of pictures.** The purpose of pictures in the schoolroom is twofold: first, to decorate the bare and silent walls; and second, to direct the child's taste and sympathy toward the beautiful. A third but much less significant purpose is to familiarize the pupil with recognized works of art and methods of expression in art. Every schoolroom should have at least one picture of artistic merit. If means permit, it is well to have more; but it is a mistake to have too many.

Here are some suggestions which will be of service to young teachers when they find it necessary to choose a good picture for the decoration of their schoolrooms:

1 Do not buy cheap pictures, whether cheap in subject, material, frame, or in any other way. It pays to get the best, or at least a very good, quality. One good picture is worth any number of poor ones.

2 In making a selection, try to find a subject which is adapted to the tastes and appreciations of boys and girls. In most country schools the majority of the pupils are in the lower grades, and their interests should be considered.

3 The size of the completed and framed picture should be adapted to the size of the walls and to the height of the ceiling. A large picture in a small room does not look well, and vice versa.

4 There are various subjects which are classical in character and of established value, such as Sir Galahad, The Lark, The Knitting Shepherdess, Moorland and Mist, Sheep in Winter, The Horse Fair. The teacher should consider such standard pictures in making her selection.

5 It is often wise to choose a picture in color, especially for the smaller children. The colors should not be loud, but in harmony and good taste. Children delight in color, but it is part of a teacher's duty to see that children develop sensitiveness in color, just as in music.

6 For a country school it is usually wise to select a picture which shows some life and action. The Horse Fair appeals to children, for example, because it shows strength and beauty in horses, and is full of life and energy.

7 When choosing a picture the teacher should consider the artist and the theme he presents. Then the children should be given definite instruction concerning the life and work of the artist. The picture should also be described, and made clear in its meaning, suggestion, or implication.

8 Before making a selection the teacher would do well to send to various companies for their catalogues, with prices of both framed and unframed pictures. It is now easily possible to procure miniature reproductions of all standard pictures; these will serve as a useful guide in choosing the most appropriate subjects.

9. Select pictures of simple outline and of little detail. Complexity in design and in execution should be avoided. If there is too much detail, the child will be confused, and his attention

to the entire subject or theme will be distracted and withdrawn. We want the child to get a clear, comprehensive conception of the whole artistic unit, this will be impossible if details hold the attention.

10 It is well to choose bright, cheerful pictures which will suggest pleasant thoughts and encourage the children to think, feel, and will on a higher plane of life.

**Framing and hanging pictures.** A young country teacher was enjoying her first year of rural school experience. During her two years of training she had not only learned to appreciate good pictures, but she had also been instructed concerning the selection and purchasing of pictures for a rural school. In her school there were no good pictures whatever. She and her pupils had earned about thirty dollars by means of a school entertainment and a box social. They decided to purchase two good standard pictures, finally a selection of the Horse Fair by Bonheur and Spring by Corot was made. The pictures, framed, were about 40" by 33". They were tinted autographs, which are copies of reproductions of originals made by applying specially prepared colors over rich brown photogelatin prints, the result being a very pleasing suggestion of the mellow old masterpieces. The richness of tone combined with the delicate suggestion of color produces a picture that is very well adapted for the decoration of a country schoolroom. The frames were a dark golden oak about 2½ inches in width. The pictures cost about \$12.00 each, including transportation. When these pictures were properly hung on the walls they were a source of much pleasure and satisfaction to the entire school.

The best frames for a schoolroom are of plain, natural wood rather than gilt, which is usually not in good taste for schools. The frame should harmonize with the picture, dull green, black, or brown is often quite suitable. If a mat is used, the frame can be considerably narrower than without a mat. The picture should be framed so that the attention of the observer will be called to the picture rather than to the frame. In a country schoolhouse the pictures should be hung low so that the children

can see them readily, but there should be some space between the picture and the upper edge of the blackboard in order that the wall surface may suitably set off the picture. The picture should hang flat so as to be a part of the room, and it should always be so placed as to receive adequate light. Picture molding is desirable but not necessary as both nails and wire can be hidden back of the picture. This is now a common practice. Where several pictures are used they should not be arranged too uniformly as regards height or distance from one another; in every case the picture should be adapted to the available space.

**Bulletin and poster boards** The bulletin board is a real necessity in a country school for posting samples of pupils' work, such as writing, construction work, maps, diagrams, and drawings, also programs, notices, and the like. If the bulletin board is of the right material and construction and if the work placed upon it is tastefully arranged, the entire effect will be pleasing and will add to the appearance of the room.

Cork bulletin boards can now be purchased in different sizes and at varying prices according to size. These boards are made of special cork carpet, which is both light and durable. They are often neatly framed in southern pine, and the framed sizes range from about 18 by 24 inches to 36 by 48 inches. Besides these boards the rural teacher can purchase cork board in varying lengths, in 12-inch and 18-inch widths, to place above the blackboard for posting drawings, exhibits, specimens, and pictures. Enough for an ordinary rural schoolhouse would cost only a small sum. Supply houses now offer framed brown or green burlap bulletin boards for sale in different sizes. They can be hung on the wall. Specimens are attached by the use of small card holders. Tack boards and beaver boards are now readily obtained, also. It is not difficult or expensive to have several boards in various parts of the room.

Many teachers like a bulletin board made of soft pine boards, one inch thick and about eight inches wide. The boards should be well planed and entirely free from knots. Five such boards.

about five feet long, well matched, will make a permanent, good-sized, and satisfactory board. These boards may be covered with light buff or green burlap which is fastened down at the edges with upholstering tacks. Braided to match the burlap and tacks or nails with heads of a harmonizing color should be used around the edges. Half-inch thumbtacks with large heads should be used to fasten notices on the board. A box of 100 such tacks can be bought for ten or fifteen cents. The bulletin board should be placed on a smooth, flat, solid surface.

**A checking list.** The following list is made very complete so as to serve as useful a purpose as possible when board and teacher are considering the needs of the school.

accession book	carbon paper	desk pads
activity materials	cardboard boxes	desks, pupils'
adhesive tape	card catalogue	desks, teacher's
adjustable seats	care of yard	dictionaries
agriculture supplies	chair glides	ditto hectograph
air moisteners	chairs, visitors	ditto supplies
art materials	chalk trays	doll house
balls and bats	charts	door mats
bandages	Christmas material	drain sink
basement	cleaning materials	drawing paper
bell	cloakroom	drill materials
bird pictures	clock dial	drinking cups
birds to color	cloth mending tape	duplicating supplies
blackboards	clothes hooks	dustcloths
blackboard slating	coal and wood	dustpan
blackboard stencils	colored crayon	educational exhibits
blotters	color materials	encyclopedia
blue pencils	colored pencils	entertainment sup-
bookcase	concrete walks	plies
book covers	construction paper	envelopes
book mending supplies	cooking utensils	farm magazine
	cork board	filing cabinets
book shelves	crayolas	fire extinguisher
brooms	crayon and erasers	first aid kit
bubbler	cupboards	flag
building blocks	current-events paper	flagpole
bulletin board	desk copies	flash cards
calendars	desk file	floors

floor brush	mop ringer	pitch pipes
floor mop	mounting board	plan book
flowers to color	napkins, paper	plants and flowers
folding chairs	nature pictures	plasticine clay
front hall	newspapers	playground equipment
fuel supply	number builders	
gloves and maps	number cards	pointers
good fence	number drills	portfolios
good well	number seatwork	poster paper
guards, window	oil colors	preprimer materials
Halloween materials	oil stove	primary supplies
harmonicas	organ	primers and first readers
hot-lunch equipment	outbuildings	printing outfit
health chart	outbuildings, screens	program posted
health-crusade record	outline maps	pupils' maps
health posters	painting supplies	radio
health-record cards	paper clips	readers, basic
hectographs	paper cutter	readers, supplementary
hygrometer	paper money	reading table
ink erasers	paper stapler	record book
kindergarten supplies	paper towels	reference books
kindergarten table	parquetry blocks	register, attendance
kindergarten charts	passee partout	report cards
kindling	paste brushes	reports, envelopes
lamps	paste cups	rubber bands
library	paste and mucilage	rubber chair tips
library cards	paste and glue	rulers
library supplies	pastello colors	safety-first posters
library table	patriotic programs	sand table
lighting facilities	pencils and pens	school grounds, care
locks and keys	pencil sharpeners	school grounds, size
magazines	penholders	schoolroom
Manila envelopes	phonic drill cards	school site
Manila paper	phonic word builders	scissors
Manila tagboard	phonic word strips	scrapbooks
manual training	phonograph	screens, doors
equipment	phonograph records	screens, toilets
marking crayons	physiology charts	screens, windows
materials, programs	piano	seatwork material
mending tissue	pictures, wall	sentence strips
microscope (simple)	pictures, instructional	set of maps
mirror	picture study	
molding clay		

shades, window	teacher's chair	water colors
slated cloth	tempera color sets	water coolers
slating brush	Thanksgiving ma-	water tank
snow shovel	terials	wax crayons
soap	thermometer	weaving materials
songbooks	thumbtacks	weeds and grass
spelling blanks	toilets	weights and measures
spelling tablets	toilet paper	white ink
state course	towels	window locks
steel cabinet	toy money	windows
stencils	toy store	window shades
stove	transparent tape	window ventilators
stove grate	tree pictures	wood and coal
stovepipes	trees and shrubbery	woodshed
supplementary readers	tuning fork	woodwork
supply case	ventilating system	word cards
supply, fuel	vocabulary seatwork	workbench
sweeping compound	wall clock	workbooks
table dishes	wall maps	writing materials
tables	walls and ceiling	yard, condition
	wastebasket	yardstick

**Suggestions for improvement.** In this entire program of making the school more beautiful, inside and out, there are several definite things which any teacher can do with profit to herself and to her pupils

1 The first thing to do is to study the situation and to make an inventory of property and of conditions. A thorough examination of the building inside and out, as previously suggested, will disclose existing needs as points of departure for changes.

2 Clean up everything in building and yard and keep it clean. The teacher will probably need to act as the director of activities; she will usually be able to secure the co-operation of some mothers and of the older pupils.

3 Try to interest the mothers early. This can be done through a mothers' meeting. No objective for a mothers' club could be more worth while than that of bringing about a more attractive school environment.

4 You can reslate your old blackboards so they will look fresh and be much more serviceable Any rural teacher can do this. Consult some catalogue for quantity and kind of material to use A coat put on Friday afternoon should be dry by Monday You should put on two coats, which can be done in successive weeks It is best to use a regular slating brush If you use a green shade, tone it down so that it is a neutral, mild, very inconspicuous green Rub crayon into the freshly slated surface

5 You can have a box social or some similar function with a program during the fall and secure money to buy at least one good picture

6 You can have several committees assist you in keeping the room attractive. You may appoint the following for this purpose dusting committee, bookcase committee, curtain committee, blackboard committee, yard committee, stove committee, and cloakroom committee These committees need not serve long, and no child should be compelled to do such work.

7 If the desks are not arranged as they should be, you can change them In order to do this, you should enlist the co-operation of the board and some of the older boys Desks that are not needed should not be permitted to take up desirable floor space. They can be stored in some safe place for future use when needed

8 You can look up prices of various pieces of equipment which would add to the appearance and the educational service of the room and the school Show illustrations to members of the board and convince them of the value of what you ask for. When the board fully understand the need, they will be much more likely to furnish the money.

9 You can have an adequate bulletin board You can purchase the cork, or a sheet of composition board, or the pine boards, and put up the board yourself with the assistance of an older boy or two

10 Through general exercises and in other ways, you can interest all your children in beautifying the school. You can

instruct them concerning pictures, harmony of colors, the beauty of trees and flowers; gradually through the year you can develop power of appreciation and mold a public sentiment in school and community which will finally demand that the old schoolhouse be remodeled and redecorated, if need be, during the next vacation.

#### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

- 1 Make a complete list and bill (prices and totals) of all the tools, supplies, and equipment needed to keep a rural schoolhouse clean and neat.
- 2 How much will it cost to oil the floor of a country schoolhouse four times during the year, if the room is 24 feet by 30 feet? What special kind of oil should be used?
- 3 Find the total cost of two good foot scrapers and one cocoa mat about two by three feet. Which do you prefer, a cocoa mat or a steel mat? Why?
- 4 If most of the light comes from the east side in a given schoolhouse, in which direction will the children face? Will the teacher need to face any windows? How will you have the curtains in the forenoon? In the afternoon?
- 5 Obtain several reliable color cards, giving various shades and tints of the primary colors. Then arrange two correct color schemes for rural buildings. One of the buildings is poorly lighted and the other gets an abundance of sunlight.
- 6 Show that a beautiful school environment constitutes an essential part of the child's education. Name all the forms, kinds, or sources of beauty you can think of which can be utilized in a rural school.

#### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

- 1 DRESSLAR, F B—*American School Buildings* Washington, Superintendent of Documents. 1925 100 p plates.
- 2 ELLS, H L, MOELLER, H. C, AND SWAIN, C C—*Rural School Management*, Charles Scribner's Sons 1924
- 3 MICHIGAN STATE DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION—*Rural Schoolhouses*, Bulletin No. 54. (Write to State Superintendent, Lansing, for price)
- 4 ROGERS, J F, M. D—*Sanitation of Schools*, Superintendent of Documents. 1930 5¢.

## 116 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

5. *Rural Schoolhouses, School Grounds, and Their Equipment*, 74 pages Illus (Educational Bulletin 21, 1930) 20¢ Superintendent of Documents Washington, D. C. (This is a valuable bulletin on the subject of this chapter)
6. SCHMIDT, H W —“Sanitary Conveniences in Schools”; *American School Board Journal*, 80 53-56, January, 1930
7. SHOWALTER, N D —*A Handbook for Rural School Officers*, Houghton Mifflin Company. 1920.
8. WILKINSON, W. A —*Rural School Management*, Silver, Burdett and Company 1917

Send to United States Department of the Interior, Office of Education, for bibliography of schoolhouses and school equipment

Circular No. 263, entitled the Rural One-Teacher Schools of Illinois, (1932) contains much material on building, equipment, and the daily program Write to Superintendent of Public Instruction, Springfield, Illinois, for price.

## CHAPTER VII

### HEATING AND VENTILATING THE ONE-ROOM BUILDING

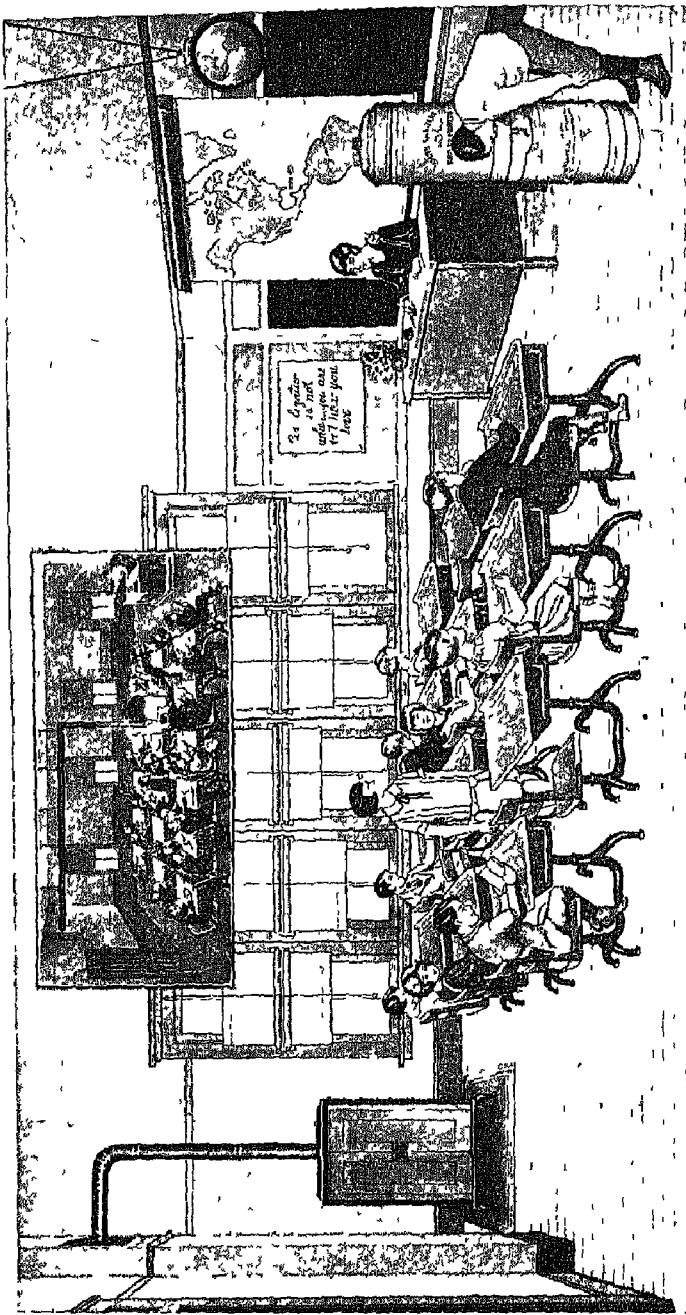
**Need for schoolroom ventilation.** The continuous physiologic need for air needs no proof. If all air is cut off, death soon results. Oxygen is a vital need. It is not merely a matter of the lungs but of every organ and cell of the entire body. When the hemoglobin in the blood stream no longer carries enough oxygen the whole organism suffers. The processes of metabolism, cell changes, and waste elimination are all dependent upon a supply of oxygen. The teacher may think that her pupils are suffering from mental fatigue when she sees certain signs during the latter part of each half-day session. The children become restless, fretful, dull, irritable, or peevish. Their faces are flushed and they show plainly that they are uncomfortable. The understanding teacher, however, knows very well that the symptoms are due almost wholly to bad ventilation. If the heater is an unjacketed common stove, the fresh air in the room is used up very soon after school is in session. From then on teacher and children are living in and breathing air that is stale, dead, malodorous, and laden with a variety of germs, some of them entirely capable of producing disease in persons whose resistance is below normal. An unventilated schoolroom offers the most favorable conditions for the spread of bad-air diseases, especially respiratory infections.

**Conclusions of the New York Commission.** The most voluminous account of investigations relating to the subject of ventilation may be studied in the findings of the New York State Commission on Ventilation. This commission some years ago published an important report on the subject of ventilation in school buildings.

For some years the Sub-committee on Ventilation of the

Courtesy of Smith System Heating Company

Old (inset) and new (below) in heating and ventilation



Joint Committee on Health Problems of the National Education Association and the American Medical Association made a study of heating and air conditions in schoolrooms, in the hope of finding a method which could be recommended to educational systems. Although specific instances of successful ventilation through simple direct ways of admitting air were convincing to the members of the committee, they wished to gather together sufficient evidence to warrant a recommendation of the general application of the method.

"The essential problems of ventilation relate not so much to the regulation of the chemical composition of the air as to control of air in relation to its physical properties." At the present time the principles considered of most significance relative to schoolroom air and its circulation are as follows.

1. The evident evil effects of vitiated air do not seem to be solely dependent upon the absence of oxygen or the presence of carbon dioxide, as is commonly believed and often stated in textbooks.

2. Overheating, too much moisture or humidity, and dead air, that is, air not in motion, are found to be the most conspicuous causes of the bad physiologic effects upon human beings.

3. Overheating is especially prominent in causing disturbances of circulation and producing infections of the respiratory system. Even a slight excess of temperature tends to produce conditions favorable to disease.

4. Ventilation through windows, when combined with some system of simple gravity exhaust, produces good results. In fact, this modified window system is found to be the best of all from the standpoint of health because of the vitalizing quality of fresh outside air.

5. It has not been found that stale air produces harmful results providing it is kept in circulation. Such air, however, contains too much moisture, which is a problem as well as too little moisture. There is a happy medium between dead, stagnant air and too much motion involving drafts.

6. The commission found that a cooler room, with less air movement than is produced by fan ventilation, is more comfortable and more healthful. Fan ventilation involves too high a temperature. Overheating characteristic of fan ventilation is detrimental to health; this is an exceedingly common condition in public buildings of all kinds.

7 Schoolroom air should be kept as clean as possible. Gases and malodors are disagreeable and also often harmful.

8. A temperature of 65° with slight movement of air is better than a temperature of 70° with considerable movement of air.

9 In using window ventilation associated with gravity-exhaust ducts, it is suggested that a large thermometer with a danger signal pointed at 68° should occupy a prominent place for the teacher's constant use.

10 When the temperature out of doors is below 68°, the schoolroom temperature should not average above 68°. A schoolroom temperature that changes from 65° to 70° is better than a constant condition.

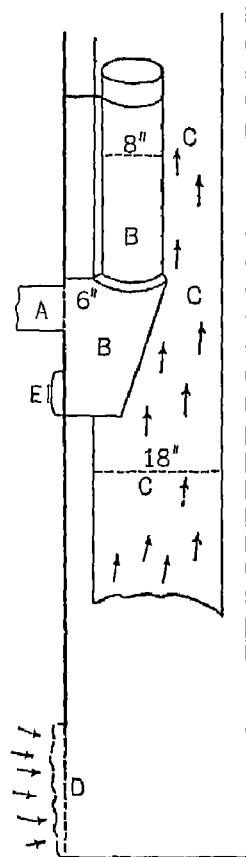
**The teacher's good judgment.** A rural teacher will not be able to operate the heating and ventilating system successfully unless she is intelligent, alert, and uses good judgment. It will be necessary for her to understand the basic principles which underlie the working of the jacketed stove, for every patented plant, whether a room-heater or a furnace in the basement below, operates according to the well-recognized principles of physics. In order that the air in the rural schoolroom may be about right hour by hour it will be needful for the teacher to exercise her stove sense, her temperature sense, and her air sense. By the term sense as used here the author means both knowledge and the habit of sensitiveness or alertness relative to stove, temperature, and air conditions. It is not intended that the teacher consult her personal feelings, rather that she have the habit of consulting the thermometer, noting the condition of the fire, whether the fresh and foul air dampers are open, and in other ways knowing and controlling the situation. It often happens that girls who are graduates of high schools and of rural-teacher training institutions do not possess that practical knowledge and experience which enable them to look after the heating and ventilating of their rooms as it should be done.

A teacher who has stove sense understands the construction of a stove, the function of checks and dampers, the need for getting air up through the grate and the fire bed; she knows how to start a fire quickly and effectively. Her temperature sense is such, if she is alert and watchful, that she will quickly

note whether the temperature runs much above or below 68°. Moreover, she does not trust to her feelings, but habitually and often consults the thermometer. She does this naturally, with no fuss or trouble. If she lacks the temperature sense or is careless in such matters, the room will either be too hot or too cold most of the time and the pupils will suffer. Her air sense makes her conscious of foul air, she knows that in a room full of children the air very soon gets bad. She should occasionally step to the door and take a few whiffs of fresh air. She will then sense the close, stuffy, foul smell when she returns to the room.

The teacher with temperature sense will be vigilant as to conditions no matter whether she is thin or fleshy, because she is intelligent and has formed the habit. Of course a thin person unquestionably feels cold more quickly than a fleshy one does, a plump person feels warm more quickly than a thin one does. But neither will rely on feeling alone, if she has the habit of due care for the welfare of all. Many rural teachers dress much lighter than the pupils, this is an important element in the temperature situation. Many children wear too much clothing, some teachers don't wear enough. In any case, the temperature should be kept about 68°, it is not difficult for all to become habituated to that temperature.

**Self-explanatory diagrams.** The purpose of the diagrams is to show the essential parts of the system and to make plain just why and how the air circulates. It should be understood that



Combined smoke-stack and vent flue

- A Stovepipe.
- B Cast-iron smoke-stack
- C Vent flue
- D Wing register
- E Soot vent

present practice places the vent flue not far from the fresh-air intake in a corner of the room, in order to secure the most

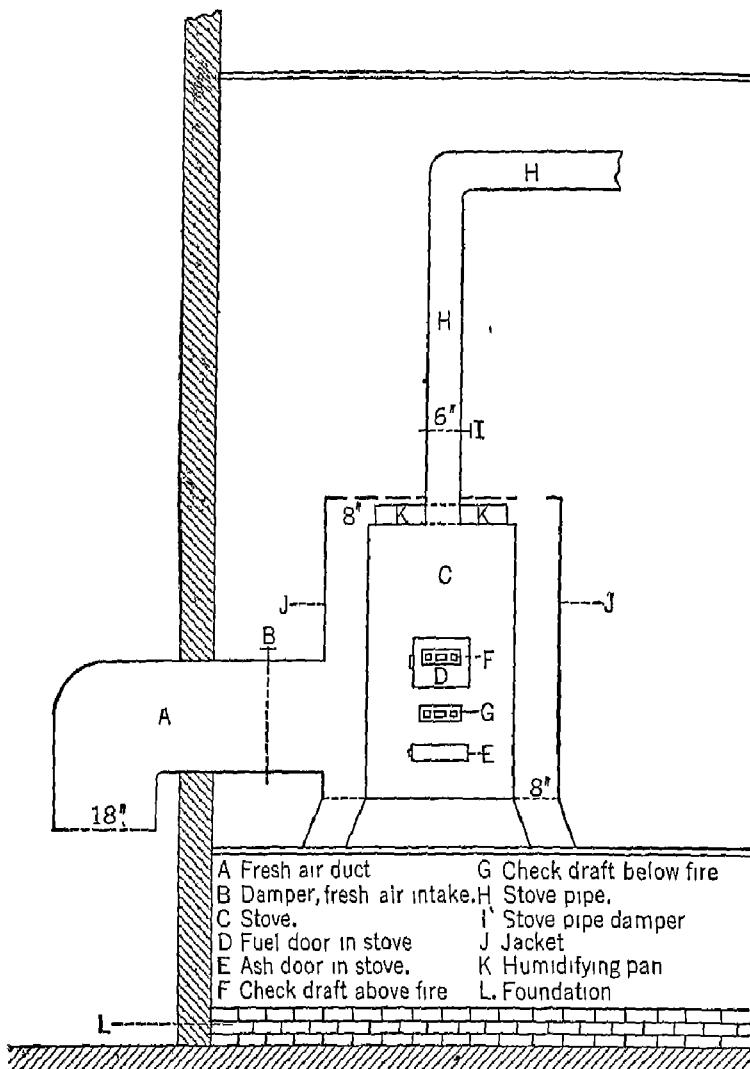


Diagram showing construction of the jacketed stove and fresh-air duct

satisfactory circulation of air in the room. Note that there are two separate diagrams, one of the stove and the jacket and the

other of the combined smokestack and vent flue. See that the parts of the system are properly assembled in one corner of the room, which is the northwest corner in several states, with the stovepipe, fresh-air intake, and vent flue properly adjusted, and that conditions are established for the system to operate successfully. In many rural schools the smoke flue and the foul-air or vent flue are combined. This will work satisfactorily providing the brick chimney is large enough and the smokestack closed tightly at the bottom, so as not to connect with the foul-air duct. When the two open freely into each other the stove will not draw well on certain days, and of course there will be trouble with the soot. In some rural schools a large galvanized iron pipe used as the vent flue extends down to within a foot of the floor and up through ceiling and roof. The warm air of the room heats this foul-air duct, producing a fair circulation of air. If this foul-air vent is heated directly by hot air or hot smoke from the stove, it will work much better, if it is connected directly with the smoke flue, it will act as a damper, preventing a good draft. The diagrams have been drawn to scale so that the relative sizes and proportions of the various parts may be noted. Note the figures giving dimensions. The parts are lettered and named, the description of them is given in the following section. Send to the Waterman-Waterbury Company, and to the Smith System Heating Company, both of Minneapolis, for their illustrated descriptive literature, which will shed much light on this entire subject of heating and ventilation.

**Jacketed stove and associated flues.** The first item is the stove itself, which is usually cylindrical in shape. This stove is now made to burn either wood or coal. It should be equipped with the means for evaporating plenty of water each day. This means that the water must be kept steaming if the air is to be supplied with enough moisture. This is particularly true on cold winter days when the temperature outside is much lower than in the schoolroom. The greater the difference in temperature, the greater the need for evaporating water in the room.

The stove is provided with a full set of checks and dampers so that the fire can be fully controlled.

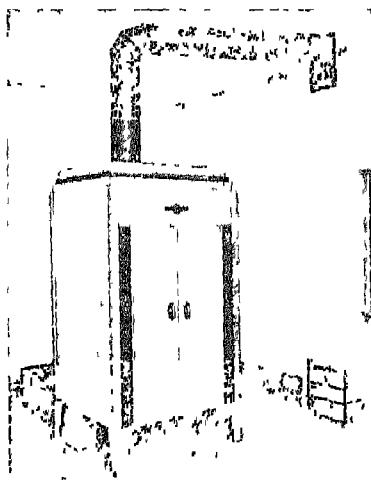
Eight inches from the stove a galvanized iron jacket extends above it several inches and down to within about eight inches of the floor. This jacket is usually lined with asbestos, kept in place by an inner lining of strong tin, thus preventing the jacket from getting too hot.

The fresh-air intake should be not less than eighteen inches in diameter; larger if over thirty pupils are in the school. This, too, is made of galvanized iron, and opens into the space between the jacket and the stove. It is firmly fastened to the jacket so that the joints are airtight. This fresh-air intake is now usually passed through the side of the building, but sometimes it comes up under the floor and opens into the jacket from below. In the latter case the intake should open some distance above the lower part of the jacket to prevent cold air from blowing over the floor. This fresh-air intake is provided with a tight-fitting damper so that the amount of fresh air admitted can be fully controlled, especially on windy days. As you pass by the rural schoolhouse nowadays, you can see this fresh-air intake with the outside opening projecting downward. It is well to have this opening safely covered with a fine wire netting to keep out animals, birds, leaves, or dirt.

When the jacketed stove is installed, whether a homemade one or preferably one of the several patented designs now on the market, it is of the utmost importance to see that adequate provision is made for carrying off the smoke and foul air. This will require a chimney with a large inside passage, probably about 18 inches square—324 square inches. It will be best for this chimney to extend to the floor so that the foul-air outlet can be set flush with the floor in the side of the chimney. If the chimney does not extend to the floor, but only a few inches or feet below the ceiling, a galvanized iron pipe about 18 inches in diameter, constituting the vent flue, must tap into the chimney and extend to within about a foot of the floor. The best place for the foul-air duct is within a few feet of the jacket.

so that the air will circulate as much as possible through the room before passing out of it. Most authorities suggest that, in case a brick chimney is used, a cast-iron or tile stack be placed inside of the chimney to carry off the smoke. Cast-iron is better than tile, as the latter is liable to crack and cause trouble. This reaches somewhat below the stovepipe hole, and must be tightly closed at the bottom. It extends to the top of the chimney. The stovepipe connects tightly with this smokestack. The chimney should reach well above the roof of the building in order to secure a good draft, and it should be large enough so that the foul air can easily escape around the sides of the smoke flue. If the chimney extends to the floor, an ordinary register of adequate size—about 20 inches by 16 inches—must open into it. If the galvanized-iron pipe mentioned above is used for the ventilating duct it must have a tightly fitting damper near the floor, and the pipe should be about 18 inches in diameter.

**Modern cabinet room-heaters.** During the past few years various concerns have produced heaters which are both ornamental and efficient for heating and ventilating purposes. Instead of the old round jacket we now find a rectangular cabinet finished in a very presentable school-furniture brown. This cabinet jacket with the exterior of walnut-colored vitreous enamel harmonizes with the color scheme of the room and forms a distinctive part of the good general appearance. The



Courtesy of The Waterman-Watertown Company

#### Modern square-steel seamless heater

This is a room-heater and ventilator which looks well and is efficient and durable. The walnut enamel finish makes the heater ornamental as well as useful.

enamel coat will not burn, rust, or tarnish. The heater body is made of steel and is very durable. The stove and jacket are furnished complete with an insulated fresh-air intake, foul-air register, vent regulator, and smoke pipe. It is not difficult to install providing there is a chimney of sufficient size reaching to the floor. The foul air is drawn out through the vent register without interfering with the draft.

**Importance of proper installation.** It is of vital importance that the apparatus be properly installed if it is to work well. Several plants have been taken out because they would not work. Either they were not put in properly at the start, or the teacher failed to operate the system intelligently, the system itself is not usually at fault. It will be the cheapest in the end to have the job done by someone who knows just how to do it. Sometimes the system fails to work well because there are so many air escapes around the doors and windows. The building must be repaired if good results are to be secured. The commonest cause of trouble is too small a chimney. If the chimney is less than 16 inches square, a new one should be built, because the chimney is to carry off both the smoke and the foul air. If a suitable jacketed-stove system is properly installed, it will both heat and ventilate the room satisfactorily providing the teacher uses good judgment in operating it.

**Why the air circulates.** When the plant is put in as described above, the air will flow in and out of the room as long as there is a fire, if both ducts are open. The cause for the flow of air is the difference in the weight of the cold and the warm air—hence the name, gravity system. By heating the foul-air duct with the hot smoke, a condition of unbalance is set up, and so long as this condition continues the air will circulate. When the foul-air duct is heated, the air particles are pushed farther apart, a given cubic unit of air becomes lighter, the air rises and makes room for more air to come into the duct. The hot air around the stove inside of the jacket is lighter; the heavier cold air coming in from outside pushes the warm air up. Or if both ducts are closed, the air in the room will circulate through

the jacket, the cooler air coming in from below and forcing the warm air up. Both fresh- and foul-air ducts should be kept open while school is in session.

It is not correct to say that warm air tends to rise, for the fact is that when some portion of air is warmed, cooler air from the sides and from below pushes the warm air up. Heated air, instead of tending to rise, actually expands in all directions; naturally near the surface of the earth it cannot expand downward very far. With a good fire in the stove and the ducts open, a condition of disequilibrium is produced in the air of the room. Cold air is heavier than warm air and tends to sink, pushing the warmer air up.

No such system will work at all unless the foul-air duct is heated or has a volume of warm and rising air in it. It is important to remember that fact. In late spring and early fall the system will not give results because there is no fire and hence no hot smoke to heat the foul-air duct. In some large plants the foul-air duct is sometimes heated with a stove placed at the bottom of the flue. This, of course, cannot be done in a rural school. The air in a schoolroom is always much warmer near the ceiling than near the floor, but as the air strikes the walls it becomes cooler and sinks. This relatively fresh air is breathed by the pupils, becomes contaminated, and being cooler than the air above tends to sink towards the floor and to find its way to the opening in the foul-air duct. The system does not work well when the doors and windows are open, but the rural teacher should air her room out thoroughly and often, system or no system.

**Can you start a fire?** To start a fire quickly and well you must have dry pine kindling and dry wood cut up fine. Insist that your school board furnish these necessary materials. You will be greatly handicapped without them. As many young teachers seem quite unable to do a good job of starting a brisk fire quickly, it seems proper to devote some space to the subject: First, clean out all the ashes, be sure the ashpan is empty. Place some paper, torn or twisted or wadded together, upon the

grate Every rural teacher should have a good stack of old newspapers on hand all of the time On the paper place enough dry, fine kindling, and on top of this the dry, fine wood Then place a few of the larger sticks on top of the finer Light your fire from below Now open the damper in the stovepipe and the lower slide check, or even the lower door in the stove Close the door and the slide damper above the fire If the flues are clean you will soon have a good fire Do not let a wood fire roar up the chimney too strongly Control it so as not to heat the stovepipe too hot, that might be dangerous Add wood or other fuel from time to time as needed, and look at your fire occasionally Some persons prefer not to shake all the ashes out of the grate before making the fire, but you will probably get better results as a rule if you clean off the grate thoroughly This discussion has had reference to a wood fire only If hard coal is used, all that will be necessary each morning is to thoroughly shake the ashes out of the bed of coals, put on fresh coal, and open all drafts In the case of a wood fire, as the wood continues burning and chunks of dry wood are added, a good bed of live coals will be formed During cold weather such a bed of coals should cover the grate during the daytime Whether wood or coal is burned, the air must have free access up through the grate and burning fuel The stove, the pipe, and the chimney should be kept clean in order that the draft may be good Sometimes failure to keep the room warm is due to the accumulation of ashes and soot The ashes should never be allowed to pile up, as this may result in warping and permanently damaging the grate If soft coal is used, the wood fire should be well started before coal is put into the stove; otherwise it takes too long to warm the room

**Manipulation of dampers.** The teacher must understand that opening a slide check below the fire always causes a draft and makes the fire burn Opening a slide check above the fire, either in the stove door or in the stovepipe, checks the fire The fire can also be checked by a damper in the stovepipe Do not confuse damper in the stovepipe with slide check in the

pipe. When the damper handle is parallel to the stovepipe, the damper permits a draft, and when the handle is at right angles to the stovepipe, the draft is checked. In the morning when starting the fire of course all the draft possible should be given; it is usually better to open the lower door of the stove to give plenty of draft, being careful, however, to watch and control the fire. There should also be a good damper both in the fresh- and foul-air ducts. If the chimney extends to the floor, instead of a damper there will be a wing register, which can be adjusted to any desired angle. On windy days when the wind comes from the side on which the fresh-air intake enters the building, the damper in this fresh-air pipe should be partly closed.

**Value of window ventilation.** No matter whether there is a heating and ventilating system or not, every window in a rural school building should open freely both at top and bottom, and there should be suitable catches so that the windows can be left open for longer or shorter periods and to such an extent as the teacher may determine. It needs to be clearly understood, however, that if there is an adequate jacketed-stove arrangement, the system will not operate properly with currents of air coming in and going out of the windows. Nevertheless, there is nothing to prevent the windows being opened at noon and at the two recesses while the children are out of doors. They should always be shut in time so that the room is comfortably warm when the children come in to take their seats.

When there is no ventilating system, as is probably the case in a large number of rural schoolhouses, the teacher will need to use the window ventilation a great deal, but every effort must be made to prevent drafts of cold air from blowing directly on the pupils. No doubt foul air is deadly enough, but drafts are often dangerous, and teachers must look out for them. Every window can easily be fitted with a six-inch pine board, planed and painted; this board should be as long as the width of the window. On cold, windy days it will be sufficient to set the board in so that all the space is closed, permitting air to come in between sashes only. But on milder days on the windless

side of the building the boards can be set at an angle, thus permitting more air to enter. There are now on the market cloth window ventilators, capable of being adjusted to windows of varying width. These are made of fine-mesh, strong cloth and should last a long time. They are the means of supplying fresh air without drafts or dust and are useful where a constant circulation of fresh air is needed, which is the case in all rural schoolhouses not provided with a ventilating system. These ventilators are not expensive and one for each window would be desirable.

It is possible to have a thin board about six inches wide attached to the upper sash in such a way that the current of air will be deflected toward the ceiling when the window is open a few inches, preventing the cold air from dropping upon the children's heads. This strip of board must equal the width of the window in length, it can either be adjusted by means of a cord and a pulley, or it can be fitted with sprung hinges so as to operate automatically. But no matter whether the teacher has boards both at the top and bottom or not, the room should be thoroughly aired out whenever necessary; this means three or four times during the day. In every rural school there should be a window committee to open and close the windows under the teacher's direction.

**Need for enough moisture.** In most rural schoolhouses in the cold winter months the air is very dry, the relative humidity getting as low as 25 per cent. The relative humidity out of doors on a cold, damp January day may be as high as 85 per cent, but when this air is heated in the schoolroom its volume is so increased that the relative humidity is greatly reduced. Breathing such air is injurious to children. A dry air produces dry, cracked tissues of the nose, mouth, and throat; these form lodging places for germs. Such dry mucous surfaces are more liable to disease than tissues which are kept normally moist. If no means are taken to introduce moisture into schoolroom air, it becomes as dry as Sahara. Connected with every good system at the present time is found a good-sized humidifier,

which should be kept well filled with water all day. Several quarts or even gallons should be evaporated on cold days, but too much humidity is also harmful. Remember that heating air tends to dry it just as heat dries anything else. A committee should keep the humidifier filled in winter weather.

**Summary of suggestions and cautions** It will pay any teacher who is responsible for the effective operation of the heating and ventilating plant to read and heed the following.

1. Make a thorough study of the entire system to find out exactly how it works. Procure the illustrations, diagrams, and directions from the manufacturing company and then carefully analyze the whole problem.

2. Bear in mind that any system, no matter how perfect, requires watchful, intelligent care in operating it from day to day.

3. Be sure that all dampers and check drafts are in good working order.

4. See to it that the chimney and the stovepipe are thoroughly cleaned early in the fall.

5. Do not allow any accumulation of ashes in the ashpan. Clean out every day. Otherwise there will not only be a poor draft, but the grate will be likely to get warped and permanently damaged.

6. The gravity system will not work unless there is free and adequate circulation of air. See that fresh air is entering the jacket and foul air leaving the room at all times.

7. Have at least one accurate thermometer, two will be better. Do not hang these on the outer walls. Suspend them about five or six feet from the floor. Appoint a trustworthy pupil to record the temperature frequently and to keep it not below 65° or above 70°.

8. Appoint one pupil to keep the humidifier filled, especially in cold weather.

9. Try to have a full outfit of window board ventilators and also a few of the cloth ventilators. Appoint a pupil for each window, to regulate window ventilation.

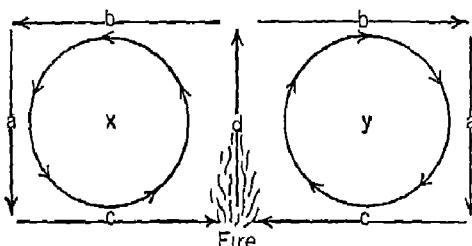
10. See that the room is flushed with fresh air at all intermissions. The pupils should of course put on their coats and wraps and keep them on until the room is warmed again. Dead air in a room will not support combustion well.

11. Do not consult only your own feelings as to temperature or the need for fresh air. Habitually do what you know is right. Consult the thermometer.

12. Insist upon having a plentiful supply of kindling and small sticks of dry hard wood for starting fires
13. Different tactics are needed for burning wood, soft coal, hard coal, or gas. Master the necessary techniques.
14. Don't poke the fire and don't shake the grate too much during the day
15. If you have trouble or difficulties, find out the reasons or the causes, and then act accordingly

#### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1. Make a neat diagram of the jacketed-stove system, label the parts, and explain how it works.
2. Explain exactly why the foul-air duct must be heated. Draw a diagram showing air particles near together and farther apart. How is the foul-air duct heated?
3. Draw a diagram showing the necessary arrangement when the chimney does not extend to the ground.
4. Draw a diagram to show the cast-iron stack mentioned in the description of the system. Why must it be tightly closed at the bottom? Indicate a place in your diagram for taking out soot.
5. State the underlying principles upon which the successful operation of a heating and ventilating system is based.
6. Tell exactly how you would have some of your older boys work out the window-board project. Compute the cost of fitting good boards into the bottom of six windows.
7. What is the cause of the movement of air in a schoolroom? Compare to the circulation of air produced by a bonfire, as shown in this illustration.



Air currents by an open fire

8. Make a diagrammatic sketch of a rural school building which has a good basement with a furnace. Show the fresh-air intake and the foul-air outlet. Indicate the location of registers. Show that a furnace is essentially the same as a stove with a jacket. See the article in the *World Book Encyclopedia* (1935) on "Heating and Ventilation." Why do we use the term *gravity system*?

## HEATING AND VENTILATING THE ONE ROOM 133

### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

1. ANDRESS, J MACE—*Health Education in Rural Schools*, Houghton Mifflin Company. 1919
- 2 AYRES, M , WILLIAMS, J. F , AND WOOD, T. D —*Healthful Schools*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1918
- 3 ELLIS, H L , MOELLER, H. C , AND SWAIN, C C —*Rural School Management*, Charles Scribner's Sons 1924
4. LOWTH, F J —*The Country Teacher at Work*, The Macmillan Company 1930
- 5 SALISBURY, ALBERT—*School Management*, Row, Peterson, and Company 1911
6. WILKINSON, W D.—*Rural School Management*, Silver, Burdett and Company 1917.

Teachers and students may write to the National Education Association, Washington, D C , and to the American Medical Association, 535 N. Dearborn St , Chicago, Ill , for instructive information. The Smith System Heating Company and the Waterman-Waterbury Company, both of Minneapolis, will send free descriptive and useful literature.

## CHAPTER VIII

### PLAY SUPERVISED AND UNSUPERVISED

**Significance of play.** An increasing number of thinking persons see in play a wise provision of nature for the development of the human race. It does not require much study of the play activities of children to see a close connection between the character and the extent of the child's play and the sort of life he leads when he grows to manhood. The playing of the child prepares in an important way for the working of the adult. The naturalness, the freedom, the spontaneity of play are vital elements in the development of personality. During all the years up to and through the teens, the child needs recreation, play, and the play spirit in his life, if he is to grow into complete and efficient adulthood.

An interested, competent teacher can do much to make up for lack of opportunities in the child's home. Many country homes are rather dreary places from the child's point of view. The interest is largely in work. The children do not get much sympathy, play is not given much encouragement. But the spirit of recreation and wholesome amusement is needed in country districts as much as in urban centers. Social abilities should be cultivated in all possible ways. Here a capable teacher can help the entire community greatly. Boys and girls often leave the farm because country life is so lacking in the means for gratifying their natural, human desires. School children desire to play, but often they do not know how to play. The teacher needs to teach games as much as she needs to teach anything. At all intermissions children should engage in vigorous play so as to counteract the evil effects of bad postures and of the nervous strain of artificial, routine, and fatiguing school exercises. One of the rural teacher's many accomplish-

ments should be the ability to play many games herself. If with this personal skill she is able and willing to direct and supervise her children, she can do much to prepare them for happier living.

**Play a basis for education.** Perhaps it would be better to say that the child is educated through play. Were it not for the development of mind and body which results from play, the teacher would have little or no basis for her work in the school. When the child enters school at six years of age, through the varied activities of play he has built up his brain and the rest of his body, so that the teacher, utilizing this foundation which nature has furnished, can carry on her teaching processes. Of course physical, mental, and moral development go forward hand-in-hand; we have only to observe children in play to see how their lives are being changed in these three ways each day by their spontaneous reactions to their environment.

**Play and health—physical development.** Play develops the heart and lungs, upon the proper growth and development of these organs very much of the success and happiness of the grown man or woman will depend. There is probably more danger of underexercise than of overexercise in the play of childhood and youth, although of course both extremes should be avoided. If for many years a child fails to secure sufficient out-of-door exercise in the fresh air and sunlight, the chances are that this lack can never be made up, no matter what may be done later.

In this country millions of people are in ill-health all of the time; a good part of this illness may be directly traceable to lack of normal play during the growing years of life. Now that we require children to go to school eight or nine months of the year, it behooves school authorities to see to it that the school environment is wholesome and health-building instead of the opposite. Rural school children need directed play as much as their city cousins, as a means to the symmetrical development of the muscular system. A normal nervous system responsive to the needs of the individual and a vigorous circulation of rich blood are also developed and promoted by proper play.

**Play a moral safeguard.** Innocent play is a moral safeguard because it affords a natural, harmless outlet for that excess of energy and spirit which might otherwise be used in harmful and even dangerous forms of expression. Natural play affords a much-needed safety valve for the youth of our land; crime has decreased always uniformly where properly supervised play has been introduced to counteract the evil tendencies of the idle, loafing gang. When children and youths can find outside, objective interests and aims to take the place of a morbid subjectivity of mind and spirit, a wholesome moral atmosphere and true moral development are always the results. Every careful observer has noted the good effects of well-conducted games and sports. Even in state prisons the value of a safety valve in the form of baseball and other games has been recognized and successfully worked out. A rural teacher who knows how to be a good leader can do much to promote the moral health of children through well-planned and well-directed play.

**Analysis of moral development.** It will be useful to note some of the moral, social, and intellectual qualities which are developed by play. The long list includes the following: self-control, perseverance, obedience, unselfish regard for the other fellow, initiative, leadership, alertness, coolness, wariness, good judgment, and co-operation.

*Self-control.* This quality is necessary for success in almost any game, as also in the game of life. Without self-control but little progress can be expected. In playing ball a loss of temper, for example, is fatal. Many a baseball pitcher's skill for an entire game has been lost because of a distracting mental upset of some sort, which enough self-control would have prevented.

*Good judgment.* The best players are, other things being equal, those who use the best judgment. Judgment is an intellectual quality, but it contains a moral element. Judgment is needed in all situations in life. It is slowly built up as a result of working and playing in many situations demanding a variety of interpretations and reactions. To be a player or a citizen of good

judgment is to merit and to receive the praise of the group or of the community

*Obedience* The spirit of true obedience and the readiness to obey are essential qualities of the most effective citizenship. Such obedience is learned on the playground, particularly if the play is properly supervised. The child understands that he cannot expect a place in the game unless he conforms to the rules and obeys the leader or captain. As he does not wish to lose his place, he obeys, even though he may be disobedient elsewhere, for a time, until he sees the fundamental need for obedience in all the relations of life.

*Co-operation* Teamwork is needed in modern civilization; it is needed among country people, who often find such co-operation difficult because they were not trained to it in childhood and youth. Group games cannot succeed without the spirit and the method of co-operative endeavor. Children need to learn to subordinate selfish personal interests to the good of the social body. Such training in unselfish co-operation makes for the highest and best type of citizenship—a type greatly to be desired in our day and age.

*Initiative* This means both the ability to start and the habit of starting new undertakings or enterprises and of carrying them on to successful termination without being told or controlled by any outside force or authority. Country boys and girls are often lacking in initiative because they have been too much under the artificial domination of parent or teacher. They need the opportunity of the playground for initiative and freedom in individual activity. Play assists greatly in placing a child upon his own responsibility, where he must choose for himself his goal or purpose and the means of accomplishing or realizing it.

*Unselfishness* Play affords plenty of opportunity for children to think of one another, especially of those who are weak and cannot do everything which a normal child can do. In every school there are children who for one reason or another are "picked on" and mistreated in various ways. It is the teacher's

business to see that bullying is discontinued and that the bully gets what is rightly coming to him—righteous retribution. The teacher needs to know what is going on outside; it is very unwise to permit injustice to continue day after day. It is training in bad citizenship. The wrongs of the playground may well serve as objective material for practical civics. One of the lessons of government should be that the strong shall protect, rather than exploit or abuse, the weak.

*Alertness.* Success in life demands alertness, quickness, promptness of response, the ability to decide and to act quickly; games teach and train children in this quality, for the game itself is impossible without nimbleness of wit. The slow thinkers are pushed aside, left behind, or defeated because of their slowness. A normal child soon learns the lesson that he must "speed up" if he is to hold his own. So he frees and quickens his mental and physical machinery, and develops needful skill in running, dodging, or in throwing the ball. This alertness is carried over into the work of the school, the better moral fiber, along with the development of intellectual acumen, results in greater progress in school work.

*The teacher's part in play.* The character and the extent of the play in a rural school will be determined by the aims, the standards, and the spirit of the teacher. That the teacher has responsibility in the matter of play as well as in the teaching of geography, for example, becomes apparent as soon as the place and the function of play in education are understood. When the teacher understands that play is not only recreative but also educative and that the advancement of her pupils is in large degree dependent upon the kind and the amount of playing they do, play will occupy a larger place in her plans and programs. As a matter of fact, play in the best schools is a regular part of the curriculum and receives daily attention with the other educative procedures.

The rural teacher should know how to play the ordinary games, she should go out on to the playground with the children at noon and recesses during at least a portion of such periods.

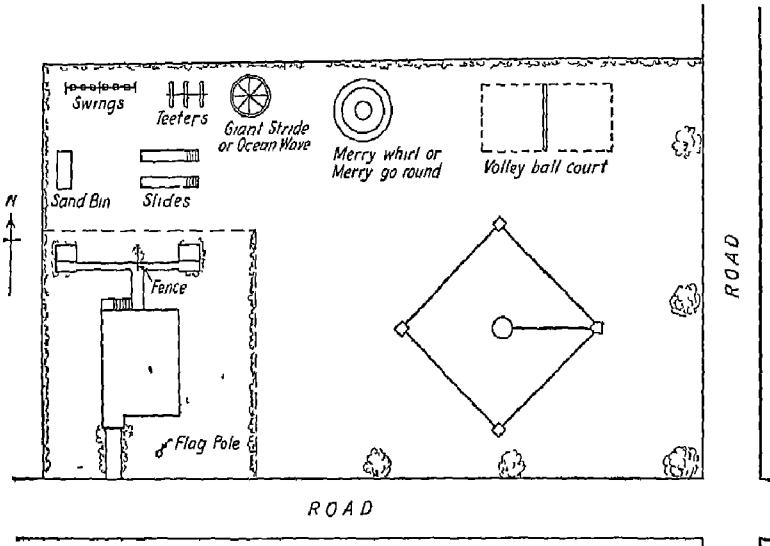
every day. By taking part in the play of her pupils the teacher will be using the ounce of prevention in matters of management, for frequently there is no small amount of mischief and civil which may go on at intermissions

**Supervised play.** Supervision does not mean interfering with the rights of the children. It does not mean thwarting them in their natural, spontaneous activities. It does not mean making their play any less enjoyable. The right sort of supervision is not meddlesome, rather it allows for the free expression of the child's play spirit. Supervision is the unostentatious, kindly directing of playground activities into channels which are most worth while because purposeful, better co-ordinated, and better calculated to produce true educational results. Supervision is unquestionably needed, when children are left wholly to themselves, they do not vary their play greatly and they are quite likely to engage in play which involves very little if any educational value. One of the very best results of the teacher's presence on the playground and of her active participation in the games is the salutary effect upon the pupils and thus upon the school. Thus the teacher protects herself and promotes her own welfare. In several states the rural teacher is expected to spend a portion of the noon hour in supervision of the playground. By exercising wise control she prevents disorder, secures fair play, and furthers honest and honorable co-operation, all of which are important in developing the good citizen.

**Group games.** It should be the teacher's constant aim and effort to have as many children play as possible. There should be the maximum number of active participants and the minimum number of passive spectators. In order to bring this about the teacher must see to it that the good and the poor players are mixed. A good plan is to appoint two leaders who will choose the members of their respective groups. Then these groups may contend against each other for the day or the week, as desired. For example, in the broad jump the total number of feet jumped by one group will be compared with the total of the other group; if each side has both good and poor jumpers the contest will be

fair and interesting. This plan of playing group against group can be used in several kinds of games and sports.

**The playground.** Many, probably most, rural school grounds are entirely inadequate both as to size and the nature of the plot of ground on which the house stands. It is quite common to find a school yard of less than an acre; it often seems that the



*Courtesy of State Department of Public Instruction, Madison, Wis.*

#### Revised plan for adequate school grounds

54 yards by 90 yards—approximately one acre

poorest land in the district had been selected for the site. The school lot is often small, rough, and altogether unfitted for a playground. It may be nothing more than a gullied, uneven, stony hillside, good for nothing except possibly a sheep pasture. There is no place to play the ordinary games, and as for a baseball diamond, that is entirely out of the question. Purely mercenary motives must have governed the selection of the site. Fortunately, there are numerous exceptions to the above rather dark picture. The site should be not less than two acres in extent, so that there will be ample space for a baseball diamond.

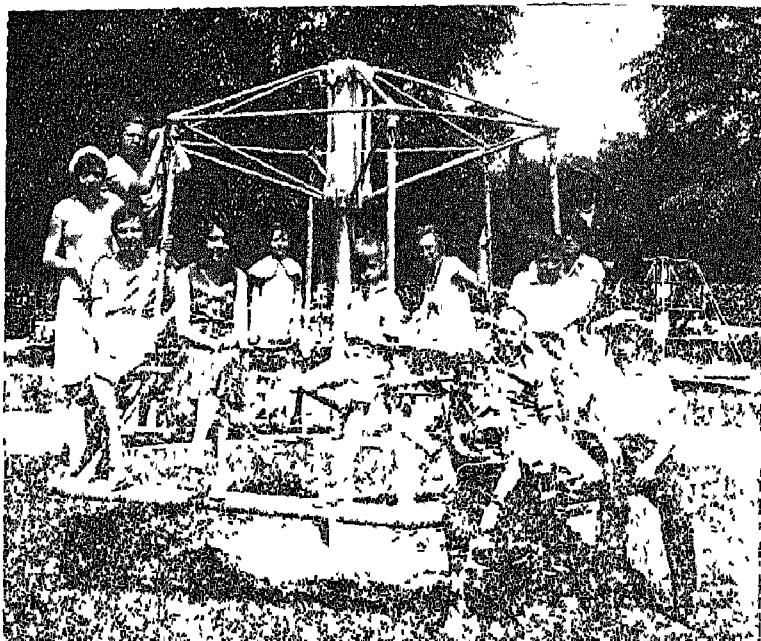
and room on the sides for other games. The building should be set far enough to the front of the grounds, so that, while allowing for a good lawn on the side toward the road, there will also be plenty of room in the rear for the playground. The surface should be even and free from stones. It will not be a difficult task for the children to clear off all the smaller stones and pieces of wood. If the school board and other taxpayers of the district look after the heavy work, surely the teacher and the children with rakes and hoes can take care of the job of keeping the grounds clean. This is a legitimate way in which to use some school time.

There should be no trees to obstruct the play. A tree for a base in playing ball is hardly the proper thing. The suitable place for trees is along the sides or perhaps for ornamental purposes on the lawn in front, surely not on the playground itself. There should be a well-rooted sod, thick and capable of withstanding the wear and tear which the children will give it.

If the grounds are fenced, there should be some easy way of getting through the fence in the rear, perhaps by means of a stile, so that a ball can be quickly recovered without danger to the child or to the fence. No walks should run directly across the playground, at least not diagonally across; the walks to the outbuildings can just as well run along the side or rear fence. The play space should be as unobstructed as possible. Seesaws, volleyball posts, swings, giant strides, or turning bars should not be placed in the middle of the grounds, but quite near to and running parallel to the fences.

*Playground apparatus.* (a) *Conditions and needs.* It is much more common now than a decade ago to find various pieces of apparatus for play on rural school grounds. It is not unusual at the present time to see swings, seesaws, giant strides, children are now playing volleyball and tetherball in many schools, as well as baseball, the old standby. There are still too many schools with little or no equipment, but great gains have been made in the past twenty years. Sometimes poor judgment has been shown in the selection of apparatus. A cheap quality has

often been purchased, this has caused more or less trouble, in some cases actually endangering the lives of the children. Many schools have homemade apparatus, some of it strong, well-



*Courtesy of the Ever Wear Mfg Co, Springfield, O*

**The merry-whirl for everyone**

A well-built, safe merry-whirl is a good investment

made, and attractive in appearance, but a good deal of it is not built right and is more or less unsightly. "Every school should have some equipment, but the teacher must not feel that her responsibility is lessened, for there is no virtue in the apparatus itself. It is only one means to an end. Swings and teeters will not create in a child a spirit of fair play or teamwork, perhaps not even the play spirit. The apparatus should supplement, not take the place of, organized play." Nevertheless, it remains true that while children can play many games with little or no equipment, the swing, the slide, the giant stride, and the sand-

but will add greatly to the play situation and assist the rural teacher to solve the play problem, especially with the smaller pupils.

(b) *Elements which determine selection.* When the question of what to buy or make in the way of apparatus is up for consideration, the number of pupils, the ages and sizes of pupils, and the probable use of the equipment should be given due weight. It is a fact that in many rural schools most of the pupils are in the first four grades; they are primary children and will not be able to play basketball, for example. As K. C. Richmond suggests in his bulletin, basketball was at one time all the go and school grounds were fitted out with the posts and baskets, which were used but little or not at all because there were no children old enough to use them. Swings and seesaws will be used by small children, but not basketball or tennis courts. In the selection of apparatus it usually will pay to get a first-class quality of material, if not, indeed, the very best. It will be a good investment to get a first-class playground ball, covered with horsehide. It is unsafe to buy a cheap slide or a cheap giant stride. Some homemade giant strides are no doubt safe, and some are a menace to the lives of the children.

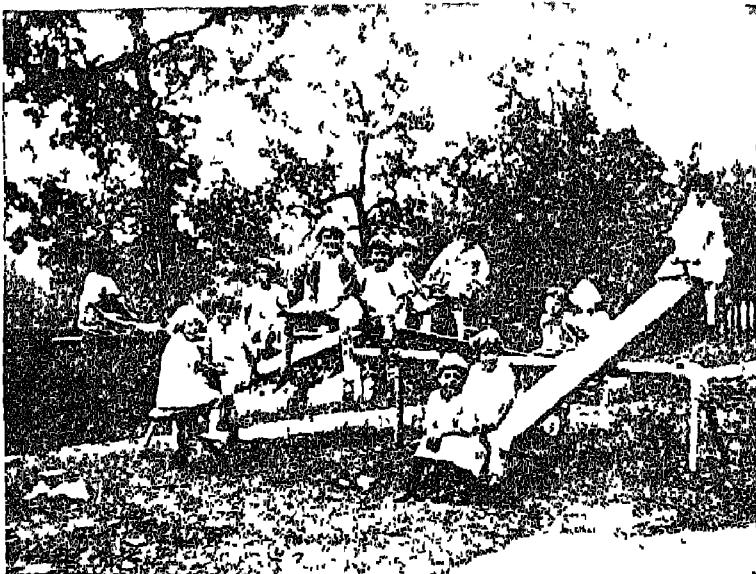
(c) *What to get.* Richmond in his bulletin on Rural School Playgrounds and equipment,<sup>1</sup> writes as follows:

"The following equipment for the average one-room country school is suggested: two playground baseball bats; one pair of jumping standards, one sand pile; two seesaws; two swings, one turning bar; one volleyball, net, and posts; six beanbags for indoor use, one *Games for the Playground, Home, School, and Gymnasium*, by Jessie H. Bancroft, published by The Macmillan Company.

"The preceding list includes the essential minimum equipment and apparatus that should be placed in every school though other equipment might be added. A larger selection might well include these additional articles. One giant stride,

<sup>1</sup>Richmond, K. Cecil—*Rural School Playgrounds and Equipment*, Bureau of Education, Washington, D. C.

one slide, one tetherball post, six tetherballs, four tennis rackets, one tennis court with net and posts, one pair flying rings, one trapeze, one soccer football ”



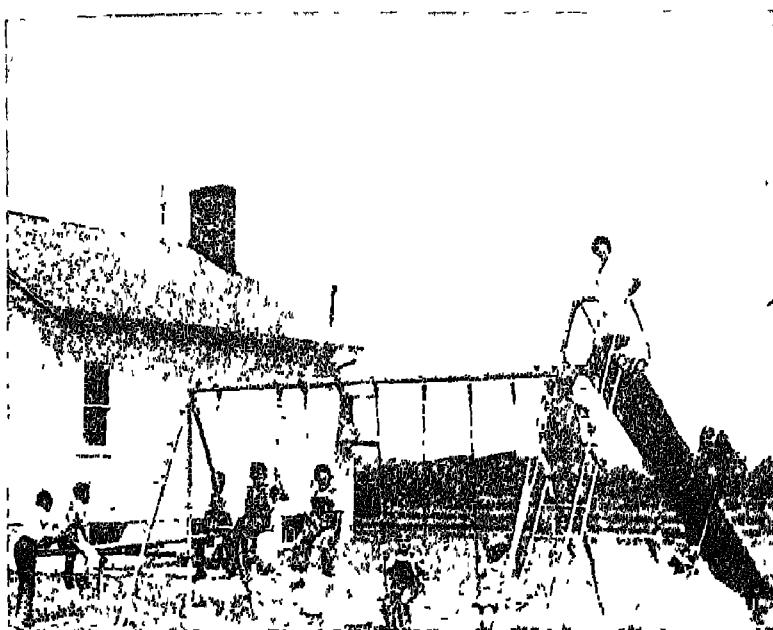
*Courtesy of the Ever Wear Mfg Co., Springfield, O*  
Smaller pupils always like the seesaws

The equipment which any school possesses will depend upon the ideas and ideals of the teacher, her energy and leadership, and the public, progressive spirit of the taxpayers and the board. The average district can have and will have what it needs and *wants very much*.

(d) *Sandbin or sand pile* This is one of the easiest things to provide and one of the best, especially for the smaller children. A sand table inside and a sandbin outside should be considered essentials. This bin should be about eight by twelve feet, built with ten-inch planks and with a ten-inch board around the sides for table and seats. No doubt the lumber and sand could be furnished by people in the district. This sandbin may best be placed under a tree in a corner of the grounds out of the way.

It will be used a great deal during the fall and spring months, for children like to dig and form various designs in the sand. By all means, have a sandbin. It is simple, cheap, serviceable.

(e) *Swings* Two good swings should be provided, they should be very strongly built and set to swing parallel with the fence. No chances should be taken on weak construction. If



*Courtesy of the Ever Wear Mfg. Co., Springfield, O.*

#### A combination equipment

There are several other combined arrangements

wood and rope are used they should be inspected frequently to see that they are in good condition. The swings will be used a great deal by the smaller children and sometimes by the older ones. The teacher should instruct the children in the use of the swing, and caution them not to stand up or get in the way when the swing is moving. The seat boards should be ten inches wide and about two feet long. The rope should be of such length that the boards come about two feet above the ground. The

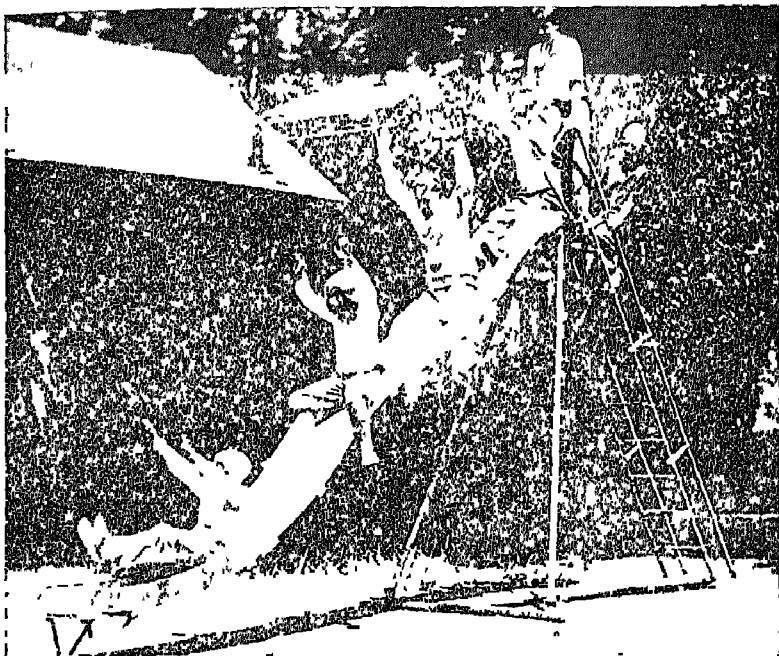
best way to attach the seat board is by means of holes through the board for the two ropes, one on each end. Examine the ropes frequently to detect flaws.

(f) *The giant stride* The giant stride is one of the safest and most useful of all playground equipments, providing it is properly and strongly built. It can be homemade; or if funds are available, a first-class piece of apparatus can be purchased at a reasonable figure. Buy one with ball bearings. The essentials for a giant stride are a pole, a wheel, and enough inch rope. A hickory pole about sixteen feet long and eight inches in diameter will answer the purpose. A discarded wagon or machine wheel should be used, if it is strong and able to stand the strain. This wheel should be mounted on top of the pole so as to rotate freely. The pole ought to be set solid four feet or more in the ground—better, in concrete. Six ropes may be securely fastened to the wheel and should come down not far from the ground with loops or knots as far up as the children can reach. Rope ladders are better. The giant stride is a very good substitute for the merry-go-round. Children delight in swinging out and around, sometimes jumping, sometimes off their feet. This is good exercise for children of various ages.

(g) *Jumping outfit* Children like both the long jump and the high jump. For the long jump a pit is needed, for the high jump standards are necessary to avoid guessing. Both the pit and the standards can be made by older boys under the teacher's direction. For the pit, the earth needs to be dug out for about fifteen feet, and six or eight inches of sand or sawdust placed in the bottom. This makes a soft landing surface. It is well to provide a jump or "take-off" board also. A pair of standards consists of uprights firmly fastened to broad bases. The uprights need holes an inch apart in which to place pegs for supporting the string or crosspiece. The two uprights should also be marked off in feet. The pit and the standards will afford the means for unlimited play and exercise.

(h) *Coaster slide* Slides can be purchased at prices ranging all the way from fifty or sixty dollars to twice as much. Children

use the slide very much and enjoy it. The wear on the clothing is not so great as some people think. The slide should be well built with nonrust steel bottoms, hand rails, and all other parts well constructed. Several children will use one slide,



*Courtesy of the Ever Wear Mfg Co, Springfield, O*  
Children enjoy this wave slide. It is portable

going down one after the other with little commotion, or quarreling. The slide is not so dangerous as the swing or the seesaw. A good slide is a good investment. Get a thoroughly good slide or don't buy any at all.

Any rural teacher can procure illustrations and prices from school supply houses and manufacturers. See also the references at the end of this chapter. The best equipment is now built in accordance with the recommendations of the committee on standard specifications for the construction of playground

apparatus, appointed by the National Recreation Association, New York City

**How to get equipment.** In some districts money to buy playground equipment will be set aside in the annual levy at the school meeting. If the taxpayers and the board see the value of play and the need for equipment, the problem is simple enough. It may be, however, that the teacher will need judiciously to educate the people of the district up to the point where the funds will be forthcoming. She can often do this through the children, or by means of a mother's meeting where she can courteously and wisely present the facts and the arguments. In some districts it will be possible to have some of the apparatus made by the older boys or by the men of the district. If sufficient interest is created, a great deal of assistance will be rendered in this way. Such interest may sometimes grow out of an evening school entertainment and community "get-together." At such a time some good speaker may present the cause of play so convincingly and appealingly that interest and co-operation will be secured. The proceeds of a box social, or some similar function, may be used to buy equipment. The author has known rural teachers to take in as high as \$75.00 in one evening. In some cases teachers have secured funds by having pupils make and sell various articles at a school fair or bazaar. How far shall we go in buying school equipment with entertainment, box-social, or pie-supper money? What is the distinction between luxuries and necessities? What was once considered a luxury may now be a necessity. Playground equipment should be classed with school essentials.

**Ball games.** Nearly all children like to play ball. There is a general perennial interest in ball games. Every rural school should have enough good balls and bats to supply the needs of the pupils.

(a) *Playground baseball.* Although baseball is our national game, it is hardly possible to play the regulation game in a rural school because it will usually be impossible to make up the two nines. The attendance is relatively too small, the pupils

are of all ages from five up to fifteen. However, with the larger and softer playground ball it is entirely possible to play a game with fewer players on a side. Very often some of the older girls become excellent players, even excelling some of the boys. In most schools all but the primary children can play the game. The pitcher tosses the ball; as it is soft, the children do not fear it. No gloves are needed. Since the ball is large and is tossed and not thrown swiftly, it is easier to hit; thus more runs are made, adding much to the pleasure and the exercise. This game gives a chance for organized, co-operative play, which is better social training. A soft 14-inch or 16-inch ball with a strong well-sewed horsehide cover is used. The bases are sacks of sand.

(b) *One old cat* This is a fine game for girls as well as boys. A soft playground ball is used. Four or more can play at the game. The players comprise the pitcher, the catcher, the batter, and as many fielders as desired or available. The batters do not run bases. When the pupils come out on the playground at intermission, one cries out "my first bat," and is the first batter. In the same way others become catcher, pitcher, first fielder, second fielder, and thus down the line. In playing, if a fly ball is caught, if the ball is caught on the third strike, or if a foul ball is caught on the fly, or on the first bound, then the batter is out. If a third strike is not caught, then the batter is given three more strikes. When a striker is out, the catcher becomes batter, the pitcher becomes catcher, the first fielder becomes pitcher, and so on. The batter who goes out becomes the last fielder. Sometimes the game is varied by having the batter run to a base and back to home plate when he strikes a fair ball. In making this run, the batter is out if the pitcher or catcher or some other player reaches the home plate with the ball before he does. One old cat is lots of fun, and children rarely tire of it.

Teacher and children can easily learn to play other ball games, such as volleyball and dodge ball by studying the directions in a good manual or by learning from someone who knows the games.

**Township and county playdays.**<sup>1</sup> The county playday, first held in the fall but later in June each year, is the finale of preliminary township playdays held in May. The county playday is held at the county-seat fair grounds and is attended by several thousand persons.

Township playdays afford opportunity for competition involving both children and adults in athletic events and in other contests. The school-district team that wins first honors in a given event at the township playday represents its township in the intertownship competition at the county playday.

Of 135 one- and two-room school districts in 18 townships that held playdays the first year at least 120 participated, while 69 different districts won first honors in one or more events. There are 150 such districts in this county of 20 townships.

At the township playdays pennants displaying the township colors are provided by the local playday organizations as awards to the districts that score the largest number of points in the day's events. Honor ribbons are awarded to individual members of teams that score first, second, and third places in each event. The offering of prizes by merchants or other commercial concerns is discouraged, as it is felt that the playdays should be sponsored mainly by the people of the school districts and that the prize-winning element should be kept in the background. The principal deviation from this rule in one case was in connection with the kite tournaments, for which prizes were furnished by a daily newspaper. This newspaper, which sponsored a good times club with branches in all of the rural schools of the county, originated the kite-contest plans, and furnished directions for kite making to the schools.

The central idea of the county playdays is to get everybody to do some playing. For this reason events for school pupils and those for adults are carried out simultaneously, while a committee entertains the children under school age with circle games or storytelling. While adults are using one kind of equipment, school pupils are using a different kind. When

<sup>1</sup> This section was originally prepared by Florence Slown Hyde.

any equipment is not in use for a scheduled event, it is available for impromptu games that any group wish to engage in.

Not to exceed an hour is allotted for a musical and literary program by school pupils or other talent, immediately following the dinner. A few townships raise money to hire a band, but those that do not go to this expense seem to have more zest for the playday games and contests. It is found that a refreshment stand in charge of a volunteer committee nets enough profit to pay for pennants and individual badges and to meet other small expenses. In one case the stand operated at the county playday returned a profit of \$85.00 the first year, which, with a \$3.00 assessment on each township, provided a fund sufficient to pay all expenses. In each succeeding year expenses have been met with little difficulty. County playday trophies were wooden shields finished in mahogany with silver lettering designating the honors won and the names of team members. These shields were awarded to twenty-two different districts.

The competitive events are largely planned with the idea of team play, thus giving the little fellow a chance to do his bit to help his school win. Small schools are encouraged to compete with larger schools through a system of dividing the points scored by the school enrollment. Two age groups are found sufficient for the relay races and jumping relay, the dividing age being eleven years. In the boys' jumping relay the total jumps of all the boys are added, which gives the short jump of the little fellow a chance to help his team win. In the girls' baseball throw, the distance of each girl's throw is added to the score of her side, and the total determines the winning team.

The basket dinner is usually planned by a committee composed of one woman from each district; it is served cafeteria style. The most expeditious arrangement is a hollow square made with tables or planks and having the complete menu assembled on each of the four sides, thus making it possible to serve four lines of hungry folks at the same time.

*The athletic events* The program of athletic events and other contests carried out at one county playday, including the prescribed size of teams participating, was as follows.

#### FORENOON

##### *A. School Pupils' Events*

Playground Ball Tournament— 9 to 11 (5 to 10 boys and girls)	Kite Tournament— (One boy or girl who won first honors in kite flying in each age division at township playday)
Boys' Horse Shoe Tournament— 11 to 12 (2 boys)	

##### *B. Adult Events*

Men's Volleyball—9 to 10 30 (4 to 6 men)	Men's Horse Shoe Tournament 10 30 to 12 30 (2 men)
Women's Corner Ball—9 to 10 30 (6 women)	Women's Potato Relay Race— (4 women)

Dinner served 12.00 to 1.00

Community Singing and Short Address 1.00 to 1.30

#### AFTERNOON

##### *A. School Pupils' Events*

Volleyball—1 30 to 3 00 (4 to 6 boys or girls)	Girls' Baseball Throw (4 girls) 25-yard Relay—3 30 to 4 00
Jumping Relay—3 00 to 3 30 (4 boys with girls making up the quota if necessary)	50-yard Relay—3 30 to 4 00 (4 boys or girls)

Boys' Centipede Race—4 00 to  
4.15 (4 boys)

##### *B. Adult Events*

Men's Kitten Ball—1 30 to 3 30 (5 to 10 men)	Men's Sack Relay—3 30 to 4 00 (4 men)
Women's Playground Ball— 1.30 to 3 30 (5 to 10 women)	Women's Nail Driving— (1 woman at a time)

**How playdays were organized in the foregoing case.** The committee for township playdays drew representatives from each district for committees on grounds, games, dinner, program,

stand, and reception or invitations. The games committee had a subchairman in charge of each event.

The work of organization was done under the direction of a county Y. M. C. A. secretary, who started the township playdays as a form of community service. Equipment for all events was furnished by the Y. M. C. A., with the secretary at hand to assist in carrying through the day's program.

Township and county playdays have now been carried out in one county each year for many years. The attendance is always large and the interest continues unabated. It would seem that these annual events are now a permanent part of the life of the county, greatly to the physical, social, and civic welfare of children, young people, and adults.

#### Standards of a Good Sport at All Times<sup>1</sup>

HE	HE
1. Plays fair at all times.	Does not cheat
2. Plays hard to the end.	Does not quit Is not "yellow"
3. Keeps his head	Does not lose his temper, even though wronged
4 Plays for the joy of playing and for his team's success	Does not play for money or other reward
5. Is a good team worker.	Does not "play to the grandstand"
6 Keeps training rules.	Does not abuse his body
7. Obeys orders of coach or captain	Does not shirk.
8. Does his best in all school work	Does not neglect his studies.
9. Backs his team in every honest way, but—	Does not bet Does not think betting necessary to show loyalty.
10. Gives his opponent a square deal.	Does not take any technical advantage Treats visiting players as guests.
11. Is respectful to officials. Accepts adverse decisions graciously Expects the officials to enforce the rules	Never blames officials for defeat. Does not "crab." Does not "kick." Does not complain.

<sup>1</sup> Source of these standards not known to author.

## 154 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

### WHEN HE LOSES

12. Congratulates the winner Does not show his disappointment  
Gives his opponent full Is not a "sorehead"  
credit Learns to correct Does not "ahbi." Does not  
his faults through his fail- make excuses.  
ures

### WHEN HE WINS

13 Is generous Is modest. Is Does not boast Does not "crow."  
considerate Does not "rub it in"

### AT ALL TIMES

14. Is true to his highest ideals. Does nothing unworthy of a  
gentleman and a 100 per cent  
American.

### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1. Write out cautions which you think should be observed by teacher and pupils in regard to play, including the use of playground apparatus
2. Get a catalogue and compute the cost of equipping a country school playground with all that is necessary for a school of twenty pupils of ages from six to twelve.
- 3 On pages 136-138 seven personal attributes or qualities are discussed briefly. Add three more to the list and arrange all in the order of their importance.
- 4 Write ten rules and directions for the care of playground apparatus.
- 5 Tell fully how to make a homemade giant stride that will be safe and workable.
6. You are to have a mothers' meeting on the fourth Friday afternoon in September Outline a brief talk in which you will endeavor to secure the co-operation of the mothers in purchasing some playground equipment.

### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

1. ACKER, ETHEL F.—*Four Hundred Games for School, Home, and Playground*, F. A. Owen Publishing Company. 1923.
2. BANCROFT, JESSIE H.—*Games for the Playground, School, Home, and Gymnasium*, The Macmillan Company. 1909.

3 Elmore, Emily W --*A Practical Handbook of Games*, The Macmillan Company 1922

The following publications may be procured by application to the Superintendent of Documents, Washington, D C. The best way for a teacher to do is to buy a set of 20 coupons for one dollar. These are good at any time and are convenient for paying small amounts.

1. *Brief manual of games for organized play*. Revised 1925 37 pages, illus (Children's Bureau Publication 113) 10¢

2. *Games and equipment for small rural schools* 1927. 16 pages, illus (Physical Education Series 8) 5¢

3. *Organized recess* 1930 (Education Pamphlet 2) 5¢.

4. *Rural-school playgrounds and equipment*. 1920. 12 pages (Teacher's Leaflet 11) 5¢.

5. *School grounds and play*. 31 pages. (Education Bulletin 45, 1921) 5¢

6. *School playgrounds* 1930 40 pages (Education Pamphlet 10) 5¢

Send to the Superintendent of Documents for price-list No 31, Education. It is free.

The following organizations will send interesting and useful descriptive lists to teachers who ask for them:

1. American Junior Red Cross, Washington, D C.

2. Boy Scouts of America, 2 Park Ave, New York City.

3. Camp Fire Girls, 41 Union Square, New York City.

4. Girl Reserves, National Board of Y. W. C. A., 600 Lexington Ave., New York City.

5. Girl Scouts of America, 570 Lexington Ave, New York City.

6. National Child Welfare Association, 70 Fifth Avenue, New York City.

7. United States Department of Labor, Children's Bureau, Washington, D C.

8. United States Treasury Department, Public Health Service, Washington, D. C.

9. Young Men's Christian Association, New York City.

10. Young Women's Christian Association; Association Press, New York City.

## CHAPTER IX

### CURRICULUM, CLASSIFICATION, AND CLASS PROGRAMS

This chapter brings together certain related ideas pertaining to courses, classes, and the daily program largely from the teacher-management point of view. State and county authorities determine, for the most part, the rural teacher's standards and practices in the entire field of subject matter, that is, of the content, organization, and schedule of classes. But even with the best course of study and the most ideal program the effectiveness of the teaching-learning processes rests wholly with the individual teacher. "As is the teacher, so is the school" will always be true.

#### THE RURAL-SCHOOL CURRICULUM

**Limitations of the one-teacher school.** Any person who understands average rural-school conditions will not expect to find in such a school as rich and as varied educational opportunities as are found in more favored places. Of course the curriculum is vastly more than an outline of subjects and of subject matter. A real curriculum, from the modern standpoint, is a program of life-giving child activities and experiences. The central idea should be social participation in a wide range of carefully selected pupil activities, purposeful in character and calculated to develop the child in all the aspects of his social nature. With children in all of the eight grades, with often an immature and untrained teacher, and with the social limitations of the environment, let us not look for too great educational results from the rural schools. If we do, we shall surely be disappointed.

**Educational objectives and the rural-school curriculum.** Undoubtedly the objectives as outlined by the reorganization com-

mission in 1918 are still recognized as of basic value in curriculum construction. Any course for elementary or secondary schools will always need to consider (1) health, (2) command of fundamental processes, (3) worthy home membership, (4) vocation, (5) citizenship, (6) worthy use of leisure, (7) ethical character. Any curriculum to be most useful must embody these objectives. Provision must be made for the development of the necessary and appropriate ideas, ideals, and habits. All the fundamental skills are vital, but so are tastes, appreciations, and the like. The three R's are of course important, pupils need to be well grounded in the ordinary, basic skills. The head, the hand, the heart, and health all demand attention. These are the four H's. The implication in the four H's is that all of the child's being is to be influenced by the educative process. The rural child needs to be prepared to meet the "practical and the cultural demands of modern life." The rural-school curriculum should utilize the resources of the rural environment but it should be as broad, as rich, as suggestive, as enlarging as possible.

**Content of the course of study.** When the writer began teaching in a rural school the course-of-study manual comprised less than fifty pages. As he writes this there lies before him a course issued by one state of over one thousand pages of very fine type. This course would make at least four books the size of the present volume. There are very detailed outlines in the time-honored subjects and further excellent material on health and character education, programs, social studies, music and music appreciation, picture appreciation, manual training, home making, and 4-H club work. This manual is for rural and graded elementary schools. If rural teachers could make real such a content of subject matter in the lives of rural boys and girls it would be a revolutionary achievement. What is the attitude of the average rural teacher toward such a vast array of admittedly high-grade material? What is her success in a one-teacher school in carrying out these valuable suggestions? Such a course-of-study manual should be used in training institutions for the most careful analysis and discussion in class exercises. Such a

wealth of material should be made so practically available for rural teachers that they will actually make use of it day by day. Such excellent curriculum manuals require constant study by all teachers who use them.

**Wide variation in different states.** No two states have exactly the same course of study. If the various manuals are examined, considerable diversity in both content and arrangement is found. Conditions vary in different sections of the country, no doubt the school offerings should also differ. However, a broad, general field of basic educational material should be found in all parts of the country. States are left pretty much to themselves in determining curricula and no doubt rightly so. Education is largely the business of the states. It is certainly a problem, however, of great national concern. It is entirely possible to formulate objectives and principles in curriculum construction which will be universally applicable. A certain body of subject matter, of pupil activities, and of suggestions for personality development should be found in all courses, even though there are many variations in the several state curricula.

**The curriculum and our modern world.** Civilization today has become such a complex affair that the schools must change their organization, courses, and procedures so as to prepare our children and youth for participation in a social organism quite different from that of a generation ago. Not only must there be training for practical affairs, but the individual must also learn to make such social adjustments as will enable him to secure the maximum of personal enjoyment and satisfaction in living. We find ourselves in an age of rapid transportation, of remarkable ease of communication, of the motion pictures and the radio, of the far-reaching influence of the modern press, of tremendous developments in all the sciences and arts, of new and greatly improved means for the prevention and cure of disease, and of many other evidences of invention and progress. The curriculum must acquaint the child with the world in which he lives, and it must help him to find his place where he can make both a living and a life.

**What is a balanced curriculum?** The old curriculum is now barren, formal, dead. The new curriculum provides for all phases of our social life. The child learns to do a great many things. He acquires those skills and abilities which are needed for adaption to the social and economic requirements of the day. In a balanced curriculum we find a place for the so-called bread-and-butter subjects, but we also provide music, art, social sciences, the practical arts, and all else that is true and vital preparation for life today. Old-time school materials are now subjected to the scrutiny of scientific educational research; the useless elements, which have no bearing today on the needs of successful living, are stripped away. Essential knowledge, activities, and experiences are utilized so as to produce a balanced personal development of the child. A balanced curriculum is one that reaches out into life as it actually is and reflects and utilizes the best in science, literature, language arts, social studies, natural sciences, fine and industrial arts. The balanced curriculum ministers to the whole child—body, soul, and mind—with all his needs and in all his human relationships. We do not find any such richness of child experiences in the average rural school. So the average rural child is decidedly handicapped in his competition with children and young people who have had the advantages of a well-rounded and well-administered curriculum.

**Curriculum construction a continuing process.** The curriculum is never finished. It is always in process of becoming. As social conditions and needs change, the curriculum must change. In every state and county there should be permanent committees keeping in touch with the latest developments. In the field of rural education actual accomplishments are always far behind possible achievements. The curriculum for rural schools can be much improved; so, too, can the educational procedures and the administrative machinery for making real such courses as we now have. Supervisors and teachers should become more generally interested in the principles and objectives of curriculum construction. In institutes and educational meetings gen-

erally teachers should receive very definite instruction in the meaning and educational implications of what they are expected to teach. Our civilization is changing, our schools must change if they are to meet the new requirements of a changing world. It is indeed unfortunate that so many rural schools are still making use of an outworn scheme of studies when we find on all hands such tremendous evidences of inventive achievement and progress. In courses for rural teachers there should be a place for a careful study of the whole science and art of curriculum making. Moreover, the young student should definitely come to realize that few things in this world are settled and adjusted permanently. This is particularly true in the field of education.

#### CLASSIFICATION AND CLASSES

**Classification procedures.** 1. By the end of the second week of school the teacher should know the relative classification of each child. One's predecessor should have left a record, but if she has not, get the facts from pupils and parents. During the first week or two the teacher should make use of homemade inventory tests to discover the knowledge and abilities of her pupils in the various subjects, but she should be very careful not to put pupils back unless it is absolutely necessary. Tabulate the classification of your entire school on a large sheet of Manila tagboard, so that you can refer to it readily.

2. Classification is the teacher's prerogative and duty. She must settle the matter herself and not permit parents to do so. Often in classifying pupils satisfactorily, compromises can be effected. The teacher must consider the best interests of each child in the light of several controlling elements.

3. A country school cannot be classified like a graded school. Failure to see that grades are to be grouped together (7 and 8, 5 and 6, 3 and 4) in reading, arithmetic, and other subjects is the source of many a teacher's difficulty. At the present time there should be no rural school in this country where such grouping is not practiced.

4 In order properly and promptly to classify her school a teacher must know: (a) the subject matter to be taught, including an outline of the course of study; (b) the abilities of the pupils, determined by modern methods of testing, (c) the advancement of each pupil, his present place in the grades in each subject. Mary may be in the sixth grade in reading but in the fourth grade in arithmetic.

5. Start with reading. In a school comprising all grades, have six reading classes. A (7 and 8), B (5 and 6), C (3 and 4), D (2), E (1), F (beginners). Beginners should not be permitted to start in the spring. Four language and four arithmetic classes, besides the beginners, will be sufficient, as follows: A (7 and 8), B (5 and 6), C (3 and 4), D (1 and 2).

6 Usually you will have only two formal spelling classes, one for the seventh and eighth grades, and one for the fifth and sixth grades. The rest of the pupils will spell in connection with the work in reading.

7 Combine gradually. Show the school that good work determines promotion. Review and test often. Don't allow a child to keep on trying to do work beyond his depth. Instead of putting a child or a class back, proper reviews and the necessary teaching may be utilized until the work is up to grade. Demotion is serious business and is usually unnecessary.

8. In determining a pupil's classification in school some present-day authorities advocate the regular use of general intelligence tests, in some city systems such tests are used extensively.

It is now known that it is unsafe to depend on intelligence tests exclusively, particularly on the results of one test. There are now on the market a great variety of achievement tests, diagnostic tests, inventory tests, aptitude tests, and many others. The rural teacher should make use of modern measuring instruments, but she must never forget also to use her common sense in classifying pupils.

9 It has been suggested that "several bases be used either singly or in combination for purposes of classifying pupils by

ability. Among these are '(1) personal judgment of the teacher, (2) school marks and progress records, (3) standard test scores and educational age, (4) intelligence quotient, (5) mental age"

No doubt the teacher should consider many factors in determining any child's place in school. Standard tests and home-made tests should be used, but such elements as the child's health, disposition, and home environment should likewise be taken into account. By repeated testing, endeavor to discover the child's native ability, which is of course the chief factor determining his progress. Age, size, family advantages, spirit, attitude are all important and should be considered along with other criteria. *Ability to read* is an important factor particularly in the lower grades. Re-examination and reclassification should take place whenever the evidence warrants.

**Grades and classes.** "The maximum number of grades for a one-teacher school is eight; in reality this is too many to be handled successfully. But since there are so many schools in which this condition necessarily exists, any discussion of the program for the one-teacher school must take into account the possibility of eight grades being represented. Sometimes there are two or three divisions in the first grade, due to the fact that beginners have entered at different times during the year. Something should be done to stop this practice. A teacher in a rural school should not be expected to form more than one beginning class during the year. The time to start that class is in September. If a child reaches the minimum school age in December, and his parents insist upon his starting school as soon as he arrives at the legal age, he should be permitted to enter school in the September before. Otherwise he should remain at home until the following school year. Occasionally a one-teacher rural school is found that is attempting to do ninth-grade work. Such a procedure should not be permitted. It should be borne in mind that a one-teacher school is an elementary and not a secondary school" <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> EDITH A. LATHROP—*Rural School Leaflet No. 10, The Organization of the One-Teacher School*, Office of Education (Out of print)

**Disadvantages of the graded system.** Rural teachers especially need to realize that the great American graded-school system is an artificial, man-made invention with certain advantages and with many evident disadvantages. The greatest weakness of the eight-grade plan is that the child may become the victim of a rigid, cast-iron mechanism which retards true progress. A rural teacher should always consider the individual needs of her pupils in carrying out any classification scheme or in the forward movement of the various groups. The chief requirement is the progress of each child at his own rate regardless of formal promotion regulations.

**Flexibility a prime consideration.** The rural teacher may have much freedom and much flexibility in the classification of her school if she has the proper educational objectives and if her work is governed by correct principles. She may have complete control of the situation if she is a good manager. Children vary greatly in ability. Some can never satisfactorily complete the work of the eight grades, while others can master the subject matter and acquire the essential skills in less than eight years. If the teacher knows the abilities of her children, she will maintain a flexible classification system moving each child on in each subject as his accomplishments will warrant.

**Present emphasis on the individual.** In the best schools today the interests of each child are placed above everything else. We now have tests which will discover individual abilities, we have the machinery for individualized instruction. The rural teacher should make much use of the best workbooks in various subjects; she should stress the best practices in directed study, both of the individual and of groups. In classifying her school the teacher should combine grades and classes as much as possible so as to reduce the number of classes to the minimum. If the activity or the project ideas are given prominence, then classes as such will take a subordinate place. The entire school will often be used as a unit for purposes of instruction, each child taking part according to his individual interests and ability. It requires a teacher of more than ordinary ability to

make use of such teaching-learning procedures Whatever the procedure, the needs of each child should be placed first

**Is there a practicable middle ground?** Is there a happy medium somewhere between the old formal lesson-hearing with twenty-five or thirty classes a day and an extreme activities program? The writer believes that there is just that. The rural teacher should consider her grades and her classes and she should have a program of recitations These recitations must not, however, be formal and mechanical, and they must not be mere testing exercises The success of the rural teacher will be determined by her point of view and her aims While, on the one hand, she may well have a systematic classification of pupils with a certain emphasis on grades, on the other hand, in her instructional procedures, she should make individual interest paramount.

**Conference, and discussion, not recitation.** "When a part or all of the lesson assigned has been studied, it is then profitable for the class to meet with the teacher to talk over what has been done The purpose is not to call on each pupil to repeat or recite what he has learned to convince the teacher that he has learned but to tell the class what he thinks or has learned. It is in order for the teacher to ask questions to get the pupil to think and for the pupil to tell what he thinks. If other pupils think differently, it is in order for them to tell what they think. This is an exchange of thought, not a recitation or a testing 'stunt.' The most successful class discussion occurs when the pupil asks questions to get the thought of his class-mate or of his teacher. If he does not understand he says so, for he has come to class to get help, to get the matter cleared up. The teacher should manage to get the timid one to take part by calling for a contribution from him that she knows he can make. Soon he will readily express himself for he knows that the teacher is not trying to find out how little he knows, but rather to help him. This is both a study and a teaching period The pupil is trying to learn and the teacher is trying to help him. The pupils are studying and teaching each other. The teacher is working

with them and learning much that will enable her to help them more."<sup>1</sup>

#### DAILY SCHEDULE OF CLASSES

**Why have a program?** In the older books on management the authors had need to discuss the reasons for a program, for the average rural teacher had either a poor program or none at all. Today in all of the more progressive states a definite daily schedule for the guidance of teachers is usually printed in the state manual or course of study. There is great variation in practice. In general, a good program is a great saver of time and energy. Our modern life is necessarily determined in large measure by time schedules of some sort, pupils should be trained to do work on time, in accordance with businesslike procedures and time- and energy-saving devices. A good program prevents overemphasis on certain subjects and secures proper adjustment and correlation between study and recitation. We now know that individual and group study, both supervised and unsupervised, should receive the major part of the teacher's time and attention, rather than recitation. The Hoffman Illinois program<sup>2</sup> is based on this principle.

**Old and new in programs.** Since the first edition of this book was published, very decided steps have been taken in several states to secure a better type of daily program for the rural teacher. The old emphasis upon a succession of twenty to thirty testing recitation exercises is gradually disappearing. Under the old plan the rural teacher called her classes to the front in regular succession day after day, whether there was any need or not. The old program stressed recitation. The new program stresses individual study and activity under the teacher's direction. In some states the week is being used as the unit of time.

<sup>1</sup> *The Rural One-Teacher Schools of Illinois*—Circular No 263, 1932.

<sup>2</sup> HOFFMAN, U. J.—*Organizing and Conducting a One-Teacher School in Illinois*. A very useful sixty-three-page bulletin formerly issued by the State Superintendent of Public Instruction, Springfield, Ill. This bulletin is now superseded by Circular No 263, 1932—*The Rural One-Teacher Schools of Illinois*.

A teacher allots say eighty minutes a week to the upper class in arithmetic. She may now distribute this available time as the needs of the pupils require. She may have two class exercises during the week, or more or less, according to circumstances. The teacher who understands that the chief business of the school is to see that pupils learn will center her program of work around study rather than recitation. By using the new type of written tests a great deal of time may be saved. The old oral question-answer testing farce should, for the most part, go by the board. For the younger children class exercises are needed daily; but increasingly with the older pupils there must be a great deal of independent study of books under the teacher's direction. For pupils who can study and work successfully at their seats the teacher should have class discussion periods only when the work requires this.

**Aims in program making.** 1 The program must provide for a proper amount of work for each child. When the program is made up, the teacher should note whether each pupil has a fair proportion of the time in each of the four quarter-day divisions. Each child should have about five exercises or study-recitations a day, or opportunity for that number, so as to receive adequate personal instruction from the teacher.

2 In the apportionment of time the relative importance of the various subjects requires attention. For example, a good deal of time and attention must be given to reading and language in all grades, for these subjects are fundamentally important.

3 The pupil's physical condition needs to be considered; the teacher should know the favorable and the unfavorable periods as far as fatigue is concerned. Every rural teacher will find it of great advantage to understand the nature and laws of fatigue. She will then value periods of relaxation and rest more than some teachers seem to do.

4 The time allotted to each class should be determined by the nature of the subject, the age of the pupils, and the number in the class. Reading should have more time than arithmetic or history, the older pupils need longer class periods than the

younger, in general, and a class of two doesn't require as much time as a class of six.

5 In order to reduce the number of classes in a rural school, it is necessary both to combine and to alternate classes. Five recitations a day for each grade would mean forty classes a day, and that is entirely out of the question. It would be highly desirable if no rural teacher had more than fifteen so-called recitations a day, and better not more than a dozen. These should consist largely of discussion exercises, study-recitations, and periods for getting started in new subject matter. All pupils in a rural school should be given ample opportunity for directed oral expression of various types. Groups, large and small, should furnish the audience situations. If study is made the governing factor, rather than recitation, class periods can easily be reduced to fewer than fifteen or twenty per day.

6. No program will apply equally well to all schools. A general program for an average or typical rural school can be made out; but if a teacher has only six grades she can give more time to certain classes and to the supervision of both individuals and groups.

7. The teacher should not count too much on pupil's work at home. Such work should be quite limited as to the amount and the kind to be done if the child is to make the best progress.

8. Deliberate plans should be made to secure a proper variety of work; the teacher should arrange to have periods of rest and relaxation follow periods of work. At least there should be such change of work that no child will become unduly fatigued. The teacher, too, needs to find time to look after the seatwork.

9. Such subjects as writing and drawing usually come just before the afternoon recess, when there is likely to be better muscular control than immediately following vigorous exercise.

10. In adjusting the program and in carrying it out day by day the teacher should consider herself as well as the pupils. There must be no hurry and no worry if the best kind of work is to be done. In no sense should the teacher become a slave to her program.

**Guiding principles in program making.** Perhaps the best brief general discussion of the problem of program making for the rural teacher is found in *Rural School Leaflet No. 10*, formerly issued by the United States Office of Education. This twelve-page bulletin was written by Miss Edith A. Lathrop, who first makes a clear statement of the problem and then considers various means of solution. It is now generally accepted that at least four expedients are controlling and essential in solving the problem of the daily program for a rural school. They are grade grouping, correlation of subject matter, alternation of subjects, and alternation of grades.

**Grouping** The most common and satisfactory grouping of grades, in which the eight grades are organized into five groups, is as follows. group one—grade one, (E), group two—grade two, (D), group three—grades three and four, (C), group four—grades five and six (B), group five—grades seven and eight, (A). For most of the work of the school this means Classes A, B, C, D, E. This arrangement is now in use in many states. By stressing groups or classes A, B, C, etc., the emphasis on grades, as such, will be much lessened, as is greatly to be desired.

**Correlation of subject matter.** Correlation of subject matter has long been practiced in both rural and urban schools. In the lower grades it is now the usual practice to correlate reading, language, and spelling. Language and civics and language and history are common correlations. It is not unusual at the present time to present health lessons for the first five grades in general exercises. In the third-and-fourth-grade class—the C class—home geography is readily correlated with reading.

**Alternation of subjects** It is not necessary that every class recite every day in every subject. It is entirely possible to use the principle of alternation, thus securing fewer class exercises and more time for each one. Drawing for the entire school may be allotted two twenty-minute periods a week and writing to three. The A class may have history three days in the week and civics two days, if necessary. Sometimes it is better to teach civics for a half year and history for a half year than to practice

weekly alternation This plan will result in more continuity and concentration, as a rule In some successful rural schools a Monday period is devoted to music for all the school, Tuesday to drawing, Wednesday to nature study, Thursday to writing, and Friday to construction work If a good thirty-minute period is used each day, the results are more satisfactory than when several short periods a day are used

*Alternation of grades* Perhaps this is the most helpful of all the proposed principles for the reduction of the number of classes and for the general improvement of the program It is now used in many states and is a necessary correlative of the grade-grouping plan discussed above The scheme has been used in Illinois and other states for many years The reader is referred to the Rural School Leaflet No 10 mentioned above for an adequate exposition of the idea—pages 4, 5, and 6

The basic fact, upon which the device of alternation of grades is founded, is that the traditional order of topics in the teaching of many subjects is not necessary or vital If, for example, pupils have a general knowledge of geography as a result of studying all of the first book of the two-book series, it is then immaterial whether they study the subject matter for the seventh grade or the eighth grade first So, in the odd years (1935-1936) the eighth-grade work may be taken, and in the even years (1936-1937) the seventh-grade work In some states, this principle of alternation of grades by years is carried out for every subject for the fifth and sixth grades The plan works readily in such subjects as reading, but is more difficult in arithmetic However, we now know that the old-time order of teaching the multiplication table, to illustrate, is not essential and, indeed, not the best So the 5's, 6's, 9's, 10's, and 11's may be taught in the odd-numbered years, and the 3's, 4's, 7's, 8's, and 12's in the even-numbered years

By alternation of grades the third-, fifth-, and seventh-grade subject matter may be taken in the even-numbered years and the fourth-, sixth-, and eighth-grade material in the odd-numbered years It is not necessary or wise to make use of alternation in

grades one and two. But for the other grades, by grouping and alternation larger classes will be possible, longer periods can be used, and the number of classes is reduced. It is not advisable for any teacher, by herself in a single school, to inaugurate this system. Alternation by grades and years should at least be county wide in extent; it is much better to have the entire state for the administrative unit so as to secure uniformity and to prevent confusion.

**Attention and fatigue.** A rural teacher should understand the exhausting effects of continued attention, and the program should be arranged in such a way as to reduce the occasions for undue fatigue to the minimum. Small children can give attention for only a limited time, for them a change of activity should be provided at frequent intervals. The best work can be done the first hour of the morning. After good recess periods and at the close of the noon hour children are able to work hard on the tasks of the school. Those subjects calling for least effort and attention should be placed during the second half of each quarter-day session, so far as practicable. The way in which the teacher carries on the work of the school has much to do with the conservation of her own nerve force and has a pronounced effect upon the pupils. If the teacher is nervous and impatient, she will induce and maintain a feeling of strain in the whole school which is exhausting and detrimental to all parties concerned. On the other hand a calm, good-natured teacher will produce a soothing effect; there will be much less waste of nervous energy.

The symptoms of fatigue may be due, often are due, to lack of interest in the work of the school. *Boredom* or *ennui* would be better terms to apply to the condition in which we often find pupils in the rural as well as in other schools. If the teacher is lacking in personality or uses crude teaching procedures, the children may seem excessively fatigued, when, as a matter of fact, they are merely bored by the monotony of the day's work. It is probably true that very few children in the rural school ever suffer greatly from genuine mental fatigue. Commonly

the subject matter is unwisely selected and not adapted to the child's mentality and stage of progress. This will result in lack of interest and attention accompanied by evidences of so-called fatigue. Badly contaminated schoolroom air, where ventilation is practically nil affects the nervous system, including the brain, and thus the child's mental condition. Poisons generated in the intestinal tract, due to imperfect elimination, are a prolific cause of that tired feeling in both children and adults.

**A program of the better type.** For several years a new type of program has been in use in several northern Illinois counties. This program, which gives due and proper emphasis to individualized instruction and directed study, both for individuals and for groups, is the work of U. J. Hoffman, who, up to the time of his death, was an enthusiastic advocate of this idea for one-teacher rural schools. Miss Lathrop in the *Bulletin* referred to above says that "When some recitations are omitted, the teacher must allot the time as the number of recitations require. If all the time allotted to classes which do not recite is more than is required to give individual help to those classes, more time can be given to the classes which do recite. The pupil's study time is also adjustable. He has the whole period, less the time spent in recitation, to study a subject. If he needs more time for one than for another, he can divide the periods to meet the requirements."

In Circular No. 263 on The Rural One-Teacher Schools of Illinois, issued in 1932, State Superintendent Francis G. Blair had this to say about the Hoffman plan "This circular also contains a suggested plan for the organization and instruction of one-teacher and village schools. This plan originally was worked out by the late U. J. Hoffman and has been nationally recognized as one of the most forward-looking suggestions which has been made to rationalize and make really educative the processes of teaching the one-teacher school. The plan requires a well-trained and experienced teacher to put it into operation. But in school districts where this plan has been adopted, the results have more than justified the expectations of those who have sponsored it."

## 172 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

DAILY PROGRAM FOR INDIVIDUAL INSTRUCTION AND  
DIRECTED STUDY IN ONE-TEACHER SCHOOLS  
(ILLINOIS)<sup>1</sup>

## I FIRST SESSION—8 45 TO 10 40

BEGIN	TIME	SUBJECTS	CLASSES	INSTRUCTION—CLASS OR DIRECTED STUDY
8 45	15			Greeting pupils
9 00	10	General Exercises	All	Singing, storytelling, reading —current events, nature study, etc
9 10	20	Reading	(5-6) (7-8)	Directed study for class that will not have recitation at 10 o'clock.
9 30	30	Reading	1, 2, 3, 4	1 and 2, class instruction daily 3 and 4, class or directed study as desired
10 00	15	Reading	(5-6) (7-8)	Class instruction for those who did not have directed study at 9 10
10 15	15	Writing and Spelling	All	Class instruction in each subject on alternate days
10 30	10	Rest	All	Physical training and games

## II SECOND SESSION—10 40 TO 12 45

BEGIN	TIME	SUBJECTS	CLASSES	INSTRUCTION—CLASS OR DIRECTED STUDY
10:40	20	Arithmetic	5, 6, 7, 8	Directed study for those who will not have class at 11 30
11.00	30	Reading and Arithmetic	1, 2, 3, 4	1-2 reading and numbers as desired 3-4 class or directed study as desired
11.30	30	Arithmetic	5, 6, 7, 8	Class instruction for those who did not have directed study at 10 40
12 00	45	Noon Intermission	All	Lunch and organized play.

Third- and fourth-grade classes in reading can usually be combined. It is not always advisable. In arithmetic classes should not be combined.

<sup>1</sup>Reproduced with permission of the Illinois State Department of Education

## III THIRD SESSION—12 45 TO 2 40

BEGIN	TIME	SUBJECTS	CLASSES	INSTRUCTION—CLASS OR DIRECTED STUDY
12 45	20	Grammar	5, 6, 7, 8	Directed study for those who will not have class at 1 30.
1.05	10	Reading and Language	1, 2	1 Reading daily 2 Reading and Language on alternate days
1 15	15	Language	3, 4	3 and 4 may be combined If not combined have directed study for each on alternate days.
1.30	30	Language and Grammar	5, 6, 7, 8	Class instruction for those who did not have directed study at 12 45.
2 00	30	Physiology and Civics	(5-6) (7-8)	A half year in each, or on alternate days Class or directed study as desired
2.30	10	Rest	All	Physical training and games

## IV. FOURTH SESSION—2 40 TO 4:00

BEGIN	TIME	SUBJECTS	CLASSES	INSTRUCTION—CLASS OR DIRECTED STUDY
2.40	20	Construction and Nature Study	(1-2) (3-4)	1 and 2 construction work daily 3 and 4 nature study daily.
3 00	30	History	(5-6) (7-8)	Classes to be combined Have recitation or directed study as desired
3 30	30	Geography	(5-6) (7-8)	Classes can advantageously be combined Have recitation or directed study as desired.
4 00		Dismissal		

In the last afternoon session time is not specifically assigned for directed study and individual instruction A part of all of each period may be used for recitation or directed study, as will best serve needs of pupils

*Note.* This program is printed as found in the Illinois Circular No 263, 1932. At the present time this plan is being used successfully in many rural schools in northern Illinois The latest circular or bulletin (1932) of the Illinois State Department of Education gives a somewhat different program arrangement than that of the original Hoffman Bulletin of 1923, but the general idea is the same.

## 174 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

## SUGGESTED DAILY PROGRAM—GRADES 1-8 \*

ONE-TEACHER RURAL SCHOOL (STATE OF OREGON)<sup>1</sup>

BEGIN	APPR. TIME	SUBJECT	GRADE	GENERAL EXPLANATION AND DIRECTIONS
9 00 †	5	Clearing Period	All	Health inspection, general plans for the day, flag salute or group singing, etc
9 05	30	Reading and Language	1, 2, 3	Divide time as seems most profitable
9.35	35	Language and Health	4, 5, 6, 7, 8	Class work or directed study on alternate days 4, 6, 8 one day. 5, 7 alternate days Make provision for oral language. Part of this period each week used for health and physical education, all grades
10 10	20	Music—Art	(1-4) (5-8)	M. W Grades 1-4 have music and grades 5-8 have art Tu Th grades 5-8 music and grades 1-4 art Fri 10 min for grades 1-4 and 10 min. grades 5-8 for music appreciation
10 30	15	Recess	All	Supervised play or occasional project activity work Ventilate schoolroom well
10 45 †	15	Numbers	1, 2, 3	Followed by seatwork on numbers for 20 min Then 20 min for creative art and dismiss grades 1, 2 at 11 40

\* Additional physical education can be worked into the daily program at opportune times in the teacher's discretion

† *First Quarter Day.* The purpose of health inspection can be attained by having pupils present themselves to the teacher individually as they come to school. Language activities can be worked in nicely with primary reading. During the language and health period, stress oral language practice and combine all 8 grades for health and physical education occasionally. In the music-art period, the teacher will take a few minutes at the opening of the period to get the group working on art started. While doing this the music group can continue with their regular work or may be asked to learn the words of a song, sketch a picture illustrating a song, or work on some similar music activity until the teacher is ready for them.

‡ *Second Quarter Day.* The suggestions in the course of study for primary grades arithmetic should be followed and the presentation should be informal. For procedure in the upper grades follow suggestions in course of study and also review the paragraph on "Specific Example of the Long Period Program in Arithmetic," p 10. Drills should be short and stimulating. For spelling follow the procedure in the 1933 course of study which will be found different from the procedure in the old course. When primary pupils are dismissed

<sup>1</sup> Reproduced with permission of the Oregon State Department of Education

## CURRICULUM, CLASSIFICATION, PROGRAMS 175

BEGIN	APPR. TIME	SUBJECT	GRADE	GENERAL EXPLANATION AND DIRECTIONS
11.00	40	Arithmetic	4, 5, 6, 7, 8	Class work, when necessary to introduce new work or clear up difficulties common to several pupils. Directed study work for all grades with the teacher giving guidance and assistance to individuals or small groups. Make provision for drill work for all grades at least once each week.
11.40	20	Spelling	3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8	Follow suggestions in the course of study in spelling. Combine spelling with writing practice when feasible.
12.00	55	Noon		Lunch—recreation. 5 min to put away play materials, wash, comb hair, etc
1.00*	15	Opening Exercises	All	Choice of Literature appreciation, current events, nature study, health topics, safety and character education, possibly one each day of week
1.15	35	Reading (Geog 3)	1, 2, 3	Divide time as seems most profitable. Word recognition drill. Use geography text as supplementary reader for 3d grade. Grades 1, 2 join in 3d grade geography occasionally
1:50	30	Reading and Health	4, 5, 6, 7, 8	Two grades at least have some oral reading each day. Others silent reading. Reading and agriculture in 8th alternated by semesters or by units. Use health texts for supplementary reading and combine upper grades in health class at intervals

early for noon and for afternoon, the teacher should make provision for wholesome play activities outdoors, or creative work indoors. This is true, particularly, where younger children have to wait in the afternoon for the bus or for older children before going home. A convenient play corner in the schoolroom for primary pupils will help to solve this problem.

\* *Third Quarter Day* The suggestions under opening exercises give the teacher a wide choice and this period each day should be made interesting and stimulating. In the primary reading period, grade 1 might be divided into a fast and slow group occasionally with an

## 176 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

BEGIN	AFTER TIME	SUBJECT	GRADE	GENERAL EXPLANATION AND DIRECTIONS
2 20	10	Writing	All	M W F Drill work. Tu Th. Writing practice, dictation, etc Combine writing with spelling work when feasible
2 30	15	Recess	All	Supervised organized play whenever possible Ventilate schoolroom well.
2 45*	40	Geography	4, 6, 5, 7	Grades 1, 2, 3 usually dismissed but if remain have grade 1 do word study and grades 2, 3 study reading or spelling for a short period Alternate recitations with two grades having class work each day All grades can be combined for work occasionally
3.25	35	History and Civics	6, 7, 8 (4-5)	Grades 4, 5 do silent reading in history Grades 6, 7, 8 have socialized recitations alternated as desired Combine civics with history work in all grades
4 00		Dismissal		Desks cleared Questions answered and day's work completed Good-night greeting

older pupil handling one group Combine all grades in the school for an audience reading period occasionally Encourage supplementary reading In the writing period on Tuesday and Thursday use practice or dictation exercises, spelling words, etc, as a means of acquiring good writing habits Occasionally a Friday afternoon period may be utilized for art or for club activities

\* *Fourth Quarter Day* During the fourth quarter day, the teacher will find it desirable to work out a definite plan of alternating the class work in both geography and history depending upon the size of the various grades, work to be covered, and nature of the assignment If possible, these alternations should be made so that grades 6 and 7 will not have both history and geography class work on the same day Make provision for play or creative work for primary pupils who must wait for the bus or for older pupils Take a few minutes just before dismissal time to bring the work for the day to a finish, clear up questions, etc Pupils and teacher alike will enjoy the feeling of a day well ended

**Generalized comments on daily programs.** The following statements will apply to many programs found in various states. If these suggestions are considered in connection with the plan of individualized instruction and directed study, the

teacher will be able to do more effective work and with less hurry and confusion

(a) *Study and recitation periods* A large number of one-teacher schools still make use of a program of about twenty recitations. If that is the case, then the study program is a definite part of the schedule. Many authorities say that pupils should be given an opportunity to prepare lessons just preceding recitation periods, when possible. In any case, pupils should not study just to recite. They should study to learn. However, the use of definite study periods will train children in systematic habits of work, which is highly important.

(b) *Grouping of grades* In many states grades three and four, five and six, and seven and eight are grouped respectively in reading, language, spelling, arithmetic, history, and civics. Sometimes larger groupings are entirely possible. Many times civics and geography are completed in the seventh grade. Grades one and two may be combined in language and history. Grades six and seven are often put together in geography.

(c) *Recreation periods* In many schools the smaller children in the first four grades are allowed to go out to play before the older ones go. Recess and noon periods are thus considerably longer for lower grades than for upper pupils. The smallest children may be dismissed about three-thirty in the afternoon. This arrangement will be advantageous for both teacher and pupils providing the teacher is sure that *no harm, physical or moral, is possible or likely for these younger children.*

(d) *Library reading* Supervisors and teachers now understand that definite provision should be made on the program to give all the pupils abundant opportunity for making good use of library books. The more good books the children read the better, and, moreover, such reading has a direct bearing upon school progress.

(e) *Provision for experiments and excursions* The last period of the day is frequently given to the pupils of the two upper grades. Agriculture should be offered in the fall and spring months, that is, in two three-month terms. This last hour or

half-hour is a favorable time for objective work of various sorts, when specimens can be studied and experiments performed. If the agriculture class is studying corn, for example, they may go with the teacher, and perhaps with some or all of the fifth- and sixth-grade pupils, to a neighboring farm, where they can actually see a farmer select seed corn or test such corn in the spring for viability. It should be feasible, at least occasionally, to leave the school building about three-thirty or a little before that. Such a plan is possible only with the consent of the school board.

(f) *Number of so-called recitations.* No school should ever have over twenty class periods a day, fifteen would be better. Where some grades are lacking, the number of recitation periods can be reduced. No country school should ever have the seventh and eighth grades, in any case, but many will continue to have these upper grades for years longer.

(g) *Time for periods.* For the smaller children ten to fifteen-minute periods every day in all their classes are of course necessary. Perhaps for the first three grades there should be reading and language exercises twice each day; if there are several children in a class, fifteen to thirty minutes will be needed. For classes in the upper grades it is much better not to have periods every day and to make them longer, say, thirty minutes or even forty minutes. The author has frequently seen recitation periods almost wholly wasted in the reproduction of dead textbook facts demanded by a mechanically minded teacher. The periods were short, but all the time was wasted. There should be a fifteen-minute general exercise period, and two fifteen-minute recess periods. The noon period should be full sixty minutes, as a rule.

(h) *Provision for each child.* The program should take care of every child every day. This does not mean a formal recitation in every subject every day, by any means, if that is ever needed. It is essential that the teacher arrange to have each pupil make some progress every day in reading, language, numbers, writing, music, art, and whatever else is on the individual's program.

Often study recitations and supervised-project activities at the individual desks will take the place of testing recitations.

(i) *Adjustment periods.* It is quite possible in rural schools to provide for adjustment periods on the program. Retardation is lessened if backward second-grade pupils are given first-grade drill exercises which they may need; the program is often arranged to provide for this. This is a single illustration of what many progressive teachers are now doing.

(j) *Eight years not always required.* It is not always necessary to spend eight full years on every subject. For example, if geography and civics are taught as social studies in the lower grades and then later as separate subjects, they may well be completed by the end of the seventh year. There will then be no civics or geography class in the eighth grade. Some authorities feel that too much time is spent on arithmetic and that more time should be spent on the social studies, starting with the first grade.

(k) *Alternation of subject matter.* One of the conspicuous examples of a good program as it is found in some states is the alternation of all subject matter by years in the grouped classes. For example, *weeds* may be taught in September of the even years and *corn* in September of the odd years. *Potatoes* may be found in the course for odd years only; and so on with other subject matter. History need not be offered as an eighth-grade subject in the eighth grade of the even years, but in the odd years only. This principle of alternation has a wide application and will have a beneficial effect in several ways.

(l) *Supervised play.* It is very common now to find the noon hour divided into two parts of one-half hour each, the first for lunch and the second for play under the teacher's supervision. As a rule, there should be a full hour's nooning; it will be best for the teacher to play with the children for at least fifteen minutes during the noon hour. She needs the exercise and the out-of-door fresh air. The schoolroom should be thoroughly ventilated while the teacher is on the playground.

(m) *Types of class exercises.* Rural teachers should sharply differentiate class-instruction periods, class-recitation periods,

and directed-study periods. The instruction period is the teacher's opportunity to present the new problem, to lay out the work, and to give full and adequate directions and assignments to occupy the study time of the pupils for two days or longer. When the work has been done, the class meets to discuss matters. Mistakes are corrected, needful supplementary material presented, and practice exercises conducted. The directed-study period is exactly what the name indicates. During this time the teacher helps individuals, particularly the weaker ones. If two or more pupils need an additional discussion period, they can meet for that purpose while the brighter ones go on with work at their seats.

(n) *Get the main idea* The rural teacher must bear in mind that her program problem is to have fewer classes and longer class periods. Plan for exercises with the entire school as much as possible. Consider the welfare and progress of each child chiefly. Make much of silent reading and of oral and written language work. Lay out all work carefully. Give complete directions for doing the work. Make use of modern workbooks.

(o) *Relation of teacher and pupil* "The most important work done in the school is the pupil's work. It is usually called *study*. Any effort made by the pupil to learn or to achieve is designated as *study*. The program then should be primarily a pupil's program. What the teacher has to do is secondary to what the pupil has to do. The teacher is only the pupil's helper. This is the relation not only in learning and achievement, but also in conduct and behavior. What the pupil should do is of first consideration, what the teacher does is secondary. There are many times when the teacher's desires for the pupil's good come first and must control."

(p) *For what should the program provide?* (1) "The program should provide for ample and uninterrupted time for the pupils to study each subject and do the necessary exercises. (2) The program should provide for ample time for the teacher to get everyone started in his work at the beginning of a session. (3) The program should provide time for class instruction, co-

operative study, class discussion, and testing (4) The program should provide time for the teacher to give individual instruction, to help pupils who did not get effective help in class instruction or for other reasons cannot do their work (5) The program should provide time for 'general exercises' such as are participated in by all pupils singing, story telling or reading, current events, morals and manners, etc (6) The program should provide time for recreation and play" <sup>1</sup>

**Posting and using a program.** In most rural schools the best way is to place the program on a large sheet of strong Manila tagboard, about 36 inches by 24 inches in size. This sheet should be posted where all can see it. Some teachers use a chart-printing outfit to make the program, this is usually neat and easily readable. Other teachers use heavy black marking crayon. It will not be advisable to place the program on the regular blackboard surface for the reason that there is usually no space to spare for this purpose. However, a large sheet of slated cloth can be used over and over again for the program. Moreover, changes can easily be made when such a slated surface is used. The program should be very carefully and neatly done; then it should be securely fastened up in a conspicuous place.

After the program has been made out in the best possible way for the particular school, the next problem is to follow it in an intelligent and sensible fashion. The teacher should adhere to the time schedule with as much precision as the circumstances will warrant, but she must not become the slave of any program. Provision must be made for change and variation to suit the exigencies of the situation—the school, the teacher, the classes. It is possible to have both a methodical, businesslike regularity and a flexibility which allows for extras, substitutions, and alterations.

The Pennsylvania Program, which is detailed but flexible, is presented in the Appendix of this book. It is very suggestive and will repay careful study.

<sup>1</sup> Points *a* and *p* are used by courteous permission of the Illinois State Department of Education.

## 182 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1. Make out a program for a one-room rural school comprising the first six grades only
2. In classifying pupils in a rural school what are the modifying conditions which should be taken into account by the teacher? Consider the relative value of native ability, or intelligence, and various attributes of personality
3. Make out your ideal program for a rural school of only twelve pupils, in which grades two, seven, and eight are lacking.
4. If your predecessor has left no record of the classification of the pupils, what will you do the first morning? How can you have your pupils fairly well classified by the second day?
5. In your opinion should the course of study be based upon a single series of textbooks? State advantages and disadvantages
6. If a rural teacher places most emphasis on directed study, learning, and class instruction-discussion exercises rather than testing recitations, what difference will it make in her educational results?

### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

1. CASWELL, HOLLIS L—*Program Making in Small Elementary Schools*, George Peabody College for Teachers 1930 77 pages 25¢.
- 2 *Course of Study for Elementary Schools*, State Department of Public Instruction, Montana. September, 1931.
3. *Current Practices in the Construction of State Courses of Study*—Bulletin, 1931, No 4. United States Office of Education
4. DUNN, FANNIE W, AND EVERETT, MARCIA A—*Four Years in a Country School*, Bureau of Publications, Teachers College, Columbia University 1926. 173 pages. \$1 40.
5. ELLS, H. L., MOELLER, H C, AND SWAIN, C. C.—*Rural School Management*; Charles Scribner's Sons 1924
6. National Education Association, Department of Rural Education—*Organization of Curriculum for One-Teacher Schools*. February, 1933.
7. *Rural Education Looking Forward*, State of Nebraska, Department of Public Instruction. June, 1933.

Students and teachers who wish to make a special study of this problem should write to the Office of Education, Department of the Interior, Washington, D C, and to various state departments. However, there may be a charge for some of this material which can be

ascertained by making proper inquiry. Write to the Superintendent of Documents, Washington, for the price list of publications relating to education. There is no charge for it. Write to the State Departments of Education of New York, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania for prices of their bulletins on programs for rural schools.

## CHAPTER X

### PROBLEMS RELATING TO CONTROL

In this chapter the term *management* is used in its somewhat narrower meaning as relating particularly to order, control, and discipline. In its broader, more comprehensive aspect management has to do with all teacher and school functions, duties, and relations aside from the specific work of teaching or instruction.

**The field of management.** The school is a business enterprise involving human relationships. In order to carry on the work of the school successfully, it is necessary that plans be made in detail and that teacher and pupils work together with a common purpose. School management in its widest sense comprises several elements of school procedure. It involves, first of all, a consideration of the necessary conditions—physical and social—which promote the true education or development of the child. Under the head of physical conditions, such subjects as heating and ventilating, lighting, the blackboards, the drinking water, and sweeping and cleaning are of basic importance. The mere enumeration of certain necessary conditions indicates the need for management. Beside favorable conditions there is the question of the mechanics of the school—the program, the movement of classes, and similar problems. A successful teacher takes note of all such matters, gives thought to them, and makes definite plans. Here we also find the problem of laying out the work and getting it done, the latter involving the comprehensive problem of interests, motivation, and dynamic teaching. Finally, the general spirit or emotional atmosphere of any school is of well-recognized importance. Proper management seeks to produce a wholesome tone, assuring an atmosphere of co-operative activity and of good will, and resulting in right ideals, habits, and attitudes.

**Acquiring the art.** The writer has known teachers, both in the grades and in the high school, who have looked upon a study of school management with more or less of indifference and disdain. That is not the attitude of any thoughtful teacher. School management is necessary and of vital importance. It involves many details which require study, because it can be learned in no other way. It is true that many teachers learn something of this art by the trial-and-error method, which is more or less wasteful of time and effort. It is, moreover, entirely unfair to the pupils on whom the unskillful teacher does her practicing. What should we think of a physician who learned his science and art of medicine by merely practicing on his unprotected patients? As a matter of fact, sensible people do not employ a quack. But what about quack teachers? School patrons, as well as educators, are gradually coming to see that no rural teacher should begin her work without a course of professional training, which always includes management as well as method.

**Need for standards.** Today, more than ever before, standards of progress and achievement are being established in school work as in other lines of human endeavor. We now have scales in spelling and writing, for example, which enable us to judge quite accurately of the work of an individual or of a class. We are also using score cards, both for the purpose of recording judgments and as a means of stimulating to better effort. In the management of a rural school, certain standards of what is right are now well recognized by experts in this field of education. As to physical conditions we have arrived at rather definite conclusions concerning the building itself, the heating and ventilation, and the blackboards. The daily program for the average rural school is now almost beyond the stage of experiment, although there is diversity of practice. During recent years careful students of the problem have come to the definite conclusion that the old type of program, comprising twenty to thirty "recitations," is entirely wrong. The new emphasis upon individualized teaching and learning, including skillfully directed study activities, makes the traditional program an

obsolete form of school procedure. In other chapters of this book standards are set up for the guidance of the rural teacher. Rural school supervisors know very well that the standards used in a modern city school in the matter of class movements, class control, and class procedure will not give good results in an average country school. What we need is a special set of standards, both in procedures and management for the one-room rural school.

**Physical conditions.** A good rural teacher is particular to have the physical conditions as nearly right as possible. This means that she will keep her room well ventilated at all times. She will air it out thoroughly at all intermissions, and she will be careful to operate the ventilating system intelligently. She will see that there is plenty of light and that no child faces a strong light. Seats will be adjusted to individual pupils, as far as possible. Pure, clean, fresh drinking water will be provided. The building will be kept clean and neat, and the sweeping and dusting will be done thoroughly every day. The health of the child will be a main consideration with an intelligent rural teacher. Proper physical conditions will aid the teacher in matters of management and control much more than she realizes at the start.

**Seating pupils.** It is best to have adjustable single desks if they can be readjusted to the needs of the different pupils. So far as management is concerned pupils should be seated so that temptations to disorder will be reduced to the minimum. It looks well to have pupils arranged by classes or according to size, but sometimes the teacher must depart from this plan in order to promote the ends of management. However, no child should sit in a seat where his feet do not touch the floor, and no child should sit all day in a stooping posture. The nearer edge of the desk should be about two inches back of the front edge of the seat. If the nonadjustable seats and desks are used, then only those of the same size should be used in the same row. In an average rural school four or five different sizes will be needed. Teacher and student are here referred to Chapter VI.

in this volume and to Chapter XVI in the author's *The Country Teacher at Work*

**Problem of rules.** No doubt the teacher will need rules for her own guidance; she may find it very profitable to formulate a set of rules governing the system and machinery of her school. Such rules are entirely different from those which have to do with the conduct of pupils. If a teacher makes a rule that every pupil who whispers will be required to remain after school, she is tying her own hands. It is usually unsafe to make rules concerning conduct, especially with penalties attached. The best way to handle such matters is by individual treatment of individual cases. Do not advertise the fact that you will punish thus and so, but mete out the punishment as the occasion demands. Rules pertaining to examinations, marks, or promotions are very different matters, fraught with less danger. A teacher must never make a rule unless she is sure that she can enforce it. A rule must be fair and reasonable, and *it must have the public sentiment of the school back of it*. Otherwise the teacher will be making a bid for a contest between herself and her pupils, which no wise teacher ever does.

**What is good order?** Teachers have different ideas of what constitutes good order. Some apply the pin-drop test and others are willing to give the children a great deal of freedom. Some try to eliminate all whispering and others believe that it is proper for pupils to communicate about necessary school business or work. If a rural teacher is able to make use of profitable problem-project procedures or an activities program, in whole or in part, and thus effectively motivate the work, she will have but little trouble with the question of order. It is no doubt true, however, that the average rural teacher at the present time is not qualified by personality, training, or experience to administer more than a greatly modified activities curriculum, notwithstanding certain opinions to the contrary. Moreover, the rural school environment is not now favorable for such a type of work, as a rule. There is something radically wrong with the teacher's spirit, aims, and plans, if she needs to give

much attention to order. In an orderly school the children are busy of their own volition. They are not doing things simply to please the teacher, but they are working out problems which are of real interest to them personally. A school is orderly in the best way when the idea of order is a secondary one, both with the teacher and with the pupils. Educative seatwork and plenty of it should help to solve this problem with the smaller children. At the present time many rural teachers are making extensive use of a great variety of workbooks. These are usually of real educational value and are used with children of all ages, but particularly with those above the second grade. Every child who is not profitably busy in some way would be better off out of doors, when the weather is favorable.

**Disorderly teachers.** There are many varieties of disorderly teachers. Some teachers are constantly throwing monkey wrenches into the gearing instead of pouring oil into the bearings. A noisy, loud-talking teacher is always a disorderly one. By her coarse, heavy tones she jars the physical atmosphere and the spiritual and emotional as well. Her loud tones prove to be contagious, before long there is a contest going on to see who can talk the loudest, the teacher or the children. A teacher is disorderly, too, if she has an irascible temper. Such a teacher is touchy and easily flies off the handle. She is a bad example for the pupils; she does much to produce a bad spirit or tone. Some teachers are disorderly in their personal bearing. They do not dress neatly and they have, in general, a slovenly appearance. In some way this lack of physical trimness and of good bearing produces a bad mental and moral effect. Sometimes the teacher is a disorderly element because of the extreme styles of hair, dress, and the like, which she affects. She dresses so loudly or in so unrefined a manner that she attracts too much attention to herself. If a teacher keeps her desk and the library shelves in a disorderly condition, the effect will soon be manifest upon the entire school. Good housekeeping is important from the standpoint of order, the teacher's housekeeping abilities constitute a large part of her contribution to the general school situation.

**Disorderly pupils.** Of course there are almost always some disorderly pupils, particularly at the beginning of the year. But it is quite possible to change a disorderly child into an orderly one by proper treatment and training. Many pupils are disorderly because they have never been taught correct ideals and standards of order. It is rare, indeed, to find a pupil who persists in disorderly practices simply out of a spirit of meanness. A good deal of disorder comes from the fact that pupils are unable to study effectively; there is lack of proper assignments. Many teachers could solve their problems of disorder if they would make more extensive use of the study-recitation and of directed study. If a pupil persists in disorderly conduct, disturbing others in so doing, he may need to be given drastic treatment. Sometimes such pupils should have certain privileges taken from them. Again, a private interview, in which the various elements of the difficulty are carefully and calmly discussed, will bring about the desired reform. In no case should a teacher permit the disorderly conduct to continue indefinitely. A pupil who persistently whispers, who does not get his lessons, who disturbs others, cannot and must not be tolerated. In such cases the teacher should make a diagnosis of her own weaknesses as well as of those of the pupil. Many times the difficulty is one that pertains to teaching. If a child is interested in his work, he will rarely be troublesome. Poor teaching is a bid for disorder.

**Movements of pupils.** Pupils should be trained to move in orderly lines. Such training is a part of the general educational procedure. When pupils go to class they should pass in order, to the teacher's "stand—pass—be seated," or other appropriate signals. Some teachers use the vocal signals, *one, two, three*. Whatever plan is used, there should be a general agreement and understanding, and all should obey promptly. In no case should a teacher use a jangling call bell. At recess times pupils should pass out in good order. Sometimes a boy or girl may play a march on the organ or piano—an excellent plan. After recess is over pupils may form in line and march to their seats.

in orderly fashion. If a teacher will persist in some carefully considered system of pupil movement, she will find that the general effect upon the spirit and control of the entire school is wholesome and beneficial. There are supervisors, superintendents, principals, and teachers who are not in accord with these suggestions, but the author is convinced that for the average rural teacher such a plan is both proper and feasible. It is good character training and works no hardship on anyone. It is decidedly not a waste of time, and both teacher and pupils should take pride in doing it well. Otherwise, it would better be omitted.

**Teacher leadership.** The teacher is understood to be the leader. In order to act the part of leader, the teacher must think, plan, and execute. A leader needs poise and self-control. A leader must be sympathetic, but also firm. If a teacher can be fair, frank, and firm with all her pupils, she will do much to promote her leadership and influence. To be a leader, a teacher must make plans carefully and carry them out through the co-operation of the pupils. True leadership is far removed from anything which savors of the mere boss. A true leader does not dominate. The old-time schoolmaster was not always a leader. He was often an autocrat, a czar. He did not secure and he apparently did not seek co-operation. His word was law and the pupils obeyed through a sense of fear. Such methods are not the methods of true leadership. When a teacher is the genuine leader in her school and community, she secures adherence to her program because it is a correct program, on the whole, and because she convinces her patrons and pupils of the justness of her cause. Teacher leadership in rural communities is a very much needed element in solving the rural school problem. What is needed most of all is the leadership of ideas, and of a strong, virile, positive character.

**Habit and routine.** Very much of a teacher's work has to do with the formation of habits. If a teacher has an orderly school, it will be because she and her pupils have orderly habits. Spasmodic activity, doing something today and forgetting

to do it tomorrow, will never result in good order. The orderly teacher carefully plans out her activities and then makes a serious effort each day to do things exactly as planned. Many a teacher has a noisy, whispering school simply because she lacks the habit of firmness herself. To establish habits in school children requires persistency and self-control on the teacher's part. Uniformity and regularity of action constitute the only means of habituation. The mechanical procedures of the school should be routinized as soon as possible, in order to save time and energy.

**Modern co-operation.** So much depends in our modern American social organism upon the active, co-operative participation of every citizen, that the school should unquestionably prepare boys and girls for this type of society. Pupils must be trained to be active participants rather than passive recipients. Such training can be secured only by shaping the program of the school in such a way that pupils take the initiative as much as possible. The socialized recitation is a move in the direction of such co-operative training, although it is over-worked by some teachers. The school society is also an effective organization in which to develop the virtues of participating citizenship. The playground, with its supervised play, affords many opportunities for teaching boys and girls to do effective teamwork. The school should be a democratic, co-operating institution which prepares boys and girls for active social citizenship.

**The old schoolmaster.** The old schoolmaster has, for the most part, passed away and given place to the young school-mistress. The man teacher in the rural school a generation and more ago had some excellent qualifications for his position, but in other ways he was deficient. Usually he made the children mind; although the obedience he secured was of the forced kind and obtained largely through fear, he still rendered a useful service in this way. He was also, many times at least, a master of the more difficult branches, such as arithmetic and grammar. What he knew he usually knew thoroughly, he often

transmitted his passion for accuracy and mastery to some of the older pupils. He knew nothing at all about primary techniques. He taught reading by the a-b-c method. The old-time schoolmaster often had a good mind, but he knew very little about the art of teaching for the very obvious reason that he made no study of his art as such. He believed that anyone could teach if he only possessed the requisite knowledge. In instruction he taught book knowledge exclusively; in discipline he was monarch of all he surveyed and governed his school as people are governed in any monarchy. He apparently did not understand the fundamental principles of democratic government.

**The new schoolmistress.** The new rural teacher is usually a young girl whose age is somewhere between eighteen and twenty-five years. She has the great advantage of being young along with the disadvantages of immaturity. Her ways of governing her school are largely determined by her own personality or temperament, and by the training which she has received in her own home and from her different teachers. As a rule she has a pleasant, cheerful disposition and is friendly in her relations with the children and patrons. She is likely to appeal to the better nature of the child, and she secures results through natural incentives. She does not use coercion or fear nearly as much as did her old-time male predecessor. This new schoolmistress is more of the Jean Mitchell type. In 1931 Professor Mabel Carney described the typical or the average rural teacher of the United States in the Thirtieth Yearbook of the National Society for the Study of Education, Part I, p. 160. The reader will find this description in the section on securing better teachers, Chapter I.

**Why and when punish.** If a teacher is fortunate enough to possess the right personality she will not need to punish often. If a teacher finds it necessary to punish frequently and is taxing her mind to invent ways of punishment, she may be sure that she is on the wrong track. Such a teacher is animated by a wrong purpose entirely, she must about-face if she is to exert a salutary influence in building up the characters of her boys.

and girls. Of course punishment is sometimes necessary; a teacher must not hesitate to punish a child for his own sake and for the good of the school. E. E. White stated that, in general, punishment may be needed to prevent wrongdoing, and, in particular, to reform the wrongdoer, to deter others from wrongdoing, and to condemn wrongdoing. No good teacher ignores bad conduct. She will not tolerate lying, cheating, profane language on the playground, the mailing of furniture or outbuildings, impertinent responses, or failure to do assigned tasks. So far as possible she will get results through the use of natural incentives, but with some children persistence in wrongdoing must be met with suitable and effective punishment.

**Forms of punishment.** It will be profitable briefly to consider first certain forms of punishment which should *not be used*, some of them being very common with certain teachers.

**Wrong forms of punishment.** *Threatening and nagging* are always ineffective. The teacher who threatens and nags defeats her own purpose, she does not get the results she expects. Moreover, this method of dealing with pupils ultimately begets disrespect, instead of securing good conduct, it actually encourages misconduct.

*Sarcasm and ridicule* cause resentment on the part of all self-respecting boys and girls and are an indication of a sordid spirit. Any teacher who resorts to the use of insulting epithets, such as *blockhead* or *dunce*, needs to revise her thinking and to overhaul her motives and her conscience.

The infliction of *personal indignities* upon the child's body, so-called "appropriate" or "natural" punishments, such as washing out the mouth or tying a cloth over the child's mouth, all savor of the spirit of the barbarous ages. Any teacher who feels the need of such procedures should make up her mind that she is in the wrong business.

The principle of *saturation* was sometimes utilized by the old-time schoolroom czar when the child was compelled to repeat his offense to the point of fatigue. If he was caught chewing gum, for example, he was made to stand before the school and

chew to the point of exhaustion. The coarseness of thought and spirit shown here is revolting to every right-minded teacher, young or old.

It is legitimate and proper to require pupils to make up work which they have neglected to prepare; but it is quite inexcusable to ask a pupil to memorize poetry, for example, because he spent his time whispering. When regular school tasks are used as a means of punishment, the child gets a wrong sense of proportion and of educational values. When a pupil fails to get his work done because of laziness, he should be required to do it and he will see the justice of the requirement. No punishment should result in a wrong attitude on the pupil's part toward school work. The work of the school should be made attractive and not repulsive.

*More or less suitable forms of punishment.* There are several suitable punishments, and *reproof and personal criticism* make one of the best. The teacher who has a good spirit and a genuine regard for the welfare of the child will frequently use kindly, personal, private reproof as a first resort. General, public reproof is much more questionable, and is usually unwise and unnecessary. Children don't like to be "called down" before the entire school; such a course generally produces hardness of heart and justifiable resentment. If the teacher knows the facts of the case, a personal interview will often result in much good. Some of the best teachers find that reproof as a form of punishment serves practically all of their purposes.

*Suspension and expulsion* are sometimes necessary. Suspension is a temporary dismissal from school, say, for two or three days or a week. Expulsion means permanent banishment and is, therefore, a very serious matter. The teacher, in most states, has power to suspend unruly pupils; but expulsion is exclusively the prerogative of the board. Of course no child should be expelled from school unless all other measures have failed. Expulsion means permanent loss of school privileges. A child may be suspended for persistent disobedience, for continued immoral conduct, for refusal and failure to do the required

work, or for continued impertinence. Whenever a teacher suspends a pupil from school, the board and the parents should be notified at once and full and satisfactory reasons should be given for such action. When suspension fails and a child proves to be incorrigible, there is no way out except permanent dismissal. A child who is persistently disobedient to the extreme of insubordination, or who is guilty of flagrant and repeated immoral conduct, or who will not do the work of the school, has no right in the school and is a menace to the rest of the pupils. It is the legal right and the duty of the board to remove such a pupil from school. He should, and no doubt will, find a place in a state reform school.

*Corporal punishment* is permitted by legal enactment in most states; the courts have upheld the teacher repeatedly in the proper administration of such punishment. It should, however, be used only when other means fail, but if a suitable instrument is used in the right way, it may, if occasion demands, be anything but a cruel form of punishment. If more teachers would do as well by certain refractory culprits as a certain conscientious grandfather did by his willful, disobedient grandson, their pupils would rise up in the years to follow and bless those wise teachers who did not "spare the rod and spoil the child." A teacher must be careful never to whip a pupil in anger and never to leave marks of any kind on his body. Be sure you are right; young or old, *be sure you are right*, be sure that you will have the co-operation of the parents and the approval of the board. Then do it well; that is to say, make it effective or don't use corporal punishment at all. Most pupils should never be punished corporally, and the teacher should deliberate long and carefully as to the probable effect upon the child and upon the school. In administering corporal punishment the public sentiment of the school and of the community must be entirely on the teacher's side; otherwise she may be playing a losing game. Try other measures first. *The best teachers never find it necessary to inflict bodily punishment of any sort*. It is well always to bear that in mind.

*Deprivation of privileges* is a natural punishment that is effective if the privilege is real and if the child can be reached in this way. It is a genuine punishment to some children not to be allowed to perform certain monitorial duties, not to be allowed to play with the others, to be refused their part on a program, to be deprived of the teacher's confidence and trust. A skillful teacher can make profitable use of this form of punishment. If a pupil has been allowed to get interesting stories from the library after his lessons are prepared and if he loves to read, it will be a genuine punishment if the teacher withdraws this privilege temporarily because he neglected his work in order to read stories. Whenever possible the punishment must be adapted to the offender and to the nature of his offense if it is to prove availing and reforming.

*Detention* at recess or after school may or may not be proper, according to the nature of the misdemeanor. If a pupil wastes his school time, uses profane language on the school ground, or mistreats his playmates, it may be proper temporarily to deprive him of the privilege of playing with the others. He must, however, be allowed to go out of doors by himself, as he needs the fresh air and the exercise as well as the others. No teacher has a moral or a legal right to deprive a child of his play time. Keeping the pupil after school is usually a great mistake, if parents ask to have the child come home as soon as school closes, the teacher cannot legally keep him. In all these matters the teacher is not to consult her own convenience, but rather the welfare of the individual child. As a matter of fact keeping in at recess or after school is a form of punishment which should be used but rarely, it is usually the resort of weak teachers.

*Making restitution* is a natural and a legitimate form of punishment. If a pupil destroys or injures any school property or the property of other pupils, he should make it good. Both parents and teacher should see to it that the restitution is a personal sacrifice, a result of the child's own effort and saving. If the parents pay the bill, the child does not suffer; there will be no change of ideals and hence of conduct.

Read Moorehouse, Page, Salisbury, and White on the subject of punishment

**Need for obedience.** No school is successful unless the pupils cheerfully and promptly obey the directions and the wishes of the teacher. Willing obedience is the very corner stone of the school structure. So a teacher must secure true obedience or she is indeed a failure. In order to secure this result a teacher must always be careful that her requirements are reasonable and just. Most children have a sense of justice which is keener and more accurate than many teachers understand or are willing to admit. If a teacher is thoughtful in what she asks of her pupils and is uniformly firm day after day, she will have but little trouble. This means that the teacher herself must obey the law, she must have a truly obedient spirit, herself. She must be able to think out a wise and suitable program of school work and she must exercise personal self-control. Poise and serenity of spirit on the teacher's part will aid much in securing obedient responses from the pupils.

#### **Don't do these things.**

- 1 Don't stand too near the class.
- 2 Don't censure trifling errors severely
- 3 Don't complain or grumble
- 4 Don't give commands when you might give suggestions.
- 5 Don't dispute with an angry parent before the school
- 6 Don't make spiteful remarks about parents
7. Don't try to teach without good order
- 8 Don't call for order in general terms
- 9 Don't be strict today and lax tomorrow
- 10 Don't punish without explanation.
- 11 Don't allow whispering
- 12 Don't talk too much. Don't talk to your pupils when you are standing before an unshaded window
- 13 Don't fail to get acquainted with the people in the district, particularly the members of the school board.
- 14 Don't forget that teaching and governing a school are phases of a difficult art which require study and painstaking effort
- 15 Don't let your school run away with you. *Manage the school whatever else you do or fail to do.*

16. Don't forget that the best way to manage is to *give pupils plenty of interesting and profitable work to do*. The teacher who succeeds in working up an abiding interest in study will have little trouble with discipline.

#### Criticisms of supervisors.

- 1 Pupils are not prepared for the work they are undertaking to do.
2. The school is not well organized
3. The pupils run to the teacher to ask questions while she is conducting a recitation
- 4 The teacher is indifferent, lacks interest.
- 5 The teacher spends too much time and exhausts her energies in attending parties
- 6 The teacher does not keep a neat and orderly desk
7. The teacher does not call school on time in the morning, at noon, or at recess
8. The teacher is slow and poky
9. The teacher fails to see or take notice of disorder
10. The teacher has not a strong grip upon the school, but "fights it out" every day as best she can
- 11 The people of the district are not interested in the school, and the teacher does not know how to improve the school sentiment in the community
- 12 The teacher is timid, afraid of the pupils, the school board, and the patrons
- 13 The teacher lacks life and animation, and the school is dead
14. The outbuildings are in bad condition
- 15 The room is not properly heated, lighted, or ventilated
16. The teacher does the janitor work, and she does not do it well  
The fire is not built in time to have the room warm in the morning, the sweeping is not properly done, and the dusting is not properly attended to

#### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1. Make out a set of rules and regulations for your *own personal use*, by which you would like to systematize your rural school.
2. Write several adjectives describing the kind of a spirit you would like in your school. Name some evidences of a bad school spirit. Indicate the chief causes in producing school spirit.
- 3 Draw a diagram showing how you will seat twenty-four pupils in a rural school having all the eight grades so that each child will have a comfortable seat. Write in the names, ages, and grades of the pupils. You will have single desks of four different sizes and non-

adjustable Four pupils in the four upper grades are inclined to be somewhat disturbing

4. What is the happy medium between the pin-drop test and the extreme-freedom idea? Consider the bearing of project teaching or an activity program upon the problem of control in a rural school

5 Name some of the principal attributes of the teacher who is a real leader in her school and in the community Read Bagley and Keith's *An Introduction to Teaching*, The Macmillan Company, pp. 325-326, 358, and 362

6 Distinguish between a democratic and an autocratic school regime Why are co-operative methods best in training boys and girls for effective citizenship?

#### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

1. EGGLESTON, EDWARD—*The Hoosier Schoolmaster*, Grossett and Dunlap. 1902
- 2 KIRKPATRICK, M G —*The Rural School from Within*, J B. Lippincott Company 1917.
3. LOWTH, F. J—*The Country Teacher at Work*; The Macmillan Company 1930
4. MOOREHOUSE, FRANCES M —*The Discipline of the School*, D. C. Heath and Company 1914
5. SALISBURY, ALBERT—*School Management*, Row, Peterson and Company 1911.
- 6 STABLETON, J J —*Diary of a Western Schoolmaster*, Ainsworth and Company 1900
7. STEPHENS, D. V—*Phelps and His Teachers*, Hammond and Stephens Company. 1905.

## CHAPTER XI

### A BETTER AND A SOCIALIZED NOONDAY MEAL

For many years large numbers of teachers throughout the United States have been serving hot lunches at noon with definite physical and social benefits to the children in their schools. Whether a rural teacher will carry on this important work depends wholly upon the personality of the individual. Some teachers say that the hot lunch is too much trouble and is not practicable. However, the author has known scores of teachers who have been able to render a real service in this way and have enjoyed doing it. The social values of the hot lunch should not be ignored. Any teacher who has the right spirit and the necessary skills may render a genuine educational service through the agency of the hot lunch. Anyone can make a beginning and learn more and more through experience with this important part of the daily program—important particularly during the winter months.

#### Nature and importance.

By the hot lunch is meant that part of the school child's dinner which is prepared and served in the schoolhouse in addition to the lunch brought from home. This additional hot part of the meal may consist of nothing more than hot cocoa or an appetizing, nutritious soup. The kind and quality of the hot food served will depend upon the teacher and upon her ability to secure the co-operation of mothers and children.<sup>1</sup>

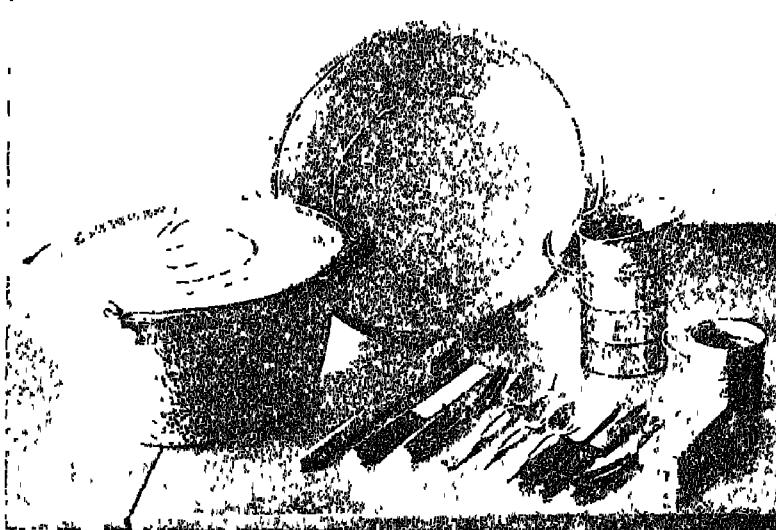
Home Economics Circular No. 13, which may be purchased from the Superintendent of Documents, Washington, D. C., for five cents, states that the advantages of hot food at noon are many:

<sup>1</sup> STILLMAN, GLADYS—*The Hot Lunch in Rural Schools*, Home Economics Extension Office, University of Wisconsin, Madison. Miss Stillman has kindly given the author permission to use her bulletin freely.

The child always eats just as much of the cold food as he did previously and receives as much additional nourishment as the total nutritive value of the hot food given him. Since it is almost impossible to overfeed a rural child who walks from 1 to 3 miles in winter weather, besides playing at noon and recesses and doing some chores night and morning, the added nourishment of the school food is greatly to be desired for all children, and especially for those who give evidence of undernourishment. The agreeable flavor of the hot food, its neat service, the social companionship insured where all sit down and eat together, all contribute to the conditions which increase appetite and enhance the palatability of all food eaten.

Dr Mary Swartz Rose of Columbia University says

Feed a growing child properly and you have helped to make a good citizen. Every child has a right to a useful body and mind, but in order to have either he must be given the right kind of food at the proper time.



*Courtesy of College of Agriculture, University of Wisconsin*  
**Hot lunch equipment**

The hot lunch properly conducted results in better health, greater enjoyment of the noonday meal, improved eating habits, better table manners, added facilities for health instruction.

and training, better school work in general, and more regular school attendance

**Equipment needed.** In Miss Stillman's hot lunch bulletin the following items are given as the minimum equipment

1. A two-burner or, better, a three-burner oil stove, which can also be used by the Parent-Teacher Association or the Community Club



*Courtesy of College of Agriculture, University of Wisconsin*

**Hot lunch equipment**

2. A small table or perhaps a substantial dry-goods box. The lower part may be inclosed as a cupboard for the dishes and cutlery. A door in front will keep out dust and mice. Lard tins or cracker boxes may serve as containers for materials attractive to mice

3. Dishes for work in preparing food. A granite or, better, aluminum kettle with cover to fit, of a size according to number of pupils to be served, large long-handled spoon, teaspoon or measuring spoon, tablespoon, measuring cup, quart measure, fork, paring knives, potato masher, vegetable brush, can opener, teakettle, oven. A few baking tins are useful, but not absolutely necessary. A one-compartment fireless cooker made by the pupils will aid in decreasing the labor involved and in preparing the lunch. See next section on making and using such an equipment

4 Dishes for serving. For each child a large cup with a handle, a spoon, and a paper napkin. These may be brought from home by each child and kept at school, or they may be supplied as part of the equipment. If these dishes are a part of the school equipment, then a low, light-weight aluminum cup of coffee-cup size for each child is the best. It is useful in serving most of the recommended dishes. Although aluminum costs somewhat more, it is the best ware to purchase and the most economical, all things considered. For serving the food, especially soup and cocoa, a large pitcher is useful.

5 Cleaning equipment. Dish towels, dish cloths, cleanser, dish pans, soap, sapolio

**Making and using a fireless cooker.** The fireless cooker has definite values for every household, it makes the kitchen comfortable and saves fuel, time, and labor. The making of such a piece of equipment may be a good manual training project for older pupils in those rural schools where the teacher is mature and competent.

*Materials needed<sup>1</sup>*

1. The outside container. Any good-sized box or bucket with a tight cover—a grocery box, a butter firkin, a wooden candy bucket, a 100-pound lard can, or a new garbage can

2. Packing material. Soft hay, excelsior, ground cork, sawdust, tightly crumpled newspapers, or any other good non-conducting material that can be packed in closely. This packing material forms a nest for the cooking vessel

3. The nest lining: A metal or enamel bucket with sheet asbestos to cover the bucket. The bucket must have straight sides and a lid, and it must be of such a size as to allow at least three inches of packing material between it and the outside container at top, bottom, and sides

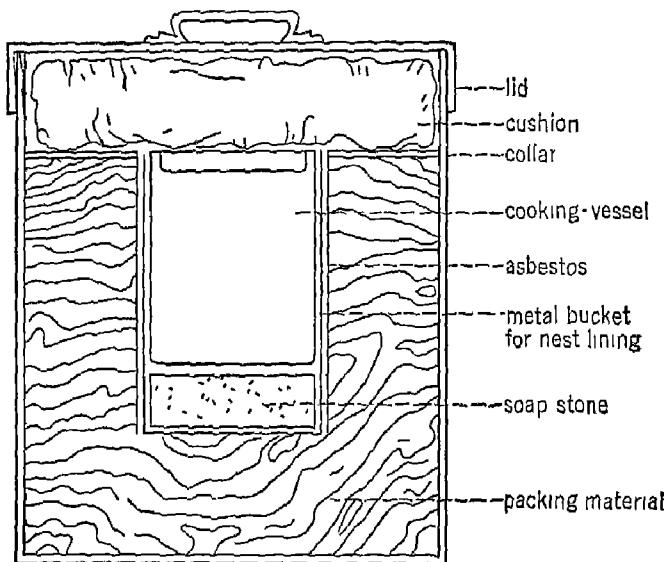
4. The cooking-vessel. A tight-lid vessel to fit closely into the nest lining and yet slip in and out easily, or two or three of the small ones especially made for the fireless. The best kinds are of enamel, granite, or aluminum

5. Cardboard. to make the collar.

<sup>1</sup> From *Farmers' Bulletin No 771, Homemade Fireless Cookers and Their Use*. This bulletin is now out of print.

6. The cushion. Denim or muslin stuffed with the packing material. This cushion is to be pressed down across the top under the outside lid of the container

7. The two soapstone disks: purchasable at a hardware store. They are not needed for all cooking, but with them you can cook more quickly and in greater variety



*Homemade fireless cooker*

*How it is made* (1) Line the container with newspaper if a wooden box is used (2) Pack the bottom of the container compactly with a layer of packing material to the depth of three inches or more (3) Cut a circle of asbestos, two inches larger than the nest liner. Place the asbestos mat in the center of the packing. (4) Cut a strip of asbestos big enough to cover completely the outside walls of the bucket, which is to serve as the nest lining, and tie it in place (5) Place the bucket with its asbestos covering in the center of the asbestos mat Hold in place and tightly fill in the space between it and the walls of the outside container with the packing material Pack in solidly to within one-half inch of the top of the bucket The success of

your cooker depends largely upon the tightness with which you crowd in the packing material, which prevents the heat from escaping from your hot food (6) Cut a piece of cardboard to fit in the outside container. Cut a hole in the middle of it which will fit closely over the bucket which fits the nest lining This "collar" holds the packing material in place (7) Make a cushion for the top by cutting two pieces of cloth the size of the outside container and putting them together with a straight strip of cloth three inches wide Stuff with the packing material. (8) Outside finishings If a box is used for the outside container, the lid should be hinged and fastened down with a hook. If it is of wood, paint it or stain it a dark color. Casters make it convenient to move about

*Some cautions* Don't let the food or dishes cool before you put them in the fireless The food will not cook unless there is enough heat shut up with it Reheat the food that requires long cooking, if it cools before it is finished Reheat the food before serving it, if necessary A small quantity of food cools quickly, so either use the disks or put a small vessel containing the food in the regular cooking vessel and surround it with hot water

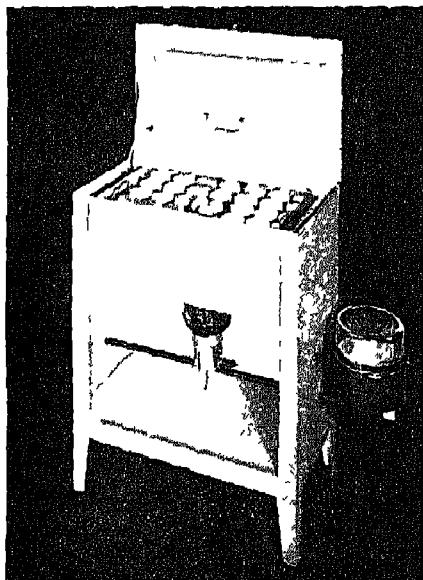
Soapstone disks will increase the usefulness of your cooker They can be heated above the boiling point of water, when shut up in the fireless cooker, they furnish the heat which cooks the food If you made your fireless according to directions, you can safely use the disks Heat them very hot but do not let them get red hot for fear of cracking With one below and one on top of the cooking vessel you will be able to roast meat or even bake bread or puddings Without the disks your fireless is useful only for certain kinds of food—cereals, beans, pot roast, stews, things that can be cooked in water *Use the hot soapstone or cast-iron disks with caution* Handle with the metal holders and carriers. *There must be no fire hazards in a rural school*

A successful hot lunch plan.<sup>1</sup> The public health nurse of Ramsey County, Minnesota, at one time instituted a prac-

<sup>1</sup> Reported by Miss Edith Lathrop of the United States Bureau of Education in a government bulletin

ticable plan for serving hot lunches in the rural schools of her county, which she called "The Pint Jar Method Hot Lunch":

Each child brings some particular kind of food in a tightly sealed pint fruit jar. Upon reaching school the jar is set on a rack in a clothes boiler. The clothes boiler is partly filled with water and then placed on a two-burner oil stove. At the morning recess the wicks are lighted, and by noon the contents of the jars are hot.



*Courtesy of the Waterman-Waterbury Company*

#### The lunch warmer

Most teachers use a homemade boiler equipment quite successfully

kinds of fruit and vegetables, macaroni, rice, creamed eggs, baked beans, or stewed meat

The equipment required for this method of serving hot lunches consists of a two-burner oil stove, clothes boiler, rack (water should reach half way up the first layer of jars, the second layer being heated by steam), hot can lifter, towel to wipe jars, and newspapers for desk on which to set jars upon lifting them from the boiler. Each child is urged to include a large dessert spoon

The children are seated at their desks during the luncheon period. Monitors pass the jars. The cold lunches in the basket are supplemented with the warm contents of the jars. Each child has his initials scratched on the cover of his jar in order to insure identification.

It is recommended that the children bring in their jars the following kinds of food: cocoa, milk, soups, certain

in his lunch basket with which to eat from the jar, as a teaspoon is too short

Both teachers and children like this method because of its simplicity. It eliminates cooking, odors, and dishwashing. It is economical and has proven very satisfactory. This plan has been successfully used in many states by hundreds of rural teachers.

**Practical suggestions for the teacher.** *Secure co-operation and share responsibility.* Before beginning the work call a meeting of the mothers and talk over your plans. Impress upon them the many advantages, physical and mental, that can be derived from the serving of a warm lunch at noon. The objects are not only to add a warm dish to an otherwise cold and unappetizing lunch, but to teach the proper cooking and serving of foods and their nutritive value or relation to the body; to teach table manners, politeness, and cleanliness; to draw the pupils together in a pleasant social hour, to attract children to school who might otherwise stay away, and to enable all to go back to their work with body and mind refreshed. Only when the community realizes the benefits the children will derive from hot lunches, will it co-operate with you and take the responsibility of furnishing you with supplies.

*Provide equipment enough for two to four girls to work at a time.* The necessary funds for a few utensils may be obtained by giving some sort of an entertainment or a box social. If you do not have a stove with a flat top on which you can cook, you can buy a one- or a two-burner oil stove. There is a good list of simple equipment given in many state manuals. Each child may bring from home a cup and saucer, plate, spoon, knife, and fork. These need not be of the best china or silverware in the home, but they should not be so nicked or cracked as to lessen their attractiveness or to develop carelessness in dishwashing. A cupboard in which to keep this equipment can easily be made by the boys from dry-goods boxes which may be obtained free or for a few cents from a local merchant. The girls can make curtains for the cupboard of some cheap material, heavy enough to keep out the dust.

*Choose only simple, nutritious foods, not fancy, dainty dishes.* Teach them to cook the things which they might serve their fathers and brothers at home. Study foods, find out which ones build up the body, which give us energy, and which regulate our body processes. Study the digestion of foods and the methods of preparation which make them more easily digested.

*Plan the lessons at least a week in advance.* Have the pupils show the list to their mothers, so that they may know what the children are expected to bring and have it on hand the following week. The mothers, knowing the week's menu, can avoid sending in the child's lunch too much protein on a day when a protein food is cooked at school, or too much starchy or fat foods when such foods are prepared.

*Avoid taking too much time from the regular session.* Have pupils pare vegetables before school or at recess. Shortly before noon have girls begin the preparation of food so that it will be cooked at the time of intermission. When the bell rings the pupils pass out and wash hands, spread paper napkins on the desks, get their cup and plate, and sit down quietly to wait until served with the lunch which they brought from home. While eating discuss the different methods of preparing the food, its nutritive value, and its proper time or place in the diet. State also the lesson for the next day. While some of the girls wash dishes, have others tidy the room. The boys may get water, empty the garbage, or perhaps help with the dishes. Boys sometimes make as good cooks as girls, so they should also do their share of cooking.

*Correlate cooking with other subjects.* In geography, when studying China, prepare rice at noon; associate Italy with the preparation of macaroni. In the physiology class study the digestion of the rice and macaroni and their use to the body.

*Give credit for home work.* Encourage the children to cook at home and to report on their work. Give a certain number of points for cooking, cleaning, or personal hygiene, and post a list or record of points. This will do more to make the family in-

terested in the school than any amount of persuasion on the part of the teacher.

*Vary the dish from day to day.* If your children are particularly fond of cream soups, do not destroy their appetite for them by serving potato soup every day. Try one of the following in the same proportion Green peas, cooked and mashed; corn, cooked and chopped fine; beets, cooked and chopped fine; spinach, cooked and chopped fine; celery, cooked and chopped fine; beans, baked and mashed; asparagus, cooked and chopped; tomatoes, cooked with one-half teaspoon of soda and passed through strainer; dried peas or lentils, soaked overnight, cooked, and mashed. Any of these may also be served with a thick, white sauce, as a creamed vegetable.

*Make the mealtime a social time* Sit down with your pupils and be served with them. Encourage happy conversation. No hour of the day affords the teacher a better chance to learn to know her pupils and to get close to them through sympathy and understanding than does the noon hour.

*If you are not a first-class cook, it does not mean that you cannot teach a few simple dishes* Send for the *Farmers' Bulletins*, published in your state, or by the Department of Agriculture, Washington, D. C.

Miss Stillman says that it is necessary to observe the following points in order that the hot lunch may be a success: (1) Make the work part of every day's program, not an additional task for teacher and pupils (2) Create a demand from parents and pupils for the hot lunch. Invite mothers to the school and plan lunches with them (3) Let the whole community share in your project (4) Prepare simple, nutritious dishes. (5) Make detailed plans for co-operation in the community and think more of the success of the project than of getting credit for it.

**The balanced meal.** Throughout life our bodily and mental activity makes two demands. (a) material to build up and to repair wear and tear; (b) fuel to burn, making activity possible, heat being converted to energy or power to do work. The body, therefore, needs two chief classes of foods or nutrients: (a) pro-

teins for building; (b) carbohydrates and fats to maintain temperature and to furnish energy for activity. A three-fold division into proteins, carbohydrates, and fats is usually given. In addition to these certain mineral salts and all of the vitamins (A, B, C, D, E, G) must be furnished in fruits, vegetables, and milk. A meal, properly balanced, consists of food containing proteins, carbohydrates, and fats in the right proportions. The ratio established by Atwater of the tissue-building to the energy-giving foods, is 1 to  $6\frac{1}{2}$ . This ratio we find in a bowl of cream-of-potato soup served with croutons or wafers. See recipes for potato and other soups in this chapter.

### An informational outline.

#### *A. Getting started*

1. Plan at mothers' meeting. *a.* To obtain equipment. *b.* To care for equipment *c.* To obtain kerosene.

2. Discuss at mothers' meeting *a.* Time required. *b.* Division of work. *c.* Nature of food *d.* Co-operation of mothers.

3 Ideas to stress at mothers' meeting *a.* Need for co-operation. *b.* Better health. *c.* Good use of part of noon hour. *d.* Correlation with other subjects. *e.* Increased interest *f.* Learning food facts. *g.* Better manners *h.* Knowledge of cooking.

#### *B Managing the enterprise*

1 Equipment (see page 202)

2. Record of supplies, as for example

*a.* John—3 lbs. carrots—money value

*b.* Mary— $\frac{1}{8}$  lb butter—money value

*c.* Jane—2 qts milk—money value, etc.

3 Duty schedule (Note. pupils are numbered 1-10)

	<i>M</i>	<i>T</i>	<i>W</i>	<i>T</i>	<i>F</i>
<i>a.</i> Preparing food . . .	(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
<i>b.</i> Cooking food . . .	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
<i>c.</i> Serving food . . .	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
<i>d.</i> Washing dishes. . . .	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)
<i>e.</i> Wiping dishes . . .	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)
<i>f.</i> Replacing dishes . . .	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)
<i>g.</i> Straightening up . . .	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)	(1)

## A BETTER AND A SOCIALIZED NOONDAY MEAL 211

4. Five lessons    a. Potato soup, b creamed carrots, c. cocoa,  
d baked apples, e creamed codfish.

### C. Points to remember

1. Interest and co-operation indispensable
- 2 No need of interference with other work
- 3 No additional expense
- 4 Size of school no limitation
- 5 Varied benefits (physical, mental, moral)

### D. Securing food supplies

1. Make list a week in advance
- 2 Appoint a leader
3. Appoint a bookkeeper
- 4 Bookkeeper to credit family or pupil
- 5 Charge portion costs to pupils
- 6 No hardships should be permitted
- 7 Consider special needs of families

### Recommended recipes.

#### I COCOA (Serves 12)

$\frac{1}{2}$ cup cocoa	2 cups boiling water
$\frac{1}{2}$ cup sugar	8 cups or 2 quarts milk

Mix cocoa and sugar well. Add the boiling water and boil from three to five minutes. This cooks the starch in the cocoa and makes it easier to digest. Add the milk and set in a pan of hot water to cook till ready to serve. This may be prepared before school and reheated in time to serve. If a scum forms on top, beat with egg beater.

#### II WHITE SAUCE (Serves 12)

3 cups milk	6 tablespoons fat
6 tablespoons flour	$1\frac{1}{2}$ teaspoons salt
$\frac{1}{2}$ teaspoon paprika	

Scald the milk. Add the fat, salt, and flour, mix smooth with an equal amount of cold milk. Cook five minutes to break up the starch in the flour, stirring constantly to prevent lumping and burning. Season and serve. This recipe allows about 4 tablespoons of sauce to each pupil. It may be used for baked potatoes, creamed potatoes, and creamed vegetables.

## 212 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

### III. POTATO SOUP (Serves 12)

7 medium-sized potatoes	2 tablespoons fat
3 cups boiling water	4 teaspoons salt
1 small onion	4 tablespoons flour
6 cups or 1½ quarts milk	1 teaspoon celery salt
	a bit of bayleaf

Peel potatoes, cut in small pieces, and cook till soft in 6 cups boiling salted water (1½ teaspoons salt). Without draining mash the potatoes; add the fat, thinly sliced onion, and flour mixed smooth with equal parts of cold water, and boil five minutes to cook the starch in the flour. Stir constantly to prevent lumping and burning. Add the milk and bring to boiling point. Season and serve.

### IV. TOMATO SOUP (Serves 12)

1 quart can tomatoes	½ cup flour
½ teaspoon soda	6 cups or 1½ quarts milk
½ teaspoon salt	½ teaspoon pepper
1 small onion	½ teaspoon celery salt
½ cup fat	bit of bayleaf

Heat tomatoes and mash well with fork or potato masher. Add soda, onion, salt, fat, and flour mixed with equal amounts of cold water, and boil five minutes to cook starch in flour. Stir constantly to prevent lumping and burning. Scald milk in double boiler and just before serving turn hot tomato mixture gradually into the hot milk, stirring all the time to prevent curdling. Season and serve immediately.

### V OATMEAL (Serves 12)

2 cups oatmeal—8 cups boiling water—1 teaspoon salt

Bring water and salt to boil in top of double boiler. Add oatmeal slowly and boil five minutes directly over fire, stirring constantly to prevent lumping and burning. Set over bottom part of double boiler and cook three hours; ½ cup washed raisins may be added the last half hour of cooking to give variety. Serve with warm milk and sugar. Oatmeal cooked in a fireless cooker is delicious

(Note. Measurements are level in these recipes.)

The lunch from home. Various containers are used for the teacher's and the school-child's lunch. Sometimes it is a box, which should be of odorless material, durable, light, easy to carry, and having means of ventilation. Tin boxes or pails with perforated lids are the best because they can be thoroughly

scalded and aired, as they should be. Fiber boxes are easily soiled and cannot be cleaned. Homemade lunch containers can be used and thrown in the stove after using. Baskets may be used although the food dries out quickly and is apt to freeze in cold weather. The lunch must be well wrapped to protect it from dust and insects. The folding lunch box of metal is used quite extensively. It should be well aired daily.

Children can be taught to pack their own lunches, and such instruction can be given at school. Plain paper napkins are almost indispensable. The various parts of the lunch should be wrapped in oiled paper; liquid foods should be placed in tightly sealed jars. Children should be taught the importance of thoroughly cleansing and airing the lunch container every day.

A well-planned school-lunch box should have one or more foods from each of the following lists:

*Bread sandwiches with:* either American cheese, ground cheese mixed with bacon fat, cottage cheese and peanut butter, cottage cheese and chopped pickles, cold meat in thin slices; peanut butter, baked beans; bacon; bacon and cottage cheese, eggs, hard cooked, chopped, and seasoned, fish made into a paste and seasoned, or lettuce or cress

*Fruit or vegetables* Raw fruit (apples, oranges), cooked fruit in jelly glass, baked apple, prunes; canned fruit, raw carrots; tomatoes, celery; radishes, vegetable salads in glass or jar, potato chips.

*Sweets.* Baked custard, cup cakes; cookies, dates, raisins and nuts, figs, prunes, sweet sandwiches of jam, jelly, marmalade, dates, or prunes.

The following are wholesome, nutritious, well-balanced, and appetizing school lunches from home, but they should be supplemented by one or more good hot dishes prepared at school, particularly during the winter months. The quantities of food in the following lunches may need to be increased, depending upon nutritional requirements of the individual.

*a.* A ham sandwich, a jelly sandwich, an apple, and a small piece of plain cake.

*b.* A cottage cheese sandwich, a brown-bread-and-butter sandwich, an orange, a cookie.

- c A chicken sandwich, a graham-bread-and-butter sandwich, one-half cup of apple sauce.
- d. A chopped-egg sandwich, a bread-and-butter sandwich, one-half cup of stewed prunes
- e A peanut-butter sandwich, a jam sandwich, raisins, a cookie
- f A chopped-meat sandwich, a bread-and-butter sandwich, one-half cup canned fruit, gingerbread
- g Sandwiches with sliced tender meat for filling, baked apple, cookies, or a few lumps of sugar
- h Slices of meat loaf or bean loaf, bread-and-butter sandwiches, stewed fruit, small frosted cake
- i Crisp rolls, hollowed out and filled with chopped meat or fish, moistened and seasoned, or mixed with salad dressing, orange, apple, a mixture of sliced fruits, or berries, cake
- j Lettuce or celery sandwiches, one cup custard, jelly sandwiches.
- k Cottage-cheese and chopped-green-pepper sandwiches, or a pot of cream cheese with bread-and-butter sandwiches, peanut-butter sandwiches, fruit, cake
- l Hard-boiled eggs, crisp baking-powder biscuits, celery or radishes, brown-sugar or maple-sugar sandwiches
- m Bottle of milk, thin corn bread and butter, dates, apple
- n Raisin or nut bread with butter, cheese, oranges, maple sugar
- o Baked-bean-and-lettuce sandwiches, apple sauce, sweet chocolate

**Mealtime management and manners.** To get the full advantage of having the pupils eat together and under the eye of the teacher these points should be observed:

1. The room should be thoroughly aired before lunch is eaten
2. The children should wash their hands before eating
3. The desk should be cleared and a paper napkin or a piece of oilcloth spread for a tablecloth
4. The lunch should be spread on the napkin and the lunch pail or box put under the desk, out of sight.
5. Lunch should be eaten in the right order, dessert last.
6. A fork or spoon should be used to carry the food to the mouth.
7. The children should remain in their seats until all have finished eating. This will prevent hasty eating
8. The children should be permitted to drink water with their lunch, but they must not be allowed to swallow their food hurriedly by washing it down with water
9. The children should be taught to eat slowly and quietly. Hasty eating causes indigestion and consequent ill health

10. The conversation should be kept pleasant
11. The teacher's manner of eating will be the standard for the table manners of the pupils, as children are very imitative. The teacher should prepare her lunch at her desk.

The lunch offers an excellent opportunity to overcome peculiar food habits, as the group spirit allows no personal preferences. Through the hot lunch many a child learns to like a nutritious food which he would not touch at home.

Neatness in general appearance, such as clean hands and clean aprons for the cooks, should be encouraged. Simple aprons and holders can be made in the sewing class from toweling or flour sacks. The best standards of dishwashing should be carefully followed.<sup>1</sup>

An organized lunch hour.<sup>2</sup> Why not have an organized lunch hour in every rural school? This will require a little extra planning on the part of the teacher, but the results will more than compensate for the time and effort. When we consider the rural child's long day away from home, we think of some of the family routine of which he is deprived. Often he goes the entire day without washing his hands. He eats a quick lunch, sometimes sitting on damp, chilly ground, or sometimes on the run to the playground. Couldn't all teachers do something to make the noonday lunch a more homelike situation? Here are some suggestions:

1. Children form in line for washing. If the school is large, one pupil may pour the water on each child's hands as he holds them over the washbasin. He need not put his hands into the water, thus constant emptying of the dish is unnecessary. The water may be poured from a dipper, or, preferably from a teakettle in which it has been heated to about the right temperature. Two pourings are necessary, one before and one after the soap has been used. The teacher may use this opportunity to step outside for daily inspection of outbuildings, which is important.

2. Another pupil passes out paper towels as children finish washing.

3. A third child places towels or other papers on desks to protect them and to catch any crumbs which may fall.

<sup>1</sup> In preparing this chapter the author has borrowed both ideas and language from bulletins issued by the United States and by his own state. Three teachers of home economics have furnished useful and usable materials.

<sup>2</sup> This plan is used by Mrs. Lillian M. Ellis, County Superintendent of Iowa County, Wisconsin.

4 After each child has dried his hands, he takes his lunch box to his seat where he remains standing until the teacher brings her lunch and seats herself at her desk.

5 The children know that they will not be excused until all, or nearly all, have finished eating. This requires about twenty minutes, so all should take time to eat properly. During this period pupils may be encouraged to converse informally. Occasionally special entertainment numbers might be given. Some child may sing the new song learned in the music period, a poem may be read by someone who did it very well in the language class; or a story or some special topic, which was not given in class because of lack of time, could now be presented, if desired and desirable. There are also other possibilities which will occur to the thoughtful teacher.

6. At the conclusion of lunch and dismissal, each child carefully gathers up the paper from his desk, drops it into the waste basket, and then puts his lunch box away before going to play.

Some children have very light breakfasts and when recess time comes are ready to eat. Train these children to eat an apple or a sandwich rather than cake or other sweet, as they are usually inclined to do.

#### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1. Make out a varied list of menus for a whole month of hot lunches for a rural school of twenty pupils, being sure that the dishes are attractive, appetizing, and nutritious.

2. Outline a talk which you will give to the mothers at a mothers' meeting to convince them of the advisability of hot lunches in your school.

3. In what ways will the hot lunch help to bring about a closer co-operation between the school and the home? Why is this highly desirable?

4. Name several suitable subjects for conversation while teacher and pupils are eating their dinner together.

5. Tell what the boys can do in promoting the hot lunch enterprise. Can a boy be taught to do any of the work done by the girls? Why should boys learn to do such things?

6. What may some board members say by way of opposition to your hot lunch proposition? Can you convince them that the plan is feasible and the right thing to do?

#### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

1. FISHER, KATHERINE—*The Lunch Hour at School—Bulletin, Health Education Series*, No. 7, Superintendent of Documents, Washington, D. C.

## A BETTER AND A SOCIALIZED NOONDAY MEAL 217

2. GREER, CHARLOTTA C.—*Foods and Home Making*; Allyn and Bacon. 1933
3. *Home Economics in Rural Schools*; Superintendent of Documents, Washington, D C Home Economics Circular No. 13. 1922
4. HUNT, CAROLINE L, AND WARD, MABEL—*School Lunches*, Superintendent of Documents, Washington, D. C. 1916.
- 5 STILLMAN, GLADYS—*The Hot Lunch in Rural Schools*, Home Economics Extension Office, University of Wisconsin, Madison. 1927.
6. WILLIAMS, MARY E., AND FISHER, KATHERINE R.—*Elements of the Theory and Practice of Cookery (revised)*, The Macmillan Company 1916

Send to the U S Department of Agriculture, Bureau of Home Economics, Washington, D C, for mimeographed sheets published October 10, 1934, and entitled *School Lunches*.

## CHAPTER XII

### PARENT AND TEACHER WORKING TOGETHER

**Need for co-operation.** If democracy is to succeed and have increasing meaning and value for the ordinary citizen, our schools must inculcate the principles and promote the practice of co-operation. The social aim and method need constant stressing. In the relations which necessarily exist between parent and teacher there is repeated opportunity for manifesting the spirit and the art of co-operation. The child is the common interest of both parent and teacher, the welfare of the child should be held up as the constant objective. Modern business and industrial life is carried forward successfully only on the basis of co-operation. Many men engaged in our great productive, mercantile, and financial enterprises have long understood the value of co-operative methods. The school must make much larger use of the wise systematic co-operative procedures of these business men, if it is to minister to the social and economic demands of our day. In rural communities the relative lack of opportunities for social and business contacts, as compared with urban groups, makes for a type of extremely individualistic thinking and acting which is not conducive to community welfare. When the individual senses the common need, he is in a better position to lend a hand in promoting common interests. Co-operation requires thought and unselfish effort as well as the spirit and the ideal of service. Both parent and teacher need to be actuated by a public or community outlook and aim in which selfish interests are submerged for the good of all.

**The function of the school.** The school is a social institution established for the purpose of carrying forward that additional and necessary work of education which the home cannot under-

take because of its inherent lacks and limitations. The school only supplements the work of the home. The home comes first; but due to the fact that parents have neither the time nor the ability to educate their children in all ways, the school has come into existence. The parent hands the child over to the teacher for a part of the time, but he does not surrender his own prerogatives as parent. The wise teacher recognizes the rights of the parent and does not too strenuously insist upon his own personal or teacher rights.

The function of the school is to train boys and girls for participating citizenship in a democracy. Effective citizenship implies correct ideas, suitable ideals, and necessary habits. Boys and girls are to be taught and trained for social efficiency, which means the inculcation and development of attitudes, desires, interests, and appreciations and the acquisition of abilities, skills, and dexterities, as well as the items of knowledge which are usually found in textbooks. That knowledge is of course necessary, but habits of effective response to actual problem situations is of far greater importance because of their manifest importance in all effective social activities and relations.

It is likewise the function of the school to promote health in all possible ways. It should also develop a type of character, or personality, which will be adequate when the individual meets the responsibilities and discharges the duties of social and civic life. Further, the school should give the child the fundamental skills and tools of learning, such as power to read and love of good reading, by which he will be able to continue his education throughout life. A rural school may also render genuine and valuable service to the older people of the community through the library, through community-center gatherings, and in other similar ways.

**The evil of indifference.** Indifference on the part of parents is very common; in fact, it is apparently the rule. Such lack of interest, however, is not always the fault of the parents, for many times a poor school and teacher have so discouraged them that they lose the interest which they might otherwise naturally

manifest It has often happened that results which parents had hoped for in their children have not been forthcoming There have been weaknesses and deficiencies in reading, language, arithmetic, or in character education Children often lack both ability and interest in reading; they quite commonly cannot write passable letters, and they cannot be trusted in many if not most cases to add a column of figures correctly. So parents lose heart and blame the school Worst of all, they lose their interest in the school, become indifferent, fail to visit the school, and refuse to co-operate with the teacher.

When parents lose interest, they cease to keep in touch with the teacher, perhaps they take sides with the child against the teacher. Such a situation is unfortunate and damaging, it may have a serious influence upon the discipline of the school Indifference of parents can only work hardship on the school and interfere with its welfare Every effort, then, should be made to overcome such a lack of interest. The teacher can do much by making her work as interesting, effective, and practical as possible The teacher who keeps the home and the parent in mind will often find ways to interest parents Adequate financial support will usually follow interest and moral support, unless there is such a lack of funds as to make this actually impossible.

**The interested parent.** When the parent is interested in the school, the teacher will find her work going forward more easily and more successfully. No effort will meet with greater rewards than that directed to arousing and maintaining a genuine interest on the part of parents When the mother is really concerned about the affairs of the school, she will visit the school of her own accord, not once only, but several times during the year Not only will the interested mother visit the school frequently, she will also seek means to co-operate with the teacher and will attend mothers' meetings and other gatherings at the schoolhouse.

When a father is really concerned about the welfare of the school and desires to have a good school for his own and his

neighbor's children, he will favor adequate taxes; when the annual meeting occurs, he will lend his support to a fair, equitable budget for the ensuing year. One of the serious problems in many schools is that of attendance; but when the parent and teacher are thinking and working together, this problem will not be so difficult, for the interested parent will make an effort to have the children in school every day and on time.

**Selling education to the public.** The average citizen and taxpayer is not well informed as to school conditions and needs. He simply does not know a great many things which it would be very useful for him to know. Were he better posted concerning the aims and policies of those who manage the schools, he would not be so inclined to criticize; for any reasonable person can be led to see and to understand the great work being done by the public schools and the importance of spending adequate sums of money in order to secure results. It is the province of those who administer public education—boards, superintendents, principals, and teachers—to see to it that the patrons, taxpayers, and the public in general are duly informed concerning the various phases of the work of the schools. A continuous propaganda of judicious, well-directed advertising of the cause of education and of the schools is greatly needed; it should be carried on systematically and unremittingly.

A former county superintendent of Cook County, Illinois, E. J. Tobin, now deceased, had much faith in a variety of publicity measures. He did not allow the people in the rural districts outside of Chicago to forget the cause of education. He employed educational contests of many kinds, held athletic field meets, and widely advertised rural school graduation exercises in which both old and young could be interested and actually participate. Mr. Tobin had a very clearly defined yearly program of publicity which cost some money, but which brought adequate returns in the increased interest and support of taxpayers and parents. During the later years of this very aggressive superintendent's long term of office, the radio was used regularly and effectively to broadcast all sorts of useful

information about the rural schools of Cook County. It is quite possible for the rural teacher to have her school issue a monthly or semimonthly school paper, which can be printed on a hectograph. If this paper goes into all of the homes it can be made the means of informing parents and taxpayers concerning the work and the needs of the school. Much prejudice or indifference is born of ignorance of conditions and needs; the obvious remedy is honest broadcasting of facts. Most country newspapers are glad to carry school items once each week. A capable rural teacher can make profitable use of such an opportunity. Both school papers and the rural press are often used with much satisfaction, interest, and profit. School exhibits or a school fair once or twice a year are also good means of advertising the school; this method is becoming increasingly common and effective. Mothers' clubs, parent-teacher associations, and other organizations are valuable agencies for letting parents know of the objectives and the work of the schools.

**Getting money for the schools.** One city superintendent of schools who was exceptionally successful in securing co-operation and money for school purposes, in whose city a magnificent million-dollar high school had been erected, was quite inclined to stress moral support rather than merely financial. He implied that money would be forthcoming if people could be led to understand the needs of the schools. This superintendent was a first-rate advertiser; he kept the schools constantly before the public. The people were not allowed to forget, ignore, or belittle the cause of education or its significance in this progressive city where the managerial form of municipal government was and is today markedly successful. Money is needed to operate schools as they should be operated; it frequently happens that all too little money is spent for education in rural districts. Many times not enough taxes are levied at the annual meeting; a spirit of parsimony is all too evident. A program of unwise, skimping economy robs the children of their educational heritage. Here is a definite opportunity for teacher leadership and for a wise campaign of management on the part of the

county superintendent who is in a strategic position to exert a real influence for good in the expenditure of public funds if he has the right personality.

Undoubtedly most of the money to operate the schools should be paid in legitimate taxes, levied and raised through the usual channels. However, teachers are often able to get funds to buy pictures, a piano, a flag, a phonograph and records, or other equipment of similar nature through box socials and entertainments of various sorts. Desks, chairs, globes, maps, and the like should not, in the opinion of the writer, be bought in this way, however. People will have the kind of schools they want, when the need is adequately realized, the money will be raised. It is the teacher's function to disseminate correct ideas, to suggest ideals of life, and to help mold public opinion.

**Organizations of parents and teachers.** The outstanding and the most influential association of parents and teachers is the National Congress of Parents and Teachers with headquarters at 1201 Sixteenth St., N. W., Washington, D. C., which has an affiliated congress in every state of the union. Every rural school district in the United States should, if social and economic conditions make it possible, have a local organization officially affiliated with both the state and the national congresses.

(a) *The P. T. A. movement.* The National Congress of Parents and Teachers was organized February 17, 1897, as the National Congress of Mothers. The group was led by Mrs. Theodore W. Birney and Mrs. Phoebe A. Hearst, who are recognized as the founders of the organization. The original aim of the Congress of Mothers was to organize a greatly needed and desirable control of conditions outside of the home in order to bring about a more effective co-operation of the influences that bear on childhood in home, school, church, and state. The first National Congress of Mothers met in 1897 in Washington, D. C. State congresses have been organized from time to time until now all states are represented. Hawaii, District of Columbia, and Alaska are now included. The state branch forms a connecting link between the local units and the National Congress;

it spreads the parent-teacher idea throughout the state. The membership of this great association has increased until at the present time it totals upwards of 2,000,000 mothers, fathers, and teachers.

(b) *Tribute of the N. E. A.* In 1928 the National Education Association included the following in the resolutions adopted at the summer meeting in July:

No greater movement in the field of education has been fostered during the last quarter of a century than the organization of parent-teacher associations. This movement has for its purpose the welfare of children. It has held steadfastly to this high endeavor and has become one of the most efficient agencies in the promotion of all activities which contribute to the successful training of the child in its relation to the home, school, church, and state. In every commonwealth it exerts much influence in the field of the curriculum and in the assumption of a proper attitude toward extra curriculum subjects. Without its influence there would have been less progress in the securing of adequate funds for buildings, equipment, and maintenance of the public schools. The social intercourse of parents and teachers contributes to a better understanding and appreciation of child nature and brings about united action in every community, resulting in democracy in education. The National Education Association commends this great organization for the work already accomplished and assures its co-operation in all efforts to promote a closer relationship between the home and the school.

(c) *General purposes of the Congress*

To promote child welfare in home, school, church, and community; to raise the standards of home life, to secure more adequate laws for the care and protection of women and children.

To bring into closer relation the home and the school, that parents and teachers may co-operate intelligently in the training of the child; and to develop between educators and the general public such united efforts as will secure for every child the highest advantages in physical, mental, moral, and spiritual education.—From Article II of the By-Laws.

(d) *Why organize a P. T. A.* It may be that some school districts are so small and weak that a standard state-national

affiliated local seems impossible. However, the effort should be made, some community club should be formed, in any case. The P. T. A., if rightly conducted, will be of decided value to both school and home; children and their parents will be benefited. Such an organization is needed to develop a wholesome interest and the effective spirit and habit of co-operation. School improvements must be backed by the necessary public opinion of the community. The P. T. A. aids in promoting a healthy public sentiment favorable to better education. The P. T. A. meetings at the school building, which is the property of the taxpayers, afford the best sort of an opportunity to unite the people in a movement of educational and community betterment. Little or no progress can be made without co-operative effort backed by a good community spirit. The P. T. A. is the best social agency yet devised to secure these objectives.

The parent-teacher association forms a home and school partnership and provides the necessary medium for establishing a unity in educational standards. . . It enables parents, teachers, and others who are interested in the well being of young people to declare their interdependence and to unite their forces in an intelligent effort to secure better homes, better schools, and better communities for better children.

(e) *Objectives of the local P. T. A.*<sup>1</sup>

1. To form a partnership of home and school.
2. To establish co-operation among parents.
3. To promote an understanding of school standards and activities.
4. To understand, interpret, and support the school system.
5. To develop programs and study courses on child welfare.
6. To train for the calling of parenthood.
7. To develop activities constructive, preventive, protective.
8. To prevent mistakes and misunderstandings.
9. To promote child-welfare legislation.
10. To secure co-operation with other organizations.
11. To develop informed members and efficient leaders.
12. To build a united community, state, and nation.

<sup>1</sup>In *Parent-Teacher Manual*

(f) *Getting started right.* Some years ago a parent-teacher association was organized one evening in a rural school; the organization is still in a thriving condition. The program for the evening began at eight o'clock. There was a good representation from nearly all of the homes of the district because the meeting had been well advertised and invitations sent to everybody. Moreover, every child had a place on the program. All the children of the school were there, they presented a program of singing and speaking under the teacher's direction. Then the rest of the evening was given over to the organization of the club and the serving of refreshments at the close. The speaker of the evening gave a talk in which he set forth the values of community-center activities and stressed the need for close co-operation between school and home. After this preliminary talk the people were ready to effect an organization. For this purpose a constitution had been procured and a copy passed to every adult in the audience. This served as a guide in the selection of officers and in the naming of the necessary committees. One of the difficulties was to secure the proper persons to serve in the various capacities, people were somewhat timid and slow in making nominations. However, the leader tried to make the situation as easy as possible by repeated explanations, finally the officers were elected and the needful machinery was effected and set in motion. This local association has been the chief agency for civic, social, and educational advancement in that district for a long period of years.

(g) *Types of activities and benefits.* Parent-teacher associations have engaged in a great many different kinds of work and have carried out programs of infinite variety, depending upon the conditions and needs of the community as well as on the social and educational qualifications of the members. In the national *Handbook* the following tests of a good program are given:

1. Is co-operation of the home and school developed?
2. Are local needs discovered and plans made for meeting them?

3. Do the members participate in the program?
- 4 Is the study and observation of children promoted?
- 5 Is the program adapted to local conditions?
- 6 Does the program lead to desirable results?
- 7 Is home life enriched?
- 8 Is school life better understood?
- 9 Is community life improved?
- 10 Does the program result in constructive activities in the association?

In 1926 a campaign of organized parent co-operation was conducted in North Dakota under the auspices of the National Congress of Parents and Teachers and at the expense of the national organization. This intensive drive was productive of improvements of the most pronounced character. Within six months the 10-per-cent quota for the first year of a five-year program had been passed by every one of the 53 counties of the state, one county had the distinction of 100-per-cent organization of its schools. In April, 1926, 31 per cent of the schools had secured parent-teacher co-operation. These statements are taken, with some modifications, from the Federal Bulletin of 1927, No. 11, written by the national president, Mrs. Margaretta N. Reeve. Among the thirty-three benefits listed are the following:

- 1 Terms lengthened—attendance improved.
- 2 New buildings—schools standardized
- 3 Library books and pictures purchased
- 4 Warm noon lunch served
- 5 Milk provided for underweight children.
- 6 Dental clinics established
- 7 Movies censored and supervised
- 8 Health crusades sponsored.
- 9 Standards of home life raised
- 10 Friction in community lessened
- 11 Friendly relationships established.
- 12 Moral standards improved.
- 13 Increased visitation of schools
- 14 As a whole, the parent-teacher association acts as a socializing and educational project in any community

(h) *Suggested by-laws.*<sup>1</sup>

*Article I.—Name.* The name of this association shall be the \_\_\_\_\_ Parent-Teacher Association, of \_\_\_\_\_ County, a local unit of the (state) branch of the National Congress of Parents and Teachers.

*Article II—Object* The object of this association shall be to promote child welfare in home, school, church, and community.

*Article III.—Policies.* Section 1 The policies of this association shall conform to the policies of the state and National Congress of Parents and Teachers

Section 2. The association shall be noncommercial, nonsectarian, and nonpartisan. Neither the name of the association nor the names of its officers in their official capacities shall be used in the endorsement of any political candidate or commercial enterprise

Section 3. This association shall not seek to control the activities of the school board and teachers

*Article IV.—Membership and Dues* Section 1. Anyone interested in the purpose of this association may become an active member upon the payment of dues as prescribed in Section 2

Section 2. The annual dues for membership in this association shall be \_\_\_\_\_ cents, of which \_\_\_\_\_ cents shall be sent by the local treasurer to the treasurer of the state branch for the state and national portions of dues. (Note. National dues are five cents per member.)

*Article V—Officers and Their Election.* Section 1 The officers of this association shall be a president, vice-president, secretary, and treasurer, elected annually.

Section 2. The nominating committee shall report at the meeting previous to the last meeting of the year, the name of a candidate for each office. Additional nominations may be made from the floor

Section 3 A vacancy occurring in an office shall be filled by the executive committee at the next regular meeting.

*Article VI—Committees* Section 1 The executive committee shall consist of the officers of the association and a teacher, if no one of the offices is held by a teacher. Its duties shall be to transact necessary business between association meetings, to advise with any of the

<sup>1</sup> These by-laws are found in a bulletin prepared by William McKinley Robinson, National Chairman, Rural Service, published in 1934 by National Congress of Parents and Teachers, and are printed here by permission. The title of the bulletin is *The Rural P. T. A.—Suggestions for Conducting a Parent-Teacher Association.*

officers or committee chairmen, and to transact such other business as may be referred to it by the association.

Section 2 The president shall appoint such committees as are required to promote the object and interests of the association

Section 3 The president shall be ex officio a member of all committees except the nominating committee.

*Article VII—Meetings* Section 1. A regular meeting of this association shall be held once each month of the school year unless otherwise decided by the executive committee.

Section 2. The last regular meeting of the school year shall be the annual meeting at which time annual reports shall be made and the officers for the new year installed

Section 3 Special meetings of the association may be called by the executive committee

Section 4. Five members shall constitute a quorum if the membership is 20 or under. If over 20, one fifth of the membership shall constitute a quorum.

*Article VIII—Amendments.* The by-laws may be amended at any regular meeting of the association by a two-thirds vote of the members present, provided the proposed amendment has been submitted at a previous regular meeting

Every rural teacher should send to the state or the national congress for a copy of Mr Robinson's bulletin

(i) *Character of the programs.* In a 150-page bulletin, entitled *Rural Education Looking Forward*, issued by the Nebraska State Department of Education<sup>1</sup> in June, 1933, the following statements are found on page 107.

The meetings of the Rural Parent-Teacher Association should, in addition to the short business session, consist of three parts, namely, an entertaining program mainly in charge of adults and consisting of music, readings, playlets by adults, school demonstrations by pupils, and community singing, the next part of the program should be constructive and should include a discussion pertaining to the welfare of the child, the last part of the program is a social hour including community games and refreshments. All meetings should be thoughtfully planned and carefully carried out with the welfare of the child as a central thought. The entertaining part of the program and social hour is very important and should be considered as an opportunity to strengthen and enlarge neighborhood and community joy and to de-

<sup>1</sup> By courteous permission of the Nebraska State Department of Education

velop leadership. However, the discussion part of the program is a very important reason for the Rural Parent-Teacher Association.

Then follows mention of the various improvements which have resulted from the discussions by adults. These are similar to the benefits listed above. The concluding sentence is significant. "Best of all, however, is the vital interest that has been secured on the part of patrons in the school work that the children are doing and the kindly co-operation that exists between parents and teachers."

Miss Ellen C. Lombard, associate specialist in parent education, Federal Office of Education, in Bulletin No. 11, 1927, says that "The influence of the parent-teacher association movement depends upon three main factors. Leadership, the quality of the programs offered at the meetings, and the efficiency of the work of the committees."

(j) *Suggested topics for meetings* (1) Why parents should attend the annual school meeting (2) How to honor the flag. (3) Recreation in home and community (4) Standards for rural schools (5) Thrift education (6) Building character through reading (7) Preventing fires on the farm (8) Forming better study habits (9) School sanitation (10) Overcoming tardiness and irregularity (11) Mothers' meetings (12) Co-operation and the hot lunch (13) The school as a community center (14) Parents who help the teacher (15) Undernourished children (16) Playground supervision (17) Balanced dietaries for the growing children (18) Movies, the home, and the school. (19) Influence of good stories on the child's character. (20) Importance of good reading matter (21) Co-operation of teacher and parents (22) Games to interest children (23) Value of music in the home (24) Who are good mothers and fathers? (25) Physical needs of children in home and school

This list of topics is suggestive only. There is almost no end to the number of interesting and useful subjects which may be considered. The teacher will secure valuable information by writing to the United States Office of Education, Washington, D. C. The best way is to prepare all of the programs for the

year in advance, naming all the topics, the persons who will discuss them, the dates on which they will appear, and many suggestions for working up the topics for talks and discussions. See the Nebraska bulletin referred to above. This should be found among the references of the training school.

(k) *Where to get information and help.* It would be an excellent thing for every teacher to write to the National Congress of Parents and Teachers, 1201 Sixteenth Street, Northwest, Washington, D C. Send a letter, not a postcard, for a complete list of all publications. Enclose thirty cents in stamps for a copy of the *Parent-Teacher Manual* which is a very useful source of information. Each teacher should also get in touch with her own state congress of parents and teachers. Find out about the officers, the meetings, the publications. Get a copy of the official publication of the National Congress known as *The National Parent-Teacher Magazine*. Teachers need a great deal of general information and background of knowledge. It pays to keep posted and it pays to know where to get what you need.

**Reciprocal relationships.** The parent is the child's first teacher, when the child is sent to school the parent reserves some of the rights of a teacher and all of the rights of a parent. The teacher does well to recognize the rights of parent and home. There is no sharp dividing line between the jurisdiction and prerogatives of parents and teacher. The main things are a good spirit and the right purpose on the part of both parties. Quite naturally almost any parent is anxious to have his boy or girl do as well as possible in school, but he does not turn the child over to the school without some misgivings and without reserving the privilege of controlling the situation to some extent. Every wise teacher takes the parent into account.

Although the teacher does not supersede the parent in all ways, still he does possess quite clearly defined rights and duties. The teacher, not the parent, must do the teaching. The teacher determines subject matter and its method of presentation. Moreover, the teacher represents the state and is thus in duty

bound to carry out the course of study and the directions of superior school officials. As far as the school may reach, the teacher has charge of the whole child—body, mind, and spirit. It is the teacher's duty to take note of and to plan for physical health, mental training, and moral education. She is *in loco parentis*, and as such, she may administer proper punishments. The teacher is both the agent of the state and the representative of the parent and the home. When it is a question of concurrent jurisdiction, as regards, for example, the conduct of children going to and from school, the parent and teacher share in authority. There should be a complete understanding and a spirit of tolerance and good will. The teacher should seek opportunities to get acquainted with parents before trouble arises. A basis of friendly acquaintance and association will do much to help solve the hardest problem.

**Co-operation in teaching.** In the actual work of teaching there is ample opportunity for teacher and parent to co-operate. The best teachers are those who stress the life of the community and who seek means for connecting the work of the school with the experiences of the people of the district.

In arithmetic, farm problems can be used much more than is common. The children should take actual measurements and from these compute areas, contents, and costs. Let the pupils measure bins, granaries, haystacks, and silos. Give them practice in estimating. After an estimate has been made, the actual contents may be computed. Estimate acres in the garden, the orchard, and the pasture; then find the exact areas. Compute the amount and the cost of plastering and painting for real buildings and rooms. Find the amounts of actual bills and teach a simple form of keeping accounts. In this way children will not only be taught arithmetic, but incidentally they will acquire much useful information that is absolutely necessary in order to work out the ordinary everyday problems of life. This information will also do much to develop in the children that faculty known as common sense.

In civics teach the primary election, the general election, the

town meeting, and the court sessions, when these are of interest in the community. New laws that are enacted from time to time dealing with important community interests should be taken up and discussed.

The history of the school district is a useful and interesting topic. As a rule, however, it cannot be studied until the teacher has been in the district for some time and become somewhat acquainted with the people. The following are some of the questions that may be used by the teacher for the children to ask at home. Who were some of the first settlers in this community? When did they come? Where did they settle? What was the condition of the country at that time? Where was the first clearing made? What kind of buildings did the first settlers erect? Are any of those old buildings still standing? Where was the first schoolhouse built? What kind of a building was it? Is it still in existence? What were the first churches and public buildings? Are there any former soldiers in the district? Who? In what war did they take part? Were they in any battles? If so, where? Were any of them wounded? From what country or states did the people in this community come? Name the various countries or states represented, such as Germany, Ireland, Norway, New England, New York State. The pupils may make a map, and indicate by different marks or colors the various nationalities that make up the district.

The opportunities for concrete teaching and for the school and home to work together are abundantly exemplified in local or community geography. In order to teach the geography of the district, the teacher must do some real exploring on her own account. One of the best means is for the teacher and pupils to make a map of the district on as large a scale as practicable. Do not hurry this map, but take several weeks or months, if necessary. It should be done as accurately as possible, showing the roads, areas of farms and fields, and the location of the schoolhouse, quarry, creamery, town hall, and large wooded tracts, if any. Pupils will secure this needed information at home from day to day. Locate the church, the village, the homes, the resi-

dences of school and town officers. The map should be done carefully to scale. After the first map is made by teacher and pupils, each upper-grade pupil should make one for which he or she may receive credit in the county examination.

In the work in agriculture and nature study there is obviously a rich field for co-operation of home and school. We have only to mention such subjects as birds, weeds, corn, insects, grains, farm animals, the silo, to see that here is a type of subject matter which lends itself to united effort. One of the most profitable undertakings of a rural teacher and her upper grade pupils is a complete social and economic survey of the school district. Directions for making such a survey may be secured by writing to the Office of Education, Washington, D. C., or perhaps to the state department of education or to the state university.

**Why mothers' meetings?** The regular meeting of a thriving mothers' club is one of the best enterprises that any rural teacher can promote. This club should meet at least monthly, and at the schoolhouse several times during the year. The meetings may very well extend from two to four o'clock. The program should usually consist of three parts. *first*, the regular class exercises for at least 75 minutes, some special class work may also be carried out, *second*, a simple program of speaking and singing for about 20 minutes in which all children participate; *third*, a social quarter-hour or more, during which light refreshments are served by the teacher and a committee of pupils. If the teacher wishes to speak very briefly to the mothers, she may do so just before the social period. Work done by pupils should be posted so the mothers can inspect it as they wish. Everyone should be on his or her best behavior, of course. If teacher and pupils acquit themselves with credit, the general effect will be wholesome, indeed. The entire school should make very careful preparation for this mothers' meeting. Here are some good reasons for such meetings:

1 They furnish a pleasing opportunity for bringing the parents, or mothers at any rate, to the school, this is of first importance.

2 They bring teacher and parents into closer touch and thus furnish the conditions for co-operation. Such co-operation is the basis for any successful school.

3 Through contact with the parents the teacher gets a more helpful and a more sympathetic attitude toward her pupils. Sympathetic helpfulness appeals to the mother, and she will be ready to back the teacher in her program for pupil betterment.

4 These meetings give the teacher an opportunity to explain any school matter or to present a school problem to a group of interested and usually responsive persons.

5 The teacher on such an occasion has a good chance to show what is needed in the way of improvements—furniture, books, or other equipment of any sort.

6 These meetings emphasize the important and ever-present need that the school and the home work together for the good of the child.

7 During such gatherings the parents often see more plainly the difficulties under which their teacher works, they are more inclined to give her the needed support.

8. Through these meetings the parents come to realize more fully the meaning of education; they are sure to acquire an interest in the welfare of their school as an agency for promoting the cause of education. Not all will respond equally, but there will be an increasing number who will come to realize the situation more and more completely.

9 These meetings have frequently been the means of clearing up misunderstandings which, if allowed to go on, would tend to interfere with the efficiency of the teacher and therefore of her school.

10 Pupils always tend to take more interest and to do better work if they see that their mothers and their teacher are working in harmony for their good.

#### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1 List all the means you can think of by which a rural teacher can acquaint her patrons with the work of her school and get them interested in the general cause of education.

2 Write out a dozen directions and suggestions for carrying out a successful box social conducted for the purpose of raising money to purchase a radio.

3 If you were to organize a parent-teacher association in your district, what initial steps would be necessary? State the first five things you would need to do, in order of time.

4 With the co-operation of the pupils and of the parents, make a list of the birds, trees, weeds, and wild animals found in your district.

## 236 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

5. Indicate thirty to fifty items which should be found in an economic and social survey of the district.
6. State the values of and the objections to a system of school credits for home work. In your opinion is the idea a sound one?

### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

Send to The National Congress of Parents and Teachers, 1201 Sixteenth Street, Northwest, Washington, D C , for the *Parent-Teacher Manual* (1935). Price 35¢ Ask for the price-list of publications.

Read *Rural School Management* by Eells, Moeller, and Swain, Chapter III

Read Wilkinson's *Rural School Management*, Chapter II.

Send to Office of Education, Washington, D C , for price-list of bulletins on co-operation of home and school, community centers, and related subjects

Pittman's *Successful Teaching in Rural Schools* and Kirkpatrick's *The Rural School from Within* give many interesting, suggestive, and helpful discussions

Write to the State Department of Public Instruction, Lincoln, Nebraska, for the price of a very useful 150-page bulletin entitled *Rural Education Looking Forward*.

## CHAPTER XIII

### GUIDANCE IN PARTICIPATING CITIZENSHIP

**Purpose of chapter.** This chapter is chiefly devoted to a consideration of the school society because such an organization affords the needful occasion and machinery for important participating activities. The regular school-society programs, including parliamentary practice, should be as much a part of the school work as any activity of the curriculum.

There are many boys' and girls' and young people's organizations functioning in the various states. Some of these have a state-wide membership; others are limited to the county, the town, or the local district. These clubs vary in purpose and character. Some are purely social and recreative, some relate to farm projects, some have to do with home or household economics, some have literary features, and so on to great length. In many states, the state department of education or the state agricultural college or other state agency has sponsored and aided clubs for young people. In many instances private organizations have rendered valuable assistance in many ways. At the present time the 4-H Clubs are by far the strongest and most influential of all clubs whose activities center around the farm and the farm home. These clubs are for both boys and girls, a brief discussion of them is found near the close of the chapter. Other organizations rendering a most valuable service in rural communities are the Y. M. C. A., Boy Scouts, Girl Scouts, Y. W. C. A. (Girl Reserves), Campfire Girls, Knight-hood of Youth, Young Citizens League, Thrift Clubs, and Junior Red Cross.

In all of these associations involving united effort we find a need for many of the skills which are acquired in an active school society. In this chapter, therefore, the emphasis will

be upon the development of such skills. Owing to lack of space, it is impossible to consider more than the 4-H Clubs in addition to the school society. At the present time any rural teacher who so desires can find information on every phase of social-civic training for boys and girls.

**Need for training in a democracy.** The school society, or the literary society, as it is sometimes called, has been given much attention in the rural schools of most states for many years. Certainly no type of work is of greater practical value to the boys and girls who must manage affairs of government in years to come. It is, indeed, difficult to overestimate the importance of training pupils in the procedures for conducting a public meeting, there is general ignorance on this subject among our adult population. Relatively few know how to act as chairman of a meeting or how to write the secretary's minutes in proper form. The only way by which boys and girls can ever know these things is by direct instruction and practice. As a case in point, the way in which some of our annual school meetings are conducted is not a credit to our citizenship. The teacher will do well to keep in mind these and other actual conditions which confront our young people when they grow to manhood and womanhood, and to prepare them specifically for the particular duties they will need to discharge as active, participating citizens of the community. Some of the pupils will one day serve as school clerks or town clerks, chairmen of the town boards, town treasurers, members of the county board, or in similar official capacities. The school should consciously and specifically prepare them for these duties of citizenship. The school society is an important agency for such preparatory instruction and guidance.

**Significant objectives.** The school society will serve several useful purposes; among these are the following: (1) to give adequate and specific training in the organization and management of a society; (2) to instruct and train pupils carefully in the particular, definite forms of good parliamentary usage, (3) to afford suitable occasions for the regular presentation of

well-prepared rhetorical or literary exercises, (4) to furnish the machinery, especially through committees, for co-operation between teacher and pupils in carrying on the regular work of the school and in such extracurricular activities as may promote the social and civic betterment of the children, (5) to give teacher and pupils a ready-to-hand organization for presenting public programs of various sorts at mothers' meetings and community-center gatherings; (6) to give means for correlation with the work in civics or civil government by affording opportunity for training pupils directly in the functions of the annual school meeting, the town meeting, and the meeting of the county board.

In this way, also, boys and girls may be taught how to keep the district clerk's record book, the treasurer's accounts, and other official records. It may be that the clerk's records or the treasurer's accounts in many districts will not be kept as they should be. In that case perhaps the teacher can secure the co-operation of the county superintendent in finding the correct form. The data for the records, at least, can be secured from the proper officials.

**A constitution and bylaws.** The society should have a workable constitution and set of bylaws. These can be found in many sources. The particular form adopted by the school should contain all that is necessary in order to provide for the needs of the school and no more. In this connection children should be taught the need for system, rules, and regulations. The pupils should know their constitution; it should be posted on the bulletin board. After a constitution and bylaws are adopted, teacher and pupils should follow them. In this work take nothing for granted, but teach and train in necessary details.

The following constitution is so simple and usable that the author feels it will serve for many rural schools in various parts of the country.

*Preamble*

We, the pupils attending school in District No. \_\_\_\_\_, of the town of \_\_\_\_\_, County, State of \_\_\_\_\_, in order to be of

The school society in session



the greatest possible service to our country, state, and community, to advance the interests of our school, and to afford added opportunities for our own educational development, especially in training for the conduct of public meetings, do form ourselves into a school society and adopt for our guidance this Constitution

#### *Article I—Name*

The name of this organization shall be the Public School Society of  
Dist No , Town of , County, State of

#### *Article II—Objects*

The objects of this Society shall be 1. To afford opportunities for development through participation in business meetings, parliamentary practice, preparation of programs, and the like 2 To enable us as pupils to work better as a group in building up our school and our community 3. To teach and train the pupils of this school to work as effectively as possible in co-operating with the teacher, the board, and others of the school and community

#### *Article III—Members*

1 Any person who attends this school or who intends to attend the school during the year shall become a member of this Society by signing the Constitution, provided that no person shall be enrolled as a member while attending another school 2 The teacher shall be a member of the Society 3 Graduates from this school during the past two years shall be honorary members of the Society.

#### *Article IV—Officers*

1. The officers of this Society shall be a President, a Vice President, a Secretary, and a Treasurer With the exception of the Treasurer, they shall be elected for a period of . months (weeks), and shall hold their offices until their successors are elected and qualified The election shall be by ballot 2 The President shall preside at all meetings and perform all other duties usually devolving upon such an officer 3 The Vice President shall perform the duties of the President when the latter is absent 4 The Secretary shall keep records of all meetings, carry on all correspondence of the Society, and perform other duties pertaining to the office 5 The teacher shall be the ex-officio Treasurer of the Society The Treasurer shall keep all the funds of the Society and pay out money upon the order of the Secretary, countersigned by the President 6 The officers of the Society shall constitute the Executive Committee. The Executive Committee shall have charge

of the general management of the Society and of any special work delegated to it and not referred to any special committee. The Executive Committee shall also appoint all other committees when ordered to do so by the Society. 7 Committees to carry on special work in the Society shall be appointed at any time during the year when it may be found necessary. 8 Vacancies in any of the offices, except treasurer, shall be filled by special election at any regular meeting. Vacancies on committees shall be filled by the Executive Committee.

#### *Article V—Meetings*

1 This Society shall hold regular meetings every Friday afternoon after recess. Special meetings may be called at any time by the Executive Committee (Adapt to conditions). 2 One third of the members of the Society shall constitute a quorum to do business.

#### *Article VI—Dues*

(a) There shall be no regular dues, or (b) The dues of this Society shall be                cents per

#### *Article VII—Amendments*

An amendment to this Constitution shall be proposed in writing and read at the regular meeting of the Society. It shall then lie on the table until the next regular meeting. If carried at that meeting by a majority of all the active members, it shall become a part of this Constitution.

#### *Bylaws*

1. This Society shall be governed by Robert's Rules of Order.
2. The order of procedure at the meetings shall be as follows: *a*. Call to order, *b*. Reading of minutes, and action thereon, *c*. Reports of standing committees, *d*. Reports of special committees, *e*. Communications, with action thereon, *f*. Unfinished business, *g*. New business; *h*. Program, *i*. Further business, if any, *j*. Adjournment.

**Suggestions for programs.** The school society affords the means for two sorts of program activities—the literary program of recitations and singing or other music, and the program which provides opportunity for parliamentary practice and for direct training in the duties of citizenship. The teacher should strive not to neglect either phase or to overemphasize either kind of program. Every week the children should get some

practice in public speaking, but likewise some practice in conducting a public meeting. There must be specific instruction in parliamentary practice and direct training in actually going through the procedures.

The activities of the school society that naturally correlate with the work in civics are important. Some of these will deal with parliamentary usage, some will include instruction and training in the duties of various public officials, particularly those of the local community. The teacher may be able to secure the co-operation of the school clerk, the town treasurer, or other officers, in doing what is here suggested. The chief error may be that the teacher does not work with concrete cases. This program is not theoretical, on the contrary, it is practical. If the teacher does not know, she should take the necessary steps to find out by asking those who do know, or she should carefully study a good book on parliamentary procedures.

Have talks on the kinds of motions, then have the children write out motions and see that they are properly presented. Have amendments written out, possibly an amendment to a first amendment. The latter is the parliamentary limit. Then show the chairman exactly how to state the needed motions. All of this work is in the nature of a class exercise. Make a regular weekly business of it. Take plenty of time to do it right. You cannot use school time in a more profitable way.

What of the literary exercises, the observance of various holidays, and the like? Here is a large field. In the first place the teacher should look ahead a year and set down in her notebook the various special-day programs which it will be necessary for her to present. These special occasions include the observance of the birthdays of noted people who have achieved fame in various fields of human endeavor—authors, famous women, inventors, statesmen, and presidents. See list in the Hall of Fame. The teacher will no doubt wish to observe Thanksgiving, Christmas, Arbor and Bird Days, Memorial Day, Armistice Day, and she will have a patriotic Washington-Lincoln program.

**Starting the work.** 1 Have pupils seated as conveniently as possible

2 Tell them that business is brought before an assembly by a motion or by the presentation of a communication

3 Teach them how to make motions A person must rise, address the chair by saying, "Mr Chairman" The chairman "recognizes" the member by speaking his name, thus "giving him the floor." When a member has been recognized he makes the motion, saying, "I move that," etc , or "I make a motion that," etc

4 The next step is to have the motion seconded. This can be done by any member without rising and without addressing the chair

5 The chairman then states the question by saying, "It is moved and seconded," etc , it can then be discussed After discussion it is put to a vote One form is the following "All in favor say *aye*, all opposed, *no* The ayes have it, and the motion is carried"—or as the outcome may be

6 After this instruction has been given, the children should be given considerable practice in making motions The older ones should also be given opportunity to act as chairman and to put the motions

**Illustrative procedure** For some years the following illustration of actual society practice was printed in a course of study for rural teachers It is reproduced here in order that teachers and pupils may get the form of words and the different ways of handling motions Mr C is the chairman and Mr S. is the secretary

Mr A. (rising)—Mr Chairman

Mr C—Mr A

Mr A—I make a motion that this Society have a Fourth of July picnic.

Mr B (without rising)—I second the motion.

Mr. C—The motion has been made and seconded that this society have a Fourth of July picnic. Are there any remarks?

Mr M—I have no objections to the picnic, but we have plenty of time to consider this matter, as there are some things which must be

considered before adjournment, I move that this question be laid on the table

Mr. O—I second the motion

Mr C—It has been moved that the question relating to the Fourth of July picnic be laid on the table. (Undebatable) All in favor say *aye*, opposed, *no*. The ayes have it. Motion is laid on the table

Mr Y—Mr Chairman

Mr C—Mr Y.

Mr Y—It is necessary for us to decide in the early part of this session whether we shall have Mr D. or Mr B deliver the address at our meeting next week. I therefore make the motion that we select Mr D as our speaker

Mr A—I second the motion

Mr. C—It has been moved and seconded, *etc.* Any remarks? (Here followed a discussion which became very prolonged and it was getting near the time when a decision had to be taken.)

Mr X—Mr Chairman

Mr C—Mr X

Mr X—I call for the previous question.

Mr M—I second the call

Mr C—The previous question has been called for. As many as are in favor of ordering the previous question on the main motion will rise; all opposed rise, (18 votes for, 6 against); the motion is carried (two-thirds vote). All in favor of selecting Mr D as our speaker will say *aye*, opposed, *no*. Motion carried (main question)

Mr L—Mr Chairman

Mr C—Mr L

Mr L—I move that Mr O be instructed to communicate with Mr D at once by phone so that we may know definitely if he is available

Mr. M—I second the motion.

Mr C—It has been, *etc.* Any remarks? . All in favor say *aye*; opposed, *no*. Motion carried. Mr O is hereby instructed to communicate with Mr D and report the information to the meeting (Mr O leaves.)

Mr R.—Mr Chairman.

Mr. C—Mr R.

Mr R—I move that a committee of three be appointed to make the special arrangements needed for our next meeting

Mr S—I second the motion

Mr C—It has been, *etc.* Any remarks?

Mr. A—Mr. C.

Mr. C—Mr A.

Mr. A—I move to amend the motion by substituting *five* for *three*.

Mr. N—I second the amendment.

Mr. C—The motion has been amended, etc. Any remarks?

Mr. T—I believe that it is not right to expect only five to do all the work connected with this meeting. Let us all help. Therefore, I move to amend the amendment by giving the five the right to draft as many members as may be needed to help them.

Mr. U—I second the last amendment.

Mr. C—The amendment has been amended, etc. Any remarks? (After a few members had spoken the vote was put.) We shall first vote on the last amendment. All who are in favor of, etc., say *aye*, opposed, *no*. Amendment carried. We shall now vote on the first amendment as amended. All in favor of substituting *five* for *three* and giving them the power, etc., say *aye*, opposed, *no*. The amendment as amended is carried. We shall now vote on the original motion as amended. All who are in favor of, etc., say *aye*, opposed, *no*. The original motion as amended is carried.

Mr. F.—Mr. C.

Mr. C—Mr. F.

Mr. F—I move that the Society have no meetings during the summer months.

Mr. Z—I second the motion.

Mr. C—It has been, etc. Any remarks?

Mr. M—I move that the question be postponed indefinitely.

Mr. S—I second the motion.

Mr. C—It has been moved, etc. Any remarks? (Several take part in discussion.) All in favor of indefinite postponement of this question say *aye*, opposed, *no*. Carried.

Mr. F—I call for a division of the house.

Mr. C—A division is called for, those in favor will rise. Those opposed will rise. The motion is carried by a vote of 12 to 11.

#### Recess

Mr. C.—The meeting will come to order.

Mr. O—Mr. C.

Mr. C—Mr. O

Mr. O—I learned from Mr. D. that it is impossible for him to come to our next meeting as he has another engagement. Therefore, I move that we reconsider the vote on the motion regarding the choice of speakers.

Mr. S.—I second the motion.

Mr. C—It has been moved, etc. Any remarks?

Mr. A—Mr. C.

GUIDANCE IN PARTICIPATING CITIZENSHIP 247

Mr. C—Mr A

Mr A—I rise for information Did the gentleman who made the motion vote on the prevailing side?

Mr C.—He did If there are no more remarks we shall vote on the question. All in favor say *aye*, opposed, *no* Motion is carried The question regarding our speaker is now open for discussion

Mr M—Mr C

Mr C—Mr M.

Mr M—I move to amend the motion by substituting Mr. E for Mr. D.

Mr N—I second the amendment

Mr C—An amendment has been made to substitute Mr. E for Mr D Any remarks? . . All in favor of the amendment say *aye*, opposed, *no* Amendment carried. We shall now vote on the original motion as amended. All in favor say *aye*, opposed, *no* Carried

Mr A—Mr C

Mr C.—Mr A.

Mr A—I make a motion that we have no meetings during the summer months

Mr C—The gentleman is out of order That motion has been made before during the session and it was postponed indefinitely

Mr I.—Mr C

Mr C—Mr I

Mr I—I move that the question of having a Fourth of July picnic be taken from the table

Mr A—I second the motion

Mr. C—It has been moved, *etc* (Undebatable) All in favor say *aye*, opposed, *no* The motion is carried and the question is before the assembly

Mr U—I move that this matter be referred to a committee composed of the treasurer and two other members appointed by the chair, said committee to report at our meeting two weeks from now.

Mr V—I second the motion.

Mr C—It has been moved, *etc* (Several take part in the discussion.) All in favor of referring this to a committee say *aye*, opposed, *no* The motion is carried As members of the committee I appoint Mr U. and Mr N

Mr B—Mr C.

Mr C.—Mr B

Mr. B—I believe that we ought to have a lecture course in our community Therefore, I make a motion that a committee be appointed to consider the advisability of undertaking this matter and report next week.

Mr Q—I second the motion

Mr C—It has been, *etc.* Any remarks?

Mr S—Mr C

Mr C—Mr S

Mr S—I think it is early in the year to take up this matter, besides we do not expect to have a business meeting next week. I believe it better to wait until Mr. E. has been here, as he will be able to give us some advice in this matter. I therefore move that the consideration of the question be postponed until our meeting two weeks from now.

Mr T—I second the motion

Mr C—It has been, *etc.* Remarks? (Only remarks regarding wisdom of postponement were allowed.) All in favor of the postponement say *aye*; opposed, *no*. Motion carried

Mr A—Mr. C

Mr C—Mr A

Mr A—I move that we adjourn

Mr N.—I second the motion

Mr C—It has been, *etc.* (Not debatable) All in favor say *aye*; opposed, *no*. The motion is carried and the meeting is adjourned

**Writing up the minutes.** In order to assist teachers in writing up the minutes the following illustration with different names and dates, is given of the record of an actual meeting.

The seventh regular meeting of the Athenian Literary Society was held December 20. The meeting was called to order by the President. The minutes of the previous meeting were read and accepted. Eva M. made a motion that each member pay ten cents to make up the deficit of the party bill. Jane S. seconded this motion. Iva R. moved that the motion be amended by inserting the words "on or before Jan 10," before the words, "ten cents." The amendment was seconded, and unanimously carried. The original motion as amended was then voted upon, and unanimously carried. Roll call, to which each member responded with a quotation concerning music, then followed, showing all members present. After roll call the following Program on Music was presented.

- 1 Song "Kellar's American Hymn"—the school
- 2 "A Brief History of Music"—Helen K.
- 3 Declamation "The Singing in God's Acre"—Jane B.
- 4 "The Value of Music in the Rural School"—Mary T.
- 5 Talk "Italian Music"—James W.
- 6 Song "Santa Lucia"—by Girls' Glee Club
- 7 Victrola Selection "Il Trovatore"
- 8 Talk "Music in Ireland"—Henry M.

## GUIDANCE IN PARTICIPATING CITIZENSHIP 249

9. Solo "Mother Machree"—Lisa P
- 10 Talk "German Music"—John H
11. Piano Solo "Beethoven's Farewell to the Piano"—Esther I.
- 12 Talk "American Music"—Thomas E.
- 13 Piano Solo "Robin's Return"—Beulah B.
14. Critic's Report—Zetta A.
15. Song "Soldiers' Chorus"—Boys' Double Quartette

As this concluded the program, it was moved and seconded that the meeting adjourn. This motion was carried, and the president declared the meeting adjourned. Respectfully submitted—S J, Secretary. Dated, January 10, 1936.

## TREASURER'S ACCOUNT

School Society

Sugar Grove School

September 4, 1934 to June 7, 1935

	Receipts		Expenditures	
	4	30		
Sept. 4 Cash on Hand				
Sept 14 25 Dues @ 5¢ each	1	25		
Oct 31 Expense, Halloween Party			1	80
Nov 27 Thanksgiving Basket sent			2	45
Dec 21 Receipts from Entertainment	10	05		
(1935)				
Jan 14. Bought <i>Robert's Rules of Order</i>			1	50
Feb. 12 Postage on Bulletins				20
Mch 15 Net Receipts—Box Social	15	30		
April 24 Bought New Flag			7	30
May 7 Bought Tree for Arbor Day			1	75
May 31 Balance			15	90
Total	30	90	30	90
June 7 Cash on Hand	15	90		

Signed, ANDREW BREWSTER, Treasurer

**Keeping the treasurer's account.** The children should be taught (as a supplementary exercise in arithmetic—if desired) how to keep an account and how to balance it. The importance, indeed the absolute necessity, of keeping an accurate account of all public money, needs to be thoroughly impressed upon the minds of the pupils. Every penny must be accounted for—a lesson both in good business practice and in good citizenship. One right way to do it is shown on page 249.

**The committee system.** In any well-conducted rural school the teacher will find it very helpful to make use of the committee system in carrying on the work of the school. Pupils can aid much by serving on committees, but of course no pupil should be compelled to do janitor work. Children can be so trained that they will be pleased to render services for their school, and anxious to do so. Experience demonstrates that most children co-operate very willingly and cheerfully.

No committee system will work itself. If such a plan is to train the pupils and if it is to further the work of the school, the teacher must supervise the system. Pupils will need definite instruction concerning their duties, and motives will need to be furnished in order to accomplish results.

**Boys' and Girls' 4-H Clubs.** The reason that this particular type of club activity has had such a remarkable development is that it is sponsored and supported by federal, state, and county governments and that, also, it is directly concerned with better farming, better rural and home life, and better boys and girls. The membership is voluntary, the only essential is that each boy or girl shall learn by doing and shall carry out useful projects. Leaders direct the work, records are kept, public exhibits are made at the county fair or elsewhere, and in all phases of the work practical projects are the very essence of what is done. Boys raise sheep, calves, hogs, poultry, and horses and do intensive work in the raising of grain and other crops; while the girls are largely engaged in developing skills in the various domestic or household arts. They also take part in many of the same projects as the boys. The writer knows of

a very successful county fair which has been conducted for several years entirely by the 4-H Clubs of the county. This fair is a credit to any county. The exhibits of live stock, domestic-science products, and educational projects found here are numerous and many of them excellent in quality.

The training which boys and girls get through 4-H Club work is of the greatest value. The work is closely supervised in many counties by co-operative leaders of various types, county agricultural agents, county 4-H Club leaders, home-demonstration agents, and other men and women in official capacities. The boys and girls are brought into contact with merchants, manufacturers, college professors, live-stock breeders, domestic-science specialists, bankers, and other leaders, educators, and able people in various walks of life. They learn how to do business, how to keep accounts, how to co-operate in carrying out a common enterprise. In connection with the various necessary meetings the young people get training in the methods of deliberative assemblies, as described and stressed in this chapter.

Through the Extension Service of the United States Department of Agriculture in co-operation with the state colleges of agriculture, the 4-H Club work is now a permanent national educational movement supported by federal and state appropriations. Some years ago the passage of the Smith-Lever Act in Congress made provision for extension education through club activities and definitely settled such a program as a continuing nation-wide activity. This co-operative Extension Work of the United States Department of Agriculture now brings together into one great national organization all of those hitherto isolated and relatively weak local clubs which formerly lacked large power and influence because of their merely local sphere of action. The support and the backing of county, state, and federal authorities now give the 4-H Clubs such a prestige as to make them the most significant movement for the betterment of country boys and girls and the rural population in general ever launched in this or any other country.

The general program of 4-H Club activities is a broad and comprehensive one. It involves much more than farm and home projects. The element of play is not ignored. Opportunities are offered for the exercise of individual abilities in a wide range of social and civic participation. Dramatics are stressed during the winter months, the element of competition or friendly rivalry is used to advantage. Speaking contests and dramatic programs similar to those of the Little Theatre are common and of great benefit. By the use of a variety of scoring devices the achievements of young people are measured and duly recorded. The contest idea is widely and profitably utilized in strictly agricultural and domestic-science fields, in the great variety of projects, and also in the intellectual contests.

Members are admitted to 4-H Clubs as young as ten years. The upper limit is twenty years. Most of the work is for children and young people from twelve to eighteen years of age. There are now nearly 1,000,000 4-H Club members in this country. The emblem is the four-leaf clover and the four leaves stand for the *head*, the *hand*, the *heart*, and the *health* of each boy or girl. The pledge of the club member has deep significance:

I pledge .

My *head* to clearer thinking,  
My *heart* to greater loyalty,  
My *hands* to larger service, and  
My *health* to better living,

for my club, my community, and my country.

**General suggestions** 1. Teach the exact expressions in parliamentary practice. The proper thing to do is to write out the form and have the pupils commit it to memory. For example, the chairman says "A motion has been made and seconded that a committee of three be appointed to keep the front hall in order. Are there any remarks? If there is no discussion all that favor this motion will signify it by saying *aye*, those opposed, *no*. The ayes have it and the motion is carried. I will appoint Helen, Bernice, and Oliver on this committee to serve during the month of October. Helen will act as chairman of the

committee. Is there any further business to come before the meeting? If there is no further business a motion to adjourn is in order." Consult the illustration on pages 244 to 248 for other examples of the words to use.

2 *Make regular use of Robert's Rules of Order.* Be sure that the school has a copy of this indispensable book, then teach and train the older pupils how to get the necessary information from the book. The Table of Contents and the Index will be found useful. The teacher should select some of the important items and present them to the children in oral exercises. Some of the upper-grade pupils can be taught to give helpful talks on the kinds of motions, on amendments, and on other phases of parliamentary practice. This is good material for oral language work. Such talks may well find a place on the society programs.

3 *Teach and train pupils how to conduct the annual school meeting.* Show how a chairman is elected and how the clerk keeps the minutes. The teacher should find out exactly what necessary business must be done, perhaps in her particular district, and then instruct the children in the correct way of doing it. A certain amount of money must be appropriated, certain repairs are to be made, some books and school equipment are to be purchased. Have the children write out and make the necessary motions. The teacher will need to instruct repeatedly in this connection and carefully to supervise the work. Get from your school clerk the actual items of business that were transacted at the last annual meeting. Such training is needed in every rural school district.

4 *Teacher and pupils may impersonate the cabinet.* The teacher acts as the president, sitting at the head of the table, while ten of the older pupils represent the different secretaries. Each pupil will need to post up on the work of his or her department, then under the leadership of the president (the teacher) the work of the various departments can be brought out in the general discussion. This exercise is also illustrative of what may be done with other subject matter.

5 *Let the children manage the society themselves.* The teacher must guide and direct the work and make suggestions from time to time, but the children, by holding the offices and by acting on the committees, may and should be taught to shoulder responsibilities. Arrange to have every child hold an office or act on a committee sometime during the year. All the children need the practice, especially those who are not naturally leaders.

6 *Have the program for each meeting planned several weeks ahead of time.* The program should be made out very neatly on a good quality of paper, in ink, and posted on the bulletin board where all can see it. In this way each child knows when he is to appear and has plenty of time for preparation. The committee on special days can make good use of a correct list of such days. In consultation with the teacher plans can be made in advance in time for the suitable observance of each occasion.

7. *Be sure each child has prepared his part well.* It is unfair to a pupil and to the audience to have the child appear before he is sufficiently prepared. Older pupils can often help in directing the necessary attentive repetition by the younger children. Prompting is usually an embarrassing procedure, in general it is quite unnecessary. Pupils should get the idea that they will not generally need to be prompted. Even timid children can learn to get their parts and to give them acceptably. Nervousness and timidity can be overcome by suitable practice in most cases. This is one of the duties which the school owes to boys and girls. It is of course understood that children should not usually be expected to do as well as adults, although many will do better. The writer has sometimes witnessed public exercises in rural schools when he has felt sorry for the children because the teacher had evidently not done her part well.

8 *Do not try to have long, elaborate programs.* It is far better to have a short program, well given, than a long one in which the children stumble through their parts because there was not time for ample preparation. Besides, long programs become

tiresome and pupils lose interest. Perhaps a program lasting thirty to forty minutes is long enough in the average rural school; a program of an hour for the mothers' meeting or the community-center gathering may be quite adequate. The reference here is to the literary program.

9 *Encourage those who keep the record books to do so neatly and in proper form.* It is well to have the secretary hand in his report to be corrected every week before copying it into the secretary's book. This means that the first draft will be on loose paper for the teacher's correction. A good book should be provided for these minutes—good paper and strongly bound. A suitable label should be pasted on the front cover. The treasurer needs a book containing debit and credit columns, and the idea of *debit* and *credit* must be thoroughly taught. Every monetary transaction is either a receipt or an expenditure. Teach and train how to balance an account. Instruction in keeping both the secretary's and the treasurer's book should be given to all members who can understand.

10 *Make society activities a real training school in democracy.* Remember that the children will some day be actually carrying on the civic work of the community. The school is the place to learn how to conduct a public meeting and to do it right. Such work is much more important than many other things which rural teachers spend time in doing. Skill is the result of intelligent, attentive, motivated repetition. Skill comes only by practice under the inspiration and guidance of clear and correct ideals. The teacher must furnish standards and then motivate the work to secure needful interest.

#### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1. Find out what business is to be transacted in a certain school district at the annual meeting, then write out in proper form the various motions necessary.

2. Make out a good literary program of thirty minutes for the school society in a rural school.

3. Make out a fifteen-minute practice exercise in parliamentary usage, giving motions, amendments, and second amendments.

## 256 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

4 There should be a place for current events on the society program. List ten current-events topics which you think suitable for children in a rural school and tell how such subject matter should be presented.

5 Often there should be response to roll call with something worth while on the part of each pupil. Write a list of several kinds or types of suitable responses according to the nature of the theme of the program, for example nature subjects, pictures, music, famous people.

6. Indicate fifteen different central themes or general topics for society programs, such as music, masterpieces in paintings, inventors, authors, holidays.

### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

Read the articles on Parliamentary Practice and on Boys' and Girls' 4-H Clubs in the *World Book Encyclopedia* (1935).

See also pages 308 to 311 and page 318 of *Civics Through Problems*, by Edmonson and Dondineau, The Macmillan Company. This company also publishes the *Textbook on Parliamentary Law* by Hall and Sturgis.

*Parliamentary Usage* by Emma A. Fox is published by Doubleday, Page and Company.

*Robert's Rules of Order*, published by Scott, Foresman and Company, is a standard book on parliamentary practice and widely used. The price is \$1.50.

## CHAPTER XIV

### RURAL SOCIAL-CIVIC MEETINGS

**Why get together?** If the principle of democratic government is to prevail in America, people must be trained to the idea of organization, co-operation, and the free discussion of their common problems. Formerly the county schoolhouse was more frequently used than today for gatherings of all sorts—the debating club, the lyceum, the old spelling bees. Along with the decrease in the use of the rural schoolhouse for social and civic gatherings, there has been an increasing tendency (and a truly alarming one) for country people, especially the younger people, to go to town or city for their social recreation and amusements, many of which are artificial and more or less demoralizing.

It is only within comparatively recent years that various agencies have been set in operation in the rural community to give the rural population, old and young, an opportunity for expression and for growth and development through clubs and associations of various sorts. Emphatically, our young people always have found and always will find some way, legitimate or otherwise, in which to express their social instincts. If natural wholesome means are not provided by those in positions of leadership, young folks will take matters into their own hands for better or for worse—often for the latter.

There is the greatest need for the development of the neighborhood spirit, and this can come about only through a well-organized neighborhood. The task of leadership often falls to the teacher, no doubt rightly so. It is to the rural school that we must look for the initial steps in this great co-operative enterprise, this national task of training all our rural people for real participation in our great scheme of government. If the teacher does not start things, often nothing will be started. The result

may be a run-down neighborhood, the opposite of an organized, active, co-operating community. Many teachers shrink from the task of starting a neighborhood club or a parent-teacher association. However, the job is not nearly so formidable as it looks. If the teacher will only study this problem, she will soon become enthusiastic, she will find people in her district who are capable of maintaining the organization. Let us point out some ways and means of accomplishing concrete, tangible results.

**Kinds of meetings.** At the present time all sorts of organizations are in more or less active operation throughout the country. Some of these are for young people especially, others are for the older members of the community. Community clubs are now very common and the Parent-Teacher Association has come to have a large and influential place in many rural school districts. The P.T.A. is considered in the chapter devoted to the relations of parents and teachers. These various organizations have different aims, most of which may be summed up in the terms: *economic, educational, and social*. The early lyceums, debating societies, and singing schools were largely educational and social in their character and operation. In later years there has grown up a great variety of clubs which have had for their dominant aim the improvement of the economic condition of the farmer. The Patrons of Husbandry, popularly known as the Grange, was at one time a very thriving agricultural society and still is active in some sections. It has a distinctly social as well as an economic purpose. In later years the American Society of Equity has had a most flourishing growth and a nation-wide increase of local organizations. At the present time the Farm Bureau is a powerful organization with a large membership in many states. There are also many thriving Dairy-Test Associations, co-operative stores, co-operative elevators, and other farmer unions with economic objectives. The Farmers' Union and the National Nonpartisan League have also exerted a wide influence. Country-life associations have had a vigorous existence in many states; many times the district or neighborhood associations have been united into a strong county organization.

A recent meeting of a community club, which has now been in active operation for many years, was held in one of the larger houses of the neighborhood. About a dozen rural teachers were present, there was a large attendance of farmers, their wives, and others from a territory comprising several school districts. The program was educational, but it was also noted that the farmers were buying twine and coal through co-operative methods—an economic phase of the organization.

**How to organize.** It is important that no mistake be made at the start. If the first gathering is a failure it will be more difficult later to overcome a bad beginning. No effort, therefore, should be spared to make the first meeting a success.

Many times a community club may well grow out of a simple school program or evening entertainment. If the teacher plans to start in this way, she should make sure that this school program is a good one. All the pupils should take part. At such a gathering the teacher should make a special effort to meet the parents and others and to get acquainted.

When the teacher has had two or three such evening school programs, the time may be ripe to get some of the older people to take part in some way. After several people of the district have assisted the teacher and the school in putting on a successful entertainment, it will not be difficult to effect an organization of the older people.

Talk with several people about the advisability of forming a community club of some sort. In repeated conversations with patrons and others the teacher will be securing that co-operation which is necessary to make the enterprise go. It often helps to have some member of a successful community organization present to tell how to go about it and to answer questions. If this person shows genuine interest and is a good talker, the enthusiasm will prove contagious.

Call a meeting of all who should be members of the new organization. Previous to this first meeting the teacher has paved the way to a sympathetic conference by her conversations with various people of the district. At this meeting all details will be

fully explained and a final decision made to launch the new enterprise. Do not be discouraged if everyone should not show interest in the proceedings. Often significant results come out of small beginnings.

At the first meeting the teacher, whom we are assuming is acting as leader, will give a short talk in which she will carefully state the purpose of the proposed plan and show its chief benefits to the people and the community. It is important that the teacher know exactly what to say and that she present it clearly. This requires thoughtful preparation. All the details for this first meeting should be set down on paper in order. This will tend to avoid embarrassing mistakes and breaks in the program.

At this first meeting it is well to have a brief program which will precede the organization proceedings. As a part of this program there may be an outside speaker who should not talk more than fifteen or twenty minutes. This speaker may be the county superintendent, a high-school principal, or possibly someone from the state superintendent's office, or from a teachers' college. Perhaps the president of some neighborhood club or association can give a short, inspirational talk.

The next step is to elect officers, whose duty it will be to get a program ready for the next meeting and to present a constitution for the club to vote upon. The necessary officers are a president, vice president, secretary, and treasurer. Four committees will meet the requirements, as follows: executive committee, improvement committee, program committee, and publicity committee.

When the constitution is adopted and the committees are appointed, the machinery has been set in operation for a successful organization. It will now be necessary, however, to have some leader, properly the president of the club, who will see that the people do their duty on committees and in presenting programs. It is usually best for the teacher not to act as the president. She can be of greater service in an advisory capacity, moreover, the important thing is to train the people of the community to assume responsibility and to make the enterprise a success of their own initiative and co-operation.

**Kinds of gatherings.** (1) The school entertainment This may be held in the afternoon or in the evening, depending upon circumstances (2) Programs in which both children and older people take part These are usually held in the evening. (3) Farmers' clubs In these meetings topics of interest to the grown-up people are presented by members of the community and by outsiders. Children also often contribute to these programs Frequently special meetings are held which are attended only by adults. (4) Special occasions, such as farmers' institutes, Fourth of July celebrations, closing day of school, Memorial Day exercises

**School exercises.** For your school programs you can draw upon your regular school work A ten-minute exercise with a reading class, well prepared, is a most entertaining feature Tell the class sometime, say from two to four weeks before your program is to be held, that each pupil will read one of the lessons between certain pages, including from 20 to 40 pages The result will be that the children will do their best to master these pages and thus be able to read any of them with expression. Much of the language work can also be used on the program

Spelling exercises may be included Tell the children of a certain group that they will spell for ten or fifteen minutes, taking any of the words between certain pages All of them will try to stand up during the whole period The result will be a mastery of all the words on those pages

Rapid arithmetic by the pupils at the blackboard is very interesting, provided there is sufficient room The writing of numbers and rapid easy work in the four fundamentals may profitably be taken up for ten or fifteen minutes Special problems may also be used, such as those relating to land or lumber Do not include too much at one time

**Community singing.** It always adds to the enjoyment of a community center gathering to have all join, so far as possible, in singing some of the old familiar songs which nearly all people like to sing and to hear In order to make such singing a success, there should be a capable leader; and enough copies of the

words of the various songs should be available so that at least every two persons, preferably each person, may have a copy. If the leader can arouse the enthusiasm of the people by a few well-chosen words relative to the importance of all taking part, so much the better. If the singing is to be worth while there must be the good spirit—the will to sing, so to speak. Most people can sing, if they will only try, under the skillful leadership of some man or woman who can carry the tune clearly and strongly. The leader should also be a good talker—if possible, someone who can animate the crowd, get them interested and in a good-natured responsive mood. This will add materially to the pleasure of the occasion.

Certain songs are good for community singing, the teacher should train her pupils so that they can lead in good form when occasion requires. Here is a list of thirty good ones: America; America, the Beautiful; Battle City of Freedom; Battle Hymn of the Republic; Columbia; Gem of the Ocean; Keep the Home Fires Burning; The Marseillaise; Smiles; Over There; Soldiers' Chorus; Star Spangled Banner; There's a Long, Long Trail; When Johnny Comes Marching Home; Onward Christian Soldiers; your own state song; Old Black Joe; Love's Old Sweet Song; Old Folks at Home; Massa's in the Cold, Cold Ground; Lightly Row; Holy Night; My Bonnie; The Little Brown Church in the Vale; Swing Low, Sweet Chariot; Come Thou Almighty King; My Old Kentucky Home; Juanita; Santa Lucia; Sweet and Low; Auld Lang Syne.

There are several good low-priced song books; three of the most useful collections of common songs for country schools are the following:

1. *Twice 55 Community Songs*; C. C. Birchard and Company, Boston, Mass.
2. *The One Hundred and One Best Songs*, The Cable Company, Chicago.
3. *The Golden Book of Favorite Songs*, Hall and McCreary, Chicago.

These song books, in paper covers, sell for only ten to fifteen cents each. Send to the three companies for their price lists.

**Service of a country newspaper.**<sup>1</sup> A country daily newspaper in a midwestern state had the distinction some years ago of being the first paper to establish a community-service department, with help to rural schools and rural-community organizations as its chief purpose. The Good Times Club, designed as an organization especially suited to the needs of children in one-room and small graded schools, enrolled, within a period of two years, more than 4000 children, representing 190 school branches in five counties. Monthly recreation programs were sent to each school branch and a long list of entertainment and program materials, handicraft helps, and other extracurricular aids were offered to teachers at small cost. Materials were sent on approval when desired.

An interesting outgrowth of the Good Times Club service was found in a series of athletic and physical tests taken with the aid of such simple equipment as practically every rural school affords. Another development was an individual point system for school pupils and a patron's point system, in connection with which honor buttons were offered to pupils and honor pennants to schools for certain achievements.

An original plan for graded music-memory contests was inaugurated, by which the younger pupils in the one-room schools participated to the full extent of their ability. Prizes for local and county music-memory contests were furnished.

Kite making was promoted in connection with township and county playdays, directions for making kites being furnished and prizes offered to schools whose pupils scored the highest number of points in playday tournaments.

A portable motion-picture projector, operated with either a 110- or 50-volt current, the latter drawn from storage batteries when necessary, was used to present film programs in rural schools, community halls, and churches. Free films were procured from the Bureau of Visual Instruction of the State University.

This newspaper carried a Good Times Club section in its

<sup>1</sup>This section was originally written by Florence Slown Hyde

week-end edition issued Saturdays. This section featured letters written by rural school pupils telling about school activities. Letters were graded each month by teacher-training students and prizes were given to the four that received the highest grades. Teachers found this news-letter writing a real help in the motivation of language work.

The Community Service Department of this newspaper co-operated with rural-community clubs, local Farm-Bureau and Grange organizations, farm-women's clubs and other rural groups that desired assistance in connection with recreation or community-welfare projects. The Service Department responded to any need that might arise, either directly and personally or by referring the applicant to other agencies in county, state, or nation.

No attempt was made to promote preconceived plans or to displace the program of any existing agency. On the other hand, interpretative articles about the work of educational forces and about every worth-while project carried on by any and all organizations were published frequently by this newspaper.

**Information concerning your flag.** The AMERICAN FLAG is the symbol of the brotherhood of man; it stands for courage, for chivalry, for generosity, and for honor. To bear the Star Spangled Banner is an honor; to own one is a sacred trust, for it is the emblem of freedom, equality, and justice to all. The flag should not be hoisted before sunrise, nor allowed to remain up after sunset. When being raised or lowered, it should not be allowed to touch the ground. When the national colors are passing on parade or in review, and when they are being lowered at sunset or the "Star-Spangled Banner" is being played, spectators should, if walking, halt, and, if sitting, rise and stand at attention with hats off. The flag at half-staff is a sign of mourning. In placing the flag at half-staff, it first should be hoisted to the top of the staff and then lowered to position; preliminary to lowering from half-staff, it should be raised to the top. On Memorial Day, May 30, it should fly at half-staff until noon and at top staff from noon until sunset. When a flag is dis-

played from a horizontal staff or rope, the union or blue field should be away from the building from which it is displayed.

**Pledge of allegiance procedure.** The *Pledge of Allegiance* was given, under the leadership of *The Youth's Companion*, by more than 12,000,000 Public School Pupils during the National Public School Celebration of October 21, 1892. So patriotic and appropriate was this Pledge of Allegiance that it has been perpetuated, and is given in thousands of schools. It may be called the national salute, and its universal adoption by public schools and patriotic organizations is strongly advocated by educators everywhere.

The flag may be draped against the wall near the teacher's desk, or preferably, permanently mounted on a staff and stationed near the desk. The Pledge of Allegiance may be observed in the following manner:

- 1 Display the flag at the teacher's desk.
- 2 At a given signal every pupil stands and turns his face toward the flag, hands to the side.
- 3 At the next signal, each pupil should give the *civilian salute*. This is done by standing with the right hand over the heart, while the pupils in this position, repeat together the following pledge: "*I pledge allegiance to the flag of the United States of America, and to the Republic for which it stands, one Nation indivisible, with liberty and justice for all*" At the words "to the flag" the right hand is extended gracefully, palm upward, toward the flag, and remains in this position until the end of the affirmation, whereupon the hand immediately drops to the side. Then, still standing, the exercise may close with our National Hymn, "America." This is the civilian salute. Persons in uniform should render the right-hand salute, as it is called. When the flag is passing by, men and boys should remove the headdress with the right hand and hold it at the left shoulder, hand over the heart.

In some public schools the pledge is given daily at the opening of the morning session. In most cases, however, it is observed at the opening of the school on Monday morning. In many

states the flag must be displayed on every school day from a staff either on the building or in the yard. In such cases it should be raised as stated on a previous page, so far as possible.

**Suggestions for school and community meetings.** It is important that community center and school programs be conducted properly and that such meetings be truly successful. For this reason, the following suggestions and cautions are given. They are the result of the experience of persons who have been working in country schools for many years.

1. The primary purpose of the school must always be kept in mind. This purpose is to give the children of the community an elementary education, an important phase of this elementary education is the mastery of the essentials of the fundamental branches.

2 Care should always be taken after a social function of any kind that the schoolroom is in proper condition for the regular school work before its next session opens.

3 Too much time should not be taken from the regular school work to prepare for the school entertainment. We should not get the idea, however, that some time so taken is actually wasted; it may be necessary and advisable to use a portion of regular school hours, at times, to prepare for truly educational programs.

4 The exercises should be carefully planned. Even the details of the room management should be looked after, so that the audience may be as comfortable as possible. The board and others should co-operate with the teacher, people should be made to feel that they are welcome.

5 Tact should be used in making the selections for the program. The feelings and prejudices of the people should, to some extent at least, be taken into consideration. There is so much good material for program purposes that it is not necessary to use anything that might offend.

6 We must not expect too much from the teacher. We should get others to help. The teacher, it is true, must be held responsible for any contributions which the children make; but it is too much to expect the teacher to be at the head of a literary

society in which the whole community takes part. Besides, it is well to have the burdens and responsibilities distributed among the people. The teacher may leave the community at the end of the year, it is well to have the people themselves trained to go on with the work.

7. When this work is first undertaken it should be begun in a modest way. The selections and the program should be simple and not too long.

8. Those who have the preparation of programs in charge should beware of the tiresome, long-winded person, whether local talent or an outsider.

9. Do not be too anxious to introduce unusual or exciting features. The purpose of these meetings is to get as many as possible to take part. If spectacular exhibitions become common, they will have a tendency to discourage the more modest efforts of the people themselves. While it is an excellent plan to have the county superintendent or any outside person give an occasional illustrated lecture, yet we do not want to go to the other extreme and make people feel that in order to have anything worth attending we must have some outsider present or some unusual feature.

10. Occasionally it happens that people from the outside, sometimes from a near-by village or city, will go out into the country to attend one of these evening meetings. In this group may occasionally be found persons of superficial judgment who will criticize the efforts of those who are trying to do their best. While men and women of the right spirit will never do this, it is well to be prepared to encounter and check any people of this type who may happen to attend. Just how this is to be done, particular conditions will determine.

11. We should in every possible way try to avoid factionalism. These meetings should be a means of cementing the people of the district into one community; anything that may cause any formation of factions must be studiously avoided.

12. As the interest in these meetings grows, do not let their management become monopolized by either young or old. In

some communities the clubs have gone to pieces largely because comparatively young people have had the sole management in their hands. In other communities interest has been lost because only older people have managed the organization and the young people have gradually lost interest.

13. The teacher should always be careful not to assume a superior attitude toward the people of the community. She should also be careful not unduly to force her own individual ideas or opinions upon them. When the people assume a resentful attitude toward the teacher, her power as a community leader is seriously weakened if not destroyed.

14. Train your pupils to talk in clear, distinct tones, so they can be understood. Rehearse adequately so that children will not usually need to be prompted, at least not very much. If a teacher must prompt anybody, she should do it without delay so that the child readily gets his cue. It is quite embarrassing to everyone when any child must stop and painfully try to think of his part before an audience. Tell him quickly, plainly, and quietly what to say or to do and go right on with the exercise.

15. Arrange to let fresh air into the room. A small country schoolhouse with little or no ventilation, crowded with people, is often a good place for the spread of infectious respiratory diseases. Open the windows occasionally if only for a few minutes. Have persons appointed to look after this important matter. Don't compel people to sit more than a few moments in a cold draft, however.

16. Don't allow your pupils to talk loudly or to run around and disturb people during intermissions or at any other time. Tell them beforehand what is right and what you expect. This is certainly a part of their training in good citizenship. Sometimes some of the older young people of the district or from adjoining districts and towns do not manifest the best of manners. They are loud in their talk and often in their actions. The members of the board should assist the teacher in keeping such persons in order.

17. Often there is good talent in the district which should be utilized for speaking or singing or both. People usually need repeated and often urgent invitations to assist; but generally they are glad to help the teacher and the school and will add much to the evening's entertainment in many cases.

18. Begin on the hour previously announced, if at all possible. Parents, pupils, and others can be led to understand that eight o'clock, for example, means just that, although they may need some training. In some communities tardiness is merely a bad habit, with no particular reason for it. In any case and always the teacher must be good-natured, whether people are on time or come late. Be the cordial hostess and receive people graciously.

19. The program is not for the teacher's benefit, as she is simply the servant of the people. The program is for the good of the boys and girls and of the people of the district. It is a meeting *of* the people and *for* the people, and should many times be *by* the people, also. Try to make the program instructive as well as entertaining. The teacher does not have time for elaborate scenery and costumes or for foolish farces which usually have no educational value. At least teacher and children need not be parties to putting on programs of questionable character and influence.

20. Teach and train your boys and girls to stand straight, to walk erect and in line, and to talk out so that all may hear. The training which pupils receive in connection with public programs is a valuable part of their education and should be done right.

21. Do not have too long or too difficult programs. It is better to have a short meeting and have everyone go home satisfied than to draw the meeting out and have people tired. An hour or an hour and a half is about the limit, as a rule. Do not have too many meetings. It is easy to overdo in both length and frequency, there is always a happy medium.

22. Remember that the purpose you have in mind will largely determine the character of the programs. The primary purpose

should be the development of the community, not the advertising of outside individuals. When outside people are brought in, it should be for the purpose of giving the local people suggestions or inspiration for their own work.

23 Make use of the school library and any other library which is accessible.

24 Among the persons that may be asked to help are the following: teachers, principals, superintendents, county officers, members of the school board, successful farmers who have become specialists in certain lines of work (such as fruit growing, poultry raising, dairying), physicians, war veterans, and American Legion men.

25 In your school programs get every child to do something, if it be but to take part in a drill. By grouping children all can participate without prolonging the program unduly.

#### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1 State five good arguments in favor of the get-together idea. What modern inventions, customs, habits, forms of amusement, and tendencies interfere with people's getting together in community gatherings? What others aid it?

2 Outline a ten-minute talk by the teacher at a *first* community meeting. Prepare to give this talk in good form, and then practice on your classmates. Or you can have the real, natural setting in a meeting at your own schoolhouse.

3 Make out a Memorial Day program of speaking, singing, flag drills, or other appropriate items, which will take an hour or less.

4 Outline a program for Armistice Day. Don't forget to include "In Flanders Field," "Your Flag and My Flag," "The American's Creed," the "Flag Salute" and "Pledge of Allegiance," and perhaps "The Gettysburg Address."

5 Use any sample constitution as a model and organize a neighborhood improvement club. If you are a student, you and your class can practice on the problem, if a rural teacher, it will be possible for you actually to effect an organization of the people of your district.

6 Write out a list of questions which will develop the meaning of the four stanzas of "America." Do the same for "America the Beautiful." Study these poems until you fully understand them.

REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING  
AND STUDY

- 1 *Needed Readjustments in Rural Life*, 1925; American Country Life Association, 105 East Twenty-second Street, New York City.
- 2 ELSOM, J C, AND TRILLING, B M—*Social Games and Group Dances*, J B Lippincott Company. 1927.
- 3 FERRIS, HELEN—*Producing Amateur Entertainments*, E P. Dutton Company 1925.
- 4 MACKAY, C. D.—*Patriotic Plays and Pageants*, Henry Holt and Company. 1934.
- 5 MONAGHAN, MARY L—*Dialogues for Rural Schools—For All Ages*, T S Denison and Company 1920
- 6 *Motion Pictures and Motion-picture Equipment, Handbook of Useful Information*, 18 pages. (Education Bulletin 82, 1919) 5¢. Superintendent of Documents, Washington, D C.
- 7 ROBERT, H M—*Primer of Parliamentary Law*, Scott, Foresman and Company 1935.
- 8 SCHAUFLER, R. H—*Our American Holidays*; Moffat, Yard and Company 1915. Separate volumes on Christmas, Thanksgiving, etc
9. STERN, RENÉE B—*Neighborhood Entertainments*; Sturgis and Walton Company. 1911  
Send five cents to the Superintendent of Documents, Washington, D C, for the latest Educational Directory—Part IV This list of American Associations, Educational, Civic, and Learned, is useful. There are nine lists and directories in this 47-page bulletin, and complete addresses are given. It is revised each year.

## CHAPTER XV

### ELEMENTARY IDEAS ABOUT HUMAN BEHAVIOR

This chapter is written in the hope that it will stimulate the young teacher to further study and investigation. In this brief résumé nothing more can be done than to present rather summarized statements of a few basic ideas which should be given further careful consideration and much more detailed analysis by the student. There are many excellent discussions of all these topics, which will enable the teacher to carry on her work more intelligently and more effectively. A teacher who knows the facts of mental science is in a position not only to do better teaching, but more satisfactorily to understand and interpret the problems of human life, of her own personality, and of the personalities of her pupils and others. Unless a teacher knows the fundamental reasons for what she does, her work will certainly be unscientific as well as more or less uncertain.

**What does a teacher need to know?** Any teacher, rural or urban, needs to know a great many things. She should know vastly more than she is expected to teach. The larger the background of knowledge and general information which a teacher possesses, the better. Every good teacher is fairly well acquainted with a considerable amount of useful lore in a wide variety of fields. She needs to know the facts of elementary science; she needs a general knowledge of literature and a special knowledge of children's literature; she needs to know all of the subject matter in the course of study; she needs a knowledge of school management, she needs to know how to make use of problem-project techniques and other teaching procedures, she surely should understand how to direct study activities, how to promote character and health development, and so on. The special point in connection with this chapter is that a teacher

needs to know something of the spiritual forces and the mental materials with which she is constantly dealing. The chief concern of the teacher is with teaching and learning. How do children learn? That is the most important question of all for the teacher. She should be constantly inquiring not only how children learn, but also how she, the teacher, can best promote the learning processes. Human behavior, which includes human learning, is exceedingly complex. If a teacher desires to be more than a mechanical manipulator of devices, she will go below the surface to see why and how the machine operates. This chapter gives some glimpses into the mental background.

**Value of the scientific method and attitude.** The scientific method is the method of investigation of all the available facts, the scientific attitude is that of entire willingness to look patiently for all the necessary data and of unwillingness to draw conclusions on an insecure basis of limited knowledge. Every teacher should know something of the scientific method of study and every teacher should learn the importance of suspending judgment until all the available evidence is in. In the older books on educational psychology there were a multitude of statements which today we know had no scientific foundation whatever. Often the premises were wrong as well as the steps in arriving at conclusions. Today much stress is being placed upon direct experiment and observation. Thorndike's conclusions are largely based upon experimental data. A new psychology of learning has been evolved during the past quarter century as a result of research and experimental studies made by E. L. Thorndike, J. B. Watson, Wm. McDougall, I. P. Pavlov, and many others. The scientific method is impersonal, precise, experimental, exact, and deals with the observation and measurement of particular, controlled phenomena. In one vital sense, every teacher should be a scientist, or at any rate should have the scientific attitude in that she has a thoroughgoing respect for facts.

**Objective study of behavior vs. introspection.** The objective study of behavior is the same scientific method of directed

observation and experiment which is now used in every field of science, in biology, for example, as well as in psychology. Until about a generation ago the accepted procedure in psychology was largely that of introspection. Literally, this looking inside is of little scientific value because we are forced to accept the conclusions of one person concerning his own personal sensations. In an objective study of behavior, however, it is possible for any number of persons to observe the reactions of any other selected group. Some elements of personality can be learned only by introspection, but psychologists today are suspicious of the exclusive use of the introspective method. It is now the general feeling that the only logical and safe procedure is the experimental observation of the activities of men and animals in a purely objective impersonal manner. However, introspection has value and no doubt always will have as one means for the study of human nature and human behavior.

**Are we born that way?** To what extent has heredity made us what we are? And what has been, or is, the influence of environment? Nobody knows the exact answer to these questions. Nobody can give the true relations between nature and nurture. It is obviously certain that we are shaped by both heredity and environment. Which factor is the stronger depends upon circumstances and upon individuals. Each of us is limited definitely and certainly in his physical, mental, and moral capacities or possibilities because of his inheritance. From our parents we receive a certain organization of the nervous system, for example. The size of the body and of various organs of the body are largely matters of heredity, so far as the possibility of education is concerned the particular type of nervous system is a matter of basic importance. The laws of heredity cannot be evaded. We are obliged to accept them for better or for worse. But accepting the laws of heredity as inevitable, the great influence for the teacher to stress is environment by which is really meant all educative forces which mold our lives. Given a certain type of hereditary capacity, the chief question for the teacher is one of development, of

guidance, of education. Because of wrong educational environment, because of weaknesses of personalities, it often happens that promising inherited possibilities come to nought. It is the environment to which we give attention and to which we respond that changes us.

**Nature of instinctive behavior.** Human beings are born with certain innate complex tendencies to behavior which are called instincts. These responses are more complicated than reflex action and are not in the nature of learned behavior. The conduct of the lower animals is largely determined by instinctive tendencies rather than by learning. On the other hand, the human infant is relatively helpless at birth and during the prolonged period of infancy *learns* almost everything that it knows or can do. In common with many of the lower animals, the child has certain native urges, such as those of play, self-assertion, pugnacity, eating, desire for companions, interest in others, disposition to acquire and to hoard, and so on. Writers do not agree here in their enumerations or in their classifications. These tendencies afford the basis for the education of the child. It is because of the instinctive tendencies to action that human education is possible. Innate tendencies should be used and guided rather than thwarted. Children do not inherit knowledge; they inherit tendencies to behavior. Some instinctive tendencies do not require much modification, but most of them need definite redirection to enable men to live social lives. It is sometimes difficult clearly to distinguish the urge of a fixed habit from that of a native impulse, but the practical consideration for education is that both are strong, motivating tendencies.

Dr Ragsdale states in a letter to the author that "the instinct theory is seriously questioned by many psychologists of today." And Dr James B. Stroud in his *Educational Psychology*<sup>1</sup> says that

The concept of instinct should be excluded from human psychology. Its use leads to confusion. There is no valid evidence that man is natively endowed with any of the complex, patterned reactions com-

<sup>1</sup> STRoud, J. B.—*Educational Psychology*, The Macmillan Company 1935

monly called instincts As the term is customarily defined in psychology, there probably are no human instincts As the writer has already suggested, we have more specific terms which cover the latter phenomena, namely, reflexes, biological urges or needs, and emotion The suggestion is made here that we use these terms when the phenomena which they signify are meant, and that we reserve the term instinct to designate complex, innate, patterned reactions among animals . . *Whatever is laudable in man is learned, it is the product of social heritage or of intelligent adjustment.* The doctrine of instinct, as customarily stated, has no value for education . . The student should not form the impression that the native endowment of man is of no consequence in his mental development.

It is man's native, innate *emotional*, rather than his native, instinctive tendencies which play so large a part in his learning and in his general behavior.

**"No psychosis without neurosis."** This means that there is no psychical effect, whatever that may be, without the correlative or corresponding physical activity of the central nervous system All learning is dependent upon the action of the nervous mechanism The behaviourists do not think it necessary to postulate any form of consciousness or mind, as such and as an entity Mind for the behaviorists is nonexistent and therefore introspection must be an absurdity Whatever truth there may be in that theory, and it has never been either proven or disproven, whenever any sort of learning takes place, because of experience, definite changes are recorded in the nerve tissues of brain and spinal cord The basis of the teaching-learning process is purely and entirely physical, without a doubt Learning starts with sensation, the basis of which is found in the irritability and conductivity of nerve tissues as they are found in the cerebrospinal system The brain comprises the cerebrum, the cerebellum, and the medulla; the spinal cord is a column of nerve tissues from which thirty-one pairs of nerves branch off. The basic element of the nervous system is the *neurone*, which consists of a cell body from which branch off the axones and the dendrites The co-operative action of neurons is made possible by what is termed the *synapse* where nerve fibers come

into contact but do not unite. The synapse is a most interesting part of the nervous system from the standpoint of learning and the student should make a careful study of its nature and function.

In *Human Behavior* by Colvin, Bagley, and Macdonald we find these statements regarding the synapse:

The *synapse* is the area where the end-brush of one neurone comes into close enough proximity to the dendrite of another neurone to permit the passage of the nerve impulse from one neurone to another. In some respects the synapse is the most important part of the nervous system. It is generally accepted that learning is the result of some change taking place at this junction of end-brush of the axon and the "shrub" of a dendrite. Some physiologists believe that a chemical change takes place when a nerve impulse crosses from one neurone to another, others believe that the nerve impulse from one neurone, when it stimulates another neurone to activity, causes the dendrite of the latter to extend or to thicken so that it is closer to the end-brush. Exactly what does happen is not known.

Morgan and Gilliland in *An Introduction to Psychology* (The Macmillan Company) say that

This name *synapse* signifies a "fitting together" and not a "growing together." Nerve impulses are conducted from the terminations of the sensory axon to the dendrites of the motor cells, but will not pass in the reverse direction. There is greater delay in the passage of a nerve current through a synapse than along a nerve fiber. This indicates that the synapse provides a sort of obstruction to free flow of nervous energy. From these facts it seems that the synapse holds the secret of much that transpires in our mental life.

**Stimulus and reaction; situation and response.** Our behavior, no matter how simple or how complex, is manifested in reactions to definite stimuli. The reaction hypothesis is now generally accepted. Reactions of some sort are inevitable, as we react so are we and so do we become. All forms of behavior, whether outward and evident, or more subtle and hidden, as activities of the glands including the endocrine glands, are explained in terms of stimulus and response. In the case of sensorimotor experience there is very plainly a stimulus-response unit or

reaction unit. Today all forms of mental activities or experiences (some say consciousness) are also explained in terms of reaction to stimuli. The student should understand that many stimuli are acting at the same time, presenting what is termed a *situation*. Usually in any situation there are many stimuli producing their effect upon the nervous system. Whether we are swinging golf clubs, or manufacturing gastric juice to digest our dinners, or getting disturbed mentally over the poor shot on the links, in each case the explanation is the same—some response to some situation. Both situations and responses to them vary greatly in complexity. The teacher's work should consist in furnishing as many suitable learning situations as possible and in securing as adequate responses to them as her motivating procedures will permit. In teaching we attempt to determine and to control the character and extent of the child's reactions or responses in order to shape the type of his education.

**Starting and stopping; action and inhibition.** Responses or reactions are often checked or repressed, when this occurs we use the term *inhibition* to name the process. Activities of the lower nerve centers are inhibited by the higher centers. At the table you place something very hot in the mouth. The natural first impulse is at once to get rid of the irritating morsel or fluid, but your good manners prompt you to retain it even at the cost of considerable discomfort. One kind of stimulus or idea will check the action of another. Often when the reaction is prevented and there is thus a damming up of the natural outflow of nervous energy, the result may be an increase of the stimulus. When there is a conflict of ideas, the stronger ones will win out. Any idea that has a good deal of the emotional element in it will have greater force. Children need to learn to control some of their natural urges. There is some risk in too much repression, and there is likewise danger in too much freedom and gratification. One of the large functions of education is to teach self-control. Certain forms of inhibition should become habitual for the welfare of the individual and the good of society. In our civilization it is essential that primitive impulses

frequently be checked. It is often painful to have a neural impulse thwarted, but in the long run such checking is less painful than the giving way would be. By the use of good judgment, we can side-step or avoid stimuli that are too strong for us. We can mitigate the wear and tear on our nervous systems by modifying our desires.

**Nature of reflex action.** Reflex action occurs when the stimulation of an ingoing nerve sets up a nervous impulse that is carried to the central nervous system where it is reflected back in some sort of muscular movement or in the action of some bodily organ. Common examples of reflex action are crying out when startled, coughing, swallowing, winking, etc. For reflex action to occur, it is necessary that there be some stimulation of nerve tissue, that sensory nerve fibers carry the impulse to the nerve centers, that the impulse be switched over to an outgoing nerve path, and lastly that some form of muscular tissue be made to contract—the arm, for example, or the stomach muscles as in a case of nausea or whenever the stomach glands are made to secrete by the presence of food. These reflex movements are externally stimulated, are without mental control, and may be either conscious or unconscious. We do not learn reflex action. Such responses are ready-made for us; they constitute an essential nervous basis for learning. The entire human nervous mechanism is a wonderfully complicated and efficient system by which stimulations from the outer world or from the body itself are received and transmitted into the necessary reactions. Such stimulation and reflection of impulses constitute the ultimate physical cause for all mental life. Any ordinary reflex action typifies the physiological explanation of the most elaborate and complex human behavior.

**Conditioned responses modify behavior.** According to the behavioristic or mechanistic school of thought, all human behavior is made up of reflexes and conditioned reflexes. The latter are responses or reactions that have been changed by experience, environment, or education. In the case of the famous,

now classical experiment, of Pavlov, the Russian scientist, with his dogs, the reflex of the salivary glands was *conditioned* by presenting at the same time two stimuli, the taste of the food and the sound of a bell. Through the application of the principle of *simultaneous stimulation*, and by much repetition, Pavlov's dogs *learned* to secrete saliva when they heard the bell ring. This result was brought about by first showing the meat and ringing the bell at the same time. After sufficient repetition, the ringing of the bell alone was enough to cause the salivary response. Responding with a flow of saliva to the sound of the bell as a single stimulus is a conditioned response. This discovery made many years ago has an important application in the work of the school, or in any learning in or out of school. Very much depends on the associated responses which we experience. Many of our likes and dislikes, our fears, our prejudices against people are developed in this way. Dislike for certain foods is due often to unfortunate experiences which have never been corrected by clear thinking. The wise parent or teacher makes an effort to offer simultaneously wholesome harmonious learning situations and not those which will later cause mental conflicts and difficulties.

**How knowing begins.** The newborn babe *knows* nothing whatsoever. It is, too, more helpless than the puppy, the kitten, the chick, and many other of the lower animals. The baby can cry, swallow, and the like, and it can make various aimless movements with its legs and arms. Although the child has no control over its movements and no apparent consciousness, these early spontaneous, automatic squirmings and jerkings afford the basis for future learning. The human baby is indeed helpless, but it has great possibilities for growth because of the extent to which it can *learn by experience*. The lower animals have but limited power to learn. It would seem that the first mental state, if it may be so called, is nothing more than a general feeling or sense of ease, comfort, or their opposites. Doubtless the beginnings of any mental activity are those of a sense or feeling of change or of difference. Now it is light, now

it is dark, now mother is here and now she is not. The first few days practically all of the senses seem dormant; but they soon awaken. Through the various senses the child gets his raw materials, his experiences, by which he learns. How does he learn to know, to know that he knows, and to know that he is the knower? When and how does the child learn his own identity? That is a question for the psychologist to answer. The insight of the poet often gives us a suggestion, as when Tennyson sings.

The baby new to earth and sky,  
What time his tender palm is prest  
Against the circle of the breast,  
Has never thought that this is I,

But as he grows he gathers much  
And learns the use of *I* and *me*  
And finds I am not what I see  
And other than the things I touch.

**Securing the raw materials.** The extremely complex nervous system of man is so organized that it responds to a great variety of stimuli. The irritability and the conductivity of nerve tissues make it possible to have sensations through and by means of the different senses. We are not only able to see, hear, smell, taste, and touch, but we also have pressure, temperature, pain, and muscular and organic sensations. Through muscular or kinaesthetic sensations we secure data for the interpretation of movements, of position, of strain, and the like. There is a most important sense of muscular effort due to sensations from the nerve ends in muscles and joints. When an incarving nerve is stimulated by sound waves, ether waves, or substances in solution impinging the taste buds, the first thing that happens is a sensation; but immediately the process of interpretation takes place and the person says, that is a foghorn, or that is a rose, or this is vanilla or lemon flavor, and so on. This interpretation is perception. To have a sensation there must be some form of stimulation, the nerve impulse must be transmitted, and

there must be a reacting brain center. We get many sensations from the internal organs—stomach, heart, lungs. So the raw materials used in learning all come through sensations which are immediately interpreted as we grow older and thus become perceptions or *percepts*. Through sensation physical and chemical energy is changed over into nervous energy, thus we get our data for learning. The human nervous system is a marvelous receiving and reacting mechanism.

**Interpretation of sensation gives perception.** All our elementary knowledge comes primarily and originally through our senses. How do we perceive a watermelon? Learning a watermelon by experience is a useful illustration of *sense perception*. Various sensations are interpreted to mean the object, watermelon. There is the object in space, the process of perception, and the mental result, the *percept*. To perceive a watermelon, we must use several senses. The use of the eye as a means of learning is self-evident, but we must see not only the outer rind, but the tinted meat and the rows of shining black seeds. How can we *hear* a watermelon? Chiefly, no doubt, in thumping the rind to determine ripeness. *Taste* and *smell* are apparent, although some of us might be more discriminating through training in acuteness of taste and smell. We *feel* or *touch* its smooth curved outer skin or rind. We press to discover hardness or softness. We say that *seeing* is *believing*. We often get more accurate knowledge through touch which aids or reinforces sight in drawing conclusions. As to *temperature*, we place the melon on ice so that we may have the sensation of coolness in the mouth. This cool sensation is due not to taste, but to the temperature sense. Finally, no one has fully sensed a watermelon without *lifting* or *hefting* it. Here we get a new sensation through the muscles. When all these various sensations are fused and then interpreted, we may say that we have the *percept*, *watermelon*. However, this *sense-knowledge* is, of course, only the beginning of what we finally learn about watermelons. Note that these beginnings in learning come only through actual personal observation and experience.

**Percepts—images—concepts.** It will help any teacher to get a clear understanding of these terms, because in all teaching and learning we are dealing with these mental products and also with the processes of perceiving, of forming images of both memory and imagination, and of developing general meanings or notions. In order to have a percept the object must be here and now and capable of stimulating the nervous system. We perceive through all of our senses, and percepts are usually complex products of many sensations. An image is a revived or recalled mental impression or experience. When I am looking directly at the fountain pen before me I have a percept of it through the eye, aided by the sense of active touch. I do not see roundness, hardness, smoothness. When I close my eyes, I can see the pen more or less clearly in my "mind's eye." That is an image and it is not as distinct and accurate as the percept. But, I also have a general idea of fountain pens. They have certain common qualities, as for example that of holding the ink in a cylindrical barrel. But they differ greatly in color, size, method of filling, type of pen point, etc. When the elements of likeness are fused together we have a concept of fountain pens in general. Concepts are essential for all generalized thinking. Concepts are the product of experience and their significant contents vary as experience varies. Here again we see the need for experience as the basis of all learning.

**Imagery—memory and imagination.** It is impossible to have a mental image unless there has been adequate sense experience preceding. A person born blind cannot possibly have any visual images. A congenital deaf-mute cannot image sounds. Memory is the power of retaining and reproducing past sensory experiences. It is due to changes wrought in the nervous tissue of the cerebrospinal system. Memory and habit are alike in that they are both dependent upon changes made in nerve cells and fibers, the neurons. They differ in the fact that memories are largely mental, while habits have to do, in many instances, purely with motor responses. However, we have emotional habits, habitual ways of thinking, and habitual attitudes. You

have a memory of Kipling's Recessional, but you formed a complex motor habit when you learned to drive a car or to operate a typewriter. We have sensorimotor habits with which are associated various habitual feelings of ease, satisfaction, and the like. There is no general faculty called memory. There is no mental faculty of any kind. We have *memories* rather than memory. Experiences cause changes in various parts of the cerebrospinal system, and as there is an infinite variety of impressions made through the eye, the ear, and the senses of taste, touch, smell, temperature, and muscular effort, so there are any number of different memories, depending upon the nature and the extent of the original and repeated impressions. *Imagination* is the power to reproduce past experiences and, in addition to this, to recombine them into something somewhat new.

Memory images are expected to be as true as may be to reality. But imagination may and does transcend all reality; by the process of recombination, new and often strange or weird mental products may be the result. Mental imagery is necessary in memory, imagination, and thinking. The process of perception is also impossible without recall. Our stock of images determines our power in large measure in each of these fields. Our experiences in life determine the nature and extent of our stock of images. Man differs from the lower animals largely in the character, the scope, and the variety of his images. The dog, cat, and horse, apparently, are restricted for the most part to a narrow field of sense impressions, and are evidently unable to store up the wealth of experiences that man has. Human beings are the heirs of all the ages because of their power to image that which has been and that which may yet be.

**Nature, formation, and retention of images.** People vary greatly in the character and the extent of their imagery. Most people are able to form good visual images; the next most common power is in the field of auditory images. A painter of portraits will have strong visual images, musicians need to be

able to image impressions received through the ear. Most people find some difficulty in imaging odors and tastes. It used to be thought that there were pronounced imagery types such as the visual type, the audible type, the motor type, but it is now known that usually persons who excel in one way are likely to show proficiency in all types of imagery. In teaching it is important to use concrete or picture images as much as possible, rather than merely abstract or symbol images. Words mean nothing in themselves. They are primarily only empty symbols; they need to be filled with the life of reality in the form of mental pictures. This is a daily concern of every good teacher. To aid memory and imagination, the school needs a good equipment of objective material, such as globes, maps, and measures, in order to make the sense impression strong. Objective teaching is a constant necessity in order to provide reality and real experience. Memory ability, in general, depends upon the nature of one's nervous system; this is largely a matter of heredity. Some people have far greater retentiveness than others, because their neurons are more easily modified and because the changes are more permanent. Health is of vital importance, if one would have an active retentive mind, he must have good blood and a sound nervous system.

**How can we remember better?** Images come to mind according to the law of association, that is, related ideas or experiences tend to suggest or recall one another. The number and the organization of associations probably has more to do with recall than anything else. It is the teacher's duty to present material in such a way that the neuron connections are many and of such a character as to reinforce each other. The basic law of association is this: Mental experiences occurring together tend to recur together. Try to recall several personal illustrations of this fact. If we wish to understand anything well and to keep it in mind, it is important that we bring to bear as many different senses as possible in the learning, resulting in a variety of *related images*. If clear, definite, and repeated expression in the best possible English is added, the result is more permanent.

Repetitions to insure the best retention should be attentive, intelligent, thoughtful, meaningful Teach meanings not words Make first impressions as strong, clear, and vivid as possible Interest is the mother of attention and attention is the mother of memory Poems should be taught as related, meaningful wholes It is better to go through the entire poem each time Recall is more certain if we work on related, co-ordinated units.

**Cultivation of imagination.** Teachers should take pains to develop not only the ability to recall the memory images which pupils have gained through experience, but also the ability to recombine into new forms the products of their experiences Most children know hills, and from these images they can, through imagination, picture mountains Few school children have seen the Amazon River, but by reading they can be guided in building very satisfactory mental pictures of it Every teacher should realize the need for abundant perceptual material The more actual memory images a child has the better he will be able to reconstruct these into something he has not experienced The teacher should use every means to secure clear and accurate sense-perceptual materials and then to guide pupils in using the resulting images when they are studying history, geography, literature, and other subjects Imagination is a practical phase of mental activity We use imagination in forming ideals, if the library readings are carefully directed, children will unconsciously develop very important ideals of life and conduct In order to cultivate imagination, the school should furnish an abundance of materials for developing a stock of images; it should provide adequate practice in teaching procedures; and it should guide and direct the child so that wholesome, healthful images leave no room for those that tend to weaken and destroy Both oral and written forms of expression are of great value Not only in language is there a means of cultivation, but also in all of the arts, including the household and the manual arts The teacher who understands the difference between memory images and those of the imagination will

adapt her teaching procedures to the cultivation of both recall and the picturing of what has not been sense-experienced

**Nature and use of meanings.** What meaning does the word *home* have for you? It has precisely the meaning which your experience gives it, no more and no less. Your idea or meaning of *home* has been built up through your reactions to your particular personal environment. We say that such words as *home, house, book, watch, pencil*, etc., represent general ideas or concepts. They have general meanings, and are very useful, even essential, as a means for thinking. If we were obliged to think in terms of particular images, the process would be tedious, ineffective, impossible. When the word *house* is pronounced, you do not think of a particular building but of houses of all varieties and descriptions, large and small, of many rooms or perhaps of only one room, with all types of roofs, etc. The common quality is that of a building in which to live and to make a home for the family. A house is a place of residence for human beings. What meaning do you give to the words *patriotism, truth, temperance, state*, and the like? These words are abstract terms. You cannot image *truth* as you form a picture of *house*. But both of these are general notions. In the interpretation of sensations through perception we give meaning in terms of use or utility to the sense impressions. An apple is fruit to eat, a watch is to tell time, a pencil is to write. Our interpretations are in terms of our own personal behavior. The more experience we have, the broader and more accurate the meanings. Ideas or meanings are indispensable for all effective thinking and reasoning. In teaching, pupils should be guided in the use of general ideas, but every effort should be made to see that such ideas or meanings are based upon an abundance of perceptual experiences. Meanings grow out of particular percepts and images. The more associations a word suggests the greater its meaning. What does the term *church* mean to you? Does it mean merely the building? Or have you been a member of a certain church and attended its various meetings? Have you belonged to the Sunday school or perhaps taught a class? Have

you played the organ or sung in the choir? Have you helped to get money to carry on the church work? It is evident that your idea or meaning of church all depends upon your personal associations, your social participation, the service you have rendered, and much more. The content of general meanings is never a finished product. It is always in the process of becoming, of growing.

**Relation between language and thought.** We think in words, the word is as closely related to the idea as the skin is to an apple. One writer says that ideas are born with their skins on, by which he means that ideas and words possess a very close natural relationship. The idea and the word are as closely connected as the inside and the outside of a saucer. It may be that associational thinking, the recalling of images, can take place without words, but in all conceptual thinking and in reasoning through the use of general notions words are an essential. If one really knows anything well, he also knows how to express it, that is, he has the words as well as the ideas. The duty of the teacher is to see that words really represent exact ideas to the greatest possible extent in every problem-solving situation. There is always the possibility that words will merely be the substitutes for ideas. Children need to be given practice daily in choosing language which will be truly expressive of clear and definite thinking. Guidance in the thought processes, in the solution of problems, goes hand in hand with language study. Careful analysis of words, sentences, and paragraphs in the school subjects will do much to develop the ability to think clearly. The school should develop a certain respect for words and a sensitiveness to the finer shades of meanings. The writer believes that there is a place in the elementary school for a proper study of the principles of grammar, for example, as related to thinking.

**Significance of habits and skills.** A large part of the teacher's work consists in the formation of useful habits in the field of character and the development of the necessary skills in those subjects where skills are essential, such as reading, writing,

language, drawing, and several others. We think of neatness, carefulness, cheerfulness, truthtelling as habits, while we speak of skill in skating, in operating a typewriter or a car, in drawing a map, and in telling a story. In general, skills involve a number of separate acts or responses each of which must become habituated or automatized in relation to the other movements of the complex skill. Learning to write is the formation and fixation of a whole series of responses to a complicated situation. Any person over fifty years of age who has really learned to be a skillful driver of a car will appreciate the difficulty of acquiring a complicated set of related reactions. If we know the nature of a person's habits, we know the sort of personality or character he possesses. Life is worth what our ideals and our habits make it, the teacher has much to do with shaping the ideals and the habits of her pupils. The basis of habit is the same as that of memory, namely, changes in nerve cells or tissues of brain and spinal cord. It is a matter of establishing bonds or connections in the synapses between the neurons. Professor Romanes once wrote these very true lines:

No change in childhood's early day,  
No storms that raged, no thought that ran,  
But leaves a track upon the clay,  
Which slowly hardens into man.

Dr. James's famous and classical rules<sup>1</sup> for the formation of a new habit probably have never been excelled. "(1) In the acquisition of a new habit, or the leaving off of an old one, we must take care to launch ourselves with as strong and decided an initiative as possible. (2) Never suffer an exception to occur till the new habit is securely rooted in your life. (3) Seize the very first opportunity to act on every resolution you make and on every emotional prompting you may experience in the direction of the habits you aspire to gain. (4) Keep the faculty of effort alive in you by a little gratuitous exercise every day. That is, be systematically ascetic or heroic in little unnecessary

<sup>1</sup> JAMES, WILLIAM—*Psychology, Briefer Course*; Henry Holt and Company.

pouts, do every day or two something for no other reason than that you would rather not do it, so that when the hour of due need draws nigh it may find you not unnerved and untrained to stand the test." Every teacher should read the entire chapter on habit in James's text.

The fixing of definite responses involves and requires habituation, drill exercises, and a good percentage of the time of the rural teacher is used in this way. It is not the purpose here to detail an analysis of drill procedures. It is sufficient to say that the fundamental errors of most teachers are (1) lack of specific aim and (2) a common tendency to make the habituating drill work mechanical rather than intelligent and attentive. The teacher will find it helpful to study Chapter Four in Strayer and Norsworthy's *How to Teach*, on the formation of habits.

**Emotional habits and attitudes.** In the work of the school there is a large place for the development of the emotions because of the influence of the emotions or feelings, as we also commonly call them, upon success or failure, and upon happiness or unhappiness. Emotions are more complex than feelings. Through our feelings we get a sense of the agreeable or the disagreeable, the pleasant or the unpleasant. Emotions and feelings are always associated. Emotions include feelings and involve sensations in the bodily organism. The teacher should seek not only to have pupils learn the knowledge connected with subject matter but also to develop right mental attitudes. American literature can be taught in such a way as to arouse an admiration for the masterpieces and a desire to read them, or the net result may be a lifelong distaste. If the teacher of history has created a liking for historical reading, she has done well. Teachers do not commonly think of the mental habits and the emotional attitudes which the school must inevitably develop, whether good or bad; but these are of the greatest importance. Facts in themselves have no motive power. It is only when subject matter, ideas, are changed over into ideals that they determine human conduct or behavior. In teaching

civics every effort should be made to inculcate the useful habits and the right ideals of the good citizen. Much health instruction is of little value because it is limited to the teaching of textbook facts.

**Learning through free attention.** "Interest is the mother of attention, and attention is the mother of knowledge, if you wish to win the daughter you must secure the mother and the grandmother," said Joseph Cook many years ago. Every good teacher knows that she succeeds best when children apply themselves to their tasks and learn their lessons through free attention born of genuine interest. The older psychologist classified attention as voluntary and involuntary. Some writers are now using the terms active attention, passive attention, and secondary-passive attention.

1 *Active attention* is the attention of effort; one attends to a situation because of the determination to accomplish a purpose or to reach a goal. Present interests and desires are subordinated to a remoter good.

2 *Passive attention* is the effortless surrender to the inherent attractiveness of the present, naturally interesting situation.

3 *Secondary-passive attention* is learned attention which is the result of previous effort, but which now operates automatically through the force of habit and the development of an acquired interest in the object or subject.

The terms *forced attention* and *free attention* have also been used, and the modern idea is that free attention resulting from purposeful problem solving is the kind of attention for which the teacher should strive. In the best modern schools free attention is secured through well-motivated activities. Active attention is forced attention, passive attention is free attention and involves the least effort because of direct interest, secondary passive attention is the kind in which an indirect interest is developed through learning.

Someone has said that consciousness is that indefinable characteristic of mental states which causes us to be aware of them. I know, I know that I know, and I know that I am the knower.

Then I am conscious *And when I am conscious, I must performe give attention to something* Attention is simply intensified or focalized consciousness The main problem of the teacher is so to direct the program of the school and so to control the child's activities or responses that attention will be centered upon ideas and relations which will contribute to the normal, healthful upbuilding of mind and character A child must attend to something while he is conscious and awake The ingenuity and the skill of his teacher will determine what he shall attend to in school What we are interested in largely determines what we shall attend to, it not only shows what we are, but influences what we are to be Our interest and our interests make us or mar us; a teacher can render no greater service than to see that her pupils acquire as many wholesome interests as possible

**Improving our mental efficiency.** It is entirely possible to improve one's mental efficiency by giving attention to certain fundamental conditions and principles which, for the sake of definiteness and clearness, are here presented in the form of rules or specific directions, as follows

1 It is not possible to give specifications which will apply equally well to every person Individuals differ, working conditions which might be satisfactory to one individual would not be possible or advisable for another whose temperament and capacities were of a different order. However, certain general considerations apply to all

2. Physical health is of course of basic importance, no one can get far in mental work who is, for example, anemic or whose nervous system is below par Every effort should be made to see that the body is well nourished so that there is an adequate stream of good blood flowing to the tissues at all times In general, physiologic needs must be known and suitable means used to meet the demands of the physical organism Nothing can take the place of nervous energy, the daily supply of vital force must be kept at as high a level as possible Many persons, including some teachers, do not seem fully to sense the need for

sound and refreshing sleep during every twenty-four-hour period. In the management of the daily program adequate provision must be made to secure sufficient sleep, for it is the only means of restoring depleted nerve force.

3. Appealing motives and impelling incentives are usually of greater force than external conditions. If anyone has a compelling reason for doing anything, he is much more likely to persist until the task is completed. We do those things which we have a real desire to do, other things being equal. We get what we want if we only want it with sufficient persistence and steadfastness of purpose. Strong inner urges to accomplish results will conquer all sorts of difficulties.

4. It is a good plan to arrange for a definite piece of work to be done at a specified time. Many people make the mistake of taking on too light a load. It is advisable carefully to distribute the necessary tasks and to adjust a program of reasonable and possible accomplishment.

5. With pupils in school it is of great importance to keep them informed of their progress. If a child can see his curve of successful effort plotted in the form of a graph it will furnish a definite stimulus to work. Pupils should know their grades and teachers should be careful to mark papers which are handed in. A child has a right to know how well he has done his assigned task.

6. In order to work efficiently, emotional disturbances and distractions must be reduced to the minimum. This is largely a question of personal management. Occasions for worry, anger, fear, jealousy, and other destructive emotions should be anticipated and avoided. It is the cool, calm, unhurried worker who does the best and the most work. Uncontrolled emotions tear down and use up large amounts of nervous energy which should be directed into more profitable channels.

7. The best workers begin promptly. They do not wait for the precise mood to motivate their efforts. Instead, they take the book and begin to read, or they sit at the desk and begin to write, or they do whatever else needs to be done. There is a

vast amount of waste motion and false motion to be found in delayed beginnings. Beginnings are proverbially hard; but after one gets started, the work becomes easier and more effective. Any worker can demonstrate this for himself.

8 It pays to develop good working habits. The way in which one does his work has much to do with his success and personal satisfaction. It is important to have a suitable desk and chair, properly adjusted. The books and writing materials should be easily available. Before one begins all necessary tools should be procured and made easily available. The way in which one outlines his work and distributes his time will have a definite bearing upon the desired outcome. Workers differ greatly, but the most efficient ones are systematic and orderly. They have definite objectives and well-considered plans. In this way they are not obliged to do repeatedly what should require only a single doing. A study of such a volume as *Learning How to Study and Work Effectively*, by W. F. Book, will be of real help to the young student.

9. No task will be long continued or successfully conquered if there is a total lack of interest. But interest is not something brought down from the sky or plucked from the air. Interest is developed by finding interesting qualities or aspects in the job. When a student gets attuned to his work, he will develop increasing interest in it. We acquire interest as we discover new and interesting phases of whatever we are doing. Thus interest is a complex result of the successful personal fitting or relating of oneself to his work. To acquire a motivating interest in the task is the aim of every competent worker, in school or out; but this can come about only by a continuing series of personal adjustments to the task as it assumes different aspects in progress toward the goal.

10 The working program should be varied. As a rule it is better not to continue with one type of work after it becomes exceedingly laborious or fatiguing. In this respect also people differ markedly. Some wish to continue in spite of all difficulties until the work is completed. Others do better to come back

after a change of activity. Each person must solve his own problems. In school work a diversity of tasks properly distributed produces the best results. Intervals of rest should follow periods of work.

11. Each of us has his own likes and dislikes, his own personal inclinations and disinclinations. In this matter of efficient performance any worker will do well not to consult his own personal whims too much. In order to forge ahead, it is necessary to ignore many relatively trivial deflecting tendencies. Through effort one can overcome most of the disinclinations which retard progress. In school work the teacher should make all working conditions as favorable as possible and then encourage pupils to direct their activities toward the chosen ends regardless of the personal discomfort or dislike of the moment.

12. As the result of many experimental studies it has been found that the better plan is to go through the entire lesson material several times to get the relation of the parts and then to give special attention to the more difficult portions. Efforts should be made to recall at intervals, reviews should be given at increasingly long intervals—one day, one week, one month, six months. The teacher should call attention to related meanings rather than to words. Organizing the materials into logically related units is of much value in learning.

#### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1. What is the fundamental thesis of the behavioristic or objective psychology and how does it differ from the belief of the purposive philosophers?
2. Discuss the relative influence of heredity and environment. What determining factors in personality are fixed by heredity?
3. Just what did Pavlov contribute to the learning process by his discovery of the conditioned response?
4. What is the relation between language and thought?
5. Indicate some emotional habits which a teacher should try to form and fix and others which should be avoided, if possible.
6. What can a rural teacher do in the field of mental hygiene for herself and for her pupils?

296 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING  
AND STUDY

1. BENSON, C E., LOUGH, J. E., SKINNER, C E., AND WEST, P. V.—  
*Psychology for Teachers*; Ginn and Company Revised, 1933
2. BURNHAM, W H.—*The Wholesome Personality*, D Appleton and Company, 1932
3. COLVIN, S S, BAGLEY, W. C., AND MACDONALD, MARION E.—  
*Human Behavior*, The Macmillan Company 1929.
4. JAMES, WILLIAM—*Talks to Teachers*; Henry Holt and Company, 1902
5. LA RUE, D W—*Mental Hygiene*, The Macmillan Company. 1927.
6. MORGAN, J. J. B., AND GILLILAND, A. R.—*An Introduction to Psychology*; The Macmillan Company, 1927.

## CHAPTER XVI

### HOW WE LEARN

We acquire a great variety of behavior responses. The distinguishing characteristic which places man far above all other animals is his capacity for learning new ideas and new ways of acting. Although men differ greatly in their ability to learn, the average person is able to learn a great deal in his journey from the cradle to the grave. He learns the conventional behavior of the society in which he finds himself, that is to say, he learns the approved social usages. He learns how to behave in the home, in church, in the club, on the street, at the theater, on the train, at the dance, and on the golf links. He learns to use the conventional language. He learns how to carry on a conversation, and he learns to speak before an audience. He frequently learns to sing and to play a musical instrument. He may learn to dance, to swim, to skate, to typewrite, to ride a bicycle, to drive a car, to plan his work carefully. He may or he may not learn a good set of emotional habits. He may learn to worry, or he may learn to be cool, calm, poised, serene. He may learn to be afraid, or he may develop habits of courage and fortitude. He may acquire good posture habits, or he may not. He may learn how to select and to eat his food properly, or he may not. He may be a good sport, or he may be selfish and want things to go only his way. He may learn to be a good reader, writer, and speller, or he may have only poor ability in these subjects.

**Nature of the learning process.** How did you learn to play "one-old-cat"? You answer that you learned to play the game by playing it, and that is the truth of the matter, for the most part. However, some learn to play a good game and some never get to be very proficient. Players differ in their learning capacities. They differ in both their physical and their mental

make-up. Of course no one would learn to play this pleasing game by merely reading the rules in the chapter on play in this book. But one must know the rules, probably the best way to learn them is by degrees, day by day, as the playing goes on. In this game the rules are few, simple, and easy to learn. In any case of learning we always find a situation or stimulus more or less complex, to which there must be a reaction or response if any learning is to take place. The psychologist represents this learning process by the symbol  $S \rightarrow R$ , in which we have  $S$  for situation,  $R$  for response, and the arrow for the bond or connection between them. As one learns to play the ball game, the various responses to the different associated situations tend to become co-ordinated, mechanized, and fixed. In the case of ball playing, the learning goes on readily and effectively because the child has a desire and a satisfaction in the exercise or in making the various necessary repetitions. He is interested and the learning is thus well motivated. There is the social stimulus here also. In learning school subjects, interest and motivation are often lacking.

**Why is learning necessary?** Learning is necessary because new situations are constantly arising in the lives of most persons which require new adjustments and adaptations if the individual is to satisfy his wants and rise to higher levels. To be sure, there are some persons who do not care to learn, but this book is not written for such people. In most cases the situation is met by the use of habitual responses, but when habit is not enough, then the situation will require and provoke thought. It will then be a case of thinking and of problem solving, of course there are plenty of people who cannot or will not do much thinking. Effective thinking is not easy, many do not care to take the necessary time and pains. It is probably true that the average person is also quite incapable of doing a great deal of *real* thinking. A rural teacher can hardly go through with the work of a day without learning something, perhaps a good deal. She will learn new things about her housekeeping, her management of the pupils, her teaching of geography, arithmetic, or spelling. She will learn better how to adjust herself to difficult pupil personal-

ties, she will learn how to get more satisfactions out of her boarding place; she will learn how to secure from the school board the needful equipment for the school. Learning is necessary because life is a succession of difficulties and problems.

**What can we learn?** Probably most people think of the school, of teaching, and of learning as related to subject matter. The common view of school learning, at any rate, is limited largely to a mastery of the textbook materials which are to be learned and recited to the teacher. This is of course a pitifully inadequate idea of the nature and the net results of learning. In the broadest sense what we all need to learn is how to live; how to adjust ourselves to this social world; how to provide by suitable, effective, and productive labor for our various wants. We all need a great variety of knowledge and of skills. We need ideas, and we need ideals to motivate our conduct. We should learn life-giving ways of enjoyment. If we are to make the most of life, we need to learn how to appreciate good music and beautiful pictures. We must also learn how to understand and make the most of nature. We need not only to learn to read, but we should also have good habits of reading to learn. Moreover, in the field of reading, for the greatest culture and enjoyment we require a somewhat extended range of tastes in various departments of literature. We can acquire the habits of the good citizen, and we can also learn the ideals involved in good citizenship. We can know many useful facts in the realm of human physiology, but such knowledge is of little avail unless we have a good set of health habits. We learn ideas, ideals, and habits. Knowledge alone will not save us to a life of usefulness and satisfaction. We need also to learn and to fix a great many responses so that they become automatic and controlling. Our emotional control and poise, our skill in doing a great many things, our ability to provide for our legitimate desires, our attitudes toward others and toward life itself—all this and much more can be learned and is of the greatest importance.

**When have we learned?** When have you learned to spell grammar? When have you learned to read well orally? Silently?

When have you learned to swim? To skate? When have you learned Bryant's "To a Waterfowl"? When have you learned to write well? When has a fifth-grade pupil learned to be a good speller on a fifth-grade level? A good reader and writer on the same level? When have you learned how to point off the quotient in division of decimals? When have you learned good table manners? When have you learned to speak before an audience? Some of these questions are easy and some are very difficult. It is one thing to learn how to spell *privilege*, but it is an entirely different thing to learn to appreciate the beauty of Tennyson's "Bugle Song," or Breton's "Song of the Lark," or the "Perfect Day" by Carrie Jacobs Bond. To learn that 7 times 9 are 63 is one type of learning, but to learn how to solve problems involving the fundamental rules is an entirely different matter. One answer to the topic question is that we have learned when we know the fact "for keeps," or when we have acquired the skill in its entirety and perfection. No one has learned to drive a car until all the movements are entirely automatic. To this should be added that ability to drive a car requires also a desire to obey the rules of the road and the habit of obeying them. We have learned when we know and *can* and *will* do, although in some learnings there are various levels of knowing and doing, according to age, intelligence, and special ability of the learner. In the realm of appreciations there are many grades of attainment. There is a profound difference between knowing the facts of geography and the ability to use this geographical knowledge in solving economic and industrial problems. We have learned when we know accurately and can do skillfully.

We have learned the controls of conduct when they operate without much conscious effort, when they have become automatic. We speak the truth habitually because we believe in truthtelling as necessary to social integrity and because the attitude and the habit are quite fixed in our lives. We have learned both the attitude and the habit. We have learned to pay our bills promptly only when we do so at regular intervals.

without failure or omission, and because of an inner habitual prompting. If we "go off the handle" every now and then, we surely have not learned poise and self-control. Some lessons are very hard for children and grown-ups to learn. Learning the capitals of the states is easy compared with learning the habits of friendliness, cheerfulness, fearlessness, good nature, courtesy, poise, and many other vital personality habits. Too often the school leaves essential character ideals and habits to chance and to concomitant or incidental learning.

**Neural mechanism essential.** When we say that there is "no psychosis without neurosis" we mean essentially that every response to every situation involves some change in neuron, or nerve cell, in synapse, or, in general, in the central nervous system. Reuben Post Halleck many years ago wrote a suggestive and valuable book entitled *Education of the Central Nervous System*. The fact of the matter is that all learning involves changes in nerve tissue and would be impossible without such changes. The sensory neurons receive the nerve impulses from the nerve ends of the sense organs and transmit them inward to the central nervous system. The motor neurons carry these stimulations from nerve centers to muscular tissues. Between the sensory and the motor neurons are found the connecting or associating neurons. This entire marvelous mechanism is of such a nature that, in the process of learning, the physical stimulus in the outer world causes a physiological stimulus in sense organs and sensory nerves which in turn is reflected back by nerve centers of the central nervous system. Through sensation and perception we secure the raw materials for learning. No learning ever occurs without the stimulus, connecting bond, and response accompaniment. From the standpoint of learning perhaps the synapse is the most important neurological element. Some essential change takes place when the resistance between the neurons at the synapse is overcome in the process of learning.

**Mechanistic view of learning.** Since all learning evidently involves stimulus, nerve connection, and response, it is quite

easy to take a materialistic, mechanistic view of learning and to believe that a child is nothing more than a reacting nervous mechanism, from the standpoint of learning. Experiments on the lower animals seem to have led many psychologists to become thoroughgoing behaviorists. However, there are many students who believe that learning includes certain essential elements which cannot be wholly explained on physical, behavioristic grounds alone. For example, much learning seems to involve purpose which is difficult or impossible to explain as a purely objective element of the learning process. There seems to be a mental element in all learning which the behaviorist school of thinkers would have us believe is nonexistent. Today there is a pronounced tendency to classify psychology with the biological sciences, man is nothing more than a physiological machine, according to the behaviorists, without a mind as we have always thought of mind. The present writer believes that in human learning we find the active working of desires, emotions, inner urges, and purposes which are of a nonmaterialistic nature. Human beings set up objectives or goals; moreover, there are driving impulses, something akin to a will to learn when it is present or can be aroused.

**Elements in the learning process.** The writer has vivid recollections of learning to skate, to ride a bicycle, to drive a team of horses, to drive a car, and to perform other acts, particularly those on the farm. How do these informal, out-of-school learnings occur? There seem to be at least four elements in the process, as suggested to the writer by Dr. Lois Coffey Mossman in her very informing and helpful book on teaching and learning.<sup>1</sup> In learning to skate there were first the facts that the other schoolboys were skating, that there were excellent fields of ice on the marshes, and that there was a pair of skates in the farm home. The boy had seen others skate. He saw how it was done. In the second place, there was the boy's desire to do things on his own account. He wished to skate as

<sup>1</sup> MOSSMAN, LOIS COFFEY—*Principles of Teaching and Learning in the Elementary School*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1929

well as Albert or Fred. The boy was young and was encouraged to act, to do, by his social environment. Third, it was very gratifying, indeed, after numerous hard falls and knocks, to be able to sail over the ice, to cut circles, and to race with the other boys. It was a great personal pleasure to be able to control his movements on the slender strips of steel. He became a good skater and he was proud of it. He could do what the others did. He had achieved, conquered, learned. Last, there was added to his life equipment another important skill which he could exercise when occasion offered. So here we have the: (1) stimulation, (2) desire, (3) motivation, (4) resultant new desired accomplishment.

**Formal and informal learnings.** As has already been pointed out, a large part of the learnings of practically every person has not been acquired in the school. The learnings of the school are often exceedingly formal and bear no relationship to the situations confronting children outside of school in the social world. Children learn so many things in school that do not function in real living. The informal and often incidental learnings of experience often have the greatest value in the development of ideas, ideals, and habits. Many of the skills and abilities learned in the home, on the farm, in play, in connection with club work, in various young peoples' organizations, and in many other ways belong to the class of informal learnings and have a direct bearing upon successful, happy living. A generation or more ago there were greater opportunities for the informal learnings through experience. Children helped to make butter, to bake bread, to can fruits and vegetables; still earlier they assisted with the spinning, the weaving, the making of candles, and in many other ways. Most of this has passed away. When there was a cow, a horse, and some pigs to take care of, the boy learned how to do many things. The everlasting chores constituted a real course in education. Today the child is learning, for better or for worse, from the radio, from motion pictures, from the daily paper, including that collection of commonly useless miscellany, the Sunday edition. Today the school must offer many

substitute opportunities for learning, to take the place of those which were formerly found in the home or on the farm

**Intentional and coincident learnings.** Many teachers give but little attention to what their pupils are learning incidentally and accidentally in connection with and as a part of the regular lessons and direct instruction of the school. The formal recitation may be so conducted as to develop habits of attention or inattention, of carefulness and accuracy or of carelessness and guessing or "stabbing" at the truth. The teacher should realize that the child's mind is not inactive. He is always thinking of something; he is forming ideals and attitudes which may make or mar him for life. When the pupil is engaged with his history lesson, what opinions is he forming, what judgments is he making concerning the justness or the unjustness of the moral situations involved? The teacher intentionally teaches children to write, but what attitudes is she developing in the preparation of written papers to hand in for inspection? A teacher who understands the complex nature of the child will be particular about the incidental, concomitant, and accessory learnings which are going on in her school. Is the child acquiring respect for public property? Is he learning to speak out clearly and distinctly? Is he securing good habits of posture in sitting, standing, and walking? Some teachers are so concerned with the teaching and learning of book subject matter that they forget about the unconscious but extremely important development of character which is going on from day to day. It may easily be true that many of the concomitant learnings of the school are far more important than some of the regular lessons.

**Learning and behavior or conduct.** When we really learn anything, we are different from what we were before we learned. The acid test of learning is whether or not it changes behavior or conduct. This is obvious enough with some learnings, but it is not so clear in other cases. When one has learned to play tennis or golf, very evidently there is an addition to the behavior complex. When a person acquires a new skill or set of skills, he is a different person to that extent and will henceforth behave dif-

ferently in certain respects. In the arts of the school, such as that of ability to read well silently on, let us say, an eighth-grade level, we have an illustration of the decided change in behavior. When the silent-reading skills are mastered, the individual will be a changed person for the rest of his life. But in a lesser way and on a smaller scale, when a pupil has learned the difference between simple, complex, and compound sentences, his behavior in the field of sentence structure is not what it was before. He now has new standards, and he will in future react differently in the composition and comprehension of sentences. What change in conduct takes place when anyone learns Lincoln's "Gettysburg Address"? If learning here means merely committing words to memory unthinkingly, not much has been learned. But if there can be some understanding and appreciation of the nobility and majesty of the thought, of its deep significance and its broad charity, and of the beauty and grandeur of the simple style—if these learnings take place, forevermore will the learning student be changed and different. His views, his ideas and ideals of life and human relationships acquired in such a study will inevitably change his life. In short, he will behave differently because of his contact with a great soul.

**Factor of experience in learning.** By the term *experience* is meant some contact with and reaction to the environment, some response to a situation of varying degrees of complexity. It is correct and safe to say that no learning can take place without the personal experience of the learner. The learner must react or respond. The law of self-activity is basic and controlling. It is self-evident, however, that there is a vast amount of experience which the race has acquired and recorded on the printed page, which the individual could not possibly learn by direct personal experience. What can be done to pass on such a mass of ideas? Through skillful teaching the learner must go through the process of re-experiencing what others have experienced. This means that the learning pupil will interpret the ideas which he finds in books in terms of his own experience. It is the duty of the teacher to see that the child really under-

stands the related meanings which he encounters. The chief fault of the traditional school of the past was its emphasis upon a reproduction of lifeless symbols, rather than upon a rethinking of vital and vitalizing ideas and meanings. In the more progressive schools provision is made for a great variety of social experiences. In such schools children actually learn ideas, ideals, and skills by real living experiences. In the very large majority of rural schools only the most meager and entirely inadequate provision is made for important, first-hand learning experiences. Such experiences are conspicuously absent.

**Intelligent, purposeful, meaningful learning.** These adjectives are used in contrast to stupid, lifeless, aimless, verbal learning. The chief objective of the school is to promote genuine learning. In connection with any lesson the teacher should be continually asking herself what the children are learning and how they are learning. Today we have such an abundance of materials to further true learning that any teacher with proper motives and true educational objectives will be able to find and to use them. The modern textbook is a truly wonderful means to stimulate and guide the child in his quest for knowledge and power. Every procedure of the school should be infused with thought, purpose, and meaning. This is true even of the drill procedures. All drills should be well motivated, which means that the learner will see meaning and purpose for himself, personally, in his repetitions. When learnings take place in real natural social situations, when the child is learning because he is living, then there will be intelligence, purpose, and meaning; otherwise not. No teacher today needs to be guilty of teaching meaningless symbols or of presenting mere verbal husks or shells instead of nourishing, life-giving activities.

**Learning should be motivated.** In *An Introduction to Teaching and Learning*, by Yoakam and Simpson, the authors discuss motivation of the assignment, motivation of study, motivation of diagnostic and of remedial teaching; motivation of drills, reviews, and tests; motivation of motor, observational, and creative learning; motivation of the appreciation lesson, of story-

telling, of dramatic activities, and so on. When we have had the real experiences in actual living, our learning is likely to be motivated, particularly if we have personal problems to solve or genuine purposes to realize. The school program of learning should include problems and purposes to as great an extent as possible. We all learn best when we desire to learn. One of the chief criticisms of the traditional school is found in this particular field. The formal aimless drill procedures were almost wholly lacking in motive. It is now generally agreed that in the shaping and fixing of habits and skills, every effort should be made to furnish sufficient reasons and to arouse a desire for mastery and perfection. The boy or the girl will learn readily enough to drive a car because of the impelling motive which is involved and which overcomes all obstacles. This is always true of any habit or skill in which the inner driving force impels the learner to make every effort toward accomplishment of the coveted objective. In problem solving the same principle governs. If the boy wishes to build a boat or a birdhouse, or to make a kite or an airplane, or to go fishing or camping, he will take great pains and he will work hard to solve the various problems involved in the project. The great argument for the use of problems and projects in school work and for the much criticized activity program is that in their use we have the natural setting and the motivation involved in real, personally worth-while, and purposeful living experiences. The principle of motivation is fundamental and basic in all teaching and learning procedures.

**The willing attitude in learning.** We often speak of the will to learn or the will to work. This simply means the inner urge, desire, or purpose which in themselves are the complex products of learning. One of the most important duties of the teacher is to develop this sort of a spirit and willingness to learn by suitable teaching and learning procedures. Learning cannot be forced. "You can lead a horse to water, but you cannot make him drink." He will drink only if he has the thirst. One of the great functions of the school is to develop special thirsts for particular learnings. Pupils will differ greatly in the nature and degree of

the inner urges, but after all they are matters of development. If teachers would spend far more time than they often now do in arousing and stimulating new desires and ambitions, the work of learning would be carried on with far greater effectiveness. In particular, the attitude of willingness to learn has reference to the special lesson of the hour. In all subjects and lessons of whatever nature the teacher will find that time and effort used in securing special interests as related to special topics will pay real dividends in better work and learning. The resources of the school and of the environment are frequently overlooked and not used. The use of objects, pictures, bulletins, reference books, maps, workbooks, charts, and the like helps greatly in the development of ideas and attitudes which stimulate effort and accomplishment. The willing attitude is not a fixed quantity plucked from the atmosphere. It is itself a developed complex of ideas, ideals, and habits. One of the chief functions of the teacher is to have her pupils develop the willing attitude as a part of the total learning process. The learning attitude may be of far greater significance than the knowledge acquired.

**Hit-or-miss learning.** Have you ever tried to work out a puzzle or to discover the secret of some toy mechanism when you had had no experience with anything of the sort? You did not know where to start or what to do. Your efforts were aimless and random. You tried first one way and then another until finally you may or you may not have hit upon the solution. If you did solve the problem, it was wholly by accident. You had no previous learnings to guide your efforts. Of course this trial-and-error procedure is a wasteful learning process. It is the way the cat or the rat finds the way out of the maze. While it is entirely legitimate for boys and girls to work out puzzles on their own account without outside guidance or direction, we shall agree that this type of learning takes too much time and effort to be very useful in the work of the school. The teacher needs to guide and direct the process so as to save the child from useless effort. There is, of course, always a place for the child to experiment for and by himself, he should be given repeated

chances to do so A wholesome interest and curiosity about puzzles and problems is a healthy sign and should be encouraged The rat and the cat are forced to the trial-and-error method because they cannot think and because their capacity for imagery is exceedingly limited Children are able to profit by experience through the power of remembered ideas and ways of doing things When confronted by a new situation, the child can learn to apply what he now knows and can do, so that the problem is solved with greater ease and economy of time

**Profiting by one's mistakes.** The president of a great state university was negotiating with a man whom he had asked to take an important position in the institution The prospective incumbent of the office expressed some misgivings relative to the perfect discharge of his responsibilities, at least in the beginning, and stated that he would possibly make a good many mistakes The president replied that he was not unwilling that some mistakes should occur, and stated that such errors were incidents in the work of the office However, he made it plain that he would not look with so much favor upon a repetition of mistakes It turned out that the new official was keen and ready to learn No doubt he did not do everything exactly right, but he studied not to commit the same error the second time He has been in this position for several years; it is generally conceded that he has done very well, indeed Children should be taught to profit by their mistakes If they are really to learn, they cannot keep making the same mistakes over and over again Pupils of average intelligence can learn the lesson that their progress is determined very largely by their willingness to let experience be their teacher The lower the grade of mentality, the more difficult it is to learn the lessons of the school and the lessons of life There are plenty of people who do not get ahead because either they cannot or they will not learn the lessons of experience They keep in the same old way in spite of their very evident inefficiency As much as possible, mistakes should be avoided through careful planning and attention to details

**Learning actions and learning ideas.** Another way of wording this topic is *learning to do* and *learning to think*, or possibly motor learning and associational learning. Whether we learn modes of overt action or whether we learn through observation or by associative memory, imagination, or thinking processes, we are learning to behave differently. We are modifying conduct or behavior. Thinking is merely a form of inner behavior. If we learn to appreciate the "Angelus" or if we learn to tell or to write an original story, we are learning ideas and ways of behavior. When one has learned about the home life of the early western pioneers the result is a group of related or associated ideas. In such learning, action or doing may also be involved in the use of various project activities. When we learn actions, we are also truly learning the ideas that belong to the varied responses. Actions may be simple or very complicated. Learning to pronounce a word, to draw a circle, or to spell a word orally or by writing it calls for a simple response. Learning to build a bird-house involves many actions in carrying out the ideas or the images which lie back of the material realization.

Actions, motor habits, skills, are usually best learned when the learner understands the meaning of what he is doing. It also often happens that meanings are made clear through the use of muscular movements by way of illustration. In the kindergarten and in schools making large use of activities and projects we find many illustrations in the daily program of the relation between motor learning and the learning of meanings through the principle of association. In this discussion the term ideas includes all meanings as found in general notions, images, and percepts. Learning ideas and learning actions should not be thought of as in contrast but rather in the nature of being complementary, mutually interdependent, and re-enforcing. The more associations and interactions the teacher can establish the more fertile, useful, and permanent will be the learnings. In the use of the Montessori method we find an excellent illustration of the relation between physical activity and the learning of a great variety of fundamental meanings. This system was de-

vised by Maria Montessori of Italy for the education of small children and is based upon the same principle as that of the activities curriculum in this country.

**Rote learning vs. rational learning.** Let us give attention in another connection and from another point of view to the great significance of what we may designate as false learning in comparison with true learning. The distinctive work of true learning is that it changes the individual's behavior. Not all rote learning is necessarily false learning, but the memorizing of meaningless words or materials in almost any form is comparatively useless. Rote learning was very common in the old traditional school. In this connection it should be noted that to store the memories of children with many useful facts is one of the functions of the school. Literary selections, both prose and poetry, committed to memory, will usually prove a great mental resource in adult years. Undoubtedly some things should be learned by heart and for permanent retention. Pupils should not be required to commit to memory meaningless dates, names, and events. The value always lies in the associated meanings. Usefulness and relevancy should always be considered. Today rational learning is found at its best in those schools which make a rational use of problem solving, projects, and activities. However, even drill exercises can be rationalized by stressing purposes, meanings, reasons, and motives.

At one time it was the practice to distinguish between rote studies and rational studies. There is no such distinction. All learning can and should be rationalized. In teaching such subjects as geography, history, physiology, civics, agriculture, and the like, there is ever-present opportunity to use rational procedures by the use of problems, projects, and activities. The verbatim reproduction of textual material should be literally taboo. It is a complete waste of time and energy, an utter farce, which should no longer be tolerated. By the use of modern forms of assignment, by means of socialized discussions, by changing the purposes and practices of the recitation, by carefully directing the pupil's study activities, by the use of high-

grade workbooks, and in many other ways learning can be increasingly rationalized, even in the country school. There will always be a place for repetition, for memorization, for drill, but these should always be intelligent, purposeful, meaningful, and rational.

**Learning as memorization** Every teacher should read Chapter seven in *How to Study and Teaching How to Study*, by F. M. McMurry.<sup>1</sup> The title of this chapter is "Memorizing as a Fifth Factor in Study." The entire book is a genuine educational classic. Dr. McMurry makes a large contribution to more rational teaching-learning procedures chiefly through insistence upon the value of purposeful thinking. His illustrations are pertinent and suggestive. Every chapter in this famous book reflects the knowledge and skill of a great teacher.

Today there is a marked tendency not to stress memorization as an end in itself, but rather to find a place for memorizing as a learning activity which should be utilized when occasion demands, that is, when there is a natural need for this phase of learning. In conducting purposeful, problem-solving activities certain elements of the situation require permanent retention. Then is the time to memorize, when the motive is strong. In adult living we memorize only when we are obliged to do so, that is, when purpose and desire are both impelling.

It is now a generally accepted principle that in the memorization of poetry time spent upon getting a thorough understanding of the related meanings of the entire unit is of the greatest value. In learning poetic selections the good teacher at the present time is very particular to give needful guidance and direction from the start, so that wrong images and ideas are not formed by the children. First impressions are often difficult to eradicate. By repeatedly going through the entire selection during a carefully conducted study-recitation with particular attention to understanding and appreciation, the work of memorizing will be considerably lessened. Trying to learn a literary unit piece by piece is entirely the wrong way to do it.

<sup>1</sup> F. M. McMURRY—*How to Study and Teaching How to Study*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1909.

Memorization is only one of many elements of the learning process, which includes observation, skill and habit formation, problem solving or thinking, appreciation, and so on. Memorizing has a most important place as a necessary form of learning, but it was formerly given an entirely illogical prominence; even today its use by some teachers is out of all proportion to its importance.

**Learning as problem solving.** It seems to be pretty generally agreed today that problem solving is the most important of all forms of learning activities. It is man's ability to solve problems which has given him his present position in the world. Through thinking, human needs have multiplied enormously during the ages, man's desires and wants have been satisfied by his power to use reason in the solution of his problems. Other forms of learning, such as observation and memorization, make their contribution to the thinking or reasoning processes. In solving any problem the first step is the gathering of data. We cannot think without a stock of images and ideas. Pupils should be guided and directed in their efforts to accumulate materials to be used in their problem-solving thinking. It is the planning, the evaluating, the use of critical judgment, and the attempt to classify and organize which make problem solving so valuable for boys and girls. They must be guided to withhold judgment until they possess the necessary facts. In classes in history, geography, physiology, agriculture, civics, and other subjects there is daily opportunity for using discussion periods in which this type of learning receives much attention. After considerable guidance in group activities, pupils will be able to work on problems by themselves. Some teachers take great delight in problem-solving exercises because they themselves enjoy thinking, whereas other teachers find lessons involving thinking more or less disagreeable and unsatisfactory. Some teachers include many problem questions in their assignments, while others find this quite difficult and prefer asking questions calling for textbook facts. If the school can offer personally interesting and profitable problems to boys and girls in which at-

tractive goals are set up, the question of motivation will be settled.

**Learning and subject matter.** As a result of her course in the training institution, the young beginning teacher should clearly understand the function of subject matter. She should realize that her chief business as a teacher is to guide and direct her children so that they will learn. Learn what? Learn subject matter? No. Learn ideas, ideals, habits, skills, attitudes, appreciations. The function of subject matter is to further this real learning. Subject matter is found everywhere in nature, in books of all kinds, in magazines and newspapers, in the radio, and in scores of other places. When the pupils acquire ideas, skills, attitudes, and the like, they are really getting new ways of behaving which their experiences give them. If the materials of textbooks do not bring about changes in the inner or outer behavior of the pupils, they are inert and valueless. Children do not go to school primarily to learn the facts of the curriculum. They go to school in order that their behavior in all ways may be changed for the better through the use of or by means of all the various types of subject matter. Even a little thought will convince anyone that over fifty per cent of the efforts of the school are wasted so far as any real influence of the subject matter upon the lives of the pupils is concerned. It is the atmosphere and the system of the good school, including the influence of a teacher of good personality, which really change the characters of boys and girls the most. To be sure, they learn to spell, to read, to write, to compute with numbers, to use oral and written language, to recite poetry, to bound the states, and to give the powers of Congress, but over and beyond all this the vital question is what kind of boys and girls are they becoming? Subject matter can be used to change the lives of the pupils, but the procedure is not a deadly, memoriter, rote type of learning. Dr. Mossman<sup>1</sup> says: "To one who looks upon subject matter as the behavior-patterns of controls learned in

<sup>1</sup> *Teaching and Learning in the Elementary School*, Houghton Mifflin Company.

experience, subject matter is continuously being learned. Whenever the child is doing something, he is learning that which modifies his further behavior."

"Overlearning" and its value. Probably few teachers understand the need for learning beyond the point of barely knowing or of just being able to go through the motions. It is now well known from experimental studies that if anyone is to retain ideas or motor skills it is necessary to "overlearn" them. Too much of school learning is merely for recitation purposes or for the passing of tests or the satisfying of the teacher. Pupils and students in the grades, in high school, and in college often seem satisfied to just "get by." They are not ambitious to master their learnings for permanent results either in the field of purely intellectual studies or in the field of the various important skills where perfection of execution marks the exceptional performer. There is indeed a significant and serious fallacy in the "passing grade." If "insightful learning" is carried to the point suggested in Morrison's Mastery Formula where related meanings are learned "for life," the changes in the attitudes of the learner would indicate a real modification of personality. Every teacher should select certain portions of subject matter to be learned so thoroughly that they will never be forgotten. The good teacher develops a pride in mastery. Morrison's Mastery Formula is thus "Pretest, teach, test the result, adapt procedure, teach and test again to the point of actual learning." Most of what is learned in school is forgotten, but if there were more use of overlearning and greater practice in harmony with the Morrison Mastery Formula, more would be retained and behavior would be more greatly influenced.

Individual variations in learning. Individual differences are considered in Chapter XVIII. It is sufficient to point out here that the pupils in any given grade range in ability all the way from those who are definitely dull and slow to those who are classed as bright. The dull, slow pupils have great difficulty in learning the same lessons that the bright pupils master with ease. Probably most of the children in a room of, say, forty will have

I.Q.'s somewhere between 90 and 110. There are generally a few who are subnormal and about an equal number above normal. The larger and more mixed the group the truer this will be. The causes of differences in learning capacities are found in heredity and environment, the effect of the two influences varies according to individuals. No doubt inheritance has greater weight in the matter of intelligence than anything else. If a child is "born short" in native endowment no amount of education will ever be able to overcome the deficiencies. However, environment, by which we mean every sort of educational influence, is a powerful force, it is surprising what can be done through long continued, skillful teaching-learning procedures. In recent years much attention has been given to the problem of individual differences, in the best schools instruction is adapted to the differing capacities and needs of pupils much more than formerly. It is the duty of the teacher to find out why a child is not learning or why he is making poor progress. A pupil may be a good reader but a poor speller, or the reverse. Why is that? It can be found out today by diagnostic tests. A child who is undernourished, or who does not sleep enough, or who for any reason is below par physically cannot learn normally. Sometimes lack of progress is due to the attitude of the family. There is no encouraging home influence to make the child ambitious. Whatever the cause, whether heredity, health, or something else, it can and should be discovered.

**Teaching an old dog new tricks.** It is a common saying that you cannot teach an old dog new tricks, the implication usually is that learning is largely for children and young people. This is an example of one of those traditional beliefs which are hard to down. Some experimentation has been carried on with animals, and Thorndike has done a good deal of work to discover the effect of age upon the learning of adults. His book on *Adult Learning* gives the results of his researches. It has been found that adults can learn very well indeed. A normal adult of forty can learn about as well as a child of sixteen. The adult may be handicapped by preconceived notions and by a number of in-

hibiting habits, but he may have the advantage of greater interest and better methods of work. Adult men and women are able to learn without great difficulty during the thirties, forties, and fifties, it is not uncommon to find people learning in their sixties and seventies. Many a man and many a woman has learned to operate a car or a typewriter after even the three score and ten supposed limit. Of course that is exceptional. But today adult education has come to stay, in the future it will be entirely possible for men and women to continue their education as long as they desire. The "Moonlight Schools" of Kentucky and the night schools in practically every state demonstrate beyond question that adults can learn what they greatly desire to learn. In a country like ours, with constantly changing social, economic, industrial, and civic conditions, it is highly desirable that adults continue the learning process by means of evening schools, correspondence schools, and other agencies. This objective will most certainly be realized.

**Law of readiness.** In a chapter on the learning process it is hardly possible to omit some consideration of the three laws of learning now generally accepted by school people as valid and pertinent. The laws of *readiness*, of *exercise*, and of *effect* were first formulated by Dr Thorndike as a result of animal experimentation. The law of exercise is also called the law of use. The law of disuse is of course as important as the law of use and is sometimes stated as a separate law.

*Readiness* has reference mostly to one's special attitude at a particular time, because of present knowledge and experience, towards any act of learning or any form of behavior or reaction. If one has just finished a full meal, he is certainly not ready to eat. If one has been practicing jumping for some time, he will be more ready for rowing or for sitting down and resting.

If a pupil has been committing poetry to memory for thirty or forty minutes, he would probably welcome a change to a spelling exercise, to writing, or to some work in arithmetic. If a person is not ready to act or learn in a certain way, efforts to force the learning displease, irritate, and interfere with learning. When a

pupil is already set for any form of learning and is not allowed to act, the result is an interference with his learning processes. Fatigue decreases readiness and rest restores it "The general attitude of the learner, his store of ideas, his acquired skills, his habits of thought and action, his feelings, all have to do with the individual's readiness to act"<sup>1</sup> In teaching and learning, the chief consideration is whether or not a pupil is ready because of his present physical and mental condition and because of his previous learning experience for whatever is new and now to be learned

This law of readiness has reference to the individual's desire, willingness, or ability to learn or to do some particular thing at some particular time. However, the teacher should not understand that she is to accommodate herself to a pupil's whims and caprices. Often a pupil must do what he does not want to do, or to do just then at any rate. The teacher must develop a condition of readiness by suitable teaching or suitable motivation. Maintain a normal mental fitness by attention to good sanitation and hygiene and by securing a wholesome learning attitude and emotional tone. Remember that there is no such thing as general readiness. Readiness has reference to the condition of an individual at a given time as related to some specific situation. A boy may not be ready to learn addition of fractions of unlike denominators because he cannot reduce fractions to a common denominator.

**Law of exercise.** In its general implications, the law of exercise is perfectly obvious; it is the one law of learning which has always been recognized and emphasized. It is equally plain that mere repetition does not insure learning. The repetition that counts is intelligent, insightful, purposeful, attentive repetition. The law of exercise applies not only to the learning of skills and habits but to any form of learning. Mechanical, aimless, lifeless repetition may not result in any useful learning. According to the Gestalt school of psychology, "repetition has

<sup>1</sup>LOWTH, F. J.—*The Country Teacher at Work*, The Macmillan Company, 1930.

the same place in learning that time has in growth. Repetition does not explain learning; it gives opportunity for learning to take place" According to Ragsdale,<sup>1</sup> "The factors which really explain learning are such things as the character of the goal, the time interval between repetitions, the learner's own level of insight, incentives, distractions, rhythm, method of procedure, etc" The correlative of use is disuse If use is basic in learning, in remembering, then disuse is the way of forgetting. However, some things, once learned, are never forgotten. It is much easier to forget how to demonstrate the Pythagorean proposition than it is to forget how to swim. If you once learn to swim or skate well, it will never be forgotten Other things being equal, the greater the number of times one reacts or responds to a situation the better the learning.

**The law of effect.** In stating the law of effect, Thorndike originally used the terms "satisfaction" and "annoyance" The law of effect was formulated to explain why some repetitions promote learning and others do not Some psychologists, notably the behaviorists, seem to think that the law of exercise explains all learning However, the law of effect seems to be not only very reasonable, but from the standpoint of the teacher, the most important of the three. Here is one statement mostly in biological terms as given by Gates<sup>2</sup> "Individuals tend to repeat those reactions which, on the whole, are satisfying, whereas they tend to avoid, and therefore to fail to repeat, those reactions which, on the whole, are annoying" Individuals are either animals or persons At the present time there is a tendency to criticize the terms *satisfaction* and *annoyance* The critics would describe the law of effect in terms of conditioned responses or simultaneous stimulation This would give the law a purely objective character So far as teaching and learning in school are concerned, the law of effect is this. Make all of the child's learning as pleasing, happy, satisfying as possible Set up

<sup>1</sup> RAGSDALE, C E—*Modern Psychologies and Education*, The Macmillan Company 1932

<sup>2</sup> GATES, A I—*Psychology for Students of Education*, The Macmillan Company 1930

attractive, attainable goals Teach children to be interested in their own attainments and progress by the use of graphs and other means Remove disagreeable accompaniments from the learning process as much as possible Do not associate learning with punishment or with the painful In short, see to it that the child really desires to make the necessary repetitions or to give attention to any other learning activity

**The learning curve and its plateaus.** Many years ago before modern objective measurements came into use, several investigators made careful studies of the effects of practice upon the learner The first researches were in the field of telegraphy, later experiments studied the attainment of skill in typewriting The purpose was to discover the influence of repetition upon various types of learners in securing different grades of skills In learning most motor skills rather rapid progress may be made at first while some proficiency is being attained; but eventually the up-curve of progress flattens out into a plateau when but little progress is made In habit forming, the plateaus are of great importance When a child finds he is not making progress, that is, when a plateau shows no improvement despite all practice, he is apt to get discouraged The duty of the teacher is to encourage pupils, perhaps advise stopping practice for a while, suggest new ways of practicing, commend all honest efforts, or be more particular about breaking the skill up into easier parts The teacher should understand that all of us are too easily satisfied with a modicum of skill What we need is to work after the first novelty has passed, for if we persist we shall ultimately attain greater and greater proficiency If we go by easy stages we shall learn better Practice periods should not be too long. Some plateaus of no progress seem to be inherent in acquiring certain skills because the learner finds that he cannot go ahead until he learns the intermediate steps, but plateaus due to excessive fatigue, or to lack of interest, or to the prejudice or laziness of the learner can often be taken care of by a skillful teacher The number and the length of plateaus are due to the type of learning and to the capacity of the learner Plateaus

may represent either short or long periods of arrested progress. Teachers should know that individual peculiarities set limits to the possible attainment of skills in individual cases.

**Teaching and learning.** The essential task of the teacher is to occasion, to stimulate, and to direct pupil activity, so that learning and personal development may result. It is the function of the teacher to shape the daily program and the class procedures in such a manner that the child responds in ways which contribute to his proper development. If, for example, the pupil is to acquire skill in writing there must be much practice under the inspiration and guidance of clear and correct ideals and of patterns of response. John will never become a good penman if he and his teacher simply talk about writing. Skill in writing comes only by giving attention to suitable, thoughtful, and adequate repetition of correct forms in correct movements. If a pupil is to become a skillful oral reader, no progress will be made if the teacher restricts herself to silent reading techniques and devices only, and vice versa.

To teach requires definite aim in terms of the changes which the teacher desires to bring about in the child. Bagley and Keith,<sup>1</sup> in an *Introduction to Teaching*, state that "To stimulate, encourage, or direct learning is the soul and substance of the art of teaching. It is the pupil himself who must learn, without activity on the pupil's part—without some dynamic expression of a will to learn—the efforts of the best teachers will be futile." These writers make it plain that learning has a direct bearing upon doing, for to learn is to acquire forms of behavior, new conduct controls.

The teacher deals with the entire boy or girl, body, mind, and character, every thinking teacher understands and realizes this. She takes note daily of bodily conditions and of health habits; she guides and directs the pupil in the development of ideas, ideals, and habits, and she gives constant attention to the shaping of human personality or character. These three

<sup>1</sup>BAGLEY, W. C., AND KEITH, J. A. H.—*An Introduction to Teaching*, The Macmillan Company.

phases of human life—physical, mental, and moral—are inextricably intermingled. Health of body has much to do with success in school work and in all of life to follow, the possession of a sound normally functioning nervous mechanism furnishes the basis, at least, for the development of the child's character. Moral development is also in a very large measure dependent upon mental development, upon the ability to remember exactly, to image conditions as they are, to form clear and correct ideas, and to solve problems by a course of thinking which arrives at a well-defined goal. Teaching and learning have to do with every phase of a child's life and of his preparation for future living.

#### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1. What is the relation between knowing the rules of a game and learning to play the game skillfully?
2. Show that the formation of a conditioned reflex is a form of learning. What connection exists between the conditioned reflex and the law of effect?
3. Illustrate the relation between habit formation and memorization.
4. When has anyone really learned to swim? When has anyone learned Kipling's "Recessional"?
5. Indicate several ways in which a teacher can assist pupils in learning how to do their work more effectively and economically.
6. In your opinion, is learning purely a mechanical process, or do you believe that learning involves innate desires, inner urges, and purposes?

#### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

1. ALMACK, J. C., AND LANG, A. R.—*The Beginning Teacher*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1928.
2. CAMERON, E. W.—*Psychology and the School*, The Century Company, 1924.
3. KILPATRICK, W. H.—*Foundations of Method*, The Macmillan Company 1925.
4. LINK, HENRY C.—*The Return to Religion*; The Macmillan Company 1936. A very suggestive and helpful book.
5. MORGAN, J. J. B., AND GILLILAND, A. R.—*An Introduction to Psychology*; The Macmillan Company. 1927.

6. MOSSMAN, Lois C.—*Principles of Teaching and Learning in the Elementary School*, Houghton Mifflin Company. 1929
7. RAGSDALE, C. E.—*Modern Psychologies and Education*, The Macmillan Company. 1932
8. YOAKAM, G. E., AND SIMPSON, R. G.—*An Introduction to Teaching and Learning*, The Macmillan Company. 1935

*Note* Every teacher should read "How to Acquire New Skills," by Professor James L. Mursell, a condensation in the July, 1936 READERS DIGEST Dr. Mursell's book is entitled "Streamline Your Mind," published by J. B. Lippincott Company in 1936.

## CHAPTER XVII

### MOTIVATION THROUGH PROBLEMS AND PROJECTS

**The inevitable reaction.** The growth and development of classroom procedure during the past generation is interesting and instructive to those who are in the midst of the problem and continually searching for better ways of teaching. Formal methods, in which subject matter rather than the needs of the child was stressed, have been in vogue not alone in decades gone by, even in the present day there is much of this kind of teaching going on, particularly in rural schools. During the past quarter century repeated efforts have been made to break up the lock step of formal testing technique by means of the socialized recitation, motivated activities of various sorts, and the use of problems in geography, history, and other subjects. Later, the project plan and method were thought to be best calculated to secure the maximum of pupil self-activity and the greatest personal development of the child in independence, initiative, and judgment.

At the present time the "activity program" or the "activity curriculum" is considered by adherents of the progressive school to be the best type of teaching-learning procedure. This extreme form of school practice is derived from the project method and involves the use of both problems and projects. The essential characteristic of the activity program is the large use made of centers of natural interest. This subject is discussed in Chapter XX. There is a constant tendency on the part of thinkers in the field of education to try out methods which will result in greater pupil response, more active personal participation, and more extended social co-operation. It is inevitable that every thoughtful teacher will become dissatisfied with the formal hearing of lessons in which mere un-

thinking memory activity largely prevails. Such a teacher will see that vital teaching must meet the genuine needs of the child as shown in the formulation and solution of personal problems growing out of actual personal difficulties. If the school is to offer real life situations and to prepare children to solve the problems of life, surely some form of dynamic teaching and learning is necessary.

**Nature and attributes of the problem.** Life abounds in problems. We are continually confronted with situations which puzzle us more or less. We don't know what to do under a given set of circumstances, there is confusion, the conditions are difficult, we cannot see our way out. Such problems are of great variety. Some of them are small and relatively insignificant; others are large and far-reaching in their consequences. An aching tooth is a problem, but an aching heart is a larger one. Older people should not think that the problems of children are of no importance. To the child his personal problems are of great significance. The duty of older people is to teach children how to solve their problems.

Many of our decisions have been handed over to the "effortless custody of automatism," that is, to habit. We even have habitual ways of solving problems. However, our habitual ways of reacting do not solve all of our problems, so we are forced to think. It is of course true that some people do very little thinking because thinking is hard, even painful, most people seek the line of least resistance, the way of habitual response. The problem implies purposeful, intellectual activity in which the individual attempts to answer a more or less complicated question by canvassing the various alternatives and then making some choice. A problem presents a situation demanding choice. In the work of the school every subject comprises many problems if only the teacher and the pupils can find them and formulate them. Take so simple a matter as learning a word. The old orthodox method was mechanical repetition of the letters. We now actually *study* words, which means that we find problems in words. In the word *tangible*,

for example, there is probably one letter which is usually the problem Which one is it? What are the difficulties with the words *owing, perceive, recommend, vaseline, kerosene?* We study, teach, and really learn words because we find problems in words

**Problems and thinking.** Julius Boraas, in his suggestive and useful book, *Teaching to Think*,<sup>1</sup> in common with other writers, makes thinking a *form of behavior*, inner behavior which he contrasts with outer behavior Professor Boraas makes clear the great economy and advantage of this inner behavior as compared with outer trial-and-error behavior, which is wasteful of time and energy He says "Regarded from the standpoint of outward activity, thinking is an inward activity 'Stop and think' does not mean that all activity shall cease, but refers merely to outward work In this sense, recalling past experiences, imagining new things, solving a problem, systematizing a mass of details, constructing an argument, and judging of values are all classed as thinking" Kilpatrick, in his *Foundations of Method*,<sup>2</sup> states that "thinking is a meaning appropriately at work" It is important that children get many and exact meanings as the basis for thinking "Practical thinking is a foretelling of what to anticipate or expect when one faces a situation." "Thinking is to be considered an adventure into the unknown future"

**Problems imply thinking.** A problem suggests thinking and problems can be solved only through thought processes If a situation suggests an habitual mode of response, there is no problem and no need for thought Most of us do not need to put much thought upon the matter of truthtelling When a situation arises which requires that we either tell the truth or falsify, our habitual way of responding truthfully will settle the matter quickly Thinking is demanded when a new situation presents itself which is different from preceding situations We commonly use the word *thinking* to comprise any and all mental

<sup>1</sup> BORAAS, JULIUS—*Teaching to Think*, The Macmillan Company 1922

<sup>2</sup> KILPATRICK, W. H.—*Foundations of Method*, The Macmillan Company, 1925

activity. We say, "I didn't think," for example, which in this case may mean, "I didn't remember." Or we say, "I can't think how to start the car," when certain unusual, unexpected conditions exist. In the latter case a course of imaging and reasoning is suggested, as well as use of memory. When a situation causes us to think, it produces a reflective state of mind in which we weigh various items or data to fix upon some conclusion.

**Two types of thinking.** Sometimes our problem-solving thought is confined wholly to our minds, we might term this *subjective* thinking. In solving problems in arithmetic and geography there is usually no more than this mental activity involved. But often our problem solving takes us actively into the field of things—the *objective* phase of the process. For example, the soft water tap at the kitchen sink does not cause any flow of water, though wide open. Here is a problem, which in this case is not so difficult when we consider that tank and pipes are in the attic, and that the temperature has been twenty degrees below zero. Or in this particular instance, the solution may be faulty because the proper pipe is not heated. When a piece of pipe about two feet long is given proper attention, the water soon begins to flow. Faulty thinking failed to locate the source of the trouble. More accurate thinking of the objective sort produced desired results.

**Need for experience.** One of the important elements to consider in this question of problem solving is that of the need for experience to furnish the means for making solutions or for doing the thinking. No one, child or adult, can solve problems or do any effective thinking without the raw material of ideas, images, or experiences of suitable kind and extent. We interpret life in terms of what we already possess. He who has had the widest experience in life and profited by it will have the largest fund for problem solving. That is the reason why an intelligent, observing, active man or woman accumulates wisdom with age. It takes time to learn to judge and to form conclusions which are well-founded and safe. One of the functions of the school is to give the child as many normal, useful, typical

experiences as possible. This explains dramatization, excursions, school exhibits, construction work, projects, and other activities. School life and life outside of school should mutually reinforce each other. Children differ greatly in their experiences according to their social station in life and their opportunities for seeing, doing, participating, and learning through actual living. In the better schools children are given opportunity to do many useful things, and actually to participate in a variety of co-operative, social activities. The up-to-date teacher guides pupils in finding problems in their study and in all work of the school. As the class exercise proceeds, if it is placed upon a thinking basis, the teacher will often stimulate pupils to suggest problems which may be formulated at the time and written on the board, or which may be left for formulation as a part of the study procedure. Many rural teachers do not make use of many problems themselves because they have not been trained in the discovery and stating of problems. There are countless problems connected with the successful operation of a rural school, a thoughtful teacher is continually finding new problems in the daily situations.

**Means of solution.** After a problem has been clearly and definitely stated, the next step is to find the means of solution. If, for example, the work is in geography, the pupils should be directed in finding all the facts which the textbook contains, bearing upon the question for study. Pupils need to be shown time after time how to use their books to get answers to questions. This is a practical form of silent reading. Then in addition to the basal text there are the dictionary, the encyclopedia, and the other reference books of the library. Pupils require daily practice in using books for problem solving. Many times, besides using books, people need to be consulted, maps made, diagrams drawn, in order to solve the problem. In all successful thinking the problem is kept clearly in mind. Often it must be stated and restated so that it will not be forgotten or ignored. Finally, when an answer has been secured, means should be taken to test the results or to check up to see if the conclusions

are correct Pupils thus form the checking-up habit, a valuable life habit for every one of us in order to avoid error and to arrive at safe and usable conclusions

**Advantages of the problem method.** 1 The use of problems necessarily *stimulates pupils to think*, and the processes of solution guide pupils in right habits of thinking While much of life is controlled by habit, it is true that the progress of the human race in every field of endeavor is due to thinking activities In a democracy it is of the utmost importance that each citizen, so far as possible, learn to think for himself

2 The problem method tends to *break up the formal routine* of the usual recitation procedure When pupils have concrete problems of personal interest, there is much more likelihood of having a free discussion, a conversational exercise, a general give-and-take, in which ideas and suggestions are weighed and valued for what they are worth

3. Through the use of stimulating and well-formulated problems the *necessary facts* which the child must learn will be *fixed in mind* by a rational process and not by dreary, unthinking, mechanical drill exercises Is the schoolroom, for example, adequately lighted? What must be known and what must be done to solve this problem? In the course of the solution, pupils will get valuable experience in computing areas of rectangular surfaces and are much more apt to remember the process because it is related to a definite, practical, interesting problem

4 *Lesson assignments* in the form of problems are always *more interesting* to pupils than page assignments Moreover, if problems are assigned, pupils have definite work for the study period There will be a real objective, a particular line of approach and attack will be set up for pupils' efforts Children of varying abilities, moreover, all find suitable work to do.

5 It goes without saying that a *problem arouses interest* Life never grows stale so long as it affords enough problems which are neither too hard for us to work out, nor so easy as to give no adequate stimulus. Moderately difficult, perplexing situations give zest to life and spur us on to effort So it is in school. A

teacher who uses problems in geography, history, and reading, as well as in arithmetic, never complains of lack of interest.

6 The rational, thoughtful solution of worth-while problems *develops initiative, self-reliance, and independence*, and prepares the pupil for participating, effective citizenship. One of the legitimate charges against the public school has been that pupils are not adequately guided in developing these qualities of character. Such deficiencies may often be traced to formal class procedures.

7. Problems *motivate school work*, and motivation is greatly to be desired. The usual testing recitation can never motivate school work as it should be motivated, because of its lack of reality and of personal appeal. A rural teacher needs to motivate her work even more than a grade teacher, because of its assistance in solving the problem of discipline.

8 Problem solving *prepares for life*, surely that is what the schools are for. Very much that is done in some schools not only does not prepare for successful living, but on the contrary actually weakens the child for meeting the affairs of life. A teacher is on the right track when she connects her school work with concrete realities as much as possible.

9 The use of problems secures *purposeful activity* in place of mere formal book study and mechanical recitation work. The best writers at the present time are stressing the need for aim or purpose in the work of the school, a little thought makes it clear that, other things being equal, those who set up definite goals toward which they steadfastly work are the ones most apt to succeed in all walks of life.

10 *Problems add reality to school life.* We should look upon the school not simply as preparation for life, but as life itself. In the best elementary schools, like those connected with Teachers College, Columbia University, and the University of Chicago, for example, pupils engage in all sorts of real life activities, getting experiences in this way which are highly educative.

**Guidance in thinking.** Probably no teacher can render her pupils a greater service than to teach them to think accurately and persistently when confronted by a problematic situation.

The following comments and suggestions are offered in the hope that teachers will find them useful in at least pointing the way to a better type of teaching.

1. Successful living demands a certain *critical habit of mind* such as leads the individual to challenge statements for the purpose of ascertaining their truth and validity. There is a gullible type of person who is easily hoodwinked and made to believe all sorts of things. The school should do all in its power to develop the habit of testing statements and of judging the value of evidence.

2. Every effort should be made to have pupils get *clear and definite meanings* of the words and terms in arithmetic, geography, physiology, and other subjects. Many pupils have trouble in thinking because they do not know the exact definition which lies at the basis of the solution; the dictionary may be a help or a hindrance, depending on how it is used. Most dictionary work would better be group study under the teacher's personal direction.

3. Pupils can be trained to ask *Why is this true?* or *Why is this not true?* in the process of clearing up a situation. For example, in the sentence, "There is a tide in the affairs of men," is the first word an adverb or not? John says it is an adverb. All right, let him prove it. He finally discovers that the word does not conform to the definition test, so it must have some other function. What is it?

4. Children need to be shown over and over again the vast difference between mere *personal opinions* and *real knowledge*. The ability and the habit of forming opinions only upon the basis of as much evidence as can be secured are of great value to any person. Pupils should sharply distinguish opinions from real knowledge. Opinions may be helpful and necessary, but, as Sam Jones used to say, we should take off our hats in the presence of a *fact*.

5. Teach pupils to *face the facts* and not side-step or run away from them. In matters of sanitation and hygiene, to illustrate, some otherwise intelligent people scoff at the antitoxin treat-

ment for diphtheria or the use of the Schick Test. These are the same people who say there is no value in vaccination for small-pox. Consult the facts in the case. Then if you are a reasonable person, there is only one possible conclusion.

6 Use every means at hand to *overcome prejudice and superstition*. Unthinking people are often filled with all sorts of prejudices and entertain the most foolish superstitions. How can a thinking person be so afraid of the number 13 that he will not sit down with twelve others at the table or take room 13 in a hotel under any circumstances? Many hotels have no room 13, for they know it will seldom be occupied. Honest thinking will do away with such prejudices and superstitions.

7 Guidance in thinking involves the *evaluation of statements* and their arrangement in order of importance. If the teacher frequently says, "In this paragraph what do you think is the most important statement?" pupils get good practice in a phase of the thinking process. Such a question in geography, history, and reading is a useful one. Selecting topic sentences and names for paragraphs will further concentration, careful silent reading, and more accurate thinking.

8 The habit of *suspending judgment* is one which makes for better thinking and the avoidance of many unnecessary troubles in life. Pupils can be taught to wait for more evidence before deciding the question which is under consideration. Many times the acquisition of more ideas places the matter in an entirely different light. Jumping at conclusions is a risky and even a dangerous habit of mind. The school should develop the opposite habit.

9. Thinking is *seeing relations*, which means making comparisons. Everything in the world is related, the world's most famous thinkers, such as Galileo, Newton, Edison, or Kepler, were people who could see the most relations, particularly the more subtle but significant ones below the surface. The greatest living thinker is perhaps Einstein.

10 *Conclusions need to be tested*, one of the most valuable habits in life is that of checking up results to see whether they

tally with facts and reality. School people can find many lessons in this checking up in the great world of industry. In every great industrial plant, banking institution, or mercantile establishment, the greatest pains are taken to check up on all products, materials, processes, and phases of the enterprise, in order to avoid waste and to promote efficiency. In school work answers and results should be repeatedly checked to prove their correctness.

11 Teachers should realize that *requiring exact statements* is one of the best ways to promote exact thinking. Our modes of expression have decided influence upon our ways of thinking. Teachers must not accept loose, inaccurate half-truths; they should hold pupils to clear, correct formulation of their thoughts, if they would guide them not only in English, but in thinking.

12 It is useless simply to tell children to think, to concentrate, or to study the lesson. *Pupils must be shown how to think*, to concentrate, or to study. Thinking is often a complex process involving certain necessary steps, such as finding and stating the specific problem, accumulating the data or facts for solution, trying out various ways of doing, and finally deciding on what seems the correct way. Sometimes thinking is the simple process of getting meanings and of understanding ordinary relations between ideas or meanings. In silent reading procedures today various types of thinking processes are utilized for the pupil's benefit.

13 In the problem-solving or thinking procedure *the state of mind* is of prime importance. Real thinkers are cool, calm, poised, and patient. They do not hurry and they do not worry. They deliberately and confidently set up aims or goals and seek the evidence which will bear on the question in hand. They avoid overconfidence as well as a doubtful, pessimistic attitude. They are seeking after truth; they welcome truth wherever it can be found.

14 The careful thinker is willing to try several ways in order to find the best way. If the class is working on the problem of a class or school paper, for example, and the particular question

up for decision is a suitable name for the paper, the thoughtful members of the class will be willing to take several days, if necessary, to solve the problem most satisfactorily. Perhaps a score or more names will be gathered from various sources; finally one will be found which best meets the local requirements, in the opinion of the class.

15 There are many opportunities in the work of the school to show *the practical value of thinking*. In a rural school the farm situation offers an abundance of material. Every successful farmer must think. He is continually meeting new problems. On the other hand many farmers fail in greater or less degree because they are groove-runners. They do things this year just as they did them the year before. They are the victims of tradition, custom, prejudice; they lose out because of this mental attitude, because of unwillingness or inability to think. Some teachers fail, at least relatively, for similar reasons.

**The problem method in geography.**<sup>1</sup> It is generally accepted today that the problem method of teaching geography is by far the most satisfactory procedure from the standpoint of interest, motivation, and effective teaching and learning. It can be used successfully by the average teacher in the rural school. The following excerpts from *A Teacher's Geography*, as well as the problems themselves, will give the student a point of view and an initial interest which should lead on to much further reading and study.

The problem method of presenting geography sets up a definite goal for the pupils to work toward. The pupils are confronted with a definite challenge. Facts are secured and evaluated with reference to their bearings on the problem. The pupil no longer looks merely for interesting facts about a topic. He must constantly exercise judgment. The same facts that are mastered in a topical outline may enter into the study, but the facts are meaningfully related. The details are of value because they are necessary in understanding the organizing center which is revealed in the stated problem. A driving force or motive to

<sup>1</sup> For this entire section, including the problems, the author is indebted to The Macmillan Company and to Dr. M. E. Branom, whose book, *A Teacher's Geography*, emphasizing the problem method, is widely known and used.

prompt the pupil to put forth effort is provided in the purpose to be realized.

It should not be inferred that only minimum essentials should be taught. But much freedom is left the teacher and pupils to deal with numerous worth-while supplementary details. The pupil should have a much richer conception of geography than is involved in the minimal essentials, but these additional appreciations, skills, and knowledges may vary with groups and with individuals. Social needs are cared for through minimal essentials, individual needs and interests are cared for through additional materials.

In using the problem method, the teacher should not arbitrarily drag in irrelevant details. Any essentials included should be vital to the problem. Otherwise the problem method is merely a disguised form of the topical outline or worse. Pupils should be trained to intellectual honesty. If vital details cannot be mastered in relation to problem requirements, these details should be taught through supplementary topical discussions.

A problem presents a challenge to the pupil to secure and interpret material that will result in its solution. The pupil who has a definite goal, requiring the exercise of judgment to reach it, will probably be more interested in his work than the pupil who is asked to memorize various interesting facts.

In some instances the pupils have sufficient interest in a problem to attack it without any attempt to interest them in it. Under these conditions time is wasted in attempting to build up an interest that already exists. Frequently a preliminary exercise that will arouse a sympathetic attitude toward the problem is needed. Preferably the exercise should arouse the pupil's curiosity and should lead to a 'startling' or perhaps unexpected discovery. A discovery that conditions now are different from those that formerly prevailed, or that conditions are different from those that might be anticipated because of certain facts, frequently arouses a deep-seated interest in the discovery.

Students should become familiar with Dr. Branon's very suggestive and helpful discussion of the use of the problem method in teaching geography.

#### ILLUSTRATIVE PROBLEM QUESTIONS IN GEOGRAPHY

The following problems from the Branon text either involve (a) explanation of physical phenomena, (b) inferences concerning the probable effects of physical phenomena, (c) discovery of effects leading to an attempt to find explanations of effects; or

(d) ability of man to dispose of the products of activity There are six problems of each of the four types

(1) Why is alluvial soil frequently very fertile? (2) Why is ocean water salty? (3) Why does the Mississippi River have a large delta? (4) Why is iron ore concentrated near the head of Lake Superior? (5) Why are there many caves and springs in the Ozark region? (6) Why is the coastline of Norway irregular? (7) How has the Nile River affected the people of Egypt? (8) How have ocean currents affected man's activities? (9) How has the Mississippi River influenced the development of St. Louis? (10) How has the Isthmus of Panama affected oceanic transportation routes? (11) How have mountains affected the construction of railroads in the western part of the United States? (12) How has climate influenced the extension of wheat production in Canada? (13) Why has commerce on the Mississippi River declined? (14) Why is cotton the chief money crop of the Southern United States? (15) Why has Los Angeles become a larger city than San Francisco? (16) Why is southeast Asia very densely populated? (17) Why is Boston an important fishing center? (18) Why is the largest city of Mexico in the interior? (19) Why does Denmark secure a high price for its butter and eggs? (20) Why is California the leading state in the production of fruit? (21) Why has the center of the quinine industry shifted from Peru to Java? (22) Why cannot the United States compete with China and Japan in the production of silk and tea? (23) How can Washington apples compete with home-grown apples in the markets of the East? (24) How has Argentina been able to increase its exports of animal products?

**Definitions of projects.** Many writers have set forth their notions of the meaning of the term *project*. It will help the young teacher to clarify her thinking if she will carefully study these definitions and explanations of projects:

A project is a problematic act carried to completion in its natural setting --Stevenson

The project is considered to be an act carried to completion in its natural setting, and involving the solution of a relatively complex problem --Charters

The term project contemplates a complete act (or experience) which the agent projects, purposes, and within limits, sees through to completion --Kilpatrick

A project is a whole-hearted, purposeful activity proceeding

in a social environment, or more briefly in the unit element of such activity, the hearty purposeful act —Kilpatrick

A *problem* is a life topic (unit of learner's experience) in which the processes and objects of learning are largely mental

A *project* is a life topic in which the processes and objects of learning are largely manual.

An *appreciation unit* is a life topic in which the processes and objects of learning are largely emotional

It should not, of course, be understood that there will be no manual elements in a problem or that there will be no thinking in a project, much less would it be safe to come to the conclusion that there will be no appreciation in problems and projects —Stone

I understand by project a complete unit of experience. The essential aspects or elements of an experience are, in the simplest form, a situation and the response to it. This, however, will not describe adequately what is meant by the type of experience called complete. Such a unit includes the following phases: situation, problem, purpose, plan, criticism of the plan, execution, judgment of results, appreciation. This is, of course, not a chronological order, strictly speaking, as a feeling of appreciation will spring up in anticipation of the outcome, while on the other hand, purpose persists and plan is modified to the very end. Negatively, the project is not to be confused with mere problem, with motivation, with incidental learning, with correlation, with self-activity, or with the idea of general method as illustrated by the Herbartian formal steps. To understand what the project method is we have only to go out into life and study any case of purposeful living. Perhaps, then, the word purposeful should be added to the original definition of a project—a concrete unit of purposeful experience. This will distinguish the project method from ordinary habitual reaction, as thinking, planning, criticizing, etc., are essential. I may add that the results to flow from the project will include growth in initiative, in power to think, in judgment of values, and in appreciation, as well as in concentration and power of organization, at least

within the range of specific suggestions in which the experience functions.<sup>1</sup>—Hosic-Stevenson

Professor Stevenson comments (p. 85) on the statements by Hosic, as follows

This characterization provides for reasoning as against the memory of information, for in the unit of learning he includes situation, purpose, plan, criticism of the plan, execution of the plan, judgment of results, and appreciation. In carrying out this unit new situations would arise which would demand reasoning. Since the unit of experience provides for execution, it contemplates carrying the act to completion. In another summary Hosic indicates that the project is an "organization of school life in accordance with life in the home and community"; hence a natural setting for the problem is provided.

Alice M. Krackowizer says

Any purposeful activity determined upon and carried to a successful conclusion becomes a project

Projects of all kinds, involving play, social experience, nature experience, constructive activities, are part of the child's daily life, long before he enters school; they should continue as parts of his daily life under normal conditions while he is in school

All projects include the problem type in so far as they are not merely unconscious responses. The process of carrying out projects includes thoughts, suggestions, and activities rejected as well as those finally selected as pertinent.<sup>2</sup>

All of the above definitions of projects and the project method are quoted by Stevenson in his book. Stevenson concludes his Chapter III with these statements "*The provision for the natural setting of the teaching situation is the distinct contribution of the project method. Without the natural setting there is no project*"

**The problem-project method.** Some writers use this combination term to cover all of the activities which have heretofore been designated by the two terms, *problem* and *project*, used separately. The compound word seems best to express the

<sup>1</sup> STEVENSON, J. A.—*The Project Method of Teaching*, The Macmillan Company, 1925.

<sup>2</sup> KRACKOWIZER, ALICE M.—*Projects in the Primary Grades*, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1919.

general notion of both intellectual activity and of manual or externalized forms of doing—the subjective and objective phases of the participating, co-operating procedure. In geography, problem solving as a rule involves simply the use of the various references, the textbook, magazines, the library, without much if any manual activity; whereas in agriculture we have in such a problem-project as the selection of seed corn a union of thinking with actual doing. Practically all projects involve one or more problems; in subjects like geography, history, and even English there is always an enterprise to be carried out. The making of a bibliography is a problem-project, although of a different type from that of the hot lunch in a rural school. The term *problem-project* emphasizes both the thinking and the doing and stresses the fact that the two are to be associated in accomplishing a set purpose. The term problem by itself can be reserved to designate work of the thinking variety in arithmetic, algebra, or mathematical physics, where there is no need to include the idea of the project for the simple reason that the manipulation of things is absent.

**Two interpretations.** The project idea and method of teaching may be thought of as either a broad, comprehensive philosophy of general method or simply a special means of presenting certain types of subject matter, mostly those having to do with the world of things. In the broad sense, some thinkers and writers would have us believe that the project is the central, pivotal concept of learning and teaching, which will completely revolutionize our school curricula and practice. There is no doubt that we need a scheme of teaching that will breathe into instruction a greater element of reality and genuineness. In other words, as Hosic puts it, we stand greatly in need of "dynamic teaching," which, he states, is "teaching that counts." There are those, and Hosic among them, who think that in the project method we have at last found a doctrine and a technique which embodies the essence of true Americanism. Hosic says: "The central doctrine that life at its best is active purpose, that people are at their best when they live so, that they learn best when they

learn so, is fundamental" Again, "Life itself is dynamic, therefore school life must be dynamic" The project method seems to give us more of real life, the dynamic element, than anything heretofore proposed —Then there are many other school men and women who see in the project method simply one way of teaching among many They do not expect the curriculum to be organized on a project basis, instead they state that teachers will use this type of teaching to present certain sorts of subject matter and will never use it as an exclusive method The writer of this book looks upon the project method as having so many limitations for the average rural teacher of today that its use should be restricted to definite fields of learning and teaching. At the present time the activity program, which includes both problems and projects, is the teaching-learning system most advocated by those school people who believe themselves most advanced in schoolroom practice

**Advantages of projects.** 1 The use of projects tends to eliminate the formal from the course of study, an outcome greatly to be desired In the very nature of the case, according to the above definitions of projects, it will be practically impossible to make purposeful activities, carried on in natural settings, formal or artificial

2. Projects carried out naturally and intelligently provide a far wider range of pupil activities than do other methods commonly in use In learning through projects the child is active mentally, morally, and physically Mentally, the whole mind is alert and in operation, just as when we find children engaged in their own play projects, self-initiated Not only is the child thinking, but he summons all of his experience to his aid in accomplishing his purpose He is self-directive, and there is a wholesome emotional tone often absent in performing set school duties.

3 Projects make much of extracurricular activities; such lines of work in a rural school as a school paper or a school society, for example, are often productive of very great pupil betterment and development

4 A wise use of projects not only makes better provision for individual differences, but it affords the opportunity for individuals to learn social, co-operative ways of working together very much more effectively than the usual recitation procedure

5 Project teaching brings the home and the school into closer and more effective relations through the need for co-operative efforts. It is impossible to work out the hot-lunch project, for example, in a rural school as it should be done, without the school and the home finding more in common, and without harmonious relationships growing out of such a project, wisely conducted.

**Limitations of projects.** 1. The use of project teaching often fails to make adequate provision for habituation exercises or drills which are necessary in the elementary school in order to secure important practical skills. In arithmetic, for example, a large part of the work, say, in the first six grades consists of habituation exercises which should no doubt be motivated as much as possible by interesting types of procedure, but which the project in itself does not take care of adequately—at any rate as often conducted.

2 It frequently happens that the items of knowledge are left without effort to arrange them into a definite system of logical arrangement. The project activity needs to be followed by a different type of teaching which will organize the facts used or the experiences gained into some definite compact form for future use.

3. It is a fact that not all children enter whole-heartedly into all the projects proposed. Some are interested and some are not, because they have differing experiences and different desires. The project method in itself is not always a guarantee of interest and motivated activity with all of the pupils of a given class.

4 One of the serious limitations in a rural school is that the use of the project method may make for disorder. Some teachers seem wholly unable to use either the project plan or the socialized recitation without losing a measure of control, probably because of personal weaknesses and defects. Such persons will

do well to make cautious and limited use of the more extreme types of teaching procedures until the technique of management is mastered by them.

5 Hoscic states that there is the constant risk that the teacher will try out projects which are not worth while because they are lacking in proper educational attributes. A large number of teachers will use projects merely as the fad or fashion of the hour, like extreme styles in dress.

**Kinds of projects.** Projects have been classified in various ways by different writers. Stevenson calls attention to the distinction between *manual projects* and *intellectual projects*. Obviously a manual project involves a doing, a dealing with things in which the physical acts and outcomes are among the chief aims. In a study of weeds, if the pupil sets about the task of finding several examples of each class of weeds and of learning how to identify them through making a collection, this would certainly be a manual project. Collecting weed seeds and the making of posters might be a part of the procedure. On the other hand, if teacher and class decide to make a classified list of the various references in the school on the subject of weeds, the work will be largely intellectual. Project work involving the use of books only is mostly of the intellectual type.

Stevenson also classifies projects as *simple* and *complex*. It would be a simple project for a girl to set the dinner table, but it would be a complex project for the same girl to plan, prepare, and serve a four-course dinner for the faculty of a high school. It would be a simple project for the arithmetic class to compute the lighting ratio of a country schoolhouse, but it would be a more complex project if the class went to a neighboring farm to measure the silo and make a set of problems pertaining to it. It is a relatively simple project for a student to prepare a news item for the city paper, giving an account of the Christmas program; but it would be a more difficult and complex project for a committee of five students to have full charge of the Christmas program for the pupils in the practice department. These classes of projects overlap and are interdependent. Man-

ual projects involve intellectual activity, and complex projects are usually made up of several simple projects

Four classes of projects have been suggested

1. Certain projects require that ideas be embodied in some *external form*. When a boy makes a kite or a girl makes a doll we have this kind of project illustrated. In school, if the class makes a salt and flour relief map of the state, there is a social project of this first type.

2. In the second kind of project the *aesthetic element* predominates. It is an activity, social or individual, in which enjoyment and appreciation are the uppermost aims. In a rural district teacher and pupils might very well have a program in the school society some afternoon devoted entirely to music. There could be group singing and individual selections. A phonograph or the radio might be used as a part of the program. Papers could be prepared giving accounts of some of the great composers.

3. In the third type of project, according to Kilpatrick, the chief aim is *problem solving*. There is a difficulty to overcome, a complex situation or problem which needs to be resolved. There are problems to solve in arithmetic, algebra, geography, and in the reading lesson. Some problems are large and some are small. There is undoubtedly a place in school for legitimate puzzles. Sometimes a class becomes so mechanically minded that it needs something to stimulate it intellectually. For example, such problems as these might be used as one means of helping to wake up a dead class. (a) Two men desire to divide eight gallons of sweet cider equally between them. The cider is in a keg which holds just eight gallons. The only measures they have are a five-gallon keg and a three-gallon bucket, how can they make the division? (b) If I tell you how many dimes and how many nickels a boy has, how can you find the amount of his money? (c) If all your parents, grandparents, and great-grandparents were alive and you should sit down to dinner with them, how many seats would the company occupy? (d) Of the animals in a farmyard two-fifths are hens; the rest are pigs and

sheep If you are told how many eyes and wings all the animals have, how can you find the number of hens?

4 The fourth kind of project has to do with *skills, habits, knowledge*. An upper-grade language class in a rural school was evidently in need of training in written composition. The teacher decided that the difficulty was chiefly one of motivation. So the class, consisting of four girls and four boys averaging about thirteen years of age, after much preliminary class discussion with the teacher, were given the task of issuing six numbers of a school paper, which was to consist of four pages, each 9 inches by 14 inches. The class did all the work connected with the paper, and decided on the name, the form, and the character of the contents. The paper was issued every two weeks. Certain funds amounting to about \$10.00 were available. An excellent hectograph was purchased for about \$6.00. The class became enthusiastic. The copy was carefully prepared and repeatedly corrected. The pupils developed language skills during the months of December, January, and February of practical lifelong value to them, all by means of a social, habit-forming project. See the author's *The Country Teacher at Work*, Chapter Four on "Publishing a School Paper."

**Arithmetical projects** It is not difficult to find many practical, worth-while projects in rural-school arithmetic, that is, activities involving problem solving which may be carried to completion in their natural setting. A few suggestions for such project work are made here for the rural teacher's consideration. Probably some of these are not exclusively or technically projects, in the strict sense of the term.

1 Make the measurements and, using the resulting figures and the cost data which you may find in the catalogue of a mail-order house, find out the expense of giving the walls and ceiling of your rural schoolhouse two coats of paint.

2 Draw the schoolhouse and the school yard to scale; then compute the area of the yard in fractions of an acre. Let individual pupils get results until there is practical agreement. What percentage of the total area does the school building occupy?

3 The net proceeds of the school social were \$20.00. The class may take catalogues of school-supply houses and make several lists of ways to spend the money for the benefit of the school.

4. Teacher and class may procure several copies of the booklet entitled *Postal Information*, and then make out and solve a series of problems involving varying parcel-post rates, according to weight and distance.

5 A series of practical problems based upon the heating and ventilating system can readily be made and solved, such as comparing the area of the fresh-air inlet with the foul-air outlet and finding the air capacity of the room in cubic feet. Is the air space sufficient for the number of pupils? Each pupil should receive about 2500 cubic feet of fresh air per hour. Some of the patented systems are said to change the air every ten minutes. Compute the volume of air changed in one hour.

6 Find the total valuation of the school district and the amount of money the district must raise to run the school; then compute the rate and find out how much John Smith will pay if he is assessed at \$35,000. Does the school get any money from state or county? How much does the local district raise?

7. Many problems can be made out in connection with the hot lunch. For example, the class can compute the cost of the various dishes for one month. If the school has no hot-lunch equipment let the class figure the cost of installing a good equipment.

8 The pupils can readily find the market prices for butter, hogs, hay, cheese, milk, eggs, coffee, beef, shoes, clothing, and other articles. Making out a list and noting the changes from week to week is a good project. Using the prices for data, all sorts of useful problems can then be stated. A committee may keep a corrected list posted on the bulletin board.

9 Which would be the more profitable crop on a given piece of ground, corn or potatoes, alfalfa or oats? Figure all the possible costs of production and then take the average prices over a series of years. Find out about the character of the soil.

and what each crop takes out of the soil Also compute the average market price of each crop over a period of ten years

10 Make out a year's budget for the rural school, indicating all sources of income and all items of outlay

11 Make a diagram of the home farm showing the various fields and indicating what they were or are used for The number of acres and the values of crops may be shown Many problems can be formulated Have the class write out several.

12. Make a complete inventory of all school property under the teacher's direction, giving approximate values of all fixed and all movable equipment There are several rural school arithmetics on the market. See also farm and country life problems in many recent general arithmetic texts.

**Projects in agriculture and nature study.** 1. Collect weed seeds in vials and label the bottles. Use the collection as the means for teaching useful knowledge

2 Select seed corn under the direction of a farmer

3 Make a chart or poster showing the various kinds of dairy cows, getting the pictures from farm journals and elsewhere. Similar work may be done for hogs, poultry, horses, sheep, and beef cattle See Pickard's *Rural Education*<sup>1</sup>

4. Make various kinds of booklets on leaves, weeds, birds, and wild animals These booklets may contain outlines, pictures, colored diagrams, and short descriptions They should have neat, decorated covers and be tastefully bound together

5. Collect and arrange various kinds of bark, wood, rocks, and seeds Pupils will try to find material if they have a tangible objective to work towards

6 Learn to identify twenty-five weeds in September, using the game or contest idea Each pupil should bring all of the different kinds he finds from time to time.

7 Test the milk of a certain cow for a week or a month Each member of the class weighs the milk from one cow, night and morning, tests the milk with a Babcock tester, and computes the butter-fat content

<sup>1</sup>Pickard, A. E.—*Rural Education*, Webb Publishing Company.

8 Learn how to use the rag-doll or some other form of seed-corn tester. This is a good practical project in the spring and it may have its phase of practical usefulness.

9. Raise a calf, a pig, a sheep, or a flock of turkeys, computing costs and profits.

10 Prepare an exhibit for the county fair.

11. Make a good bibliography of references on corn, potatoes, weeds, grains, cattle, or on some other subject, using all the books and bulletins available. Send for bulletins.

12 Test several samples of soil with litmus paper, and make a soil survey of the district. Or get the co-operation of the county agent to make more scientific and accurate tests with special equipment.

13 Draw the parts of a typical insect and make a booklet on insects.

14 Make a special study of the fly, especially as a menace to health. Excellent material may be found in books and bulletins so that it will not be difficult for pupils to make attractive booklets.

15 Arrange excursions to study the silo (or other objects of interest and educational value in the district) including the kinds of silos, how they are filled, and the computation of their contents. Make a list of such possible excursions for the school year.

The above is merely a suggestive list. No person can do it all. Let each teacher select the kinds of work which are most feasible in her school and district. It is unquestionably true that successful teaching of agriculture demands the use of problem-project procedures. Teaching agriculture without studying real things is a waste of time and energy. Good books should also be used constantly in order to get the necessary and correct information.

**The hot lunch as a project.** The best way to conduct the hot lunch in a rural school is to make it a social, co-operative project for the immediate school community. All the preliminary steps connected with the starting of the hot lunch can also be made a school or a class project. In carrying out the details of the hot-

lunch procedure day after day, there is rich opportunity for training pupils in many of the most important qualities of good citizenship. It is easily possible to divide the work so that practically every child in the school will have something to do, at least sometime during a given week. In this connection the student is referred to the chapter in which the details of the hot-lunch procedure are discussed. It should be noted that in the hot lunch we have a distinctly motivated enterprise. There is purposeful activity and there is the natural setting. Moreover, the work is carried to completion in the natural setting. There will be little difficulty in correlating the hot-lunch work with arithmetic, hygiene, and geography, this should be done.

**Student-teacher projects.** In every institution where teachers are prepared the students must necessarily be engaged from time to time in carrying out projects connected with the regular work of the school, there will also doubtless be many extracurricular projects. The following list is necessarily brief:

1. Getting ready for and then putting in several weeks of observation and practice in a rural school in fall and spring. This project includes a report upon the experience when the student returns. Part of the project also consists in keeping in touch with the regular, or associate, teacher during the year, co-operating with her in several ways, and receiving aid from her from time to time.

2 Planning, preparing, and carrying out a Halloween, Christmas, or Thanksgiving social and program to which guests are invited. The project includes planning all the games and the program, arranging for the refreshments, paying the bills, and doing everything else which is necessary to carry the project to successful completion.

3 Preparing and serving a dinner to rural school supervisors and superintendents from some section of the state, comprising several counties. This is a large undertaking, requiring the active services of at least a dozen young women.

4 Making seatwork material of different kinds to use in their own schools the year after graduation.

5 Serving on various standing and special committees, thus insuring, through co-operative activity, the performing of many duties of direct help in promoting the welfare of the school

6 Planning for during the year and going on several excursions to study many institutions and places A committee makes out a schedule after consultation with the principal and takes care of the problem of transportation, expenses are paid jointly by school and students

7 Getting out several hundred educational bulletins each month to rural teachers, rural-school-board members, and others Envelopes are directed and bulletins are folded, placed in envelopes, and mailed It is a useful social project in which rural teachers, supervisors, and many others are benefited

8 Serving a cafeteria luncheon to rural teachers of the county who come to the school for professional conferences in fall and spring This involves looking after all financial arrangements, making sure there is no loss, and solving the problem of preparing and serving the food in co-operation with one of the teachers

9 Taking care of the bulletin case where hundreds of various bulletins on many subjects are systematically arranged, so that when one is needed quickly the special student will find it readily in his or her compartment This saves time and helps the student

10 Putting on special programs, such as a Hiawatha dramatization, with proper settings and costumes Sometimes it is a Christmas play such as Dickens's "Christmas Carol," or Tolstoy's "Where Love Is, God Is," or an operetta such as "Hansel and Gretel" or "The Pied Piper of Hamelin" Students prepare the stage effects and the costumes They also take the initiative in rehearsals and in making suggestions for improving the general appearance, or ensemble.

**Problem—project—interest—motivation.** These four terms are placed together here in order to suggest their mutual relationships and interdependence. The words are most significant in modern school practice, for they embody the aims and efforts of educational thinkers to place school work upon a more

rational basis of reality and genuineness It is unnecessary to discuss problems and projects further in this connection except to say that the project almost always involves the problem. Projects are made up of a series of related problems In considering both problems and projects it is evident that the point of view is that of the child rather than the subject matter. The best teachers always look upon subjects as means to ends It is this viewpoint which gives meaning and value to the four terms of this topic Interest is the oldest in method terminology We use problems and projects partly because they are inherently interesting, and partly because they bring about the highest type of personal development The problem-project is naturally an interesting and well-motivated procedure In actual school work these four principles overlap and mutually reinforce one another continually If the rural teacher will master them and make them the underlying principles of all her work, she will find that she is doing genuine dynamic teaching

**When is work motivated?** Wilson and Wilson say in their book, *The Motivation of School Work*,<sup>1</sup> "The child's work is motivated whenever he sees a real use in it--whenever it satisfies some need he feels, provides some value he wants, supplies some control he wishes to possess, secures some desired end, or helps him to attain any definite goal" School work is motivated when pupils work because they want to and not because the teacher asks them to do something It is no doubt true that not all of the work of the school can be thus motivated and that children must be trained to do disagreeable tasks which they would rather avoid One of the great functions of the school is to guide and direct boys and girls in doing the work that needs to be done, even though it is not always pleasant and agreeable Nevertheless, we need to realize that the best work of the world is really not done under compulsion, but rather from an inner impulse born of genuine interest, either immediate or remote We cannot think of such men as Guglielmo Marconi,

<sup>1</sup> WILSON, H. B., AND WILSON, G. M.—*The Motivation of School Work*; Houghton Mifflin Company Revised edition, 1921

or Chief Justice Hughes, or President Hutchins, or Walter Damrosch as being driven to their tasks. They work because they love to work and because they have great purposes to realize and goals to reach. Life is tremendously interesting to such people because it is full of intensely attractive problems. Their work has the highest type of motivation. In school work every effort should be made to have pupils ask questions, to sense problems, to realize personal needs, to see reasons for doing things. The work of the school should be based on the needs of children and appeal to and utilize their experiences, if it is to be well-motivated, interesting, and therefore successful.

**Common native interests.** The teacher should understand the natural, inherent urges and desires of children which prompt them to action. These are powerful impelling forces in many instances and can be utilized in making school work and learning more interesting and effective. Often the play instinct or the impulse to make things can be turned into profitable channels in connection with desirable school projects and learnings.

1 *Overcoming difficulties* As has already been intimated, this appeal should often be made to children. There is a natural, pugnacious instinct which prompts all of us not to be downed by hard circumstances. It is right and proper that John should be encouraged to fight out his battles, to persevere in solving his problems. Every good teacher makes use of this instinctive desire not to be beaten in accomplishing personal purposes.

2 *Making collections* We all make collections of all sorts of things because we love to see and handle the objects of our desire. Some enjoy collecting, handling, and reading books. A book is to them something very desirable. With others it may be furniture, clothing, money, jewelry, or anything which is desired and personally valued. The list is a long one. In school work children like to make and to keep things which belong to them. This instinctive desire lies at the basis of the making of booklets and collecting leaves and pictures. It is a useful form of motivation which can often be utilized in school work. Pupils should be encouraged to take pride in such work.

3 *Entertaining guests* The teacher plans a mothers' meeting and makes it a social, co-operative enterprise for all the school. She is sure to get some hearty responses, for the children naturally wish to make a good showing. Read the discussion of Mothers' Meetings in another chapter, and consider how you can make this a well-motivated afternoon, from the regular class work to the serving of the refreshments. One can think of other illustrations of this point without much difficulty.

4 *Accumulation of property* Children usually work better if they get paid for it, but of course this is a motive which must not be overworked. Children cannot always be hired to do their work or to be good. Teachers cannot pay children to get them to behave. Prizes and artificial rewards are a dangerous sort of motivating agency. However, if Mary has the prospect of earning \$5.00 for her essay on "The Sanitation of a Country Home" which is to be published in the local paper, such an incentive seems a very proper one. If all the pupils can earn money through a school social or otherwise to buy a picture for the school, there is a high type of social motive which is altogether wholesome.

5 *Working for honors* Sometimes such work is a declamatory contest, or a debate with another rural school, or a spelling match in the school or between schools, or again it is an effort to have the school get the large banner for the year, indicating that this rural school is the best in the county in penmanship, arithmetic, spelling, or in other ways. Such efforts and such motivation are indeed commendable. In this work there is the stimulation of group interest and the pride which prompts all to work hard for the good name of the school. Whenever activities can be socialized, the benefits and the motivation are always more certain and perhaps more justifiable.

6 *The urge to build* Children like to make things of wood, paper, or other material. The desire to build or construct is seen early in life before the child goes to school. In an up-to-date rural school a large variety of materials are now furnished for construction work, particularly for educative seat activities.

Almost all children are happy and interested in this project work. So we have salt-and-flour maps, sewing, making bird-houses, weaving baskets, and making paper-pulp maps. There is no end to this type of work. If a pupil, a class, or the whole school can make something for the school, such as window ventilators, a magazine rack, or a shelf for the cyclopedias, the making is an excellent socially motivated activity.

7. *Motivation of games* It is now quite common to make use of the play instinct in learning activities; we now have games in spelling, language, reading, arithmetic, and other subjects. Teachers will experience no difficulty in providing games for motivated work from the various supply houses. A thoroughly competent teacher employs the dramatic instinct to teach the powers and duties of the school officials and qualified voters at the annual school meeting. Let us suppose that there are fifteen persons present at this important gathering, including three school board members. The director or some other voter presides, the clerk reads the minutes of the last meeting and keeps minutes of present one. The treasurer gives his report. The auditing committee reports. A new board member is elected. District business is discussed. Planning the annual school meeting thus becomes a well-motivated learning situation, in contrast to the dreary reproduction of dry-as-dust textbook materials.

#### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1. Compare learning by the project method with learning according to the activity program.
2. Make a list of twenty practicable and useful projects in teaching agriculture in a rural school.
3. Indicate several problems involved in printing a school paper and tell how you will meet them.
4. What projects can you carry on in teaching geography in a rural school?
5. Enumerate several personal problems which you will need to solve during your first month of teaching a rural school. Tell what you will do to solve these problems.
6. What problems are involved in the work of teaching handwriting? How can you solve them?

## 354 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

7. Make a list of twenty educational activities in number work in the first three grades. Here are illustrations Keeping score in bean bag or other games Looking up dates on the calendar and counting the number of days or weeks to the dates of birthdays or holidays.

### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

1. BRANOM, M E—*A Teacher's Geography*, Emphasizing the Problem Method, The Macmillan Company 1928
2. COLLINGS, ELLSWORTH—*Project Teaching in Elementary Schools*, The Century Company. 1928
3. DEWEY, JOHN—*How We Think*, Revised edition, D C Heath and Company 1932
4. FREELAND, G A—*Modern Elementary School Practice*, Revised edition, The Macmillan Company. 1927
5. KILPATRICK, W. H—*Foundations of Method*, The Macmillan Company. 1925
6. LYMAN, R L.—*The Mind at Work*, Scott, Foresman and Company. 1924
7. STORMZAND, M J—*Progressive Methods of Teaching*; Houghton Mifflin Company 1924
8. WILSON, H B, AND WILSON, G M—*Motivation of School Work*, Houghton Mifflin Company. 1921.

## CHAPTER XVIII

### PROVIDING FOR INDIVIDUAL DIFFERENCES

The writer vividly recalls a rural teacher many years ago who called the A-B-C pupils, one by one, to his desk on the elevated rostrum or platform where he taught them letters and words from the old *Sander's Pictorial Primer*. This was individualized instruction of a sort, though very crude and ineffective. The teacher was a tall, muscular, fine gentleman, a graduate of the state university. He knew nothing about the techniques of teaching, although his mentality was much above the average. He had a strong personality which was a decidedly wholesome influence. Most of his teaching was in the form of class or group instruction.

In an early day, say prior to the Civil War, instruction was largely individual. Gradually class or group instruction came to be the regular practice and is today exceedingly common. It is only within this generation that serious efforts have been made to individualize instruction. Mass instruction as found in our system of grades has become almost universal. Group teaching and the graded system have certain distinct advantages as well as many limitations. Pupils vary in ability; there are the slow, the medium, the bright. The graded class system provides for the average pupil and for progress through the grades at an average rate. But, what of the dull group and what of those whose abilities are above average? Slow pupils are often neglected and drop by the wayside, brighter children are held back by the "lock step" of the school machine.

Individuals differ in every particular. Our entire system of grades and of teaching pupils in classes is based upon the assumption that children are much alike in their learning capacities and ability to respond to classroom instruction. We have

gradually come to see that while children are similar in many particulars, some of the most striking characteristics of boys and girls, as well as of older persons, are to be found in their differences. So far as certain general instinctive tendencies, common to the race, are concerned, children are to some degree alike. For example, the social or gregarious instinct is found in all children, yet we know very well that some are much more socially inclined than others. All normal children enjoy physical activity and like to play. Moreover, certain types of play are common. Practically all normal little girls like to play with dolls, and boys are quite apt to play horse or to impersonate the soldier. The desire for possession is common and instinctive, but differs in rather a marked degree among children, the fighting instinct, though general and inherent, is also a notably varying urge.

In school work teachers find that pupils differ much in native capacity and in achievement. While perhaps the members of a given class may be grouped as bright, medium, and dull, we yet know very well that no two pupils are exactly alike in any one of the three groups. An important principle for the teacher is that instruction should be adapted to the individual. Our modern intelligence, diagnostic, inventory, aptitude, and other tests enable us to judge of individual differences more accurately than formerly. One of the greatest contributions of modern psychologic study is the test, which gives us the means of discovering the manifold ways in which pupils differ. There are evident differences, mentally, morally, and physically. Children vary markedly in honesty, sympathy, power of endurance, capacity for acquiring different skills, power to work with speed, ability to grasp meanings, power of imagery, types of memory, and the like. A teacher can hardly make a more profitable study than to investigate the problem of individual differences.

**Differences in bodily constitution.** We see evidences on every hand of the striking differences in people in physical make-up. We have tall and short people, thin and fleshy folks, hair and eyes of many shades and colors. Some people have large heads

and small feet, and vice versa. We see heads of all varieties of sizes, shapes, and contours, some with high and some with low foreheads. We know that the brain varies in weight and in nerve structure. We know, also, that, in a general way, the size and character of the brain determines mental capacity. The way in which the nervous system varies has much to do with learning and with the determination of personality. Essential nerve structure and nerve protoplasmic composition and the character of the nerve cells and fibers have an important bearing on individual differences. These physiological variations are due in large measure to biologic heredity and to social heredity, although environmental influences, such, for example, as the character and the quantity of food, are also of determining significance.

**Mental and moral differences.** Whether due to hereditary or environmental causes, it is plain that persons differ as markedly in personality traits as they do in physical qualities. It is of course true that the normal or abnormal conditioning and functioning of the body is a constituent part of the personality complex. Mentally, people range all the way from imbeciles to geniuses. In every school we find bright and dull children and good and bad children, with the vast majority distributed between the extremes. Temperamental types seem to be due partly to heredity and partly to the social and physical environment. We know now that the endocrine-gland system is a large factor in the determination of personality. The type of glandular structure, like the fundamental nature of the cerebrospinal nervous mechanism, is mostly a matter of heredity, but sometimes by the use of a variety of glandular extracts, the entire physiological, mental, and even moral aspect of the situation may be changed and improved for a given individual. In what we call character attributes the average person is neither wholly honest nor dishonest, loyal nor disloyal, industrious nor lazy, responsible nor irresponsible, provident nor shiftless. We find extremes in moral qualities, as in mental or physical, but we also find that most human beings are just average persons, neither

very bright nor very dull, neither conspicuous saints nor vile sinners

**Discovering and measuring individual differences.** It is now possible to discover how children and adults differ in various particulars. Today measures of intelligence and achievement are common and are found in great variety. There are measuring instruments which will give a fair picture of the individual physically, mentally, and morally, although tests of personality have not been developed to as high a degree of reliability as the others. In many school systems the complete status of the individual is now charted by the use of scoring devices and graphs. There are record forms now which have spaces for all the essential data relating to health, to intelligence, to school progress, and to character or personality attributes. In the larger systems these records are carefully and repeatedly checked and kept up to date. We now have batteries of achievement tests for the different grades which have a high degree of reliability. There are diagnostic, prognostic, and aptitude tests as well as tests for classification and guidance. The teacher or student should write to the World Book Company, Yonkers-on-Hudson, New York, or Chicago, for literature pertaining to tests. Various other companies also publish tests. (See list at end of this chapter.)

**Differences in learning ability.** Teachers have always recognized the fact that children differ in their ability to learn, but it is only within the last generation or less that variability in learning capacities has been subjected to scientific analysis and measurement. Starch says that "if we measure a group of pupils in a given grade or class, we find that on the average the best pupil is able to do from two to twenty-five times as much as the poorest pupil, or is able to do the same task from two to twenty-five times as well as the poorest pupil." It is not unusual to find that in a given class of thirty sixth-grade pupils, where the average *chronological* age is about twelve and one-half years, the mental ages may easily, and often do, range approximately from eight to fifteen. Learning abilities vary largely because of the anatomical and physiological variations in the structure and functioning

of the nervous system. One's learning ability is determined for him at birth, or more accurately, before birth. He inherits a certain type of nervous system which will throughout his life determine his general intelligence. It should be stated with emphasis, however, that learning in special fields can be decidedly improved by training, guidance, and skillful teaching. It is thought that the intelligence quotient (I.Q.) is not altogether a fixed determinable quantity in every case, but that it is modified more or less by environmental influences. Nature and nurture work together in most cases to cause fluctuations in the I.Q., but probably native or inborn capacity is the more important factor. Some children are "born short" and others are "born long"; it is impossible to ignore or minimize such differences which environmental influences cannot entirely remove.

**All learning is individual.** In a discussion of individual differences and differentiated instruction it is well to keep in mind that each individual does his own learning in any case. A class exercise may seem to be successful, but the teacher cannot be sure as to its success for individuals unless she gives tests. Such tests are often most revealing, showing that some pupils have learned everything, some nothing, and others only a part. It is only the reaction of the individual in his own particular way to his own particular learning situation that determines the nature and the extent of his learning. As a matter of fact, all instruction and all learning must, in the nature of the case, be individualized. This does not mean that there cannot be group teaching; it is quite possible so to teach the group that each individual member of the group is taught at the same time. This requires skillful use of teaching techniques by a well-trained teacher.

**Success and failure.** No matter how one looks at it, failures should be reduced to the minimum through more careful attention to the needs of individuals. Dread of not passing, failure to be promoted—these cause emotional disturbances in the life of the school child which may easily spell the difference between a normally developed individual and one with a twisted personality, dominated by worries, fears, phobias, and various

other perplexing emotions. Too often school administrators, supervisors, and teachers have failed to give adequate attention to the inner life of the child where are found those hidden springs of conduct which have so much to do with success and happiness. Failure is a serious matter; every child is entitled to feel that he is succeeding in some way. The child's school program should be so arranged that, no matter what his mental status may be, he can know the joys of success on some level of actual attainment. Here is a field for individual diagnosis and for remedial treatment and here is a problem for every teacher to take to heart.

**Influence of hygiene—good and bad.** Heredity is an inescapable and very influential factor in determining the nature and career of every one of us. Nevertheless, parents and teachers should have profound respect for the powerful influence of both physical and mental hygiene. No doubt heredity sets limits to our possible attainments, physically and mentally; but there is a wide range for either the beneficent effects of good or the harmful effects of bad mental and physical habits. Good food in adequate amounts, exercise, rest, sleep, freedom from undue anxiety and care, development of stable and wholesome emotional and other mental attitudes and habits, good working habits—all these will do much to raise the level of individual capacity and efficiency. Habits which make for health of body and wholesomeness of personality will go far in neutralizing the evil effects of untoward or unfortunate heredity. On the other hand, it is common to see favorable and fortunate hereditary conditions relatively nullified by an evil social and physical environment and by lack of proper educational advantages. It is quite possible, through varying educational procedures, to bring about a development of the majority of children that will result in reasonable social efficiency and in a good average of individual welfare, success, and happiness. Much depends upon the character of the schools, the teachers, the homes, the churches and Sunday schools, and the social environment provided by all other molding influences. Good hygiene—physical,

mental, and moral—is of the utmost importance After all is said and done, we are gradually learning that the adaptation of educational processes to individual needs is one of the greatest present problems of the educator

**Plans for individualizing instruction.** The movement to adapt instruction to individual needs began over forty years ago. Starting with the Pueblo Plan in 1894 we have heard from time to time of the Batavia system, Dr Burk's experiment in California, the Winnetka Plan, and the Dalton Plan "In the early days in both Europe and America instruction was largely individual, particularly in the lower grades Our present system of grades and of class instruction is relatively new in the history of education Though thinking men and women have all along seen that while there are certain great advantages in the simultaneous instruction of *groups* of pupils, it is also true that individual treatment because of individual differences is a vital necessity if the child is to develop for the best "<sup>1</sup>"

The rural school offers many favorable conditions and opportunities for individualized instruction if the teacher understands the principles and procedures which need to be utilized In this section five well-known movements will be very briefly considered in the chronological order of their promulgation and development The rural teacher will find in each system or plan certain basic ideas which she can adapt to her own work Beside the five nationally known plans four other well-recognized expedients for individualization will also receive limited attention

1 *The Pueblo Plan*, so called because it was first used in the schools of Pueblo, Colorado, originated in 1894 and was the work of Preston W Search who gives an account of his scheme of individualized instruction in his book *The Ideal School* Superintendent Search arranged with his teachers to have all study done at the school Study instead of recitation was stressed Recitations became conference periods Individuals rather than classes, as such, were given first consideration There was no

<sup>1</sup> Lowth, F. J.—*The Country Teacher at Work*, The Macmillan Company 1930.

attempt to keep groups together, but the slow, the medium, the fast, all progressed at their own rate. The central idea was correct, but the educational world was not ready for this so-called Utopian plan, moreover, Superintendent Search did not carefully work out a complete teaching-learning system as has been done by Superintendent Washburne of Winnetka, for example. Undoubtedly the Pueblo Plan had a wide and a beneficial influence.

2 *Batavia System* In 1898 Superintendent John Kennedy of Batavia, New York, began to use a plan of combining class and individual instruction, which had a rather extensive vogue and became known as the Batavia System. The teacher will find a good description of this plan in W. C. Bagley's *Classroom Management*.<sup>1</sup> In the Batavia schools the rooms were very large, so two good teachers were placed in charge of each room of pupils. One teacher taught the classes and the other teacher worked with individuals at their seats. Bagley says that "The application of the system to one-teacher rooms is made possible by what may be termed a doubly-alternating program. For example, if the regular program provides for five recitation periods each week in geography, each alternate recitation period is given over to the individual instruction of the weaker members of the class." Thus recitation and individual instruction alternate with no two individual periods in immediate succession.

3 *The California Experiment* In 1913 Dr. Frederick Burk, president of the San Francisco State Teachers College, inaugurated a new form of instruction for use in his training or practice department, comprising all elementary grades. The usual class system had not been wholly successful or satisfactory. So a plan was introduced whereby each pupil worked on his own lessons at his own rate of speed. The common group or class assignments, as well as recitations, were abolished. President Burk stated that "The result was electrifying. Even the poorest pupils, practically, maintained the former class rate at least. The large majority went much faster, covering, two, three, four,

<sup>1</sup> The Macmillan Company 1924

and five times the amount of work by the class rate " This system is still used in this Teachers College Read an account of the plan in the *Twenty-Fourth Year Book* of the National Society for the Study of Education.

4 *Winnetka Plan* Superintendent C W Washburne of Winnetka, Illinois, is probably the most prominent present-day advocate of individual instruction, the Winnetka Plan, begun in 1920, whether wholly sound or not, has become nationally and internationally famous through the inventive and promotional ability of Superintendent Washburne, who was a former student of Dr Burk's Superintendent Washburne has presented his plan to audiences throughout the United States, has written a large number of magazine articles, has prepared textbooks based on his ideas, and has directed the preparation of Part II of the *Twenty-Fourth Yearbook of the National Society for the Study of Education*, entitled, "Adapting the Schools to Individual Differences" The Winnetka Plan does away with the standard recitation procedure, and in place of this a course of minimum essentials is offered to each pupil who proceeds to master these essentials at his own rate of speed The function of the teacher is to direct the activities of the child, to check up on his progress, and to see that each pupil is permitted and, moreover, encouraged to work up to his individual capacity The forenoon is devoted to individual tasks and the afternoon is given over to various forms of socialized activities and procedures The student will find the chief advantages and limitations of this system stated in *The Country Teacher at Work*

5 *Dalton Plan* This plan was first used by Miss Helen Parkhurst in Dalton, Massachusetts, in 1920 It has been introduced into various parts of this country and is used extensively in England The subject matter in this system is organized into jobs of work which the pupils are under *contract* to attack and complete according to individual ability and at varying rates of progress Dr Bagley states that Miss Parkhurst was likewise "strongly influenced by the teachings of Dr Burk and also by the work of Dr Maria Montessori (an Italian anthropologist

who invented several devices for teaching young children, and who projected a general theory of education which had a widespread but temporary vogue) " "Each pupil works at his own rate, conferring with the teacher whenever necessary and passing to each succeeding job after its predecessor has been approved" Dr. Bagley says that "the essential feature of the present-day proposals for individual instruction (especially of the Dalton and Winnetka Plans) is the very careful preparation of printed assignments or sets of directions by means of which the individual pupil can master the materials at his own pace. The teacher's time is then free for the giving of such individual help as may be needed" "Advocates of these and other systems of self-instruction believe that, by granting the learner a certain measure of freedom as to the learning tasks that he will undertake on any given day, a valuable training in self-dependence and self-guidance is afforded" <sup>1</sup> Students will find a good short description of the Dalton Plan in Ruegger's *Teaching Procedures*, published by Houghton Mifflin Company.

6 *Grouping by abilities* Since we are now able to determine and measure individual differences much more accurately than twenty years ago, it is possible to classify pupils according to their abilities more readily than formerly. Some have felt that by placing the slow, the medium, and the brighter children, respectively, in groups by themselves that the schools would be able to deal more justly by individuals. When this plan of homogeneous grouping has been thoroughly tested, as in the Detroit schools, where it has been used since 1920, the evidence seems to indicate that the plan is a success. "Sectioning on a basis of ability increases both the efficiency and the pleasure of teaching and is a valuable addition to our grading system because it makes possible a closer adjustment of group work to children's needs." <sup>2</sup> In the effort properly to classify a child

<sup>1</sup> These quotations from Dr. Bagley are taken from *An Introduction to Teaching* by Bagley and Keith and from *Standard Practices in Teaching* by Bagley and Macdonald, both published by The Macmillan Company.

<sup>2</sup> *The Twenty-Fourth Yearbook—National Society for the Study of Education, Part II*

various means are employed, such as intelligence tests, achievement tests, judgments of both teacher and parent, carefully kept school records, and, when necessary, the advice of a physician. In this connection the student may read Chapter IX in *The Country Teacher at Work*. School records should give a much more accurate and complete description of a child and history of his school progress than is ordinarily found. The principle underlying the plan of ability, or homogeneous, grouping is one which the rural teacher should understand and apply, for it involves the fundamental notion of providing for individual differences, and that is a universally accepted principle today.

7 *Differentiating assignments* It is easily possible in a rural school to provide for different learning capacities by two- and three-level assignments of work to be done. The author discusses this problem and gives illustrations in his *The Country Teacher at Work*. Instead of piecemeal daily assignments of subject matter the teacher can easily provide a block of material which may be in the nature of a *contract* for a week, two weeks, or a month. By carefully prepared written directions and questions the teacher will be able to care for both the bright and the less bright. Some of the questions call merely for textbook facts and some are problem questions which demand thinking. These questions can all be arranged in a ladder of difficulty. The more capable pupils will be able to answer all of the questions, to do the entire contract; those of lesser ability will do less work, but will receive full credit for what they do. Two-level assignments in such subjects as upper-grade geography, history, physiology, civics, nature study, and agriculture are usually sufficient; the superior children should always be provided not only with more work but with an enrichment of content. It is understood, of course, that assignments comprise many forms such as projects, activities, pageants, dramatizations, experiments, demonstrations, and so on in all degrees of wealth of experience.

8 *Directing individual study* A rural teacher has continuous opportunity to take care of the needs of individuals, both while they are working at their seats and also during group discus-

sions and conferences. The student will find this subject discussed in Chapters XIX, XXI, and XXII. It is enough to say here that when the rural teacher has once grasped the idea of the need for individual instruction and of the relation between study and recitation, she will find that she is solving her teaching-learning problems with increasing ease, pleasure, and effectiveness. Every rural teacher should stress study and not reciting; her constant effort should be to provide conditions for both the individualizing and the socializing of her instruction. Pupils must learn how to work effectively, and they must engage in a great variety of socializing activities also.

*9. Adapting recitations to individuals.* If the teacher will form the habit of looking upon class meetings as opportunities for the discussion of individual and general problems and difficulties instead of a time for dreary profitless testing procedures, she will soon get into the way of using class time for helping children to learn. After all, it is her chief task and her inestimable privilege to help boys and girls to learn, *i.e.*, to acquire knowledge, ideas, ideals, skills, habits, attitudes, in brief, to enlarge their personalities. In recitation conferences and discussions the teacher can teach the class so as also to teach the individual, and she can teach the individual so as also to teach the entire group.

**Individualizing instruction in the rural schools.** Due to conditions in a rural school where the teacher has full control of the situation, there are many opportunities for taking care of individual differences. Unless she is under a rigid system of supervision, the teacher can change the character of both her directed study activities and her recitation procedures. She need not find her freedom restricted by a cast-iron program of formal recitations. Instead, she can modify her teaching-learning exercises to suit the varying needs of her pupils from hour to hour and day to day.

A skillful teacher can teach a class so as also to teach the individual and she can teach an individual so as also to teach the class. In a rural school there is unusual opportunity to do both individual teaching between classes and socialized group teaching during the periods

of class work . . All may study the same picture, story, or poem, though no two are on the same level of understanding or appreciation. In a given list of ten words to be studied by ten pupils a pretest may disclose the fact that initial mastery of the words may vary all the way from zero to one hundred per cent accuracy. Here then is presented a chance to adapt instruction to the needs of the child, and to offer such individualized drill as may be needed . . In a rural school the intelligent teacher is offered the best possible opportunity to see to it that class and individual instruction constantly reinforce each other in interesting and effective ways.<sup>1</sup>

In the following pages a number of suggestions are made as to what a rural teacher may do to individualize her instruction. Some of the advice given here is in the nature of a summarized review of the more important particulars of this chapter, and other items have to do with certain practical considerations of a more specific character for the guidance of the rural teacher.

1. *Preventing failures.* A most significant objective of individualized instruction is the prevention of failures. This aim can be realized if the rural teacher really knows her pupils and provides experiences and activities which are possible for all grades of mentality. Failure is often due to the fact that the individual gets lost in the crowd. He goes on day after day trying to do work which is beyond his capacity. He stumbles through materials which he does not understand, his teacher fails to diagnose his troubles or to offer needed help. A large percentage of failure can be prevented by giving adequate attention to individuals *in time*.

2. *Modern texts.* In making individualized instruction a success, the rural teacher needs the best textbooks published. There are now books on the market which are prepared especially from the standpoint of individual learning; the teacher should know about them. More than ever before textbooks today are carefully graded and written in a simple, understandable style. Every rural teacher should know the resources of her various texts as well as their peculiar difficulties. Good books help greatly in solving the problems of individualized instruction.

<sup>1</sup> Quotations from *The Country Teacher at Work*, The Macmillan Company.

*3 Contracts, or jobs* It is easily possible for an intelligent rural teacher to assign work in large blocks or contracts Daily fragmentary installments of subject matter which is not correlated or unified into related wholes gives the child an unorganized and distorted view of the entire unit A rural teacher should take pains to give the pupil a bird's-eye view of the entire unit of subject matter It is not difficult in such subjects as geography, history, physiology, civics, and agriculture to assign work in large units of related "jobs" to be done It is not necessary to use the contract idea *in toto*, but the central idea is very useful Previews, in this connection, are most important There should be a preview at the beginning and a general summary at the close of every piece of work

*4 Diagnostic and remedial procedures* At the present time, with our modern measures, there is no excuse for the teacher's not getting some fairly accurate idea of what the child knows and what he can do. It is possible to purchase diagnostic, inventory, and achievement tests which will give any teacher a good idea of where any child stands in his school progress In order to do successful remedial work, which is in the nature of individualized instruction, the teacher must necessarily have exact knowledge of the child's weaknesses and deficiencies. Some of the inventory tests can readily be made by the teacher herself and should be when possible Diagnostic and remedial procedures are daily affairs in a well-conducted modern school.

*5. Individual projects* The rural teacher should have a record book in which she keeps a large assortment of supplementary individual assignments of projects and activities There are many recent books which give explicit directions for such procedures. There are always some brighter pupils who can do more and better work than others Here is a chance for the teacher to provide profitable work for these better children If the teacher will use other textbooks, or such young people's encyclopedias as *The World Book Encyclopedia*, *Compton's Pictured Encyclopedia*, or the *Britannica Junior*, she will be able to

provide additional educational experiences of a profitable character. Against the time of need the rural teacher should have on hand a plentiful supply of a great variety of assignments in every possible subject.

6. *Varied assignments* It should be the teacher's constant aim to adapt assignments to individuals. Too often it happens that a rural teacher's assignments are of the most general, shotgun variety. Instead, assignments should be as varied and as specific as the needs of individuals require. After a good start has been made in this enterprise, the teacher will be surprised how easy it is to multiply assignments of a truly educational character. Very often individual assignments grow out of individual difficulties and needs as they appear from hour to hour and day to day.

7. *Study-guide sheets* Publishers have been alert in this field of individualized instruction and have provided some materials of excellent quality. Workbooks carry detailed directions, questions, check tests, and graphs of progress. They give the child very clear and specific suggestions on how to study particular lessons and how to test for mastery. Teachers should make use of this commercial material, but they should also make out their own study-guide sheets, using the hectograph or special pencil carbon paper for making enough copies. If a teacher is particular to give her pupils complete and concrete helps to guide them in their study it will relieve her of a great deal of unnecessary supervision.

8. *Reference materials* Individualized instruction cannot be carried on with much success unless there is plenty of reference material. There should be an adequate supply of dictionaries, encyclopedias, and special reference books so that teacher and children will be able to find whatever information may be needed. All reference material should be carefully classified and so placed as to be easy of access. On many topics in geography, history, agriculture and other subjects lists of references should be posted for the use of the classes. Older pupils can be taught how to prepare such lists.

9. *A flexible system*. In classification, marking, and promotions no rigid system of requirements should ever be used in a rural school. Pupils should be in classes where they can do the best work; in the rural school a child may be able to do sixth-grade reading but only third- or fourth-grade arithmetic. Classification, marking, and promotion should all relate to the welfare of each child. A child should be promoted whenever he is ready to do more advanced work, regardless of the calendar. The teacher should never permit a marking or grading system to come between her and any pupil. Pupils are worth more than marks or grades. A pupil's classification should be determined on the basis of many factors, not merely on that of examinations or tests. Intelligence tests must be used with caution.

10. *Supply of problem questions*. From whatever source derived, a rural teacher needs a good stock of problem questions, particularly in upper-grade subjects. These are questions which call for thinking, if they can be graded and classified according to type and difficulty all the better. If a teacher has a reservoir of first-class problems she will find that it will give her a new sense of freedom. Of course she needs a supply of teaching-learning materials of all sorts which she can put her hands on without delay.

11. *Utilize the entire library*. In order to have all of the books readily available for immediate and instant use, the library must be well catalogued, a good card index is indispensable. Many rural school libraries are but little used because the teacher does not know her resources, for one thing, for another, there is no convenient catalogue which she can use whenever needed. In order to individualize instruction pupils must use many books. So a rural teacher should early go through her books to find out what she has. It may be that she can get some assistance in classifying, cataloguing, and arranging her books. Many bibliographies will certainly be needed.

12. *Self-scoring materials*. It is now possible to get study materials, such as workbooks and practice manuals, which are accompanied by self-checking or scoring devices. It will pay any

rural teacher to find out about such materials. In a rural school individualized instruction will become increasingly successful as pupils learn more and more how to direct their own work, how to test it for correction and mastery, and in general how to work independently. This certainly does not mean that the teacher will not supervise all work carefully and also use her own tests.

13 *Mental hygiene* It happens not infrequently that pupils fail to make satisfactory progress because of some mental, as well as physical, difficulty. The mature, intelligent, successful teacher will be sensitive to the personality difficulties of her pupils and will try to help them overcome their troubles. A worried child is sadly handicapped, but often a teacher does not see that anything is wrong. A good teacher must be something of an amateur psychoanalyst, at any rate to the extent that she understands the importance of mental hygiene. If a child is failing because of emotional disturbances and problems, it may be that the united efforts of parent, teacher, and physician can resolve the difficulty. It is certainly often enough a condition of tragical importance to the child and one which should not continue if there is a remedy.

14 *Budgeting pupil's time* One of the lessons to be learned in taking care of individual needs is that children often waste their time because they do not understand how to apportion or properly distribute their tasks. Both in group meetings and in individual conferences, a rural teacher, or any teacher, should take whatever time is necessary to show pupils how to use their study periods to greatest advantage. When to do this piece of work, when to do that, how to save time, when to do the hardest and when the easiest—all this should be considered by the teacher as a part of individualized instruction.

15 *All should get essentials* If possible every child should be able to master the essentials, that is, to learn the lowest level of assigned work. It is highly important that the teacher know what the bare essentials really are. In learning this the state course of study should be of greatest service. Some textbooks attempt to grade the materials in some subjects. In spelling we

now have minimum lists for each grade. In reading the slow child may be able to read only one book while the bright pupil reads several. By the use of some of the modern standardized tests it is possible to discriminate certain fundamentals from a richer content of materials.

16 *Collections of commercial materials.* Rural teachers should be alert to find published study and learning helps of a truly educational character which will aid them in carrying on the work of individualized instruction. It is important to distinguish the genuine from the spurious, and often the advice of superintendent or supervising teacher should be secured before coming to a decision to make any purchase. If any teacher, above all others, needs individual study helps, it is the rural teacher. In reading her professional magazine the teacher should not overlook the advertisements, although some advertised teaching materials are hardly worth buying. They are made chiefly to sell.

17 *Workbooks and practice manuals.* These are now published for every grade of school work, not excepting the first. Every rural teacher should make use of workbooks, but she should use them with judgment and caution. All such work needs to be supervised and checked by the teacher. None of these instructional materials are absolutely foolproof. There are now fine workbooks in arithmetic, language, reading, history, civics, geography, agriculture, nature study, the social studies, physiology, and other subjects.

18 *Use of check tests.* It is very common now for rural teachers to make use of a great variety of objective check tests, this is a procedure which can be overdone. However, in the work of individualized instruction the teacher will need to make use of such tests, but she should do this judiciously and not too freely. Pupils can learn how to prepare and use such tests by themselves. It is well for the teacher to have on hand a large collection of objective tests which are well organized, classified, and easy of access. Check tests are found in workbooks and practice manuals.

19 *Monitorial assistance* Many rural teachers who are making use of individualized procedures find that it is quite practicable and advisable to employ a system whereby older pupils or brighter pupils are able to assist younger or slower pupils in many different ways. If the teacher is very particular to give careful directions and if she also supervises her pupil assistants, it is entirely possible in this way to carry out her teaching procedures successfully and satisfactorily. This plan must not be overworked, helpers must be carefully chosen, and the kind of work done under pupil supervision, or checked by pupils, must be selected with good judgment.

20 *Progress charts and achievement graphs.* Such charts and graphs are now exceedingly common and are found in many workbooks and practice manuals. The teacher should instruct each child how to keep his own individual chart, of course the teacher will graph the status and progress of the entire group. Such graphic representations of daily or weekly achievements are now used particularly in spelling, in the fundamental skills of numbers, in silent reading, in language, and in other subjects. Teachers also use charts to show the responses of pupils in health activities, in civic enterprises, and in various conduct and character achievements.

21 *Educational materials for younger pupils* One of the chief problems of the rural teacher is to provide enough material of an educational character for the primary pupils. If the teacher knows the teaching-learning objectives which she should be trying to realize, she will be able to select more intelligently and wisely. Here is an opportunity for much individualization; here is a type of educational guidance for which the teacher should prepare with care. There are now plenty of educational games and plays which should be utilized. The teacher should read some of the various books and manuals dealing with primary activities, such, for example, as *Pupil Activities in the Elementary Grades* by Ruby Minor.<sup>1</sup> Here are activities for all grades from the first to the sixth. The last chapter deals with "Rural

<sup>1</sup> J. B. Lippincott Company.

School Activity" There is an excellent bibliography at the close

**22 Overdoing the written work** The rural teacher, in her zeal for individualized study and through the use of individual workbooks and other individual study materials, should be careful not to require too much written work. In fact, it is not a good thing to require more written work than the teacher can at least inspect with some care. Individualized teaching may degenerate into nothing more than the doing of an endless amount of written work at the seats, much of it carelessly prepared and of little value. It is much better to have less in quantity with a higher grade of quality. Pupils should always be encouraged to do their best.

**23 Know what each child is doing** It is unsafe not to know what each child does during his study time and also equally unsafe not to know exactly how he does it. If children are to acquire good work and study habits, their work must be supervised from time to time. Children easily fall into incorrect ways of doing things, a word of caution or direction at the right time will save a good deal of difficulty later on. The successful rural teacher almost unconsciously takes note of what the children are doing at their seats. She is not meddlesome and she does not irritate. She merely supervises and directs to save waste of time and effort and to secure the desired educational results.

**24 Reading and following directions** One of the functions of the school is to teach children to read directions carefully, to understand them, and then to do exactly as the directions indicate. In the use of various study materials, such as workbooks and study guides, there are always specific directions. Teachers should go through these from time to time as necessary with the children in a class exercise and often when needed with individual children. To make individualized instruction successful, children must learn to work independently and to get results. In order to do this they need certain silent reading skills. Here is an opportunity for the teacher to do both group and in-

dividual teaching until each child is able to do what needs to be done

*25 More, but also better* Not infrequently it happens that teachers feel that all that is necessary for the brighter pupils is to give them more work of the same kind. So they merely give a greater number of the same type of questions to be answered. This is not the correct way to solve this problem. If a teacher uses a two-level assignment, then the higher level should call for a higher type of activity. If the questions of the lower level are mostly memory or fact questions, then the upper level should comprise many problem questions and also many projects which will call for a higher type of ability. In the assignment of library readings there is opportunity to make use of the same principle. The pupils of less reading ability will necessarily be restricted to certain types of books, but those children who are skillful silent readers and who read with comprehension can be assigned reading materials of a much richer content. In using individualizing methods the teacher should strive to give the brighter pupils a richer course, even though they must keep step in essentials with the slower ones. Sometimes it is advisable to let superior children push on and finish the eight grades in less than eight years.

#### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1 Why may failure in school work be a tragedy for the individual? How can this be avoided or mitigated?

2 Can a rural teacher make any use of the principle of ability grouping? State three advantages and three disadvantages of this plan.

3 What features of the Winnetka and the Dalton Plans are adaptable to use in rural schools?

4 Make out a twenty-question pretest to be used before beginning the study of the physical aspects of the geography of South America, as an entire continent.

5 How can a rural teacher use the recitation period, so-called, as a means of promoting individualized instruction?

6 Give your idea of an ideal report to parents, to be made out and sent, say, once in two months.

REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING  
AND STUDY

- 1 BAGLEY, W. C., AND MACDONALD, MARION E.—*Standard Practices in Teaching*, The Macmillan Company 1932
- 2 BENSON, C. E., LOUGH, J. E., SKINNER, C. E., AND WEST, P. V.—*Psychology for Teachers*, Ginn and Company 1933
- 3 COLVIN, S. S., BAGLEY, W. C., AND MACDONALD, MARION E.—*Human Behavior*, The Macmillan Company 1929.
- 4 NATIONAL SOCIETY FOR THE STUDY OF EDUCATION—*Twenty-Fourth Yearbook, Part II. Adapting the Schools to Individual Differences*, Public School Publishing Company 1925
- 5 REAGAN, G. W.—*Fundamentals of Teaching*, Scott, Foresman and Company. 1932
- 6 RUEDIGER, W.—*Teaching Procedures*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1932
- 7 STORMZAND, M. J.—*Progressive Methods of Teaching*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1924
- 8 WASHBURN, C. W.—“The Philosophy of the Winnetka Curriculum,” *Twenty-Sixth Yearbook, National Society for the Study of Education, Part I.* 1926

## CHAPTER XIX

### UNIT PLAN OF TEACHING AND LEARNING

**Introductory considerations.** Today we find in America two schools of thought about teaching and learning. On the one hand, there are those who advocate the systematic acquisition of knowledge, skills, and appreciations through the study and mastery of the subjects of the curriculum; on the other hand, are the activists who believe that children learn best when subject matter is used as a means rather than as an end in itself. The activity unit and program are considered in the next chapter. It is enough to say here that the proponents of the activity unit are increasing in number. Teaching and learning through the use of integrated, meaningful wholes or units, whether they are subject units or activity units, is making steady progress in this country. The use of either subject units or activity units is a long step in advance of the old assign-study-recite method of the traditional school in which the emphasis was almost entirely upon the mastery of textbook subject matter. In this chapter the term *unit* has reference to the integrated subject unit through the use of which genuine insightful learning takes place. That is to say, the materials of study are organized and presented in such ways that the learner secures genuine understandings and insights. The pupil or student has an "attitude of intelligence." He sees and appreciates relationships rather than merely amasses a body of unrelated factual materials.

**Our puzzling terminology.** At the present time there is such a multiplicity of terms used in relation to teaching-learning procedures or techniques that the average teacher is greatly confused and often gets wrong conceptions of what is implied. The old word *recitation* now comprises so many processes and activities that the young teacher needs carefully to compare

the traditional meaning with the modern greatly enlarged meaning Dr Roy O Billett in *Monograph No 13* of the National Survey of Secondary Education discusses the perplexing nomenclature so far as plans characterized by the unit assignment are concerned. He mentions the Morrison Plan, the Dalton Plan, the Winnetka technique, differentiated assignments, long-unit assignments, individualized instruction, contract plan, laboratory plan, problem method, and project method There are many modifications and combinations of these plans or methods, and they are in use to a greater or less extent in our elementary and secondary schools There are project units, problem units, subject units, and activity units This chapter treats of integrated, meaningful subject units largely as the teaching-learning procedures have been developed by Dr Henry C Morrison

**Unit plan not new.** The use of large units of subject matter is not of recent origin, by any means Dr Morrison did not invent the unit plan of teaching as some teachers seem to think He did develop the mastery idea and the five-step teaching cycle or procedure through which teaching and learning become more exact and more effective However, some fifty years ago Charles A McMurry began his work on carefully organized typical subject-matter units, particularly in geography and history Those of us whose memory goes back thirty years or more recall these famous large, logical, subject-matter units very well They were distinctly not like the modern integrated subject, problem, project, or activity units Over a generation ago educational thinkers realized that the mass of materials in many school subjects should be more logically arranged into large type units By the use of such types it was believed that the pupil would be able to derive general principles which he could use in learning other similar subject matter Dr. McMurry believed that the use of large typical units would not only teach the pupil to acquire a more usable body of knowledge, but would also result in the pupil's acquiring greater power to apply such knowledge in thinking With McMurry the great objective was the development of the general notion or concept, with Morrison the central

Idea is insightful learning which results in change of personality.

**Nature of the learning units.** A unit of subject matter for teaching-learning purposes is more than a topical, logical analysis of related items. It is a comparatively large organization of related materials to be learned or acquired, in which the unitary principle has direct relation to the pupil's understanding, appreciation, and mastery. Morrison says that a learning unit is "a comprehensive and significant aspect of the environment, of an organized science, of an art, or of conduct, which being learned results in an adaptation in personality."<sup>1</sup> When such a unit is mastered the result is a change in the child's understandings, attitudes, and appreciations, in short a modification of behavior controls. Ruediger<sup>2</sup> tells us that "A unit is any division of subject matter, large or small, that, when mastered, gives one an insight into, an appreciation of, or a mastery over, some aspect of life." A significant meaningful unit may be in the nature of a problem or a project and the acquisition or mastery may result in a change of ideas, ideals, or habits. There are knowledge units, appreciation units, and skill units. Roy O. Billett in *Bulletin, 1932, No. 17*, gives this definition: "The unit is best regarded as a concept, attitude, appreciation, knowledge, or skill to be acquired by the pupil, which, if acquired, presumably will modify his thinking or his other behavior in a desirable way." It thus appears that Morrison and Ruediger define the learning unit in terms of subject matter while Billett uses words that relate to the subjective changes in the child's personality. In these three definitions we observe that the central conception or objective is concerned with actual modification for the better of the pupil's personality. That is the acid test of a learning unit. A good unit increases the student's intellectual independence and his ability to work effectively. Units are not fixed quantities either in size or nature. They vary according to the character of the subject matter and the controlling educational objectives. The best units are made by the teacher herself,

<sup>1</sup> MORRISON, H. C.—*The Practice of Teaching in the Secondary School*, University of Chicago Press, Rev. Ed. 1931

<sup>2</sup> RUEDIGER, W. C.—*Teaching Procedures*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1932

they are modified as the conditions and needs of the given class and teacher require. There is no such thing as a perfect, standard, finished unit, but every teacher will find it helpful to provide a variety of units for their suggestiveness.

**Units and unit assignments.** The unit may be thought of as the knowledge or skill or appreciation to be acquired, the unit assignment may then be viewed as the pupil's experiences or activities which are needed in order to achieve the desired knowledge, skill, or appreciation. Billett says that "The unit assignment consists of the suggested or required activities and experiences planned by the teacher to enable the pupil to acquire the desired concept, attitude, appreciation, knowledge, or skill." This writer states further that "the unit assignment should be differentiated to take into account such factors as the abilities, interests, needs, previous experiences, and immediate environment of the pupils for whom it is planned." It is a question of means and end. The end or the aim is found in the psychological nature of the unit, and the means are the various learning procedures through the use of which the pupil reacts and responds and thus acquires the knowledge or attains the desired skill. Teachers should always carefully distinguish means and ends. Many times these are confused. Suppose a teacher wishes to develop skills in the use of the dictionary. First she must know exactly what skills are needed, then she must work out a system of learning procedures which will produce the skills. Dictionary skills are merely one phase of a great number and variety of study abilities, gradually attained by daily practice through the elementary and the secondary school. Here is a large, comprehensive learning unit the mastery of which requires years of experience.

**Integrated units and activities.** In his books, *The Normal Mind* and *The Wholesome Personality*, Dr. Burnham has a good deal to say about the integrated personality. He states that "The most fundamental characteristic of normal human personality is unity, wholeness, integration." Integration is the process of forming a related, unitary whole. In their teaching-

learning processes, school people have been fond of differentiating subject matter and splitting it up into isolated, and often unrelated, subjects and topics. Knowledge and skill have usually been acquired apart from their natural setting where they could function in actual life situations. In an integrated learning activity, situation, or unit, on the contrary, the child acquires knowledges, skills, and appreciations when and as he needs to use them. His activities have purpose and meaning because of the realization of a felt need. There are useful problems to solve; there is a worthy project to be consummated. The child feels that his activities are intended to accomplish desirable personal ends or objectives.

Those who advocate the exclusive use of an activity curriculum maintain that the activity learning unit is the only truly integrated unit. When teaching and learning are carried out according to this activity program the usual school skills in reading, writing, number, and other subjects are acquired not through direct dull procedures, but as incidents of the social activity of the children. Adherents of the subject-unit plan of instruction also claim that by the use of meaningful, significant units of subject matter integration of the learning processes is also attained. In using subject units, integration is more likely to obtain if the learning activities are the result of efforts to solve a truly significant problem. It seems to be particularly true that large units of the Morrison type, in which learning is carried to the point of understandings, insights, and genuine mastery, are at least of a highly integrated character. The use of large problem units gives undoubtedly meaning and purpose to the learnings which the pupils thereby acquire.

While the activity people make great claims for integration, it seems clear that the use of the better types of subject units do give children not only more comprehensive understandings, but also those other developments of personality which are so important if pupils are to gain the conduct controls necessary for successful, satisfying living in our time. Very likely in no distant day we shall see an eclectic system of techniques in which

the more useful permanent values of the different schools of thought will be brought together into a plan which the average teacher will be able to use successfully.

**Problem and project units.** In Chapter XVII the student will find a discussion of the general nature of problems and projects and their relation to thinking and motivation. In this section problems and projects are considered as learning units. Such units are now widely used in the schools of America and have done much to motivate teaching and learning as well as to make more certain the acquisition of knowledge, skills, and attitudes. It is evident that activity units are derived from project units; it is also true that subject units are often in the nature of problems. In working on a subject unit it is often advantageous to make use of different activities or projects as part of the assimilatory or study steps when pupils are trying to get clear and comprehensive understandings and appreciations. It is quite usual in the better schools to employ excursions and experimental studies, as well as various forms of expression, such as talking, writing, dramatization, drawing, sketching, reporting, debating, and other means of enlarging and intensifying insights and understandings. Problems and projects are very often combined, so that the term problem-project unit or procedure would be a more accurate designation. The use of problem and project units in the social studies, including history, geography, civics, and health, as well as in agriculture and nature study and in other types of subject matter, will insure greater interest, better motivation, more effective learning, and more certain development of conduct controls.

**Selecting and organizing units.** It is now possible for teachers to find a great variety of learning units which are selected and organized from the teaching-learning point of view. That is, instead of being merely a logical arrangement of related topics, these better types of units are developed with the central idea of the pupil's comprehensive, intelligent understanding of them. Subject-matter outlines are one thing, but a well-organized learning unit is something entirely different. In developing a

teaching-learning unit, the governing objective should be the educational end products or personality changes which should result from the mastery of the unit. The question is not how exactly and artistically the subject matter is arranged, as subject matter, but rather how completely the pupil is able to grasp the unit in its entirety and its details so that his behavior will be permanently modified because of the assimilative thinking which accompanies and is a part of the mastery of the unit. The teacher will find it necessary to construct her units for particular groups of children and to modify them whenever conditions and needs demand such changes. Psychological rather than logical principles should govern selection and organization of units. A functional arrangement with the child's needs in the foreground should take the place of any merely topical analysis.

If teachers will write to W F Quarrie and Company of Chicago, publishers of the *New World Book Encyclopedia* or to The F E Compton Company of Chicago, publishers of *Compton's Pictured Encyclopedia*, they will be able to get very useful illustrative materials on many types of learning units. The Child Development Foundation, Inc., of Chicago, publishers of *Foundation Classroom Materials*, also issues interesting and usable learning units in the social studies. In selecting and organizing learning units, the use of large, controlling, motivating, problem questions will frequently furnish the core around which the materials to be learned can be arranged so that they will be more readily understood and retained as a "significant, and comprehensive aspect of the environment."

**Advantages of large units.** In general, it may be stated that, among the benefits arising from an intelligent use of large meaningful units of learning, particularly when they involve problems, projects, and purposeful, integrated, lifelike, child activities, the following stand out as evident values. (1) There are more intelligent and more highly developed understandings, appreciations, and insights. (2) Pupils in most cases manifest a greater inherent natural interest, thus the entire learning enterprise is more adequately motivated. (3) Teacher and

pupils are impelled to make increased and more effective use of available reference books and other learning accessories and materials (4) The various study skills are more likely to be developed by this system than by the use of traditional methods. (5) Children learn to form opinions, to pass judgment upon statements, to draw conclusions, or to wait until more data have been secured Facts are used as material for productive thinking. (6) One of the best by-products of the unit plan, involving the use of problems, is that pupils form the problem attitude and habit of mind. Increasingly they acquire the power to sense problems and to formulate them (7) In the process of gaining new and larger understandings the pupil finds himself in constant need not only of formulating problems but also of solving them. Problem solving becomes one way of meeting life to the intelligent child, he learns to do it as a matter of course (8) Not only is the child interested in his activities, but he likewise develops life interests which will have an important influence upon his subsequent career (9) Expression in oral and written language and in numerous other ways is a component part of the unit plan. There are not only expressive activities during the so-called recitation period, but expression is also one of the means by which assimilation takes place during study. (10) When the plan is flexible, as it should be, provision is made for varying abilities. Thus there are fewer or no failures because each child can be successful upon his own level of accomplishment.

**Dr. Morrison's notable influence.** In 1926 Dr Henry C. Morrison's large volume entitled *The Practice of Teaching in the Secondary School* first appeared A second edition was published in 1931. This author thinks of secondary education as beginning with the fourth grade In the first three grades children secure some skill in the two tools which they are to use throughout the secondary school, namely, reading and writing They have also attained a beginning in number adaptations as well as made the primary social adaptations The best summary of the essential features of the Morrison unit plan is probably to

be found in *Monograph No. 19* of the National Survey of Secondary Education. It was written by Roy O. Billett, a member of the general survey staff.

While Dr. Morrison did not invent the learning unit, the comprehensive system of teaching procedures which he describes in his widely studied book has probably done more during the past few years to raise the level of instruction, particularly in high schools, than any other single plan of techniques. Charles A. McMurry considered the ultimate goal in the use of his type subject-matter units to be the formation of general ideas. He believed that the use of such large type units, especially in geography and history, would result in the better acquisition of systematic knowledge as well as in forming more effective habits of thinking. Morrison goes much farther than McMurry in his detailed analysis of a complete system of unit instruction.

Morrison has enlarged our conception of the organized learning unit, he has given us an expanded and developed idea of the nature of mastery. He has also broadened and intensified the meaning of independent study and of the acquirement of intellectual interests and intellectual independence. Study to Dr. Morrison comprises much more than most teachers have understood it to mean in the past. Study means a large number of specific skills in silent reading, in speech, and in forms of written expression. It involves a variety of thinking or problem-solving abilities on varying levels and in different types of subject matter, for example mathematics and the social and physical sciences. Study also employs the power to interpret and to appreciate truth and beauty in literature and the fine arts. Study includes the development of personal self-control and habits of steady application in the presence of difficulties until the task is finished. It is true that the advocates of the extreme activity program say that the Morrison technique stresses subjects too much as such, and that the mastery units are not adequately integrated, yet it remains true that the Morrison system includes the use of problems, projects, and activities in a far more systematic way than any plan previously proposed.

**Morrison's mastery principle and technique.** Morrison has given us a new understanding of the word *mastery*, he has demonstrated the fallacy and the futility of the so-called *passing grade*. Pupils either know and understand or they do not know and understand the unit, according to Morrison. Whether the unit is in the field of knowledge or of appreciation or of motor control, that is, of skill and habit, the Morrison technique is to *pretest, teach, test, adapt procedure, teach and test again to the point of mastery*. By mastery Morrison means a really new insight into related meanings, for example in the natural and the social sciences; moreover, this insight and understanding will include a change of attitude and a modification of behavior. Morrison believes that some things can and should be learned "for keeps." Tests for mastery may be both oral and written, they may also be both objective and subjective. The new objective test is widely used, but many teachers now feel that other types of tests should also find a place, including the old essay type. Tests for attitudes, habits, and adaptations cannot, in the nature of the case, usually be of a direct form. Real tests of attitudes and appreciations will often be indirect and not closely related to the use of the subject materials. A pupil's attitude may often be judged best by noting the effect of his learnings upon his future conduct. Some critics of the Morrison procedure maintain that mastery is a relative affair and that absolute mastery, except in certain special fields of learning, should not be expected. There are certainly many levels of achievement in the field of skills and of appreciations.

**Five- or six-step teaching cycle.** In its unmodified form, as used in the science-type unit, which includes the science subjects, social studies, and mathematics, the teaching procedure comprises five steps, namely—exploration, presentation, assimilation, organization, and recitation. The exploratory step is in the nature of a pretest, quiz, and general class discussion for the purpose of discovering what the pupils now know and understand concerning the new unit, so that both teacher and pupils will become oriented in relation to the next field of study. The

teacher may ask testing questions, not for marking but rather for uncovering each student's mental background. As a result of this exploratory process, some class members may be excused wholly or in part to do other work. In many schools, however, nobody is excused. This part of the procedure should show pupils their needs as a preparation for further instruction. This pretest will usually bring to light many misconceptions and difficulties.

The second step is a preview and an overview in which the teacher presents a sketchy but clear and concise bird's eye view of the entire unit. This requires skill and should be well done. Only significant, highly relevant, and related essential concepts of the unit are given for the purpose of outlining a unity of understanding. The picture is not complete and the students will fill in the outline during the next step of assimilatory study. The teacher's presentation should be so well done that pupils will not only be prepared for independent study but will also be stimulated to go to work on the unit. Sometimes a re-presentation may be necessary.

In the third step teacher and pupils work together in various study procedures. The teacher supervises and directs the study activities of those who need help. When a common difficulty arises, the teacher clears up the matter for the entire group. Pupils read, write, draw and do whatever else may be needed to master the unit. During this period of assimilation pupils are furnished with "guide sheets" containing reading references, list of projects, and an outline of essentials, problems, questions, directions, and whatever else is necessary to assist the student in mastering the unit. As the study activities proceed, individuals are tested from time to time for mastery. This third step may require several days for its completion. As mastery tests are successfully passed, pupils go on to their own related projects, reporting these later to the group. A variety of tests, oral and written, objective and subjective, are used. It will be seen that by providing additional supplementary projects, activities, and assignments of readings, the teacher makes provision for varying grades of abilities.

When the teacher feels that the entire class has mastered the unit, there is a meeting of all for the purpose of making a coherent, well-organized sketch of the constituent parts of the unit. Pupils do not use any notes or references, and the guiding principle is not to present an array of facts but rather a unity of related understandings. Teacher and class work together. The finished outline shows in systematic form the central ideas and the subordinate related ideas which the pupils now possess as their own understandings. This step may require a few minutes or perhaps one or more class periods.

The fifth step in the Morrison teaching cycle is called the recitation. The teacher has made the first presentation of the entire unit at the beginning of the study, but now pupils give floor talks on the whole or on portions of the unit. Sometimes there are discussions of these talks, and sometimes the subject is debated. Occasionally the unit may be dramatized, and in agriculture, physiology, nature study, and geography some pupils may give experimental or other demonstrations. In agriculture in a country school there are many opportunities for such forms of recitation. General discussions and written and oral reports are common. Illustrative sketches, graphs, charts, pictures, and the like may be used advantageously. The recitation may take from a tenth to a quarter of all the time. In most of the schools the mastery test follows the recitation but it may come in connection with the step either of assimilation or of organization.

In some schools, instead of using a testing procedure as part of the assimilation period, teachers provide a test for mastery as the final or sixth step after the recitation. In a few schools, according to the survey bulletin, the teacher sometimes gives a summarized review of the entire unit after the recitation is finished. This seems to be a wise part of the general procedure and should insure better results in a final testing exercise.

**Adaptations of Morrison procedures.** It is entirely possible and practicable to make use of a modified form of the Morrison unit plan in rural schools. It is not necessary to use all of the

five or six steps and they should never be used in any formal fashion. Moreover, whether or not all the steps shall be used, the manner of using them will all depend upon the type of subject matter. For example, the Morrison formula applies very well in the teaching of history and geography, but modifications will need to be made for teaching arithmetic and language. The best thing for a rural teacher to do is try out the unit plan first with one subject and one class, gradually using such procedures more and more if and as she finds them successful. The use of integrated units at the present time in the social studies is very common and not difficult. It is possible to purchase commercial units of high quality. If the rural teacher will think of the presentation step as an overview, of exploration as a pre-test, of assimilation as directed study in its broadest and best sense, of organization as the making of an outline with related understandings and learnings as the guiding principle, of the recitation as a time for purposeful discussions and of practice in the language arts—if a rural teacher views the Morrison procedure in this way, she will see that it is a perfectly natural series of teaching steps which can and should be used.

Many rural schools are now using mastery tests, most of them are the new-type objective tests. Often the rural teacher photocopies copies of these tests. Such tests should be used whenever needed, whether in connection with the assimilative study period or following the recitation. Whether these tests merely measure memory results or whether they also disclose various abilities, skills, habits, attitudes, and adaptations will depend upon the character of the tests and the ways in which they are used. As a rule objective tests need to be supplemented by various other means of ascertaining the child's development and progress. Often the writing of a paragraph or a very short theme will enable a teacher to judge a pupil better than by using informational tests. In the rural school probably no pupil should ever be excused from work as a result of the pretest. Instead, every child should be given more to do on the same unit, more assimilative material on the level of the pupil's ability, often in

the nature of useful projects or library readings. In making use of the first step, the rural teacher should repeat the unified overview until all normal pupils get it. In a rural school where classes are small there will be but little difficulty in preserving the class unity. Provision should be made for brighter pupils by enrichment of the materials used. In general, a rural teacher should begin the unit plan in the social studies in different grades.

Every rural teacher, because of her close association with her pupils, can know a great deal about each child, physically, mentally, and morally. It is a good plan to have a strong manila envelope of good size for each pupil. Then some cards which fit readily into the envelope should be used; on these cards the teacher should carefully record all physical and health tests, the results of intelligence and achievement tests, and whatever else that is useful pertaining to the personality and the progress of the individual. It would be very useful to keep this envelope with its record cards all through the grades. Statements as to attitudes, habits, and general character attributes should be set down from time to time for guidance. When the county nurse or possibly a physician or dentist makes examinations the results should be recorded. In short, such an envelope will really give a complete history of the child which will be of the greatest value in guiding and directing his learning.

**Advantages of the Morrison plan.** Although a number of criticisms have been made of the Morrison plan from time to time, it nevertheless remains true that the general idea is a decided improvement upon traditional school practices. Some critics have mentioned the associated expense, but this need not be true in a rural school of say fifteen to twenty-five pupils. The expensive thing is pupil failure, under this plan the number of failures is reduced. Even if the mastery formula cannot be completely worked out, the striving for a higher type of mastery will, in itself, be advantageous. The use of any unit plan will require intelligence and effort on the part of the teacher, but unless a rural teacher is willing to learn and willing to work, she

should not be retained. However, no teacher should plan more than she can do well and without undue expenditure of time and energy. As a matter of fact, the unit plan, when it is once in operation, is a time saver for the teacher. But she will need to make careful plans, and to be systematic and persistent. The best way is to introduce learning units very gradually. So far as marks are concerned, the teacher should be particular not to disturb parents unduly. If the percentage system is used then this may be supplemented from time to time with other means of acquainting parents with the child's progress. This problem is discussed in a later chapter. In any event, both parents and teachers should understand the fallacy and the futility of the "passing grade." In every rural school the teacher should try to develop a spirit of mastery. The best modern reports to parents give much more than a list of per cent grades on subject matter.

In using a unit plan with problems and projects, pupils usually manifest decidedly increased interest. While there is also much individualized study and learning, the class-discussion feature is retained, this is of course a distinct socializing advantage. In general, the integrity of the group is maintained but not at the expense of the individual. Because of carefully directed study and the repeated use of mastery tests, failures are not common. Perhaps less ground is gone over, but pupils acquire more knowledge and greater skill. The inducement to laziness, indifference, and lack of preparation, is greatly reduced as compared to the assign-study-recite system. The plan provides for a variety of practices in the different types of subject materials and this increases efficiency, interest, and accomplishment. The Morrison technique is a dignified, businesslike enterprise in which learning becomes a serious and important undertaking. This system, in itself, exerts a salutary influence upon pupils, the concomitant learnings are of lifelong value. Each pupil or student is given the benefit of diagnostic measurements in order that his case may be understood by the teacher so that proper remedial or corrective steps may be taken. All in all, the Morri-

son plan has done much to lift teaching and learning to a decidedly higher level, its central idea and general technique should be utilized in rural schools as much as possible.

**Motivation under unit plan.** One of the constant problems of every teacher, and particularly of the rural teacher, is so to conduct the work of her school that her pupils will wish to study and learn because of natural inherent interests. It is undoubtedly true that children are more interested when they are actually participating in the activities involved in the use of integrated learning units. When problem, project, and activity units are used, the very nature of the lifelike learning processes usually insures adequate interest and motivation. But there is no reason why subject units should not make use of problems, projects, and activities. In fact, Dr Morrison's system provides directly for such self-motivating, pupil participation, the emphasis upon understandings and insights lifts the procedures above merely memoriter lesson learning and hearing. When children are engaged in really getting a genuine understanding of significant, useful, worth-while units of subject matter, they are quite likely to be inherently and directly interested. Efforts actually to master something are interesting to every normal child. Children delight in the attainment of skill. They enjoy the necessary repetitions of well-motivated drills if they can feel a continual gain in control, mastery, and skill.

In using either the Morrison plan or some adaptation of it, the responses of the pupils are a certain indication of their interest. It frequently happens that pupils choose projects and problems to work out after the minimum masteries have been made. Much depends upon the personality and skill of the teacher. In fact, a good teacher can make a success of almost any method. But in using the unit plan, there is ample opportunity for individual diagnosis and remedial work. Such personal direction and guidance is a part of the general procedure. The good teacher will keep her eye upon pupils who are not getting the idea or who for some reason are indifferent and inactive. During the step of assimilation, which takes over three fifths

of the total time for the entire cycle, the teacher can and should study and work as much as necessary with individuals. This is the period for both group and individual supervision of study. Now is the time for the teacher to find out how pupils work and to show them better and more effective methods of study.

**Provision for varying abilities.** In *Monograph No 13*, mentioned previously in this chapter, reference is made to differentiated assignments. It is significant that Dr Morrison, himself, makes no provision for varying abilities except when he suggests the use of additional problem-projects for those who can do more than the average of the group. This, of course, is entirely in keeping with the idea of mastery. However, Dr Billett states that in over two thirds of the high schools with which the survey deals, "separate assignments are provided for on each unit for each ability level" "The typical number of levels provided for is 3, the range being from 2 to 4 levels." Following is a summarized point by point statement of the various means employed to adapt unit instruction to different capacities. These suggestions are a result of the responses from the high schools included in the survey and they are adaptable to elementary and rural school conditions.

1. The majority of good teachers everywhere find it desirable to make use of differentiated assignments whether they use the unit plan or some other.

2. Within the assignment on a given level of attainment, it is quite common to permit pupils some choice as to which problems or projects they shall work on.

3. In allowing a choice of assignments, many teachers restrict the plan of individual preferences to pupils of the better grades of intelligence. However, all pupils should be given some choice.

4. It is customary to require each pupil to begin with the lowest assignment and to work up as far as possible.

5. In some schools teachers determine the point of beginning, occasionally a teacher permits the individual pupil to choose where he shall begin. While individual freedom should be encouraged, pupil guidance is necessary.

6. In ascertaining a pupil's level of ability and assignment, it is the usual practice to use different criteria for judging a pupil's ability.

Mental tests are common, but should not be used exclusively. A child's health and strength and his personality attitudes and habits should be given due weight.

7 In differentiating assignments, the amount and the kind of work required should both be taken into the account. Slower and less bright children may be given less to do and easier types of materials.

8. In many schools a complete list of problem assignments is arranged with the easier ones at the beginning and in an ascending scale of difficulty. Then pupils work on as many of these problems as their individual abilities make possible.

9 It is also quite common to assign to each problem or project a scale-point of achievement value. The accomplishment of each child can easily be graded in this way.

10 In any graduated system of differentiated assignments and instruction, every child, both dull and bright, should progress as rapidly and as far on his own level as his abilities will permit. No dull child and no bright child should be slighted.

**Function and value of a textbook.** The rural teacher will find that a first-class textbook is an indispensable means or tool for teaching and learning, whether she uses the unit plan or some other. In using the unit plan, a good text in arithmetic, for example, will serve as an excellent and entirely sufficient guide sheet. In teaching the social subjects, such as history, geography, and civics, it is highly desirable to have several sets of textbooks for daily reference. Some mature, well-trained, and experienced teachers may find it possible to use their own outlines and thus to dispense with a basal text, but most rural teachers cannot and should not do this. The rural teacher should have the best texts that are on the market, then she should use them intelligently. No doubt the state or the county will furnish an outline course of study; in some states very detailed courses are now furnished, particularly in the social studies. When this is the case, the teacher will usually find it necessary to make use of many references in order that pupils may secure the needful information. It is now common in the better texts for authors to furnish good outlines, summaries, and test questions. Teachers should take advantage of such materials for all they are worth. The best plan is for the rural teacher to make use of a modified

form of the unit idea in which the scientific up-to-date textbook will find a prominent place

**Testing—marking—promoting.** Whether a rural teacher uses a unit plan of instruction, any other single plan, or a variety of plans, she is certain to give various tests, to mark papers, to grade pupils in some way, and to pass children on from one class or grade to another, according to her estimates of their progress in learning. No rural teacher should make use of inflexible regulations or systems or cast-iron methods of any sort. The chief consideration always is the welfare of the individual child at any given time and all the time. He may be dull and he may be bright. The teacher is in duty bound to do her best for each pupil regardless of heredity, environment, or personal handicaps. Tests should be given when they are needed and as often as they are needed. There is no inflexible rule. The needs of the child in his relation to particular units of materials are the chief criterion for judging. The principle of mastery is a good one to follow. The ideal of mastery should supersede any foolish notion that there is virtue in any passing grade of any type, whatsoever. The fallacy, futility, and foolishness of the idea of the "passing grade" as any mark of completion of any unit of work should become thoroughly ingrained into the teacher's consciousness as a constant guide in all her teaching-learning activities. The most useful of all tests are inventory and diagnostic tests because of their direct bearing upon learning processes.

An experienced rural teacher understands that most of her tests call for informational materials, usually textbook facts. It is not so easy to test a child's habits, ideals, attitudes, skills, and appreciations. But in some way a teacher should determine not only what a child knows but also what he can do and how well he can do it. A pupil's conduct, or general behavior, or specific behavior under special conditions or in particular situations will often shed much light on the child's ways of thinking, on his attitudes, his likes, and dislikes and on other very important elements of personality. Teachers should not restrict themselves exclusively to the use of objective tests. These are

valuable, but they should not take the place of other methods of ascertaining a child's personality and progress.

Marks and marking are discussed more completely in the last chapter. It is sufficient to say here that, whether a teacher uses percentages or letters, she should never let the marks come between her and the child. In any event, a mark does not indicate mastery, as a rule. Marks should not be the sole criterion in determining promotion. Promotion or nonpromotion should be determined by the child's best welfare at the time. His health, his attitudes, his maturity, his native ability, his industry, his home conditions, his physical development, his age, his previous school experience, the type of subject, and other factors should be considered along with the mark on the report card. Reports to parents should give much more than a pupil's subject grade. This problem is discussed in the author's *The Country Teacher at Work*. In general, reports to parents should show how the child is progressing and what needs to be done in order that he may make better progress. In the use of the unit plan of instruction promotions are often made if a pupil does the minimum assignments. Of course this does not realize the mastery idea, that is, complete mastery of the unit. When a series of units make up a year's work or a semester's work, in some school systems pupils are required merely to repeat the units in which they failed. Of course this interferes seriously with our beautiful graded system, but the individual does not suffer so much.

**Learning units in a rural school.** In a typical or average rural school, if the teacher is a high-school graduate and has had at least one additional year of professional training, there will be no great difficulty in introducing teaching-learning units into at least some of her classes. If she can do this she will find that it is highly advantageous, but she must very gradually make the changes. In such subjects as the social studies, including history, civics, geography, and in physiology, health activities, nature study and agriculture, and even in arithmetic a modified form of the five-cycle procedure, including the use of the mastery formula, is entirely possible.

The teacher should know comprehensively and in detail what the course of study for the state comprises, then she should carefully compare her textbooks with the topics in the state course to see what must be added and what omitted. It is essential that this rural teacher should understand what is meant by actually learning anything whether in the field of knowledge or skill or appreciation. She should know, also, that in order to teach a unit successfully she must have a good modern basic text and enough references in the subjects named above. In teaching such subjects as history and geography the more supplemental materials the better.

At the present time it is possible for the rural teacher to secure commercial units with detailed instructions as to their use. Such units in the various social studies are now common and many of them are also printed in magazines intended for the rural teacher. In using the unit plan, the teacher should have at hand a number of helps which the pupils can use profitably during the period of assimilatory study. This will include many problem questions and a variety of objective tests. In any case, however, the work of study must be carefully supervised and commercial workbooks must not be filled out in mechanical, unthinking fashion, as they often are. If the rural teacher will see to it that the study activities of her pupils are carefully supervised and if she will always provide a good supply of problem questions, projects, and activities in variety and with definite educational objectives, she will find that her pupils will learn more and better and that they will respond more freely and effectively in the recitation period.

Here follow some specific cases in the use of learning units in a rural school.

1 In teaching such a subject as *corn*, for example, a rural teacher can easily organize the materials on a unit basis and spend two or three weeks on the unit, with the use of many accompanying projects and activities, such as testing seed corn, selecting seed corn, making booklets, going on field trips, and many others. If her school is in the corn belt, she can well afford

to spend considerable time on such a unit. The same thing is true of many other topics in agriculture, such as milk, cattle, poultry, soil, plant food, and forage crops. Nature study furnishes a large number of subjects.

2 When a class in reading comes to a lesson on trees, a special unit study can easily be made. The same suggestion applies to birds, foods, and historical and geographical topics. The meaning of this statement is that when a teacher finds her pupils particularly interested in a truly pivotal learning unit, a real center of both interest and understanding, then is the time to strike while the iron is hot. When a genuine inherent interest is aroused more fruitful learning will take place.

3 In the study of language a well-conducted school paper may become the center of interest and of understanding. In this way much useful knowledge will be acquired and many language and reading skills developed. The school society, the 4-H and other clubs, and the midday meal, may well serve as natural centers for many useful learnings.

4 A survey of the local district has many times been made a center of common interest which has not only furnished much valuable information, but has also developed reading and language skills and other abilities. Directions for such surveys can be obtained from the Federal Office of Education.

5 In conducting school programs of an educational character pupils have an opportunity to learn many things and to develop their knowledge, skill, and appreciation in the use of literary selections and in music and art. Valuable learnings in reading and language are also of course possible.

6 The *home*, as a social study unit in the first and second grades, by way of illustration, serves as a center which is now very widely used in many schools. *Community life* and the *farm* are also used as units in the same way. Practically all of the states now furnish materials to teachers on such units and on many others. In the third and fourth grades the units are often Indian Life and Pioneer Life. In the fifth and sixth grades beginnings are made in the study of American history, using

biography as a means of arousing an interest in personalities. In the lower grades a great deal of guidance is necessary on the part of the teacher, and the social studies are closely associated with reading and language.

7 In using any unit, the teacher must continually consider the effect upon the pupil. Is he getting understandings and insights? Is he actually participating? Is he developing ability to think, to draw conclusions, to appreciate meanings and artistic values, whether in people, in nature, in music, in pictures, or otherwise?

8 Some units can readily be used with several grades combined, say, the four upper grades, or the four lower grades. Birds, flowers, trees, and animal life might be used as units in which the entire school may have a share. There are many different grades and levels of assignments of activities and projects.

9 In some respects the rural school offers the best possible environment and situation for the use of problem, project, activity, and subject units because all of the children are under the teacher's control and because it is possible, due to small numbers, to supervise, guide, and direct the work of each child. When the unit plan is very carefully worked out and administered, the number of class exercises can be greatly reduced, a desideratum of great importance.

10 In using the unit plan of instruction, the teacher will get the feeling that she and her pupils are really engaged in a profitable learning enterprise. "Learning takes place when pupils are brought into contact with educative experiences on their level of learning ability." By using a five-cycle procedure in the upper grades, perhaps culminating in a sixth step or test for mastery, the pupils will actually have done a very worth-while piece of work. The evidence is found in the answers to the problems, in maps, graphs, or drawings made, in outlines formulated; in tangible test results; in summaries and résumés, in valuable recitations of various kinds based upon materials really studied and learned, that is to say, *mastered*.

**Learning units illustrated.** Any rural teacher will secure many useful suggestions on the unit plan of teaching American history by studying *A Guidebook in United States History* written by Ira M. Allen, Sadie J. Palmer, and Ross H. Smith, and published in April, 1935, by The Macmillan Company. There is a *Teachers' Manual* to accompany the *Guidebook* which gives explicit directions and illustrations concerning the method of using the unit plan. This manual also gives the answers to the tests. Although this book may be more particularly adapted to pupils somewhat more mature than seventh- and eighth-grade pupils in the average rural school, yet both the *Guidebook* and the *Manual* are so suggestive and useful, that rural teachers are sure to find them helpful in learning how to use the unit plan. And in many rural schools they can actually be used in eighth-grade history classes.

The Allen-Palmer-Smith *Guidebook* gives the following eleven general units for a year's work (the time limits are approximate).

"I. Colonization, 1000 to 1763, (4 weeks); II. Revolution, 1763-1783, (2½ weeks), III. The Constitution, 1783-1789, (2½ weeks), IV. Winning Respect at Home and Abroad, 1789-1815, (3 weeks); V. Rise and Fall of Nationalism, 1815-1840, (3 weeks), VI. The Nation Spreads Across the Continent, 1815-1850, (3 weeks), VII. Secession and the Civil War, 1850-1865, (4 weeks), VIII. The Recovery of the Nation, 1865-1884, (3 weeks),

"Units IX, X, and XI are developed vertically, they are not real periods of time that follow one another. They are rather chronologically parallel trends or lines of development. The time extends from 1884 to the present day.

"IX Industrial Development

"X World Relations

"XI A Progressive Democracy

"The last three 'movements' should each be studied as a unit extending from 1884 to the present time. Four weeks are given to the ninth, four to the tenth, and three to the eleventh. Total for the eleven units, 36 weeks."

Under the topic *Major issues* the authors say "The main purposes in your study of this unit (I) are stated in the following major issues. You are expected to bear them in mind during all of your study of

the unit and your Organization of the unit will consist of writing satisfactory answers to these questions

- "A How can we account for the discovery of America in 1492?"
- "B What various causes, social, economic, religious, and political, in Europe contributed to the colonization of North America?"
- "C What lasting contributions to the institutional life of the United States were made by Virginia, Rhode Island, and Massachusetts?
- "D What causes led to the downfall of the French Empire in North America?
- "E What was the significance of the Peace of Paris, 1763?"

Among the dozens and scores of learning units used in elementary science and the social studies, we find the following: Weather and Climate, The Farm, Communication, Time, Social Insects, Indian Life, Frontier Life, Bird Study, Land Transportation, Water Transportation, Patriotic Holidays, Air Travel, Our Community Record, Clothing, Fur Industry, Food, Shelter, and so on to great length

In working out such a unit as *Our Community Record*, as done by the Child Development Foundation in their Classroom Materials, the following outline of topics is used: (1) Introductory Thoughts, (2) Specific Objectives, (3) Suggested Approaches; (4) Pictorially-told Community Record; (5) Suggested Outline of Content, (6) Personal Interviews, (7) Suggested Pageant; (8) Diorama; (9) Family Saga, (10) Permanent Community Record; (11) Activities, (12) Evaluations, (13) Bibliography. Often problems for discussion and tests to determine results are given.

#### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

- 1 What is the essential difference between a unit of subject matter and a unit of understanding? Between a unit of interest and a unit of understanding?
- 2 Give illustrations of knowledge units, appreciation units, and skill units
- 3 Give an example of an integrated learning unit in the nature of an activity and another one that may properly be called a subject unit
- 4 Just why is the use of units, whether they are wholly integrated or not, a decided improvement on the traditional procedure? What was the nature of the traditional method?

## 402 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

- 5 Distinguish problem, project, activity, and subject units
6. Make out a detailed unit in eighth-grade geography which will last for one month of twenty days. Outline another one in history for the same grade and period

### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

1. ALLEN, IRA M., PALMER, SADIE J., AND SMITH, R. H.—*A Guide Book in United States History*, with Teacher's Manual, The Macmillan Company. 1935
2. BAGLEY, W. C., AND MACDONALD, MARION E.—*Standard Practices in Teaching*; The Macmillan Company. 1932.
3. BILLETT, R. O.—*Office of Education Bulletin, 1932, No. 17, Monograph No. 13, National Survey of Secondary Education—“Provisions for Individual Differences, Marking, and Promotion”*
- 4 *Compton's Pictured Encyclopedia*—Teaching-learning Units for Teachers, F E Compton and Company, Chicago. 1935. (These units are very carefully prepared.)
5. DAGGETT, C J., AND PETERSEN, FLORENCE A.—“A Survey of Popular Plans for Instruction,” *Educational Administration and Supervision*. October, 1932.
6. *Foundation Classroom Materials*; Child Development Foundation, Inc., Chicago. 1935
7. HOSIC, J F.—*World Book Encyclopedia*, “The Unit Plan of Instruction”, W. F. Quarrie and Company, Chicago 1935
8. *World Book Encyclopedia*, “Activity Units”; W. F. Quarrie and Company, Chicago. 1935
- 9 WRIGHTSTONE, J. W.—“New Practices in Teaching of Social Studies,” *The Clearing House*. February, 1934

## CHAPTER XX

### THE ACTIVITY PROGRAM IN THE RURAL SCHOOL<sup>1</sup>

What is an activity program? Ideas vary as to what is meant by an *activity program*. It is sometimes thought of as a sentimental kind of reasoning about child life. Some think of it as an Eskimo village in the sand table, or a puppet show, or possibly decorations made for a Halloween party, or a live setting hen or a rabbit in the room. Others think that an activity program means letting the children plan and carry on the work of the school with the teacher in the background, or that the whole thing has to do with the organization of the school or with its equipment. It is true that all these suggestions may have to do with the activity program, but to those educators who favor this new philosophy, for indeed that is what it is, it simply means doing away with some of the old ideas of the traditional school and putting into practice Dewey's philosophy of education—"the bringing of school and life together that the school may be life." If teachers are living with their children, leading them to live and work together, providing the happiest and most useful experiences for them, giving them the best possible, and expecting the best work from them, then they are indeed teaching by means of an activity program. The plan stresses the art of successful and happy living together. Some teachers probably feel that this program does not give enough emphasis to subject matter. They think that incidentally some subject matter is taught but not much attention is paid to skills and techniques. The child is free to do altogether as he pleases about lessons.

<sup>1</sup>This chapter has been written by Miss Mildred B. Richmond, professor of elementary education, Midland College, Fremont, Nebraska. The activity unit was prepared and actually used by Miss Laura Knoell, teacher in the Bellevue School, Dodge County, Nebraska. The author gratefully acknowledges his indebtedness to Professor Richmond and Miss Knoell.

This is a mistaken idea. There are needed skills for this art of living, such as being able to read fluently with desired speeds, having essential number concepts, responding automatically and accurately to number situations, securing a command of English. There are also other skills, attitudes, habits to be developed.

**Statements of authorities.** Let us consider what a few leading educators say about the "activity program."

1. W. H. Kilpatrick *Education for a Changing Civilization*

This new curriculum consists of experiences. It uses subject matter but it does not consist of subject matter. The old curriculum consisted of subject matter set out to be learned for giving back on demand. The essence of the new curriculum is the child actively at work needing for his present experiences better ways of behaving. It is in the step-up of these better ways of behaving that subject matter enters. It is thus that each succeeding new situation is met.

2 Martha Porter. *The Teacher in the New School*<sup>1</sup>

First of all, I was conscious of the value of activity, not as a means to motivate the learning of certain predetermined facts, but as a natural function of childhood, as a means of growth and an indispensable accompaniment to intellectual interests.

3 John Dewey *My Pedagogic Creed*

Save as the efforts of the educator connect with some activity which the child is carrying on of his own initiative, independent of the educator, education becomes reduced to a pressure from without. It may indeed give certain external results, but cannot truly be educative. Without insight into the psychological structure and activities of the individual, the educative process will, therefore, be haphazard and arbitrary. If it chances to coincide with the child's activity, it will get a leverage; if it does not, it will result in friction or disintegration, or arrest of the child nature.

4 California Curriculum Commission. *Teachers' Guide to Child Development Manual for Kindergarten and Primary Teachers*<sup>2</sup>

By the term "activity program" is meant a school curriculum which provides a series of well-selected activities for different levels of growth,

<sup>1</sup> Copyright, 1930, by World Book Company, Yonkers-on-Hudson, New York.

<sup>2</sup> Compiled by California State Curriculum Commission, Sacramento State Department of Education, 1930.

which offers opportunities to children to engage in worth-while, satisfying experiences while carrying out their most worthy and most challenging purposes. It provides an environment in which children continually purpose and act in situations of meaning to them, in which they live fully, richly, happily now, and so have the best possible preparation for living successfully after they leave school.

### 5. C. W. Washburne: *Adjusting the School to the Child*<sup>1</sup>

Activities are the vital life giving part of the curriculum. They are real education. Giving the child a mastery of the three R's is important but it is mere training. Education involves drawing out the child himself. It is for this purpose that the group and creative activities exist.

The group and creative activities include discussions but these are discussions of debatable subjects, not recitations on lessons all children have studied. They involve work in appreciation of art, music, and literature when this work is not going to be tested or marked and is not to have anything to do with promotion—in other words, when children legitimately differ in what they get from the course. The activities may include organized playground work, clubs, committees, and self governing assemblies. They may include a school newspaper and a school bazaar. They will always include creative expression through art, handwork, and informal English composition. They may include dramatizations where the children write their own plays and make their own costumes. And they will include a wide variety of projects which, while they often grow out of the individualized academic work and shed much light upon that work, are nevertheless an end in themselves.

### 6. Fay Adams: *The Initiation of an Activity Program*<sup>2</sup>

An activity is a learning situation which meets the natural interest and felt needs of children and leads to better adjustments than the old traditional teaching methods.

**Principles of an activity program.** The principles of the activity program are firmly rooted in the basic sciences of human life and growth. If we make a careful study of the child and his

<sup>1</sup> Copyright, 1932, by World Book Company, Yonkers-on-Hudson, New York.

<sup>2</sup> *Initiation of an Activity Program into a Public School*, Teachers College, 1934.

development, we find certain prominent factors. The most important of these is ceaseless activity, both physical and mental, during the greater part of the day. The child is never passive, but he is rather quite persistent in his efforts to accomplish his purposes. As we observe this child we notice another characteristic, namely, his desire to organize his activity around centers of interest. In order to enjoy what he is doing he must



*Courtesy of Professor Richmond and Miss Knoell*  
A country school workshop

have it related to some enterprise which he understands. He likes to do things with his hands. He thinks, as a part of his physical activity. We find him investigating his environment and then reconstructing places of interest to him. Why shouldn't our educational program be adapted to child nature since it is by his physical and mental activity that he learns? The activity program attempts to guide the minds and conduct of children in their natural ways of expression and to develop them to responsible and capable maturity.

**Yesterday and today.** The school attended by our grandfathers with its barren environment could not stimulate desir-

able social activities and habits. Children learned the things mapped out for them by their elders. The work in school was organized by the teacher. She planned everything, took the responsibility, did most of the thinking, and judged the results. There was a great deal of activity on the part of the teacher but very little on the part of the child. There was memoriter use of books, and much formal drill. The check-up was of the question and answer type. It is not enough merely to read and study about the characteristic projects of civilization in which the child is to engage during his working and his leisure hours, he must engage in some of these activities in school. The school today not only makes the child the center around which the curriculum is planned, but this curriculum is made up of many of the activities in which the child will engage in life. The best growth of the child into a wholesome personality, in order that he may take his useful place in the world, rather than the child's unassimilated and unapplied knowledge of mere subject matter—this is the true criterion of the success of both teacher and pupil.

Is the term *activity* well-chosen? We may have been confused in the past by terms describing this program. In this chapter we have chosen the term *activity* for no particular reason other than that the type of education we want for children must be of the active variety and not a passive procedure. Activity seems to be the most important factor, but not alone in the child's development, also in the development of all human life there must be an environment of activity. However, the term *activity* is used as synonymous with unit of work, center of interest, enterprise, project, and other designations. It makes but little difference what we call the experiences, so long as we have in mind effective and satisfactory living and learning situations of a truly vitalizing nature. Living with children on the playground is indeed an activity if it is a genuine, significant experience. The activity curriculum is not a cut and dried plan that can be brought into the schoolroom in the form of a course of study, the activities must grow naturally out of the children's needs, their environment, and their interests.

**Are there various kinds of activities?** So far we have thought of the type of activity growing out of the schoolroom situation in which boys and girls learn to live together. There will be certain interests shared by all or possibly by a certain group, initiated either by the teacher or by the children. These activities may include perhaps only a very small portion of any one day's work and may be continued over a long period of time. For example, in the first grade the framework of a calendar is made on the first day of school. Each day a different child is selected to write the day of the month in its proper square. On the wall of another school there is a frieze which covers practically the entire side of the room. As a result of their study of Egypt, the third and fourth grades contribute ideas and create this painting. The fifth and sixth grades cover the bulletin board with an exhibit of clippings and materials concerning Byrd's trip to Little America. The entire school becomes interested in the germination of seeds as a result of garden planting. The teacher selects the bean seed for special study because it grows quickly and is interesting to watch. The third-grade children place several glasses of water on the window sill. In each glass they first place cotton and on top of it a bean seed. The children then watch the beans sprout and eventually send their roots down and their leaves up. Once in a while they take a seed out of the glass so that they can examine the roots and leaves in detail. The fifth grade, interested in the cause of the seasons, make observations on the path of the sun. They record the position of the shadow of the window sill on a day near the end of September, then observations are made every two or three weeks with dates and positions recorded by means of brass tacks on the floor. At the end of the year the record made on the floor furnishes an excellent means of studying how the sun approaches the horizon up to the twenty-first of December and then rises as spring and summer advance.

**Major activities.** Another type of activity which many teachers term a major activity is observed in many schools today. The modern school is dividing its subject matter more

and more into definite units of thought or activities. The year is being broken up into the best things to do. In the traditional school, every day's work was completely separated from every other day's work, the subject matter was apportioned to children and given to them in small doses, but with little thought as to whether it was assimilated properly or not. The schools of today no longer consider each day's work as a separate unit. Units of thought continuing over a period of a week or a month, or even longer are now characteristic of our treatment of subject matter. In this type of activity an attempt is made to integrate the curriculum subjects. For example, the intermediate group becomes interested in a discussion of trees; a study of trees in their community and in other communities results. The children's interest in this activity lasts for many weeks and much of the children's work in English, geography, agriculture, arithmetic, and reading is correlated in this way.

The third and fourth grades become interested in Indians, at the free hour, time is used for activities relating to a study of Indian life. Each subject is taken up when it is most needed in this unit of work. Much of the reading, English, music, study of poetry, art, and health activities are taken care of in a more effective way than by the old question-answer and other traditional procedures. A puppet show as a first- and second-grade major activity is one that proves profitable from the standpoint of both pleasure and information. Reading, language, numbers, art, writing, and music experiences are an outgrowth of this activity and the children find much needed information. Other grades become interested with the result that a worthy enterprise for the whole school develops. The children of the particular rural school who are pictured in this chapter became interested in libraries, books, and especially in a library for their own room. The alcove had been used as a place in which to store unused textbooks and supplies. The children made the library table and chairs and took great pride in shelving interesting books which they bought, brought from home, or borrowed from the County Superintendent, the Traveling Library, or

other sources. Besides developing a love for books, much information was gained.



*Courtesy of Professor Richmond and Miss Knoell*

**Art work in a rural school**

Kalsomine is here used as the medium of expression

Can the activity program be used in a rural school? Certainly any situation that makes learning more effective must not be denied our rural children. We want normal life experiences in our rural schools as certainly as we want them for our urban children. The rural school, as well as any elementary school, can be a place where children pursue their own interests and develop new interests. To stimulate the interests of the child, to discover and satisfy his nature and needs, to help him make better adjustments to his environment—these are problems that need as serious consideration for the rural child as for the city child. The activity program takes care of between-recitation activities, which is perhaps the greatest problem of the rural teacher. Instead of sitting with his face behind his geography, supposedly studying his lesson but thinking instead of mischievous tricks to play when the teacher's back is turned, the child has an in-

teresting problem of his own to solve. He is immersed in his work, in making plans, and in carrying them out. The school day is often not long enough to do all the things he really desires to do. Another argument for the activity program is that it takes care of individual differences. In the mixed group of the rural school an activity will have different appeals to different children; those of varying age levels will be able to make contributions that will cause the learning situation to be much more valuable for all. If children of only one age and grade level take part, the learnings are neither so rich nor so varied.

**Providing for all learnings.** Can all learnings set forth in the course of study be taught through activities? To this question an emphatic *no* is the answer. Arithmetic, for example, is a subject requiring much individual drill; it is impossible to get all of this drill through activities. An activity usually involves only a few necessary facts in arithmetic. However, many opportunities are offered for the application of arithmetic, but the activities should not be made over to bring in arithmetic nor depended on as the chief source of problems or of drill. Wherever they naturally involve arithmetic the opportunity to make such application should be utilized, but individual drill must be provided for, in any event. Likewise, no program in composition, spelling, writing, geography, or history can live by activities alone. McKee has illustrated this statement forcefully in his *Language in the Elementary School* (p. 169). He says:

A wise football coach usually isolates certain abilities such as blocking, tackling, and falling on the ball from the situations in which they normally occur, and provides specific practice upon these skills as things to be learned in themselves. He does this because he believes that trying to get these abilities taught through football games won't get results. Likewise, the careful violinist isolates such specific items as double stops, harmonics, and the vibrato for purposes of specific and direct practice. Later these skills are correctly applied in their normal environment.

**Need for special drill techniques.** When this program has been introduced teachers have found their children so enthusi-

astic about school, its environment, and its activities, that they do not mind some of the drill on techniques that becomes necessary. Much of the English, reading, art, and music can be an outgrowth of a major activity; but until our courses of study are revised, possibly around the unit plan, or until we decide just what bits of curricula are best for the children, it does not seem possible that any activity can incorporate all of the course of study learnings expected of children during a certain length of time. A considerable portion of the work in the classroom may center about the "major activity", yet other learning situations which are unrelated to the major activity may develop simultaneously and should be given attention. Many times, as the result of an activity, children may be led to see the need for drill. The actual *use* of a skill should be considered as important as the *acquiring* of the skill itself. Many teachers who provide a rich activity experience for children, set aside a few weeks at the end of the term for drill on the course of study requirements, which have not been met in connection with the activity. Every teacher is required to follow her course of study, but many times the children and teacher may together work out enterprises which will further the mastery of the prescribed work.

**How may the activity program be initiated by the rural teacher?** First of all, the rural teacher must be convinced that this is the type of program that most nearly fits her philosophy of education. She must become aware of the possibilities of this program. The old idea of subjecting the child to subject-matter routine must be subordinated to the ideal of meeting children's needs. School is life and the aim of life is achievement and satisfaction through right living. Then she must be sure that the county superintendent, school board, and patrons are in favor of the program. She must convince them that they can depend upon her to see that certain achievements and attainments set forth in the course of study are to be made, though she has changed her way of teaching. The next step is to study and respect the children—their ideas, interests, intelligence, abilities, individualities, and needs, then to study the environment, noting

the centers of interest and what factors, physical and social, are influencing the lives of her children. There are some aspects of the environment which may provide more valuable and interesting learning situations than others. There are some that may fit in better than others with her course of study and make the achievement of fundamental learnings easier. Next, the teacher must be aware of the facilities at her command to carry on an activity. There must be space; there must be reading materials, art materials, and construction materials. Many an activity has failed because needed materials were not at hand, although the interest of the children was keen. This does not mean that a large sum of money need be spent on these materials, old materials, left over materials, and odds and ends, as long as they are durable, collected by children and teacher, may be utilized with as good results as when all materials are purchased at a school-supply house. Sometimes it is well for the children to find materials for themselves, but usually it is necessary to make much of it easily accessible to the children.

**Other useful expedients.** However, one of our present problems in the rural school is the lack of reading materials to inform our children. Teachers have met this problem in various ways by asking help from their county superintendent who usually has a library of children's books, by encouraging the children to bring books from home; by utilizing records written by other children about the subject; or, by encouraging children to write their own material to be passed on to others. This latter plan provides one of the best ways of motivating written composition. Many teachers have started the program by allowing the children one free period a week to work on the activity, possibly the Friday afternoon period. The children become so interested that they want more free periods. This leads possibly to a period a day and so on until the school becomes an active laboratory. No sensible teacher who is in a formal school environment should expect to revolutionize the situation overnight. She will work gradually into this program, making sure that all concerned with her school favor it. It may be advisable to introduce the

activity as an extra piece of work which does not replace any regular work. All classes or groups, except the one developing the activity, continue with their regular work. It should be made clear to the children that this is extra work and that their regular work is going on as usual. Usually the keen interest in this extra work causes the children to want to do some of their regular work in the same way; so certain history work, for example, becomes a unit or activity instead of the next lesson in the text-book.

**Management of groups.** If the children have had little experience in working in groups, they should be helped considerably. One group may be taken at a time, the others working on individual projects at their seats, until this group can take care of itself. Then a second group, a third group, and so on, may be supervised, until the activity period can be conducted with several groups working. Usually each group has a chairman. He is the official representative of the group and is responsible for seeing that each member does his share of the work, that the work goes on smoothly, and that a report is made at the check-up period. Groups work on some constructive activity, read to solve problems, work at notebook material, draw, collect pictures, or carry on some individual project related to a class problem. There are intellectual activities as well as physical activities. Some teachers think that an activity must make great use of industrial arts or provide an exhibit of some kind before it can be called an activity, but this is not true.

**Need for good work habits.** Teachers have found that some rules regarding good work habits should be made. Standards should frequently be set up by the children and the teacher for good working habits; the children should strive to establish these desirable habits. Here are some reasonable regulations:

1. Work as quietly as possible. It is not fair to disturb others who may be working on a class problem.
2. Each person should accomplish something during the period.
3. Keep working on the task until it is finished.
4. Share materials.

5. Be a good follower as well as a good leader
6. Help others
7. Put everything away when finished and clean up the room

The period of discussion and selection of the activity is highly socializing and valuable. Let the children work out the details and plan for the enterprise, be it constructing, dramatizing, problem solving, or what. The teacher is an important member of the group, guiding, suggesting, and helping whenever she is needed. She is the best informed member of the group. She is needed to draw out the slower children and to help all the children co-ordinate their efforts. There should always be a check-up period at which time the children report their progress. Usually the chairman or leader of the group gives the report and suggestions are made as to whether this group accomplished enough and worked according to the standards. Frequently the standards are raised.

**Does the activity program make for bad discipline?** This depends on what is meant by discipline. If it means law and order of the pin-drop variety, where every move of the children is either dictated or sanctioned by the teacher, perhaps the activity program has no place in a school so ordered. But if we think of discipline as meaning mutual good will in an orderly situation, the highest type of self-control, respect for others, self-direction, and responsibility—then the activity program certainly does promote such objectives. We want freedom in our schools, but freedom with responsibility. Someone has said: "Interest is the keynote of discipline." By use of the activity program, schoolwork ceases to be a monotonous, boring grind, and becomes instead interesting laboratory learning experiences. Working in groups is one of the finest ways to develop character. Self-control, responsibility, initiative, unselfishness, co-operation, individuality, respect for the rights of others, sharing, leadership, and fellowship are a few of the personality traits that may be expected from right guidance through activities.

**Standards for evaluating activities.** After the teacher has studied the children and the environment and possibly a unit of

work has been suggested, she should carefully evaluate the potentialities which the enterprise holds for the group of children concerned. It may be just one or two grades that are interested at first, but later all the children in the school may become concerned. There are a number of criteria to help her decide whether or not a certain unit is worth the children's time.

1. *Teacher's Guide to Child Development, Manual for Kindergarten and Primary Teachers*<sup>1</sup>

- a Is the activity closely related to the child's life so as to lead him to want to carry it through?
- b Is it sufficiently within the range of accomplishment of the learner to insure a satisfactory degree of success?
- c Is it so varied from the previous activity as to permit the child's all-round development?
- d Does it furnish opportunities for many kinds of endeavor?
- e Does the subject matter involved present major fields of human achievement?
- f Does the activity involve an expansion of present insight and abilities?
- g Does it provide an opportunity for social contacts?
- h Will it lead into other profitable activities?

2. From *Organization of Curriculum for One Teacher Schools*, Department of Rural Education, National Education Association

- a Does the proposed unit grow out of some genuine situation and include a purpose or purposes for its accomplishment?
- b Does the proposed unit contribute to the general educational objectives?
- c Does the proposed unit appear to afford a wide variety of activity in the children's school, home, and community environment?
- d Is the unit sufficiently adapted to the ability range of the children and the school's limitation of books and equipment to promise success and stimulate growth in its accomplishment?
- e Is the proposed unit likely to afford learnings not adequately provided in the out-of-school life or not already experienced in the previous school life of the children?
- f Does the proposed unit seem likely to afford experiences, stimulate interests, and arouse questions which will carry the children into other profitable units of work?

<sup>1</sup>Compiled by California State Curriculum Commission Sacramento State Department of Education, 1930

3. From *Curriculum Making in an Elementary School*, by the staff of Lincoln School, Teachers College, Columbia University.

- a The unit of work must be selected from real life situations and must be considered worth while by the child, because he feels that he has helped select it and because he finds in it many opportunities to satisfy his needs
- b. The unit of work must afford many opportunities for real purposing and real projects, and it will be something which the child can carry into his normal activity.
- c. The unit of work must stimulate many kinds of activities and so provide for individual differences
- d. (1) The unit of work must make individual growth possible.  
(2) The succession of units of work must provide for continuous group growth from one level to the next.
- e. Each unit of work must furnish leads into other related units of work and must stimulate in the child the desire for a continued widening of his interests and understanding.
- f. Each unit of work must help meet the demands of society and must help clarify social meanings
- g. Each unit of work must be accompanied by progress in the use of such tool subjects as contribute to that unit
- h. Each unit of work must lead to the development of desirable habits

#### A MAJOR UNIT ON TREES

This activity unit on Trees was prepared by Miss Laura Knoell of the Bellevue School, Dodge County, Nebraska. Miss Knoell made use of this material in her own school, particularly in grades five to eight, inclusive; but she states that every child in the school was interested, and that the activity lasted almost an entire school year. This outline of activities is largely suggestive and should not be used by any teacher without adaptation to individual conditions and needs. Neither Miss Richmond nor Miss Knoell would expect any prepared unit, no matter how well done, to be handed over to all teachers as an enterprise which could be carried out equally well in all situations. In a study of trees Nebraska is an especially favorable state and no doubt Dodge County is a particularly favored county for such an enterprise. In other states and communities

other units may be, and often are, found more desirable. There are many units of a general nature, such as food, health, Indian life, and colonial life, which may be used to advantage in almost any school; other units, such as milk and dairy products, fruit growing, cotton, corn, grain, and manufacturing may have certain local aspects and values which make them especially useful as material for activity units.

#### A. Evaluation of unit of work

1. Nebraska was the home of J. Sterling Morton, founder of Arbor Day, whose former estate is not far from our school. Nebraska has contributed as no other state to Arbor Day and tree planting. We wanted children to feel the importance of their state and of its contribution to the world.

2. Nearly everyone in this state is probably interested in trees. The intense heat in summer necessitates trees for shade and the intense cold in winter calls for trees as windbreaks and shelter. In this environment the children have grown up with a natural interest in trees. Thousands of trees are planted here every year, and there is a widespread feeling of appreciation for them.

3. Nebraska is a state with many beautiful trees. The great number of trees in this particular locality, due to historical tree claims, provides a basis for historical study.

4. Nebraska is not considered a manufacturing state and does not provide numerous industrial situations that other states furnish and which serve as significant leads to other phases of life. It is an agricultural state, so we must use that as a lead to the study of other fields. The study of trees opened many new regions of interest for the pupils.

5. Previous training had been mostly through textbooks and the traditional type of program, so that an activity of this sort was helpful and enjoyable.

6. The unit involved many different phases of study which made allowance for individual differences. Children not interested in mental skills chose manual activity work with wood. Others were more interested in intellectual aspects of the unit.

7. Different species of trees do not grow naturally in Nebraska. It was interesting to study the trees that do not grow here as well as those which do, and why.

8. It has provided many social contacts with outside people in other parts of the country and with each other. Talks with pioneers who took tree claims, getting samples of trees in other localities, etc., have furnished social opportunities.

9. Trees were studied in connection with history (tree claims and historical trees under which Indians signed important treaties, trees which served as guides to pioneers on their way west, etc.), geography (trees in relation to climate and rainfall), and reading, spelling, writing, vocabulary building, cooking, and arithmetic.

#### B. How the enterprise originated

1. It was a yearly custom for the teacher to take her children nutting the first month of school. This experience led to further study of trees.

2. The teacher pointed out various peculiarities of trees. Children started to name the trees that they knew. Some trees they did not know, so they decided to take home the leaves and a piece of the bark and ask the father of one of the pupils, who knew a great deal about trees, to tell them what kind they were and something about them. This led to the study of many other trees.

3. The next natural step was a visit to the lumber yard. This trip resulted in a study of forests and of various kinds of trees.

4. Through study of regions and climates in connection with geography, the children became interested in studying trees in different countries and the influence of location.

#### C. Other approaches that might have been used

1. On Arbor Day a trip was taken to the former home of J. Sterling Morton, the founder of Arbor Day. We visited this beautiful home, park, and museum.

2. We visited the large grove a very short distance from the school house. There were many different kinds of trees, here was definite possibility of starting an interesting study of trees.

3. Children brought in branches, leaves, nuts, or some product of trees which interested the group in further study.

4. In connection with constructive activities which made it necessary to use various kinds of wood, children were curious as to the source of the wood.

5. As a result of pictures brought to school (California redwoods, palms, or other trees seen on vacation trips) discussions developed as to why these trees do not grow here.

6. Discussions in nature study of birds, squirrels, chipmunks, and other animals who build their homes in trees.

7. Curiosity concerning the various woods of which schoolroom furniture is made.

8. Story entitled, "The Discontented Pine Tree" was read by the children.

9. A visit to a noted horticulturist in a near-by city who specializes in odd varieties of trees and in the grafting of them.

D Activities in keeping with children's interests 1. Collecting leaves, buds, blossoms, twigs, and fruit of each tree for an exhibit sent to another school. 2 Collecting samples of various kinds of woods used in constructive activity 3. Collecting pictures of lumber regions of the United States 4 Collecting seeds of various trees, noting likenesses and differences, later putting these into a book Collecting leaves for a booklet. 5. Collecting nuts of various trees. 6. Drawing trees of different shapes to be put into a booklet 7 Making a cover design of trees to be used for a book 8 Making books of collections and illustrations and written descriptions of them 9 Writing a story to accompany an exhibit for another school 10 Writing stories on what they learned about trees 11. Listing uses of trees. 12 Observing the buds which open in the spring 13 Illustrating a lumber scene in the sand table. 14. Organizing a Nature Club A badge given to anyone for any valuable contribution to the group concerning trees 15 Study of other manufactured products of trees—paper, lumber, honey, silk, lead pencils Making a collection of these products. 16 Grab bag game—box containing various questions concerning trees Each child drew a question and was held responsible for answering This involved making reports to the group 17 Gathering nuts for winter use 18 Planting a tree in the school yard on Arbor Day 19. Taking kodak pictures of beautiful and exceptional trees. Making an exhibit. 20 Reading, writing, composing stories about trees 21. Collecting poems about trees 22 Learning the poem, "Trees," by Joyce Kilmer 23 Starting an apple tree from seed and grafting it (This takes longer than one year) 24 Reports from various children about trees Material read at home or in the city library. 25. Keeping a record of experiences in study of trees 26. Collection of various products of trees from all over the world 27 Observing tree being sawed down and noting rings which indicate age. 28 Organizing a club 29 Making jelly from fruit gathered in orchards.

E. Children's questions: 1 What is a forest? 2 How is lumber made? 3 How do trees get moisture? 4 Do all trees have flowers? 5. Does rain affect buds? 6 How do buds open? 7 How can you tell how old a tree is? 8. What kinds of trees have red buds? 9. How do bees get honey from tree blossoms? 10. How are canoes made? 11 Why is it that eucalyptus and pepper trees do not grow in Nebraska? 12 How do eucalyptus trees grow? (a) Fast or slow? (b) From seed? How is the seed planted, cared for, transplanted? (c) What are the uses? 13. How do pines grow? (a) Fast or slow? (b) From seed? (c) How is the seed scattered by nature? (d) What is their use? 14. How do peppers grow? How is the seed scattered? What is their

use? 15 Why do we not have more oak trees in Nebraska? 16. What trees would be best to plant in our school yard? What trees resist the dry hot summers and withstand the cold winters? 17. Why are Chinese elms suggested as good trees for our school yard? 18. What trees would make a good windbreak on the north side of our school yard? 19. Why do trees grow tall? 20. The cherry tree has white flowers and red cherries, if the flowers were red, would the cherries be white? 21. Where do palm trees grow? 22. What takes the place of leaves on the pine tree? 23. How did trees first get to Nebraska? 24. Why do so many trees grow along river banks? Did someone plant them? 25. What was a tree claim? 26. Why is grafting necessary for fruit trees? 27. How can the Joshua tree grow in the desert? 28. Where did Christmas trees originate? 29. Why do people tap maple trees in spring instead of fall? 30. Why did J. Sterling Morton think Arbor Day a good idea? 31. Where is the oldest tree in Nebraska? 32. Why can't cotton be made from cottonwood trees? 33. From what kind of trees are telephone poles made? 34. Why do not all people make their houses of wood? 35. What kind of trees grow in the North? 36. What is a jungle? 37. How can trees grow on mountains? 38. What is the timber line? 39. What kind of trees would be best for our school ground? 40. How does lumber get to us? 41. Do trees grow in China? What kind?

F. Excursions: 1. Children and teacher went on their annual fall nutting trip 2. Children visited a sawmill in connection with study of local industry 3. Children took a trip to see a pine tree. 4. A tramp to identify as many trees as possible. 5. A field trip to a wooded section which resulted in making a collection of bright leaves, twigs, nuts, and fruit 6. Excursions to the home of the noted J. Sterling Morton; his park, museum, and beautiful home 7. Excursions to parks and residential districts for general observation of trees, to one residence in particular which has over 800 different varieties of trees and shrubs. 8. Excursion to historic tree claim to collect samples, identify the trees, and develop some appreciation of them 9. Visit to the dam and old sawmill 10. Visit to Plumfield Nursery 11. Visit to the home of the famous tree grafted near Ulysses, Nebraska, and noting the results of his grafting. 12. Excursion to home of Mr. M. —, a pioneer, who makes hand-carved furniture. Observed the unique table made of 1048 different pieces of wood 13. Excursion to the nursery to observe the different kinds of trees and to select a tree for the school yard 14. Visit to the home of an old pioneer who obtained his land through a tree claim. 15. Trips to various different kinds of trees chosen by the class for observation.

**G. Experiments:** 1. A piece of cheesecloth was tied over a glass jar partly filled with water. Cloth was pressed lower in the middle so that it was kept moist but not flooded. Seeds were sprinkled on the cloth and glass jar was set in bright sunshine. Seeds were watched as they sprouted. Coloring matter was put into the water and watched as it went up the stem. This showed the importance of roots to the plant. 2. Observed the effect of the sun on leaves. The leaves of the plants turn toward the sun. Why? 3. Observed how the plants take up moisture. Flowers in vase of water. Water is soon gone. Why? 4. Observed the effect of light on leaves. Plants put in the dark soon turn yellow. Why? 5. Experiment in grafting trees. 6. Observed how trees get moisture through their roots. 7. Observed how trees react to various kinds of soil. 8. Planted some seeds in clay, in sand, in loam, noted differences. Why are there differences? 9. Experiments with fungus plants. Note especially those which are enemies of trees. 10. Experiments to note the necessity of bark on trees. Cut a narrow ring around the tree. The tree died. Why?

**H. Use of State Museum:** 1. A forestry collection was received from the State Museum. 2. Teacher visited Museum in connection with study of wood. 3. Trip to Museum to learn how Indians used trees: canoes, bows and arrows, looms, tepees, etc. 4. Trip to note curios made from trees, such as redwood balls, palm leaf fans, etc. 5. Trip to note colonial and antique furniture, different kinds of wood used, to determine why so durable. 6. At the Museum note pieces of petrified forest. 7. Trip to note ancient use of wood for printing and wood carving. 8. Trip to observe wood from other countries. Note the influence trees have on people, or on their homes, furniture, etc. 9. Trips to note various uses of wood. 10. Collection of antique furniture for the school museum.

**I. Use of pictures, films, stereopticons, etc.:** 1. Use of pictures in the study of paper. 2. Use of pictures in the study of the lumber industry. 3. Pictures of various kinds of trees in other countries. 4. Collecting pictures of lumber regions. 5. Study of masterpieces of painting "Spring"; "Dance of Nymphs", "Harp of the Winds", "Avenue of Trees"; others. 6. Collection of pictures of various kinds of trees in all parts of the country to put in children's books. 7. Use of pictures from nursery catalogues (These are not very useful for tree study, however). 8. Films available from the Bureau of Visual Instruction, New York City.

**J. Books that helped us:** Teacher and children used practically the same books. They borrowed many of them from the Fremont City

Library and Midland College Library, Fremont, Nebraska, from the State Traveling Library, and from the County Superintendent.

- 1 Apgar—*Trees of the Northern United States*, American Book. 1928
- 2 Bailey—*Standard Encyclopedia of Horticulture*, Macmillan 1914
- 3 Berry—*Western Forest Trees*; World Book 1924
- 4 Comstock—*Handbook of Nature Study*, Comstock. 1929
- 5 Curtis—*A Guide to Trees*, Greenberg 1925
- 6 Curtis—*Stories in Trees*; Lyons and Carnahan 1925
- 7 Elson-Kelly—*Child Library Readers, III*, Scott, Foresman. 1929
8. *Encyclopedias Americana*
- 9 *Encyclopedias Britannica*
- 10 Forestry Society of U. S.—*Bulletin No 5*, U S Dept of Agriculture
11. Free and Treadwell—*Readers*, Book II, Row, Peterson. 1920.  
“The Fir Tree”, “The Discontented Pine Tree”
12. Going—*Our Field and Forest Trees*, McClurg 1928
13. Holbrook—*The Book of Nature Myths*, Houghton 1902. “Why the Evergreen Trees Never Lose Their Leaves” and “Why the Juniper Tree Has Berries”
14. Keeler—*Our Native Trees and How to Identify Them*, Scribner. 1900
- 15 Lewis and Rowland—*Facts and Fancies*, Book IV, Winston 1930.  
“The Pine Tree”
- 16 Lewis and Rowland—*Whys and Wherefores*, Book V, Winston.  
1930 “The Wonderland of Redwood Trees”
- 17 Mathews—*Familiar Trees and Their Leaves*, Appleton 1923
- 18 McFarland—*Getting Acquainted with Trees*; Macmillan 1924
19. McFee—*The Tree Book*, Stokes. 1919
20. Moon—*The Book of Forestry*, Appleton-Century 1927
21. Moseley—*Trees, Stars, Birds*, World Book 1924
22. Pack—*School Book of Forestry*, American Tree Association 1922
23. Pack—*The Forestry Primer*, American Tree Association 1926
24. Pack—*Trees as Good Citizens*, American Tree Association 1922
25. Pack, Lathrop, and Gill—*Forest Facts for Schools*, Macmillan 1921
26. Pearson-Hunt—*Everyday Reading*, Book I, American Book. 1927  
“Why We Love Our Trees”
27. Pinchot—*A Primer of Forestry*; U S Dept. of Agriculture 1928
28. Pinchot—*Use of National Forests*; U S Dept. of Agriculture. 1928
29. Rogers—*Tree Guide*, Doubleday. 1931
30. Rogers—*Trees Every Child Should Know*, Grosset and Dunlap 1909
31. *Scientific American*, Vol. 115, July to December, 1916, Munn
32. Stokes—*Ten Common Trees*, American Tree Association 1926

**K. People who helped with the activity:** 1. Father of one child visited our school and answered questions. 2. Department of Agri-

culture furnished information. 3. Mr A , Ulysses, Nebraska, a specialist in grafting, tree planting, etc 4 Caretaker at the J Sterling Morton home. 5 Mr C , owner of lumber yard, told children about the lumber industry and how lumber gets to us 6 Mr K , who has a collection of various kinds of wood in his museum and is one of our pioneer citizens. 7. Mr. M., who has a hobby of making furniture of small pieces of various kinds of wood. 8 Owner of log cabin who has a collection of antique furniture 9. Information from owner of saw-mill on how lumber is made. 10 Information from nurseryman about growing trees and caring for them 11. Information from County Agricultural Agent on how to care for trees, the most valuable trees to plant in the school yard; how to get more information about trees 12 Talks with pioneers about how trees helped them 13 Information from owner of large orchard about fruit trees, enemies of trees, care of trees.

**L. Construction possibilities:** 1 Made charts of trees and birds. 2 Planted nuts in boxes 3 Made blueprints of leaves 4. Put collections in books 5 Beautified school yard by planting trees and caring for them 6 Constructed toys, doll furniture, animals 7 Constructed school furniture; tables for exhibits 8 Constructed bird-houses. 9 Constructed gifts for parents and friends, such as book-ends, tables, etc 10 Made sawmill and illustrated a lumber camp on floor and out-of-doors 11 Waxed or shellacked leaves to make more permanent 12 Started trees in boxes by use of seeds. 13 Simple wood carving. 14 Stick printing 15. Made picture frames and mounted pictures 16 Children became interested in entire telephone system after learning about the poles

**M. Communications:** 1 Communications with nurserymen for pamphlets, booklets, etc , on trees 2 Communications with children of a New England school and a California school to exchange exhibits with them. 3 Writing to lumber companies for pamphlets and booklets 4 Writing to nurseries for pamphlets, booklets, and other materials on trees 5 Communications with County Agent, Department of Agriculture, and Agricultural College for information. 6 Communications with lumber companies for material on trees

**N. Play:** 1 Play in the leaves 2 Play in matching leaves 3. Puppet show to illustrate the story of life in a lumber camp 4 Dramatization for Arbor Day Program 5 Climbing trees 6 Making swings 7 Dramatizing stories read or told about trees. 8 Play with toys and articles constructed. 9. Entertainment or play for Arbor

Day Program to which parents were invited Tree Unit was explained to parents at that time

**O. School subjects and associated learnings:**

1 Reading Stories from readers, library books, books at home, pamphlets and booklets, reference books for answer to questions, *Instructor* and other magazines, and stories that teacher wrote and mimeographed

2 Writing Neat explanations to go with pictures in books, letters for information, and information to accompany exhibits

3 Arithmetic (a) construction of articles, measuring, estimating amount of lumber needed, figuring cost of lumber (b) buying trees for school ground, estimating, ordering (c) estimating heights of trees, circumferences, ages (d) making jelly from fruit gathered in orchards (recipe). (e) sale of jelly and articles made

4 History Origin of tree claims, use which pioneers made of trees, how trees were used by Indians, how certain trees helped gold seekers, people moving westward, and Indians to find their way, how trees were used as a way of getting land, how trees sheltered the first settlers in this country, historical trees of Nebraska and of United States, what oak and sycamore meant to ancient peoples, American trees which have had a place in history, such as the Charter Oak, William Penn Tree, etc

5 Geography How different lands and climates make growth of trees possible, from study of products to study of trees, industries that developed from use of trees, localities where trees grow, location of national forests, petrified forests, how trees have a connection with the geography of a country (for example, in China trees served to retain a certain amount of moisture, now they have been cut down and China has great floods every year), how climate and rainfall affect trees—jungle trees, Joshua trees in deserts, cottonwood trees in Nebraska, eucalyptus trees in California, etc. Why they grow in these places

6 Drawing Collecting and pasting pictures; drawing leaves, drawing, painting, and coloring trees; painting and sketching trees with special regard to shape, study of famous masterpieces of art which are pictures of beautiful trees, study of proportion, balance, and many other fundamentals of drawing and color as found in trees and in all nature, collecting drawings and pictures

7 Nature Study Names of trees in home locality and others, what trees give us, enemies of trees, how they harm and how destroy them, reforestation, study of birds and animals that use trees for their homes; study of peculiarities of certain trees, their leaves, shapes, bark, enemies,

etc., planting trees; industrial processes developed through the use of products of trees, study of forests and trees found in forests, ability to recognize the trees of Nebraska and to know interesting things about them.

8. Spelling Words needed to write letters, in making books, in writing stories, record books, poems, etc.

9. Language Oral reports, business letters, poetry—classics committed to memory and originals composed by class, reports of committees, conversations with people in securing information, making records of experiences.

10. Hygiene Food values of various kinds of nuts, values of fruits; healthful foods that we get from trees—maple sugar, for example, healthfulness of outdoor life.

11. Gardening Planting trees in school yard for decorative purposes and as windbreaks.

12. Knowledge—habits—attitudes—appreciations. Knowledge of trees, characteristics, growth, use, habits of co-operation, of organization of work with classmates, habits of control and unselfishness, skill in sewing, gluing, preserving leaves, cutting, writing, composing stories, letters, reading, speaking, interest in nature and increased wonder about her attractions, ability to distinguish trees, appreciation of beauty of trees, appreciation of uses of trees and their relation to human life, desire and ability to prepare something of value which involves study and work, favorable attitudes toward habits of study; beginning of habits of scientific investigation; development of ability to observe accurately.

13. Music Songs in connection with trees, of trees when wind is blowing, sound of sawmill, song of woodcutter, making songs about trees, Joyce Kilmer's famous "Trees"

14. Citizenship Care of trees at home, on school ground, in community; care of forest lands, fire prevention measures and regulations.

15. Tests made and used by teacher. Completion tests, yes-no tests, blank-filling tests, direction tests; commercial standardized tests also used.

#### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

1. CALIFORNIA STATE CURRICULUM—*Teacher's Guide to Child Development*; California State Printing Office 1930. \$1.00
2. CLAUSER, L. W. & OTHERS—*Educative Experiences through Activity Units*, Lyons and Carnahan, 2500 Prairie Avenue, Chicago, Illinois. 1932 \$1.80.

3. DEPARTMENT OF RURAL EDUCATION N. E. A.—*Organization of Curriculum for One-Teacher Schools.* 1933. \$25.
4. GUSTIN, M., and HAYES, M. L—*Activities in the Public School;* University of North Carolina, Box 510, Chapel Hill, N. C. 1934.
5. KNOX, Rose—*School Activities and Equipment;* Houghton Mifflin Company. 1927.
6. LANE, R. H.—*A Teacher's Guide to the Activity Program,* The Macmillan Company. 1934.
7. NATIONAL COLLEGE OF EDUCATION—*Curriculum Records of the Children's Bureau of Publication,* National School of Education. 1932
8. NATIONAL SOCIETY FOR THE STUDY OF EDUCATION—33d Yearbook, Part 2, *The Activity Movement,* Public School Publishing Company, 509-513 East St., Bloomington, Illinois 1934.

#### USEFUL MAGAZINES

1. *American Childhood*—Milton Bradley Company, Springfield, Massachusetts \$2.00
2. *Childhood Education*—Association for Childhood Education, Washington, D. C. \$2.50
3. *Progressive Education*—Progressive Education Association. New York City. \$3.00.

## CHAPTER XXI

### DIRECTING STUDY ACTIVITIES IN THE RURAL SCHOOL

**Meaning of study.** During the past quarter century, since Dr F. M. McMurry's famous and classical book on study appeared, the term *study* has come to have a much wider and more definite meaning than formerly. It is now clearly understood that study implies vastly more than merely reading and memorizing the text. Usually study has had reference to the acquisition of knowledge from the printed page, but teachers should also understand that study often involves objective activities of various kinds in which rocks, leaves, flowers, corn, and other things in the world itself are examined and studied. Pupils may study through directed observation as in excursions or by consulting various people, such as a farmer, relative to the selection of seed corn, to secure their knowledge. If one were to give a fairly comprehensive characterization of study, it would probably be correct to say that study is *thinking*. The term *thinking* is used here in the general sense to mean much that is involved in the learning process, including various forms of imagery, the forming of the general notion, and reasoning, both inductive and deductive. McMurry defines study as "the work that is necessary in the assimilation of ideas,"—"the vigorous application of the mind to a subject for the satisfaction of a felt need." Worth-while study includes the formulation of problems and the gathering of data for their solution. Pupils often need to seek facts so as to be able to prove a proposition, and this is one element in study.

In genuine study pupils will be taught to challenge the value and worth of textbook statements and of the statements of members of the class and others. Many times the class will need to arrange the statements of the text in the order of their im-

portance Making logical outlines to show such subordination of material is a useful form of study "To study is to apply the mind to books, arts, or any subject, for the purpose of acquiring knowledge, to study is to acquire knowledge by systematic investigation, reading, memorizing or the like, to fix the mind closely upon a subject for the purpose of acquiring knowledge" <sup>1</sup> Study, in its highest and best sense, consists in bringing the whole mind to bear upon the accomplishment of a distinct learning purpose through effort, attention, reason, and continued mental occupation or engrossment, when the purpose is in the nature of or involves a problem of immediate personal interest True study results in ideals, habits, interests, and abilities

**Significance of study.** It is practically impossible to overestimate the value of study to a pupil or the importance of forming right habits of study To be able to study effectively is an infinitely greater practical power in life than the ability to recite subject matter which has been mechanically memorized from a textbook In the average rural school the teacher is usually a hearer of book lessons If half the time now spent on the testing recitation could be used in supervised study, particularly during a study-recitation exercise, the pupils would profit greatly by the shift of emphasis If a pupil learns how genuinely to study while in the eight grades, he may readily become a life-long student; his subsequent career in high school and college is much more likely to be both pleasant and profitable On the other hand, many a child has taken a distaste for all knowledge and learning because his teacher did not appreciate the importance of study or know how to teach right methods of study A young person's mind often becomes so inundated with the ideas of other people, through books and from other sources, that he apparently loses the power of using his own ideas He thus becomes the victim of other people's ideas. If the art of study is properly taught, the pupil will learn to evalu-

<sup>1</sup> Reproduced by permission of the publishers of *Webster's New International Dictionary*, Second Edition Copyright, 1934, by G and C Merriam Company, Springfield, Mass

ate the ideas of others, to think independently for himself, to achieve his own ends.

**Objectives in study.** In study that is worthy of the name a variety of aims or goals may be set up for the guidance of teacher and pupils. Sometimes the purpose is to solve a problem in reading, arithmetic, geography, history, or other subject. If a pupil finds a satisfactory and therefore rational answer to the question, "Why has Chicago grown to be one of the largest cities in the world?" he will surely need to study. In answering the question he may need to use several different books. Study often consists in attentive repetition to develop added skill or to help fix a habit. John may drill himself on *7 plus 8* or on how to spell *privilege*. The teacher must prepare the child for the drill work by suitable preliminary teaching and by the necessary supervision while it is going on. Study often consists in learning how to use a book to the best advantage—its table of contents, index, arrangement of topics, and appendices. Such study is best as a group exercise under the teacher's direct supervision, although the child can also be taught to work by himself. Sometimes profitable study may be the making of a list of references on a particular subject, using several books designated by the teacher. Topics like cotton, corn, Lincoln, irrigation, Revolutionary War, and Declaration of Independence may be "run down" in the library with great profit. Again, study may take the form of memorization, providing this form of study has been preceded by painstaking teaching. If there has been preliminary class work, pupils may memorize certain definitions, stanzas of poetry, and other material by themselves, though much of such memorization work is better as supervised group study.

Another objective may be set up when pupils are taught and trained to select the most important statements in the lesson and to tell why they are important. Such study involves writing in which the pupil prepares for a class discussion. He will use his notes to make his contribution to a socialized conversation. It is often useful to have pupils pass judgment upon statements of the text or of any source material. Did Lincoln do right, in

your judgment, when he issued the Emancipation Proclamation? What are your reasons for thinking as you do? Pupils will never develop power to judge unless they are practiced in giving judgments. An aim, or objective, which should often be consciously realized is that of applying the knowledge learned. Pupils in a rural school may be taught a great deal of usable subject matter, just how this may be used in life is a vital subject for consideration. A great deal of study in every rural school should center around a carefully prepared list of problem questions in history, geography, reading, or nature. In working out the answers to such questions, the child should be taught that the single textbook often needs to be supplemented. Illustrations may be found in other sources and the child can be taught to study subjects, topics, and problems, not merely books.

**Maintaining suitable conditions.** In many rural schools physical conditions for successful study are far from satisfactory. The room is frequently hot and stuffy, and lighting conditions are often unfavorable. The temperature should be kept between sixty-five and sixty-eight degrees Fahrenheit; the air should be changed frequently. If there is no ventilating system, the room should be thoroughly aired out every hour, especially if there are many pupils. Single desks are greatly to be preferred, of course. Pupils should be taught to get all their books and materials ready before they begin to study. Pencils should be sharpened, and pen and ink should be at hand so that the study time will not be interrupted. Many a country school pupil cannot study successfully because he is suffering from some physical handicap, such as defective eyesight, defective teeth, adenoids, or obstructed nasal passages. The pupil must be at ease physically, and external causes for disturbance and distraction should be reduced to the minimum. In other words, conditions favorable to the concentration of the mind should prevail. Teacher and pupils should talk in low conversational tones. The emotional tone of the school should be pleasing and gently stimulating; the general spirit of the school should be invigorating, not ir-

ritating or distracting. The emotional element is highly important in all study; it is the duty of the teacher to provide a proper emotional atmosphere.

**Important study habits.** The study habits which a child forms in school will probably be of greater lifelong service to him than anything else the school can do for him. If he forms the very bad habit of accepting statements in a book or elsewhere in an unquestioning, uncritical attitude he may easily in adult life become the victim of various schemers and promoters who prey upon the unthinking, gullible public, upon people who are ignorant and who have not learned how to solve their own problems independently. Among the important habits of study which a child should acquire are the habits of gathering *sufficient* data for the solution of his problem, of organizing the facts which have been secured so that they represent a definite, co-ordinated whole, of properly evaluating evidence so that its usefulness for the purpose in mind may be adequately fixed, of testing conclusions to see whether they are based upon sufficient evidence and whether they can be suitably verified by various methods of proof, of suspending judgment when the facts, data, or evidence in hand do not seem to be sufficient for making a deduction. A thoughtful teacher will be far more concerned to see that such valuable habits are formed, even if not so much subject matter is covered. It is a progressive day in a teacher's experience when she realizes that subject matter is in this regard only the means to an end. In study the subject matter comprises the learning materials with which teacher and pupils work. It is to be used to realize educational objectives and not to be memorized without thought or question.

**Problems motivate study.** Study cannot be discussed without some consideration of the problem idea, for study is thinking; the need for thinking arises when there is a problem requiring solution. Life is made up of problems, as has been pointed out in Chapter XVII, when anyone has a personal problem the solution of which is a vital matter for the individual, there is the natural setting for the highest type of motivated study. Study

carried forward under the stimulus of a personally interesting and significant problem is the most fruitful of all study. Whenever life presents new conditions which must be faced and reckoned with, the individual must depart from the beaten path of habitual action, and a new course of procedure must be mapped out. This requires thinking, the essential element in any study worthy of the name.

**Study in the rural school.** In the average rural school the work of study is usually neglected because the teacher does not know its importance or how to train pupils in good habits of study. Much of the pupil's time is wasted in gazing at the page, in listless, purposeless reading, or possibly in mischief. Some teachers tell even little first-grade children to go to their seats and study their lessons. When you think of it, what a ridiculous direction! How can small pupils study a reading lesson? What would such study be like? Small pupils cannot do successful individual work. Their study needs to be supervised, carefully directed group work with small children is the best solution of the problem. Usually the smaller pupils in a rural school should either have profitable, directed, individual, educational seat-work or group activities, or be out-of-doors playing. In the rural school the teacher need not and should not "hear recitations," one after the other, all day. She requires time between classes to supervise the work of individuals in all grades. It will often be time well spent, if teacher and pupils will work together in a group exercise, where study, rather than recitation, predominates. Supervised dictionary study is very profitable, teacher and pupils may well study the spelling lesson and other lessons together, also. Pupils in a rural school need much instruction and training in the art of mastering the printed page. Topics need to be broken up and study questions made out. Such work may profitably be done during a study-recitation. Altogether too much time is spent on testing, particularly through the use of the oral question-and-answer procedure, which is often a sheer waste of time and practically barren of educational results.

**Individual supervised study.** The rural teacher should understand that supervised study in her school may go on during a study recitation or it may be carried out between classes or recitations. There should be both kinds of supervised study, the first largely a group activity, while the supervision as the teacher goes from desk to desk is mostly individual. An up-to-date rural teacher will cut down her testing recitations, and do a great deal more of this supervised-study work than most teachers are doing at present.

It is well to keep in mind that when you are working with a pupil in his study activities, you are teaching him as truly as when you hear him recite his lesson—often much more so. Pupils vary greatly in their need for help. Some need just a hint, others require repeated and daily assistance in all the steps of their study and acquisition. No child should be helped to the extent of robbing him of the power and the joy which comes through personal victory in overcoming difficulties. It is a fine art, learned only by practice, to know when to help and when to keep hands off in this supervised study. Many times the teacher's function is simply to show pupils where they can find the help they need, and then to leave them to work out the problem by themselves.

It will be useful frequently to assist a pupil in formulating and stating his problem or questions, set him on the track of the solution, and then leave him to his own devices. It happens many times that a child has difficulty because he does not read carefully, thoughtfully, adequately. By the use of a skillful question or two the teacher should stimulate the pupil to go over the paragraph or topic again to find the facts which he has failed to get before. In all of this individual work with a pupil the teacher can easily train the child to make notes in good form, which is one of the important factors in successful study. Here is opportunity for fruitful, well-motivated work in English. A well-kept notebook in geography, history, and other subjects may certainly be an objective worth considerable time and thought.

In the work with individual pupils at their seats a teacher will

be able to observe the study habits of each child. If a pupil is wasting his time, the teacher should know why, there are various reasons, the chief of which are lack of adequate motivation and of sufficient knowledge and skill in the art of study. A great deal of time is wasted because pupils have wasteful habits of work. If the child is discouraged or finds study distasteful, the teacher should know it and find ways of overcoming the difficulties. Find out if the child reads the lesson material over without attention to meanings or to implications and applications. Find how he memorizes. Inquire into his methods of attack, and teach him to go below the surface. The rural teacher should spend many so-called group recitation periods in showing pupils just how to do their work. Study skills vary greatly according to types of subject matter and also in relation to the maturity and advancement of the pupil. Use whatever time is necessary to show pupils how to use dictionaries, encyclopedias, and other references.

**Directed group activities.** Successful rural teachers are making increasing use of class periods for directed study activities. They find that they can save a great deal of time in this way both for themselves and for their pupils; moreover, they have discovered that in this way pupils learn more and that better results are secured in the several varieties of testing procedures. The general purpose of directed-study lessons is to do anything for pupils which will enable them to work profitably by themselves. Often the teacher will actually go over the lesson with the class, all having books open, carefully taking entire periods for the purpose. It may be that in this way a new learning unit may be presented so that the members of the class will get a connected bird's-eye view of the related parts, and so that enough subject matter will be opened up for several days of independent, individual study. If study is well done, the testing procedures will move forward quickly and without much difficulty. In this directed group activity the teacher should endeavor to bring out the difficulties of the whole class and the particular difficulties of individuals. This type of class activity is not a recitation, it is a discussion and a planning exercise.

during which objectives will be set up and very definite preparation made for the work of the pupils at their own seats. Both teacher and pupils talk and both ask questions. It will frequently be a good thing for the teacher to give an overview or a preview and possibly a pretest for diagnostic purposes. Problems will be formulated, reference books listed, study questions assigned. Pupils will go from such an exercise with a conviction that the new unit has important learning possibilities in it.

**Study of things.** In geography, agriculture, nature study, physiology, and some other subjects, teacher and pupils will often find it best to get their knowledge at first hand. For example, in the lesson on the formation of soils, it will not be difficult to have pupils bring in various kinds of rocks, such as sandstone, limestone, and granite, and to examine them to see how they differ. In study of this kind the teacher may help matters greatly if she will direct it by calling attention to important characteristics through the use of study questions. What is the color of each rock? Which seems to be hardest? Softest? Which do you think you could break up most easily? Of what is the sandstone made? If the limestone breaks up what sort of soil is made from it? How many kinds of elements can you see in the granite? Pupils may also bring to school various kinds of soil, such as sandy soil, clay soil, or rich black loam, for examination and study. The study of things should be almost a daily affair in any live, up-to-date, rural school.

**Analyze the lesson.** In order to illustrate the use and value of outlines and study questions, let us take a geography lesson for pupils in the fifth or sixth grade. Many times these two grades are combined into one class in the rural school. Many books give useful study questions, and the teacher should instruct pupils in the use of these questions. Such instruction should be given during a study-recitation period. The following outline and questions are based upon a lesson in a well-known first book in geography.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> From BRIGHAM AND MCFARLANE—*Essentials of Geography—First Book*, p. 10, by arrangement with American Book Company, Publishers.

The general subject of the lesson is "How Rocks Are Broken up to Form Soil"—The first sentence, a paragraph, gives the general theme "There are several ways in which rocks are broken up to form soil" Then these different ways are discussed as indicated in this list of topics

- (1) Effect of heating and cooling
- (2) Effect of water on sandstone
- (3) Effect of water freezing in rocks
- (4) Effect of growing roots
- (5) Rock covered with soil
  - (a) As seen in cellar or hill side
  - (b) Variations of different layers
- (6) Small stones moved by stream
  - (a) Effect of rubbing together
  - (b) Effect of a flood
  - (c) Breaking up of stones
- (7) Why stones are smooth and round
- (8) Fine particles worn off
  - (a) Carried away by streams
  - (b) Deposited in still water

At the close of the discussion, which takes up about a page, there is a summary as follows "Soil is formed chiefly from broken rock. Rocks may be broken by quick changes of temperature, by the dissolving of natural cement, by water freezing in them, by the growth of the roots of plants, and by the bumping together of stones in the moving water of streams"

One of the elements in study is the making of such summaries, and pupils should be practiced daily in this art of getting the meat out of the discussion

Study questions based upon the lesson, to be used by pupils in study at their seats, might be as follows (1) What is the general subject of the lesson? (2) Is this a good title? Name another one (3) What is the first way mentioned and where can you find a good illustration of it? (4) What happens when the cement is dissolved? What dissolves the cement? (5) What happens when water gets into rocks? (6) How can you show that rocks will take up water? (7) What is the effect of growing roots? Did you ever see a case of this kind? Where? (8) Have you seen

different layers of fine and coarse rock in a hill side? What does this prove? (9) How can moving stones make soil? (10) How can you show this? (11) Bring a round stone to school. What made it round? (12) Be able to give the summary when you come to class. How many ways are mentioned?

**Use of workbooks.** We are now witnessing a veritable deluge of workbooks in every conceivable field of subject matter. Some of these workbooks are highly educational in character, and some of them are evidently prepared rather carelessly with no particular educational principles or objectives in mind. The rural teacher should unquestionably make use of workbooks because, for one reason, they are one useful means of solving the problem of individual study. However, every teacher should consider whether a particular workbook fits in with the state course and whether pupils will be able to use it with success and profit. A good workbook is well organized and carefully graded. It is adapted to the age and grade for which it is intended. It is prepared in such a way that the children will get valuable knowledge, skills, and attitudes in using it. It provides adequate, clear, definite, concise directions, and furnishes the proper blank spaces for well-considered answers. It is decidedly not a device for merely giving children something to take up their time, like the old so-called "busy work." It must be scientifically correct, educationally sound, and up-to-date. The good workbook furnishes means for the pupil to test his accuracy and his progress; instructions for making graphs of individual achievements are often given. Teachers must thoroughly realize that all workbook study must be carefully directed and checked. If workbooks are intelligently and wisely used, they are of great help to rural teachers.

**Memorization as a by-product of thinking.** Which is worth more—to have a girl memorize "October's Bright Blue Weather" (often in a more or less mechanical fashion) or to have her understand it and appreciate the beauty of it? There is only one answer to the question. Should not memorization be a by-product of the thinking and appreciation, at least for the

most part? If the child has clear, definite images of the goldenrod, the fringed gentian which closes up its blue eyes at night, the brook, the bumblebee, and all the rest, and if there is appreciative reading on the teacher's part, together with both conscious and unconscious imitation on the part of the child, will not the poet's message get into the heart and the life of the child more certainly than through a mere memorization of words? Furthermore, how much time has a teacher for testing pupils in a class exercise as to whether they can repeat the words of a poem or not? Wouldn't it be much better to use the class period for an appreciation lesson, then do the testing in some incidental way, perhaps outside of the class period and by writing, at least in part? Unquestionably children should store in mind many beautiful poetic selections. In the case of the poem mentioned one beautiful stanza, perhaps selected by the pupil himself and learned with genuine appreciation, would mean much more to him in after years than the formal, routine memorizing of all the words. Study poetry *with* the pupils much more, and strive to reduce unthinking memorization of mere words to the zero point whenever possible.

**A directed-study class exercise.** The particular subject in the agriculture class which seemed to be causing difficulty was *Weeds*.<sup>1</sup> It was perhaps not so much a difficulty in understanding the statements of the text, for they were quite clear and definite. The problem was mainly one of organization and presentation. The teacher had been asking scrappy questions in miscellaneous order, and the pupils in the class had responded in fragments of statements. So this teacher, who had recently been to a meeting where the study-recitation was discussed, and who had also been reading up on the subject, resolved to stop the testing recitation procedure and to *study weeds with the children and with the books open*.

The lesson came in the month of September, the six members of the A class—Mary, Jane, Alice, George, Henry, and John—had brought

<sup>1</sup> UPHAM, A. A., AND SCHMIDT, G. A.—*An Introduction to Agriculture*, D. Appleton-Century Company, New York.

to school various weeds, including ragweed, quack grass, Canada thistle, burdock, wild parsnip, plantain, yellow dock, purslane, and prickly lettuce. These weeds were in sight and available for study, along with the book. There were six topics in the text, the teacher asked John to name the different topics, which he did. They were as follows: What a Weed Is—Why Weeds Are Enemies—Classes of Weeds—Annuals, and How to Kill Them—Biennials, and How to Kill Them—Perennials, and How to Kill Them. John was asked if he could think of any other topic which should be discussed under the head of weeds. He was unable to name another.

"Mary, what is the definition of a weed?" Mary reads—"A weed is a plant growing where it is not wanted." "Do you think that is a good definition? Why? Are all weeds on your farm also weeds everywhere else? Illustrate."

"Alice, in the topic, 'Why Weeds Are Enemies,' how many different reasons are given?" Alice reads silently and intently and says that she finds five reasons given. She names these five reasons. "What else, Alice, is given in this paragraph besides the five reasons?" Alice looks carefully and states that she finds a quotation relative to the unsightliness and disgrace of weeds. "From what is this quotation taken?" Alice does not know nor do any of the others. See if you can find out by tomorrow. Alice tells her teacher in the morning that the quoted sentence is from the Bible, her mother had told her and she locates and gives the statement.

"Henry, how many and what classes of weeds are named?" Henry looks at the book and answers correctly. "Henry, what is the chief characteristic of annuals? Of biennials? Of perennials?" Henry looks sharply, and then the teacher has him tell the distinguishing attributes without looking in the book. The teacher then suggests that Henry write the three definitions carefully on the board. He makes some mistakes, which all take a hand in correcting. The English is noted carefully, and the work is finally done neatly and in good form.

Mary, Jane, and George contribute their share, and the last three topics are carefully analyzed so that the pupils understand and can separate the large points or heads. By use of the book the different members of the class note that of the specimens in the room there are three annuals, ragweed, purslane, and prickly lettuce. There are two biennials, burdock and wild parsnip. The perennials are quack grass, yellow dock, plantain, and Canada thistle. In all this work teacher and pupils co-operate in a socialized study-recitation. The pupils have also been asking questions concerning the book statements and relative to the various specimens.

As a result of the study of the text, teacher and pupils work out an

outline which the teacher places on the board with the help of the pupils. The outline looks about as follows:

I. What a Weed Is	II. Why Weeds Are Enemies
1. Definition	1. Prevent plant growth
2. Characteristics	2. Take moisture
3. Sweet clover	3. Take plant food
4. Oats and grass	4. Shade plants
	5. Harbor insects

III. Classes of Weeds

- 1. Annuals
  - a. Definition and nature
  - b. Examples (5)
  - c. How to kill
    - (1) Cultivation
    - (2) Prevent going to seed
    - (3) Burning
- 2. Biennials
  - a. Definition and nature
  - b. Examples (5)
  - c. How to kill
    - (1) Why more difficult
    - (2) Use of spud on lawns
    - (3) Prevent going to seed
- 3. Perennials
  - a. Definition and nature
  - b. Examples (5)
  - c. How to kill
    - (1) Great difficulty
    - (2) Killing roots
    - (3) Smothering
    - (4) Use of salt and acid
    - (5) Three best ways

As a result of this study together, which took about thirty minutes, the pupils have learned the need for close and careful silent reading, they see how topics and paragraphs are put together, they learn how to select the important points, they see the need for systematic outlining, and they have a better understanding of the general problem of mastering and organizing a unit of thought.

#### Summary of suggestions.

1. Teachers should understand and appreciate the fact that *ability to study effectively is of greater importance in life than any other ability which the school can give the child*. Bagley says "To teach a child to study effectively is to do the most valuable thing that could be done to help him adjust himself to any environment of modern civilized life into which he may be thrown."

2. *Our system of examinations has tended to produce wrong habits of study.* Pupils tend to fill their minds mechanically with a jumble of unrelated, memorized facts. Open-book examina-

tions, in which pupils must scan the text closely, analyze the subject matter, find problems and data for problem solving, and pass judgment upon the relative importance of the textbook statements, are often of more value than the common stereotyped essay variety. The use of modern new-type objective tests is also quite commonly overdone.

3. *Pupils study best when they have a motive for study.* If the older pupils, for example, are to find out whether the schoolroom is adequately lighted, or if they are to make booklets in agriculture to place on exhibition at a mothers' meeting, there is some good reason for study; it is likely to be profitable.

4. *Study the dictionary with the pupils frequently.* Teach them all the parts of the book and how to find all sorts of information most expeditiously. Supervised dictionary work involves interests, attitudes, abilities, as well as merely knowledge; there are several forms of dictionary skills.

5. *Teach pupils to find suitable captions for paragraphs, stanzas, stories, anecdotes.* They will need to read successfully in order to get the main idea or thought. This is one form of study and it is an important one in school work.

6. *Teach and train pupils how to test themselves.* Can they determine whether they know a lesson or a topic? Pupils should be taught to know that they know and to realize the situation when they don't know. Upper grade pupils can learn to make out their own testing questions.

7. *One of the arts of study is that of taking notes.* Pupils should be taught and trained how to set down the leading, suggestive points of a cyclopedia article, for example, or of what the teacher or some pupil gives in the way of useful information, and then to organize these notes into a simple, compact outline, which will be kept in a well-bound notebook. The teacher should read Chapter II in Kitson's *How to Use Your Mind*.<sup>1</sup>

8. *Learn to find the milk in the coconut.* Get the values of paragraphs. Some words, sentences, and paragraphs are much more important than others. Get at the essentials and learn

<sup>1</sup> KITSON, H. D.—*How to Use Your Mind*, J. B. Lippincott Company.

these. Teachers need to give repeated guidance in selecting the salient facts.

9 *Good physical conditions are of basic importance.* Effective work requires obedience to well-recognized laws of health in matters of sleep, diet, fresh air, and adequate exercise. Physical surroundings should be sanitary and healthful. Temperature and ventilation require intelligent attention. Illumination should be adequate, with the light at the left. A good chair and table are necessary, as well as books, rulers, paper, and pencils.

10 *The best workers are calm and persistent.* They neither hurry nor worry. The cool unhurried student gets results with less waste of nervous energy. To go at a task promptly and vigorously will insure a good beginning. Loafing and dawdling are fatal; energy and the will to learn are indispensable. A rocking-chair is not conducive to concentration. When you begin to read sentences over and over without sensing the meanings, open up the windows and go out for a brisk walk. Also, change the subject. Remember that the best way to begin is *just to begin*, that is, start working, go through the motions. Interest will develop as you get warmed up to the task.

11 *Knowing the teacher's requirements.* (To pupils) Be definite and clear as to the assignment and what the teacher will expect of you in class. It is always best to write down the assignment in a special book, indicating what is to be simply read, what memorized, etc. You are not preparing simply to recite. You are studying to learn, to develop your personality. You are working primarily for yourself and not for the teacher. Older pupils should keep assignment books in which they set down directions for study, subject matter simply to be read, facts to be memorized, sketches to be made, and so on. This is valuable training in study. Children cannot do successful work in study unless they have a specific task and the means at hand for doing the work. They must have clear aims or purposes, and know just what to do in order to realize these.

In case the teacher does not make the purpose clear, ask about

it No work should ever be done for no reason at all Form the habit of formulating objectives or setting up goals Then as you work, do not lose sight of your goals In all your study try to adapt means to ends Use tools that will realize your aims most quickly and most effectively

12 *Practice most on that in which you are weakest.* (To pupils) Find out the weak points in your knowledge and your abilities In a spelling lesson perhaps you already know several words Select the words difficult for you, and work on them only

13 *View the subject matter from various angles* (To pupils) To think over what one is learning is a very useful habit Relate what you learn to the affairs of life as much as you can Illustrate rules, definitions, and principles Unless you do this, you do not know them Abstract statements are relatively meaningless until worked over into concrete instances

14 *Think of the kinds of questions your teacher will ask* (To pupils) Form the habit of putting questions to yourself, as you study Try always to translate the book material into practical forms In the business of life we do not have use for  $8 \times 7 = 56$ , in that form, as a rule The business man often uses forms different from those taught in the schools and pupils should know something of the modern way of doing business

15. *If possible the lesson should be quickly gone over before class time* Some portions need repetition, perhaps orally A list of related points may require rapid and repeated scanning, in the same order each time The pupil should practice to deliver the results of study in the form directed by the teacher

16 *Judgment is more important than mere memory* Make memory serve the judgment Analyze topics, and practice subordination of topics Study according to a sound system, and review by getting a new view from a higher level of thinking.

17 *There should be an appeal to and through the various avenues of sense, as the eye and ear* There is a good reason for reading some material aloud Material to be learned should be gone over, not laboriously, but quickly and repeatedly. Oral repetition will often help

18 *It is often necessary to go beyond the state of just being able to do or to repeat* One is sure and safe, to illustrate, only when he can run his car automatically. You and those whom you meet on the road are safe when the various processes are "handed over to the effortless custody of automatism," leaving your higher self to look out for the other fellow. In committing a selection for public delivery, automatic learning is highly important. See discussion in this text on the subject of *over-learning*.

19 *The method of the whole is more effective than the method of small portions* The approved practice in memorizing a poem, for example, is first reading the entire poem rapidly several times, and then the thoughtful repeating of a few logical units or combinations of stanzas. If the aim is to understand and digest material, but not to memorize it, the best way is to go through it all rather rapidly at first to get a bird's-eye view of the related whole. Then the student should concentrate upon the subject matter topic by topic, bringing it all together finally in a summarized view with a good condensed outline. Teachers should devote the necessary time to the development of this technique.

20 *Different types of materials need different treatment* Teachers and older pupils should realize that knowing how to study and learn an arithmetic lesson on, say, addition of mixed numbers is an entirely different study problem from that found, for example, in an understanding and appreciation of "The Midnight Ride of Paul Revere." Different types of subject matter demand different treatment and different study skills and techniques.

21 *Direct pupils in assisting each other* Develop the spirit of co-operation and helpfulness. It so often is the case that a brighter pupil can give a suggestion which will be of decided help to a slower pupil in overcoming his study difficulties.

22 *Get the pupil's viewpoint* The teacher should form the habit of thinking about subject matter from the angle of its study and acquisition by her pupils. She should consider whether

the particular lesson is one calling for inductive treatment, habituation activities, memorization, problem-solving methods, or something else. In other words, the teacher needs to view learning materials from the standpoint of the particular phase of learning and also from the viewpoint of the individuals who are to do the learning.

23 *What is given, what is required?* Give children repeated practice in telling what is given and what is to be found. Teach them to formulate as many problem questions as may be needed. In reading classes as well as in arithmetic classes many problems occur. Pupils should be guided in finding them and expressing them in good English.

24 *Grade subject-matter values* Repeated practice should be given in arranging statements and paragraphs in the order of their importance. Daily opportunity for pupils to judge of the value of printed materials whenever found is of much value in the formation of critical study habits.

25 *Textbooks need interpretation and elucidation.* Remember that even the best textbooks may be difficult for some of the children. It should be a constant, daily teaching activity for the one who is guiding the study and learning of children to make the textbook a real tool for genuine learning. This will require directed study for both groups and individuals. Do not hesitate to vary from the order of the textbook if the class can learn better in some other order. Textbooks are not infallible; it often happens that topics can be mastered in a variety of equally useful arrangements.

26 *Study readers are of much value* Today we have many series of readers through the use of which pupils are taught valuable study skills. These readers are given different names such as study readers, work-type readers, problem readers, and so on. The informational form of textual material in science, nature study, geography, and history is often used, and deliberate attempts are made to develop definite study skills and attitudes. These readers have done much good, but in their subsequent educational career pupils will also need special in-

struction in the study of these different subjects. No doubt the training which these study readers afford in the understanding and organizing of special subject materials is of much value and there will often be a distinct carry-over of study skills. But in all subjects and all schools definite teaching should develop specific skills *as they are needed*.

27 *Do not forget that directed study is not merely an administrative method.* The purpose of directed study is the improvement of the individual pupil, it is a *teaching* procedure. Successful directed study results in learning and it may be and often is an informal procedure. The nature and value of any directed study activities will be determined by the educational objectives of the teacher and the learning needs of each child at a given time and in relation to particular lessons.

28 *Socialized expression in varied form is a necessity.* Always the rural teacher must understand, must realize, that her daily program should provide for *expression* as well as acquisition or *impression* through study. There must be talking, dramatization, audience reading, recitation of many literary selections and masterpieces, demonstrations, repeated so-called "floor-talks," reports, and so on to great length. Socialized expression should be a daily affair.

29 *Assignments may be for both study and preparation for study.* The teacher would do well to look upon the assignment as a teaching or a directed study activity. In making assignments the teacher should do everything possible to make the pupil's individual study successful and not too difficult. Good assignments take time, but it is a very profitable way to use school time.<sup>1</sup> Rural teachers can save much time for themselves if they will make use of *written* assignments and directions. Study problems can be furnished pupils in this way by the use of the hectograph. Provide for differing abilities through differentiated assignments of study tasks. Slower pupils can master essentials and brighter pupils can do more of the same kind of work or do something entirely different. Every rural school

<sup>1</sup> See the author's book, *The Country Teacher at Work*

should have one or two first-class hectographs and a supply of ink and paper.

30 *The rural teacher should try to provide pupils with plenty of study helps in adequate variety.* There should be on hand good dictionaries and encyclopedias which the pupils are carefully instructed in using. Then for every subject such as history, geography, agriculture, and civics, there should be several sets of different modern texts, if possible. The library itself should contain a well-selected and well-graded stock of several hundred books. Pupils should be definitely taught just how to use the different books. Each child above the third grade should have his own dictionary. When pupils are old enough, they should learn how to use the card-catalogue index and other indexes. Every rural school needs a few good magazines. An adequate supply of paper, pencils, ink, notebooks is a constant need.

#### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1 Why is a rural teacher justified in taking a great deal of school time to teach pupils how to study? Will this be an economical use of time? Which is better, *directed study* or *supervised study*?

2 How can a teacher prepare pupils for successful study through adequate assignment? Try assigning "October's Bright Blue Weather." Such assignment may very properly take an entire preparatory class period of twenty minutes or more.

3 (a) Indicate five things you can do to teach your pupils how to use the library. (b) Indicate five lines of procedure which you would use in teaching pupils how to use a dictionary. (c) Name several different dictionary skills.

4 Illustrate with an eighth-grade history lesson study questions that avoid calling for mere memory results. Use the period 1783-1789 for your subject materials.

5 Suppose that the next lesson in reading is Joaquin Miller's "Columbus." Tell what you can do to stimulate an interest so that pupils will actually study the poem.

6 How can you avoid helping pupils too much when you are supervising individual study? Why should you have group supervision as much as practicable? Why must you give attention to individuals, also? Tell how you will find time to do this in a rural school. See the chapter on the daily program and also the one on the recitation.

REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING  
AND STUDY

- 1 BOOK, W F—*Learning How to Study and Work Effectively*, Ginn and Company 1922
- 2 CRAWFORD, C C—*The Technique of Study*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1928
- 3 KITSON, H D—*How to Use Your Mind*, J B Lippincott Company Revised edition, 1926
- 4 McMURRY, F M—*How to Study and Teaching How to Study*; Houghton Mifflin Company 1909
- 5 STILLMAN, BESSIE W—*Training Children to Study*, D C. Heath and Company 1928
- 6 YOAKAM, G A, AND SIMPSON, R G—*An Introduction to Teaching and Learning*, The Macmillan Company. 1935.

## CHAPTER XXII

### RECITATION OBJECTIVES AND PRACTICES

**"Passing of the recitation."** Some years ago V T Thayer wrote a book<sup>1</sup> to which he gave the title of this topic. In his discussion Dr Thayer considers the origin of the recitation, learning as an active instead of a static process, criticisms of group instruction, supervised study, the Dalton and Winnetka plans of individual instruction, the socialized recitation, the project method, some essentials in teaching suggested by the methods discussed, the lesson plan and the assignment, the working period, and the socialized period. This author makes it very evident that much dissatisfaction prevails concerning the futility and relative failure of the formal traditional recitation procedure, with its oral question-and-answer type of recitation activity which stresses largely the reproduction of textual information. Such a recitation ought to pass into total and eternal oblivion, but although it is no doubt gradually passing in many localities, it is still widely prevalent. Many rural teachers are still using out-of-date teaching-learning procedures. The recitation period for group activities should not pass away, certainly. The orthodox recitation needs to be reformed. With a change of objectives and a change of practices, the recitation will serve a useful and a necessary function always.

**Meaning of recitation.** The root meaning of *recitation* calls attention merely to the repeating of what has once been said or cited. Literally, *recite* means to *call* or *cite again*. That is, the original etymological meaning has reference to the saying again of what has once been said or given to the pupil. This idea does not necessarily involve the notion of meanings, of thought, or of real learning. The "saying again" is merely the repetition of a

<sup>1</sup> THAYER, V T.—*The Passing of the Recitation*, D C Heath and Company 1928.

purely verbal-memory product—a pretty dreary business, we must admit. Our present conception of the recitation embraces a variety of aims and of activities, such as testing to discover the pupil's knowledge and skill, verifying and correcting the pupil's ideas, removing wrong notions, furnishing collateral material, habituation exercises to fix facts in mind, stimulating the pupil to renewed efforts, cultivating power and skill in the use of English, helping pupils to study by themselves, training in thinking or problem solving, and furnishing socializing opportunities for discussion and the forming and expressing of personal judgments. It can readily be seen that this involves much more, very much more, than hearing book lessons.

In one sense the recitation is but a period of time, but a teacher never grasps her rich opportunity until she thinks of the recitation in terms of pupil activity, change, and improvement. The real recitation is a means for promoting the natural development of the child's abilities. It is an exercise during which pupils present the results of their study or investigation. It is a period for general discussion, for the presentation of ideas found in many sources, and for the correction of wrong ideas. The recitation procedure in this better sense does make use of subject matter, but it is not to be thought of as a mechanical verbal memory-recall process, in any case. In the commoner acceptance of the term, perhaps, we think of the recitation as a class exercise in which the teacher may instruct or teach, test, and drill. To *teach*, however, in the widest meaning of the term, is to bring about any sort of pupil activity or response which will *change* the child's life and personality. If teaching is effective, the child actually *learns*.

**Objectives of the recitation.** Among the generally accepted aims of the recitation, as we understand its function today, are the following, not arranged in any definite, significant order:

1. To give opportunity for teacher and pupils to get ready for a study of the pending unit of subject matter. This may be an inductive, preparatory teaching-learning exercise. In fact, it is very likely to be in the nature of a development lesson.

2 To afford the teacher a chance to give detailed, explicit assignments of work, telling pupils not only what to do, but how to do it, and where to find necessary learning materials

3 To give pupils a chance to report what they have accomplished, in this way stimulating others by accounts of progress. The recitation should motivate learning processes as well as guide and direct them

4 To check workbooks and other materials prepared by pupils. Today children prepare much that is useful and valuable during their directed study periods

5 To work out study outlines and review outlines together as a learning exercise. Here is an opportunity for some real teaching

6 To furnish occasion for pupils to tell how they studied their lessons, where they secured information, and what difficulties they encountered and to give other similar helpful information

7 To check up on the results secured in the study of a unit of learning materials to see what progress is being made and what help may be needed

8 To enable the teacher to give general directions on how to study, how to use reference material, how to do written work, how to keep notebooks, how to fill out workbooks, and to give other helpful suggestions for promoting learning activities

9 To afford practice in the use of English, both oral and written. Forms of expression, particularly effective speech, need constant attention. Pupils will never learn to talk well unless they talk much under the stimulation and guidance of clear, correct standards. Pupils will not learn to talk by listening to the teacher, or by answering scrappy questions in fragmentary fashion. Pupils should be permitted and encouraged to talk on a great variety of subjects. Such talking should of course be guided and directed

10. To give practice in silent reading. Pupils should be asked repeatedly in a class exercise to examine the printed page with a distinct purpose in mind, to answer a specific question, or to solve a particular problem. The ability to get the meaning of a

sentence or paragraph is of such fundamental importance in all the work of the school that the recitation period should frequently offer opportunity for the acquisition of the various silent reading skills.

11 To stimulate and guide pupils in forming the habit of initiative. The old-time recitation developed very little initiative. With the new social purpose of the school in mind, no teacher should fail to see the need for the development of this personality trait. The members of the class should ask questions and suggest problems. Pupils will never develop initiative if the teacher continually directs all the activities. The child needs to be given a chance repeatedly to choose for himself, in some measure to map out his own program, otherwise he becomes increasingly dependent.

12. To instruct pupils in the use of books. The recitation period is the time to teach pupils how to handle books and how to run down topics, using the table of contents, the index, the appendices. A child, in order to get book power, must learn to feel at home with books. A book must be looked upon as a friend ready to render assistance, providing it is accorded understanding and skillful treatment. Skill in the use of books is one of the many which the school should develop; it is a distinct objective of the recitation.

13. To furnish opportunity for a study-recitation exercise of any kind and for any purpose whenever the need arises.

14. To give the teacher many opportunities for supplying collateral information out of her store of knowledge or by the use of books, objects, pictures, and experiments and in other ways. The one textbook needs to be supplemented; the teacher's oral presentation is one means of doing this.

15. To guide and direct pupils specifically in detailed problem-solving activities. In this connection pupils should be stimulated in doing original thinking and in carrying out personal investigations for the benefit of the individual and the group.

16. To call attention to matters of central or pivotal importance so that pupils will be able to distinguish the important

from the relatively unimportant in their lessons or in other forms of subject matter

17 To carry out any form of teaching-learning procedure which will prepare pupils and definitely aid them in whatever study activities they may engage in by themselves at their seats

18 To furnish the occasion and the stimulus for many and varied forms of socialized activities Pupils should feel very free to ask questions and to express opinions based upon definite information

19 To give opportunity for the teacher to do for the whole group, by way of direction, suggestion, and stimulation, anything which can be more economically and effectively done in this way rather than for individuals

20 The recitation period is a time for a much broader teaching-learning activity than that involved in testing and drill Tests and drills are not now conducted by the oral question-and-answer method There are much more effective procedures The recitation has an important function in directing study, in socialization activities, in diagnostic and remedial teaching, in observational learning, in problem solving, in experimental and creative learning, and in appreciation exercises The recitation may be a conversational discussion exercise and there may be various forms of dramatized expression and learning The old testing aim is gradually disappearing, we now think of the recitation as primarily a time for a great variety of teaching-learning activities and processes

**Recitation processes.** During a recitation period, as it is generally understood in the American rural school, the teacher can, among her other activities, do at least three things so far as the actual instruction is concerned She can teach, she can drill, and she can test Sometimes these are called teaching processes; sometimes they are thought of as certain general aims of the recitation Practically all of the usual teaching types may be grouped under these heads The telling or oral-teaching exercise or lesson, the object lesson, the development lesson,

both inductive and deductive, the study lesson, whether supervised or unsupervised, the assignment lesson, and the review lesson may all be thought of as teaching exercises, although the end is often much more than the mere acquisition of knowledge. Socializing exercises and appreciation lessons are also, in the broad sense, teaching procedures, though it can readily be seen that the knowledge aim, as such, is not the uppermost idea. Teaching, or instruction, has a much more comprehensive purpose than the mere imparting of knowledge. Its all-inclusive aim is to enlarge the pupil's personality.

As a result of genuine teaching the child is developed in all phases of his mental, moral, and spiritual nature. It is not simply a question of intellectual training, that is, the development of the knowing powers, the feelings are also aroused and developed by good teaching, will attitudes are formed, habits, ideals, and interests are shaped, the child is equipped to solve problems of his human relationships. In recent years much has been made of socializing activities and procedures, for it is now seen that the pupil must be prepared for social efficiency. Appreciation lessons are becoming increasingly common, a technique for such lessons is now in common use. Habit-forming exercises necessarily involve repetition, and review exercises may comprise teaching, or testing, or repetition, or all of these. Question-and-answer exercises whether used in review lessons, appreciation lessons, study or problem-solving exercises, or in other ways, may be of the nature of either instruction, or testing, or drilling, or all three. Thus it is seen that the processes or procedures of the recitation comprise teaching, drilling, and testing, although at the present time recitation procedures are not considered solely or chiefly according to this classification. We now think of teaching as including every possible means to the end that genuine child learning may result.

**The study-recitation.** Every rural teacher should know and appreciate the possibilities of the directed study-recitation. By this term is meant an exercise or a special use of the recitation period, during which teacher and pupils work together upon

some subject matter, problem, or project. During a study-recitation the teacher has opportunity for supervised group study. When testing or drill activities do not go well, the teacher should stop her efforts in that direction and actually work over and work out the material with the children. Both teacher and pupils should ask questions and answer questions. There should be a general give-and-take, with an effort to understand, to organize, to gather data for the solving of a problem, and so on. Other books may be used, outlines may be made out, problem-questions formulated, pupils taught how to take notes, and the like. If the teacher would spend more time in a supervised study-recitation the testing exercise would have more meaning and would go forward with greater effectiveness and success. There is too much pumping from dry wells, or to use another figure, too often a quite futile attempt to squeeze blood out of a turnip. More real teaching and more supervised study would greatly increase the value of the testing recitation period. When pupils don't know, quite obviously the only thing to do is to teach and not to attempt merely to test. Testing procedures are greatly overworked in many schools.

**Subject matter and learning.** Many teachers look upon subject matter as a static, fixed quantity, not subject to change. A thoughtful teacher will understand that subject matter has come into the schools because of the needs of society, and that changes and growth are always going on in the social organism. Society is not fixed; it is in a constant state of flux. "New occasions teach new duties," and as mankind makes new discoveries and new advances in civilization, so the subject matter for the school changes. New topics are constantly being introduced and old topics dropped out. We have changed the content in geography, in arithmetic, in civics, and in many other subjects. If the teacher will look upon subject matter from the dynamic, functional point of view rather than from the static, she will think differently about her work and will render the pupils a greater service. Worth-while subject matter is not dead subject matter, for it functions when put to some profitable use. Static

subject matter is dead, inert, useless; much of this kind of material is still being taught in schools today

Subject matter in the rural school should serve a useful purpose, that is, be practical and relate to the child's environment and to his future place in society. Subject matter should serve the child and promote his personal development so that he will increase in personal power—power to understand, to work, to enjoy, to serve, and to be useful in the world. No rural teacher is justified in teaching a topic just because it is in the course of study, although, to be sure, she may be legally required to adhere to a prescribed course. She should be constantly thinking of the materials she uses in terms of changes in the child's personality. Some kinds of subject matter are much more useful than other kinds of subject matter. Knowledge of his own state is usually more useful geographic knowledge to a child than knowledge of Africa, for example. Ability to write a good paragraph is a much more valuable accomplishment than ability to parse. Ability to handle fractions and denominate numbers has a more intimate bearing on life than ability to extract square or cube roots. The habits of close observation and of attention, which result from good teaching, are worth more than the facts themselves stored in the mind, particularly if these facts are unrelated, unorganized, and not used in solving practical problems.

**Hearing lessons vs. teaching.** It is no doubt true that the average rural teacher, even at the present time, is spending a good deal, perhaps most, of her time in hearing pupils recite book lessons. The lesson is usually assigned by pages or topics and the pupil is given but little help in the mastery of the printed page. The idea of problem making and problem solving or even of thinking aside from its relation to specific personal problems quite likely does not enter the mind of the average rural teacher. To be sure, there are now many teachers, and the number is constantly increasing, who see in the recitation procedure exceptional opportunities for pupil development. But for the most part, we still have to a large extent a question-and-answer

process in which the chief activity is purely a memory response of undigested textbook facts

What is needed most of all today is intelligent procedure, based upon the principles of learning and the result of study and analysis on the part of the teacher. Until such a time comes in the life of a teacher, she is not really teaching. She is only a hearer of book lessons which are often a sorry spectacle of mechanical, unthinking routine, devoid of all valuable educational results. In this connection, it should be made plain that there is really no general technique which a teacher can learn that will serve all purposes. Different subjects require different procedures adapted to particular types of subject matter, to the capability of the child, and to the pupil's stage of learning. There is real need at the present time for an eclectic plan of teaching for rural teachers which will involve the use of both activity and subject units and which will make sensible and practical adaptations of problem-project procedures.

**The teacher's opportunity.** In the average rural school we still find many, too many, so-called recitation periods during the day, most of them of only ten or fifteen minutes' duration. During the recitation period the teacher calls the pupils to the recitation seats, apart from the rest of the school, and there she does the best she can to teach her class. What takes place during such a period will be determined by the teacher's ideals, her objectives, and her standards of procedure. If she has never studied the real meaning of teaching and has never had a skillful teacher herself, she will be quite likely to confine herself to textbook material and to expect pupils to memorize the text to a greater or less degree. During the recitation teacher and pupils should come into close mental contact. Then is the time when the teacher has opportunity to impress her personality upon that of the pupil. The recitation period is a golden opportunity to instruct, to guide, to inspire. The child's mental horizon can be widened, his imagination can be awakened, his thinking powers developed, his feelings aroused and cultivated, his attitudes formed, and his whole life lifted to a higher plane. To do

this successfully the teacher must have clear and correct educational objectives, she must know the varied and proper procedures, and she must have skill in the techniques of teaching and in the direction of learning.

**Need for diagnosis.** One of the large problems of the teacher is that of ascertaining what the child now knows and can do, this means not only the child's stock of ideas but also his attitudes, his ways of thinking, his ideals, his likes and dislikes. Every good physician is a good diagnostician. He does not treat symptoms merely, he ascertains causes which lie beneath the surface. In school work it is of the greatest importance that the teacher know her pupils. Today we are making increasing use of diagnostic tests. At the present time tests have been devised which are more effective than the old-time tests, in that they discover not only the content of ideas, but also habits of thought, methods of thinking, reading and study skills, and other learning abilities.

In all successful instruction the teacher must proceed from the known to the related unknown. By means of tentative, diagnostic questions the teacher may find out what the child knows from which he can take his departure in developing a new body of knowledge. It should not be forgotten that no two pupils possess the same stock of ideas, because no two children have by any possibility had exactly the same experiences. When a teacher begins a new topic, such as long division, for example, she should first of all make sure that there is an adequate basis for the new work. Long division, with its several gradations or steps of difficulties, is a good illustration of the need for detailed, specific diagnosis. If the reader will make a graduated scale of examples in long division, he will appreciate the need for diagnostic procedures. Arrange a series of a dozen or more examples in order of difficulty. Inventory tests in arithmetic and other subjects do this very thing, so that by their use a teacher can make a rather accurate diagnosis of each child's weaknesses and needs.

**Importance of accuracy.** When the class exercise or the recitation procedure of a rural school is definitely visualized in all its details and variations it seems quite evident that several

aims are clearly possible. However, most objectives may be summed up in the terms *knowledge, ideals, and skills*. In the writings of Emerson E. White<sup>1</sup> of more than a generation ago we find knowledge, power, and skill stressed over and over again; but now we know that ideals, attitudes, appreciations, and interests are of equal significance in the life of the child. Moreover, we have come to see clearly that skill in general is an abstract impossibility. Skills are concrete, special, particular, and realizable only through specific procedures and pupil activities. Every good recitation stresses the importance of accuracy in the acquisition of knowledge. Pupils should be trained to learn correctly and as fully as their stage of progress will permit. When a child develops respect for a fact and really desires to know the truth, it is a distinctive day in his progress.

Children should not be permitted to guess as a general thing, at least not in fields where they can and should know. They either know or they don't know, if they know accurately and well, they can tell, for knowledge presupposes the words in which to clothe the ideas. As one writer well says "Ideas are born with their skins on." Early in their school career and all through it pupils should have daily training in the formation of clear-cut images, and in the gathering of data from which to draw definite conclusions. If a teacher teaches her pupils to see things as they are and to get thought from the printed page, she is doing much for them. Many pupils "go through" both the common school and the high school without gaining the ability to get the meanings which a sentence or a paragraph should yield. But over and above knowledge, how important is the development of ideals, attitudes, habits, interests, tastes, likes, and dislikes, both in making a living and in making a life. The recitation is at least one opportunity of the teacher to give the child's mind a *set* in the right direction, perhaps for life.

**Topical recitations.** One county superintendent recently told the writer with considerable enthusiasm of the successful

<sup>1</sup> WHITE, E. E.—*Elements of Pedagogy, School Management, and Art of Teaching*, American Book Company.

use of the topical recitation in the upper grades of the rural schools in her county. This form of recitation is not new and it is not acceptable to the proponents of the more progressive practices of the so-called "new education." It is a type of procedure which is apt to degenerate into a formal, unthinking reproduction of textual materials. However, in the hands of thoughtful teachers it has fruitful educational possibilities, particularly if, instead of one textbook, several are used along with a good selection of other reference materials. The risk is found in the assign-study-recite formula which may be anything but educational in its general influence.

In *Standard Practices in Teaching*<sup>1</sup> a chapter is devoted to the topical recitation, and the following suggestions are briefly discussed. (1) Provide for organization of knowledge, (2) insure organization in the recitation; (3) avoid a uniform order in calling for recitations; (4) relieve the formalism of the procedure, (5) avoid a dictatorial attitude, (6) encourage pupils to ask for further explanation about points not understood, (7) be aware of the attitudes that are being developed during the recitation period; (8) encourage independent, clear, forceful presentation, (9) encourage the stating of material in a new way, (10) the pupil should speak the language of the subject, (11) close each topical recitation with a summary of the work covered, (12) do not grade pupils during the recitation; and (13) the topical-recitation technique is not an exclusive technique.

**Oral and textbook instruction.** Every good teacher must necessarily instruct by "word of mouth" and she must certainly make use of a great variety of textbooks, the more the better, if they are of good quality and up-to-date. Through oral instruction the teacher does much to supplement the text by way of explanation, clearing away certain difficulties, and interpreting obscure portions and passages. Teachers are often prone to talk altogether too much; they are apt to forget that telling is not necessarily teaching at all. Good oral instruction

<sup>1</sup> BAGLEY, W. C., AND MACDONALD, MARION E.—*Standard Practices in Teaching*, The Macmillan Company 1932.

often takes the form of skillful questioning instead of lecturing. It is the teacher's function to see that the pupil can use his textbook successfully so that it is genuinely a tool for learning. Unless the child can read his textbook understandingly, unless he is able to make textual materials his own and actually use them in profitable thinking, the text is merely a jumble of words and a hindrance in the learning processes. The teacher's business is to help the child to read and interpret the text. Many textbooks are too difficult for pupils; then the recitation is often nothing more than the reproduction of paragraphs entirely beyond the child's comprehension. Use many recitation periods to read and study the textbook with the pupils.

**The pupil in the recitation.** The class period is a time when the pupil should learn how to study; he should have his difficulties cleared up. During this group exercise the child should add to his useful knowledge and get definite guidance in the formation of ideals, habits, skills, and attitudes. He should be made to feel at ease and encouraged to participate to the extent of his ability. He should learn habits of courteous response and co-operation. Often the concomitant, indirect learnings are more important than the acquisitions of textbook knowledge. The teacher should take pains to see that the atmosphere of the recitation is really free, wholesome, and uplifting. The pupil should ask questions when he needs information and he should contribute his share to the general class fund of educational results. The pupil should be taught to speak clearly, to sit in some becoming posture, to stand erect when standing is in order, and in general to conduct himself as a well-mannered member of the social group. Every pupil should take part in the general discussion. He should both answer and ask his share of questions. He should feel a sense of real personal responsibility for the successful use of the time devoted to the class exercise.

**The teacher's function.** What should a teacher do during the class or recitation exercise or period? Many teachers have a misconception of their true function. The teacher's main task is to direct and to stimulate learning. For every group meeting

there should be a plan and a purpose. Otherwise, it would be best not to meet. The teacher is the director of activities. She should know very clearly what she is trying to accomplish, and then she should move in the direction of her objectives as directly and as persistently as possible. The teacher must decide whether she wishes to direct study, to develop appreciations, to review, to assign some new work, or to test. Then she must settle just how she will realize her objectives, that is, what procedures she will use. In any event, the teacher needs to know that her constant aim is to have the pupils learn something very definitely. It is often useful to have the plan for the period set down in its larger outlines so as to serve as a guide. This general outline may be at hand for reference. If instructional or testing questions are to be used, it is well to have most of them made out in advance. Sometimes these may be written on a reversible cloth blackboard or on large sheets of Manila paper. The teacher must be ready with a plan and a purpose or the period will be time wasted, if perchance a supervisor should drop in, the unprepared teacher will be embarrassed and chagrined.

**Questions and questioning.** The traditional method of conducting a recitation exclusively by the use of oral questions and answers is happily becoming a thing of the past. However, in the use of even the most modern of teaching techniques it is necessary to ask questions. Not all teachers know how to question skillfully.

1 *Function of the question.* Every good teacher is able to talk clearly and to the point, she is also trained to ask good questions. One writer says that a question is a demand for thinking or the results of thinking. Betts<sup>1</sup> states that "good questioning stimulates thought, leads to inquiry, and results in understanding and mastery . . . Poor questioning leaves the mental powers unawakened, cripples thought, and results in inefficiency and lack of mastery."

2 *Good questions.* A good question demands thinking and thus brings attention to bear upon the problem under considera-

<sup>1</sup> BETTS, G. H.—*The Recitation*, Houghton Mifflin Company.

tion. Skillful questioning breaks up subject matter into logical steps, and serves as a stimulus to the pupil. A clear, sharp, pointed question stings a child's mind into action.

3. *Why ask questions* The teacher needs to question pupils in order to find out both what they know and what they don't know. The ascertained known will prove the point of departure for teaching something new. If pupils have wrong notions, these can be corrected when discovered by questioning. Proper questions discover how the pupil thinks and where the teacher has failed to stimulate and guide thinking in his teaching. Teacher and class co-operate in a well-conducted question-and-answer procedure; good questions secure such co-operation.

4. *Kinds of questions* Many types of questions have been differentiated by different writers. We have thought questions and memory questions, what and when questions, how and why questions, review, test, and drill questions, topical questions and organizing and evaluating questions, appreciation questions; leading questions; interpretation and inference questions; and so on. One writer distinguishes three kinds of questions—  
(a) tentative, or preliminary; (b) instructive, or Socratic, and  
(c) testing, or examination.

5. *Tentative questions* are framed to ascertain the child's present knowledge as a preliminary to the presentation of new material. It is unwise to assume either that a pupil knows or that he doesn't know. The best way is to find out by good questioning, orally or by writing, exactly what he knows.

6. *Teaching questions.* Socrates, Greek philosopher and teacher, was skillful in the use of questions as a means of teaching the youth of Athens. A good teacher uses instructive questions mostly, as they both stimulate and guide the pupil in his quest for knowledge. They should be arranged in logical order, arouse interest, and require and provoke thought.

7. *Testing or examination questions* may be both oral and written and may be given at regular or irregular intervals. The old examination question was too general and too uncertain as a testing instrument. The new forms of examination promise

something more scientific and accurate Oral test questions are necessarily used by the good teacher to some extent, but not nearly so much as formerly They are usually too detailed, calling largely for scrappy, memorized answers. This is not necessary, it is not productive of educational results Testing questions should call not only for the items of knowledge, but for the thinking processes also. Good expression in answering is worth striving for, but not too insistently

8 *Good and bad questions* A good question has a definite aim, is specific, adapted to its purpose, briefly put, not wordy, and clear in form, and it requires a precise, particular response A poor question is usually one that is complicated, hard to understand because couched in vague, uncertain language Having made her question clear and to the point, the teacher should ask it only once, as a rule Repeating questions is a bad practice that seldom has justification. Some teachers repeat questions automatically and apparently unconsciously, a foolish practice

9 *Leading questions* Lawyers ask leading questions because they wish to bring out certain facts or information The teacher is justified in asking leading questions to provoke thinking, but such questions are bad if they merely suggest the answer in mechanical fashion

10 *How answer?* Yes and no answers are sometimes good, sometimes bad, depending on the teacher's purpose. Answers in complete statements may be a waste of time, if teacher and pupils are trying to push on to the solution of a problem or to the development of a unit of subject matter Yes and no will serve to carry on the discussion, and are properly in order in such cases

11 *Study questions* Modern textbooks contain many useful study questions which are often in the nature of problems Teacher and pupils should make intelligent use of these The use of such study questions does not preclude the framing and answering of many others, however, on the part of both teacher and class Many of the older book questions were mechanical and should be avoided

12. *Pupil's responses.* Pupils should be trained to answer questions thoughtfully and courteously. A proper response on the pupil's part is as much of an art as the questioning itself; it is a matter for daily attention and training. Children should be required to stand straight on both feet, or to sit properly, if sitting is best, and to speak in a clear, conversational tone, neither too loud nor too low. As a rule pupils should not be permitted to guess, unless all understand that the guessing is legitimate in the given situation. If pupils answer in muddled, indistinct, incoherent fashion, it is the teacher's duty to get something better. The manner of answering is often as important as the substance of the answer. There is a great deal of irrelevant, foolish, inaccurate answering in many schools by pupils who have failed to master the subject matter, possibly because the teacher has not taught them how to study.

13. *Reception of answers.* Teachers need to study the art of receiving answers properly. If an answer is wrong the pupil may be led to correct it. The entire exercise should be a pleasant conversation carried on in courteous tones and language. If one pupil cannot answer, another may be called upon unless the answer can be secured by means of a development exercise. The waving of hands and all show of impatience should be discouraged. The attitude of members of the class toward the teacher and toward one another is an important matter. If pupils answer thoughtlessly and carelessly, if they are evidently unprepared, the teacher must teach and direct. If a child answers honestly though incorrectly, the teacher's duty is to show him his error, possibly by further questions, possibly by direct telling. A wrong answer is the basis for further teaching; before the truth is brought to the surface, several questions may be needed. The pupil may be asked to try repeatedly, to make special effort to recall, to think. It is a waste of time and effort to repeat questions or answers in mechanical fashion as a matter of habit, neither teacher nor pupils should fall into this senseless practice. Some teachers have the "all-right" habit. Don't become an "all-righter."

## REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1. In what ways does the recitation period offer the teacher a genuine opportunity? What is a rural teacher's constant temptation when the class is called out to recite? How can she overcome this daily temptation?

2. Indicate different lines of learning activities which can be carried out in an upper-grade arithmetic class during the recitation period.

3. Why is a study-recitation often much more valuable than the common testing recitation? Make a list of as many activities as you can think of which may find a place in a study-recitation.

4. Why are attitudes, ideals, habits, abilities, interests of so much importance in any person's life? Show the futility of knowledge and nothing more in such subjects as physiology or civics.

5. Write a list of several useful items of subject matter in geography, and a list of five facts which will make but little difference if they are not taught at all. Draw both lists from textual subject matter. Give your full reasons for so listing these items.

6. What is the advantage of a minimum list of words to teach pupils to spell? How many words do you think should be in that list for an eighth grade? What facts determine such a list?

7. Why should all teaching, so far as practicable, be related to the child's experience and involve new experiences through actual contact with our social and economic life? Why will it pay good dividends, for example, to take one's school to the county seat? Give several other illustrations of this principle.

REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING  
AND STUDY

1. BAGLEY, W. C., AND MACDONALD, MARION E.—*Standard Practices in Teaching*, The Macmillan Company 1932
2. BETTS, G. H.—*The Recitation*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1910
3. LOWTH, F. J.—*The Country Teacher at Work*, The Macmillan Company 1931
4. MOSSMAN, LOIS C.—*Principles of Teaching and Learning in the Elementary School*, Houghton Mifflin Company. 1929
5. RUEDIGER, W. C.—*Teaching Procedures*; Houghton Mifflin Company 1932
6. THAYER, V. T.—*The Passing of the Recitation*, D. C. Heath and Company 1928
7. YOKAM, G. A., AND SIMPSON, R. G.—*An Introduction to Teaching and Learning*, The Macmillan Company. 1935.

## CHAPTER XXIII

### CHARACTER EDUCATION PRINCIPLES AND PROCEDURES

The thesis of this chapter is that character education or development of personality is the fundamental work of the American school. Everything else is subordinate to this main objective. The ultimate aim of education is the building of such personal character as will enable the individual to become an efficient participant in modern social living. If with this efficiency there can also be a moderate degree of personal happiness and satisfaction, all the better. All the machinery of our schools and all the procedures used by our teachers should further this all-inclusive purpose. Personal character is not developed by chance. On the contrary, it is the result of direct or indirect and conscious or unconscious observance of the well-known laws of learning. Character is acquired, whether good or bad, it is acquired only through personal experience. The teacher's task is to arrange continually for suitable and effective character-acquiring situations and to secure adequate responses to them. If the schools of America are to make a vital contribution to the solution of our complex social and economic problems, teachers must think less of their task in terms of classes, grades, lessons, tests, and the like, and more in terms of actual personal preparation for solving real problems of human relationships. In the consummation of such an enterprise the establishment of worthy ethical character is a high and vital objective.

**Character and personality.** One's character is really what he is, his reputation is what people think he is. A person's character may be better or worse than his reputation. One's character is made up of both natural and acquired attributes. When we use the word character we generally think of moral qualities such as

loyalty, tolerance, kindness, generosity, fidelity, faithfulness, and dozens of others. The terms *personality* and *character* are often used synonymously, there is not great difference in their meaning. Both words relate to the totality of ideas, ideals, and habits (mental, moral, and physical) which distinguish one individual from another. Ragsdale says "Perhaps as good a description of personality as we can give is that the word refers to the *total impression which one person makes upon others*" At bottom personality is more or less of a riddle about which the best thinkers have been speculating for ages. Is one's personality another name for his soul? Well, your guess is as good as another's, for as a matter of fact, nobody knows. One thing is clear: By various educational processes anybody's character or personality can be more or less modified. We may define personality as the summation of all those attributes of body, mind, and character by which one human being is differentiated from another.

**What bearing has heredity?** We do not inherit express traits of character directly any more than we inherit tuberculosis directly as a disease. In the latter case, children may inherit a physical constitution which will make it possible for them more easily to contract the disease. For example, they may inherit a limited lung capacity, an inadequate or malfunctioning endocrine gland system, or a weak heart and a poor circulatory system. In the case of character, the various character traits are largely the result of reactions to environment. However, the child inherits a certain type of nervous system; it is by means of and through the agency of his particular personal nervous make-up that he reacts to environment and does all his learning, including that of shaping his ideas, his ideals, and his habits, all of which enter into the composition of any person's character. While no person inherits character in any literal and specific sense, every one of us inherits the makings of character. That is, we inherit the type of central nervous system which will enable us to utilize our personal environment, in greater or less degree, in building up our characters by our personal reactions. Our

characters are determined in part by heredity, but more particularly and essentially by our environments. Character is acquired through experience, all learnings are the result of the multitudinous and often complex reactions of the nervous mechanism.

**Respect for personality.** In the foreword of the *Tenth Yearbook* of the Department of Superintendence we find these words "One of the great notes sounded in the religions of western civilization is respect for personality. Even in the kindergarten and nursery school respect for personality is the keynote. While this note is not incorporated in all traditional education, it dominates contemporary education. In all modern educational philosophy and teaching, the tendency is to emphasize respect for personality. No greater religious thought was ever presented than that of respect for personality, and no organization comparable in scope to the public school system has ever so thoroughly accepted it as a working principle as have the public schools of our country at this hour." Every teacher worthy of the name emulates the Master Teacher in her attitude toward the child. She ministers to children coming from homes representing all grades of social standing, but the true teacher is dominated by the democratic spirit; in her sight, each child is entitled to be treated as a person possessing certain inalienable rights and privileges as well as having duties to perform and responsibilities to bear.

**Character and nervous energy.** Every teacher should understand that there is a close and constant relation between a child's bodily condition and health and his conduct or behavior. Many teachers do not give sufficient attention to this situation. It frequently happens that a child becomes a problem case because of lack of sufficient nourishment or because of adenoids, eye strain, or defective ears or teeth. Every child in America is entitled to a careful physical examination by a competent physician, some day such an examination will also include the use of psychiatric tests as well. Examinations should of course be followed by remedial measures if they are called for. When a

child is causing trouble in school there is a reason for it, means should be taken to ascertain underlying causes. Many a child misbehaves in school or does not do good work because he does not get enough sleep or because his diet is inadequate. There is often a lack of mineral salts and of vitamins in suitable varieties and amounts. The child does not eat enough of fruits and vegetables. His nervous system is not being properly nourished. How can he learn and how can he behave as a normal child without a normally functioning nervous system? Today, in many progressive communities, medicine and surgery, together with proper personal hygiene and sanitation, have wrought wonderful changes in the lives of multitudes of boys and girls. Character development has for its essential basis the healthful working of a well-nourished nervous system.

**Character and the I. Q.** No doubt there is a close relationship between anyone's raw intellectual capacity and his ability to understand and appreciate moral values and standards of conduct. In a general way, the conduct of every one of us is determined or modified in no small degree by the way in which we think, remember, form images, or give attention to situations. If an individual's I. Q. is below 75 it will often be difficult for such a person to acquire the higher, nobler attributes of character. It may be that such a citizen will discharge the ordinary duties of citizenship with some efficiency on a low level, but all through his or her life the finer appreciations, loyalties, and powers of strong characters will be impossible. Just as a person of low I. Q. usually cannot do certain types of school work at all, so he or she will likewise be deprived of the insights of the higher types of personality because of an inherited deficiency of the central nervous system. Such a thought has a tragic, fatalistic aspect, but it is unquestionably correct. Our characters or personalities are the result of nature plus nurture; although education can do wonders, it cannot accomplish the impossible.

**Character and the behavioristic philosophy** According to the objective or behavioristic school of psychologists our entire mental and moral life can be explained in the materialistic terms

of physics, chemistry, anatomy, and physiology. These philosophers, headed by Dr. J. B. Watson, do not try to disprove the existence of a soul. They merely ignore the mind or soul as an entity because they do not find any place for it in their scheme of thought. Whether the behaviorists are right or wrong, it is certainly true that what we call character or personality is the product of action, conduct, behavior. Furthermore, character is to be judged by the reactions of behavior. The behavioristic school centers attention upon reactions rather than upon obscure, uncertain, so-called mental traits. The behaviorists are suspicious of introspection as a means for learning anything valuable about psychologic processes. The important lesson for the teacher in the behavioristic philosophy lies in its emphasis upon the significance of *response to situation* as the comprehensive explanation of all development of mind and character. The test also of moral ideas and ideals is their fruitage in right habits of conduct. Instead of relying on problematic subjective traits, the teacher will do well to be more concerned with objective action, that is, with conduct. If a teacher can determine a pupil's conduct, she will in that way shape the pupil's character.

**Aims in character education.** In the Office of Education Bulletin (1926) No. 7, entitled *Character Education* we find the objectives of character education stated as follows:

- 1 To develop socially valuable purposes, leading in youth or early maturity to the development of life purposes.
- 2 To develop enthusiasm for the realization of these purposes, and coupled with this enthusiasm, intelligent use of time and energy.
- 3 To develop the moral judgment—the ability to know what is right in any given situation.
- 4 To develop the moral imagination—the ability to picture vividly the good or evil consequences to self and others of any type of behavior.
- 5 To develop all socially valuable natural capacities of the individual, and to direct the resultant abilities toward successfully fulfilling all one's moral obligations.

Investigations thus far warrant the conclusion that the prime factor in the development of any personality is the influence of

other personalities. This fact gives emphasis to the conviction that character education is a problem of community life, and that all social institutions and social agencies should share co-operatively this responsibility.

At the meeting of the National Education Association in Denver the first week of July, 1935, one panel-jury discussion group devoted its attention to the topic "Education's Oldest Challenge—Character." The leader of this group was Superintendent A. L. Threlkeld of Denver who summarized the discussion as follows:

- 1 Character education is a co-operative enterprise
- 2 It is more important to integrate character education with the school program than to teach it as a formal subject
- 3 Permit children to work out a code of ethics for themselves. It will mean more to them than to be handed out a ready-made code
4. There are no absolute standards of character
- 5 The school's responsibility for character education is rapidly increasing

**Adapting means to end.** In character education the goal is the development of the socially efficient person who possesses the personal moral character that makes for social participation and social service. The child is now a member of the social group of the school; he will learn to take an active and an effective part in future adult, home, church, and community life in proportion to his active participation in the school and other social life of today. The objective is a self-governing, socially efficient person; this aim can be realized only through a long course of carefully directed character-training procedures carried out formally or informally in home, school, church, and community. The teacher should understand the ultimate goal toward which she is working but which she really never reaches. Day by day, through all the varied activities and experiences of the school, the teacher should be striving to increase, by slow degrees, here a little and there a little, the power of the child to take care of himself, to make his way in the world, to be of use to others. The most difficult of all lessons for all of us are those which

have to do with the art of living successfully. These are lessons in personality adjustment and character development. All of our lives most of us try to improve ourselves, eliminate useless friction, and make ourselves more useful. At the same time we instinctively desire also to work for the pleasing, genuine personal satisfactions of life. It is only by means of inner achievements, through character enlargement, that life can possibly have its most significant meaning and its more enduring satisfactions.

**What is right conduct?** None of us know what is right to do until we learn it. We are not born with any power to distinguish right from wrong. One of the greatest functions of the home, the school, the church, and the community is to teach children and young people what is right and what is wrong conduct. Today moral and social standards seem to be changing so rapidly that youth does not always find it easy to decide on the right course of action. It is all a matter of knowledge, of thinking based upon adequate data of facts. Is it right to smoke, to drink, to dance, to play cards? What is honorable and right conduct in the relations of young men and women? One thing is certain: Children and youths need an abundance of trustworthy information which they can make use of in drawing their own conclusions. Moreover, here is a field where personal influence and association have an important bearing. Day after day the teacher should help the children to think their way through problems of right and wrong. This is really a lifelong business for the successful prosecution of which there are no definite formulae which will settle matters once and for all. The duty of the school is to acquaint children with the *mores* or social standards of our day which have been found necessary in order that human society may exist at all. Honesty is *more* than the "best policy," and "Thou shalt not steal" is *more* than one of the ten commandments.

**Freedom vs. compulsion.** In the author's text entitled *The Country Teacher at Work* we find the following discussion on pages 18 and 19: "We are free moral agents only when the thing

we ought to do is the thing we want to do. With small children the development of desirable responses through direct habituation is doubtless the only method of procedure, for a time at least. But even with kindergarten children some thinking in moral situations is entirely possible. The teacher should early give children a chance to choose for themselves and should provide opportunities for the making of specific moral choices. The more intelligent a teacher is and the better she understands the true nature of moral action, the more inclined she is to see to it that conduct is the result of right and proper attitudes and feelings, which always involve right thinking, also. The coarse-grained teacher or mother often resorts to force and compulsion in order to get children to conform. Such methods will never prepare children for co-operating citizenship in a free democracy. Coercion and force as temporary expedients are necessary, but our chief reliance should be upon the development of correct motives. As a man thinketh in his heart, so is he. Let us concentrate upon *right aims and ideals of action and conduct*"

**Contagion of character.** Somebody has said that character is caught rather than taught, but we know that character is both caught and taught. The influence of personal association is a powerful one, but children also learn much about conduct through both direct and indirect instruction. Today children are being subjected to character contagion in manifold ways. For one thing, all of the people with whom they come into contact are leaving some sort of a mark upon their lives—the parents, the personalities of the church, including the Sunday school teacher, the day-school teacher, the actors in the movies; the radio personalities; characters in books, magazines, and newspapers, playmates, people on the street; the doctor, the dentist, the school nurse, and so on. For better or for worse, for weal or for woe, every child is learning through varied personal associations. "Personal contact and impression of character count more than all argument. You find yourself responding like a vibrating chord to the note of your friend. His faith and life become the firmest ground for yours. You catch his conviction,

his spirit" As William James<sup>1</sup> said: "Just as our courage is so often a reflex of another's courage, so our faith is apt to be, as Max Muller somewhere says, a faith in someone else's faith We draw new life from the heroic example"

**Power of suggestion.** Every teacher should realize that the characters of her pupils are being constantly molded for good or for evil by the various influences of the school, including, as the most powerful of all no doubt, the teacher's own personality The child is being affected constantly by the system or general conduct of the school, whether good or bad, and by the tone or spirit of the school, whether wholesome and healthful or the opposite The books, the pictures, the school furnishings, the housekeeping, all produce some effect on each child all of the time There is the direct influence of regular curricular activities of the school, of getting of assigned lessons, of reciting, and all the rest But think for a moment of the subtle indirect teachings and learnings which the teacher does not directly control The general management and discipline may be uplifting and morally beneficial or not, the teaching itself may be skillful, positive, and strong or it may lack in moral fiber and virility, the playground may help build up character or may contribute to its deterioration Every teacher should make some study of the meaning and the power of suggestion. It operates continuously, the teacher should try to make it a force for good.

**The movies and the radio.** At the present time both motion pictures and radio programs are exerting a very definite influence on the lives and characters of boys and girls We have many pictures of an educational and helpful character; we have radio broadcasts, for example, of the world's best music, as well as other excellent radio entertainment However, much that is offered in both pictures and through broadcasts is of a decidedly doubtful character and is frequently very definitely harmful Schools are now making increasing use of both motion pictures and of the radio as useful educational agencies When, for example, teachers can make use of the Yale films, *Chronicles of*

<sup>1</sup> *Talks to Teachers*, Henry Holt and Company, N. Y.

America, or of the Music Appreciation Hour by Walter Damrosch, the educational advantages are clear and certain. In any consideration of character education today, the influence of both motion pictures and radio broadcasts should be emphasized. In the near future the educational aspects of these two great character-forming agencies will receive increasing attention.

**Ideas and ideals.** Dr Bagley states that "Ideals are ideas (concepts, meanings) which have a peculiar directive force over conduct because of the feeling of worth or value that attaches to them"; or, "An ideal is a master idea peculiarly directive over conduct because of its emotional coloring" Teachers and students will find it very profitable to read the last chapter in *Human Behavior* by Colvin, Bagley, and Macdonald, entitled "Character and Behavior" In all character education a teacher is necessarily concerned with the development of ideas or meanings These should be as clear and as correct as the child's level of intelligence will make possible Many of the difficulties of both children and adults in their attempts to shape and control their behavior are due to their unwillingness or their inability to face facts and get at the exact truth of any situation In all development of worthy character, ideas, ideals, and habits are the very warp and woof of the process and of the product It should be the constant aim of every teacher to help pupils to understand an ideal as clearly and as completely as possible both for its purely intellectual value and for its effect upon character In this connection the student should read the famous essay by William James entitled "The Energies of Men" in *The American Magazine*, New York City In one place he discusses Ideas Which Unlock Our Hidden Energies He says in part

As certain objects naturally awaken love, anger, or cupidity, so certain ideas naturally awaken the energies of loyalty, courage, endurance, or devotion When these ideas are effective in any individual's life, their effect is often very great indeed They transfigure it unlocking innumerable powers, which, but for the idea, would never come into play "Fatherland", "the Flag", "the Union", "Holy Church", "the Monroe Doctrine", "Truth", "Science", "Liberty", Garibaldi's phrase "Rome or death", etc., are so many examples of

energy-releasing ideas The social nature of such phrases is an essential factor of their dynamic power

Read the entire essay Great, indeed, is the force of a truly "master idea."

**Traits of character or acts of conduct?** In the past teachers, preachers, writers, and others have been very fond of making minute analyses of personality by the enumeration and discussion of countless character traits, such as honesty, sympathy, accuracy, loyalty, and dozens of others Such a study is all well enough as far as it goes, but the fact of the matter is that this is really not the way in which character is shaped. Score cards without number have been devised for grading pupils, teachers, and others In itself, if rightly used, this practice has certain values Score cards are undoubtedly useful But children will never be changed in their moral natures by scoring them any more than they will develop skills in arithmetic through the use of diagnostic tests To develop skills, attentive, intelligent repetition is necessary; to form character, acts of conduct under control and guidance are essential To be sure, in developing both arithmetical skills and character responses or habits, clear and correct ideas and ideals of what to do, that is, of the goals of action, are of first-rate significance What a teacher needs to center her attention and effort upon are concrete acts of conduct rather than abstract traits of character For her own information, and perhaps inspiration every teacher may very well consider personality in its abstract composition, but practical character education lies in the realm of hour-to-hour responses to concrete life situations

**Developing an inferiority complex.** Dr Groves in discussing "The Inferiority Complex and Social Behavior"<sup>1</sup> says

If a child shows symptoms of feelings of inferiority, it is of the utmost importance that he be led away from any compensation which he may be obtaining from fancy. What he needs most is an opportunity to taste a degree of actual success The best we can do for such

<sup>1</sup>GROVES, E. R --*Personality and Social Adjustment*, Longmans, Green, and Company 1923

a child is to give him a sense of confidence which will encourage him in his masculine protest. If his feeble efforts at compensation are treated with derision or even with misunderstanding, he withdraws within himself, thinks much of his weakness, and finally falls back upon his imagination. Fancy is equal to the task and can easily give him any amount of self-satisfaction if only he will withdraw himself from the actual world and give himself utterly to fiction. The price he must pay for his psychic relief is the undermining of his sense of reality. The child who is weak or sickly or deformed or in any way physically defective or socially handicapped is likely to be particularly sensitive to his unfortunate circumstances. He is a candidate for inferiority and if no assistance is given him in his earliest efforts to emerge from his circumstances, he at least is tempted to take refuge in the fictions that will lead him toward a neurotic career. Unfortunate circumstances are not inherently evil. Men and women of strong character compensate for conditions that crush the weak. It is the dwelling emotionally upon handicaps that makes them such a tremendous burden. It is too much to expect children to recognize this fact unless they are given insight by the discerning parent or teacher.

**The laws of learning.** The student and teacher will find a discussion of the application of the laws of learning to character education in the first chapter of *The Country Teacher at Work*. It is enough to say here that the three laws as formulated by Thorndike, apply as closely and definitely to the habituation of the responses of our moral natures as in any other kind of learning. The laws of readiness, of use, and of effect determine the type and the extent of acquisition in character formation just as they determine the development of ideas, ideals, attitudes, habits, skills and appreciations in reading, language, and arithmetic. One of the chief duties of the teacher is to use instructional procedures so that the child will desire to learn, so that he will have the learning attitude. If there is the readiness to do what needs to be done, if there is personal satisfaction in the doing, and if the conduct responses are repeated sufficiently under the stimulus of pleasurable action, then the stage is set for the forming of desirable character qualities. Read, in this connection, Kilpatrick's *Foundations of Method*, Chapters XIX and XX. The author says "Habit is the unit element of char-

acter To build character then is to build the right habits of thinking and feeling as well as of outward behaving To this end exercise is a prime consideration Precise practice of any trait is necessary if that trait is to be built into habit and character It is then not sufficient that children practice merely outwardly good behavior The inner attitude is an essential part " So far as the law of effect applies, the teacher should so set her character-learning situations and so motivate the learning responses that her pupils will be ready and willing to " practice the right with satisfaction " Then they will find that to practice the wrong will produce annoyance All this means daily instruction, both direct and indirect All rural teachers should read Kilpatrick's two chapters

**Can character be taught?** Teachers should understand that they cannot make children learn anything All that any teacher can do is to provide adequate learning situations and then bring about the needful responses through various motivating expedients In all character education there is a large place for skillful teaching In *An Introduction to Teaching* by Bagley and Keith we find these statements "To stimulate, encourage, and direct learning is the soul and substance of the art of teaching It is the pupil himself who must learn Without activity on the pupils' part—without some dynamic expression of the *will to learn*—the efforts of the best teachers will be futile " In another place these writers say "Thus the teacher, in place of being a taskmaster who makes arbitrary requirements and then forces the learner to meet these requirements, becomes a guide and a counselor, ever on the watch for signs that the learner is ready for this or that type of educative experience " All of this applies with especial force to the development of character traits Any teacher whose daily program provides ample opportunity for pupils to respond in honest, courageous, reliable, accurate, attentive, and industrious ways will do much to develop the traits of honesty, courage, reliability, accuracy, attention, and industry The traits will be developed if the teacher brings about the responses.

**Moral codes and their value.** Moral codes in great variety have been published from time to time, such, for example, as "A Moral Code for Youth" made public by *Collier's Magazine* some years ago. Perhaps the best known of all the codes is the one devised by William J. Hutchins, now president of Berea College. Both of these codes are printed in *The Country Teacher at Work*, and the teacher and student are here referred to the historical note on page 502 of that book. Codes are undoubtedly useful in furnishing ideas of what is right in daily conduct. They serve as guides to teachers and parents, but it should be well understood that even the best of codes cannot insure good conduct or go far in promoting character education. The teacher should be acquainted with the best standards of conduct and should read books on this subject. Many of these are listed in the bibliography at the close of the chapter referred to above. None of us can do better than we know, proper ideas and ideals, as found in character codes, will do much to point the way for right conduct. But, these codes can hardly do more than furnish standards and set up goals of accomplishment.

**Young people's organizations.** Every rural teacher should know about the various co-operative associations for boys and girls which have been in operation, to a greater or less degree, in every state for many years. These clubs are rendering an incalculable service for the youth of our land in the way of character education because they furnish the machinery for desired and desirable behavior responses. In these organizations, young people are taught to co-operate, to carry responsibility, and to serve others. The net result in character formation is of the greatest importance in training for effective citizenship. It is only necessary to mention the Girl Reserves, Knighthood of Youth, Sunshine Club, Young Citizens League, Campfire Girls, Y. M C A., Girl Scouts, Y W C A., Junior Red Cross, Boy Scouts, and 4-H Clubs, as perhaps the most prominent organizations, to get some conception of the magnitude, the scope, and the service of these associations of young people. The rural teacher should procure a copy of a bulletin issued by The

National Education Association entitled *Agencies Contributing to Rural Education*. This bulletin should be read in connection with the study of this chapter. Teachers can readily learn about young people's clubs by writing to the National Office of Education or to their State Departments of Education.

**School system and school routine.** Perhaps the very best way in which a rural teacher can carry on the work of character education is by conducting a first-class school. If the teacher has a carefully worked out plan and program, and if she honestly, faithfully, and sincerely does her best hour by hour for her boys and girls in conducting the regular work of the school, she is probably in this way rendering her greatest single service in character education. "What a training in good citizenship is wholesome order in a well-conducted school! The knowledge gained from the curriculum is small compared with the character building resulting from a well-organized and well-administered school. The daily work of the school and particularly the emotional atmosphere in and through which this work is done either lifts pupils to higher levels of moral living or else pulls them down."<sup>1</sup> The rural teacher needs a school organization and type of routine which will, on the one hand, be sufficiently imperative and certain in its requirements, and on the other hand, allow that freedom of choice and action so vital in true character formation.

**Moral influence of teaching procedures.** The traditional types of teaching procedures often failed in securing social co-operation. Instead, the methods frequently resulted in unfavorable mental attitudes and conduct responses. Too often the teaching was so crude, so formal, and so ineffective that, instead of producing the desire to learn, stubbornness and opposition often resulted. Then the "master" would resort to physical punishment to "compel" learning. Today this seems to us incredible in the light of our modern teaching-learning techniques by the use of which children not only learn readily and easily but also happily and with wholesome emotional reactions. The manner in which a rural teacher conducts her recitations

<sup>1</sup>Lowth—*The Country Teacher at Work*.

will greatly influence the characters of her pupils. If there is only partial knowledge, with guesses at the truth, if opportunities for deceit are permitted, and if children respond indifferently and carelessly, think of the evil effects upon their characters as the farce goes on day after day. Teachers who are very skillful in the use of techniques may be an influence for good. Other teachers who are crude and bungling or who lack skill will not uncommonly produce conditions favorable to misconduct and the weakening of character.

**Examinations—marks—reports—promotions** These words bring to an experienced teacher's mind visions of opportunities for good or for evil in character education. In the better schools of today important changes in practice have been made in these four departments of a teacher's activities and duties. Examinations are now much less formal and more rational, the teacher's marks are more truly representative of a pupil's status and progress, reports to parents give more than merely per cent grades in subjects, and promotions are made when a child is ready to advance. The less bright children are placed where they can do the best work, all things considered. Today, the better teachers in the better schools consider the welfare of the individual in all testing, marking, and promoting. The inflexible procedures of the old traditional school were often anything but salutary in their effect upon the characters of developing boys and girls. It is not too much to say that wrong objectives and antiquated incorrect practices in the four fields indicated in this topic are sufficient in themselves to mar a child's character for life. When we think of the unnecessary failure and sense of failure and the possible development of an inferiority complex, with all its accompaniment of futility and despair—when, in short, we contemplate the personality deterioration due to certain traditional school practices, the thought should cause any true teacher to pause and examine her own standards and practices with great care.

**Rural school opportunities.** In this section the purpose is to make certain definite practical suggestions as to what a rural

teacher may do in the way of character education. While these suggestions are not procedures or techniques in the technical sense, they point the way to teaching-learning activities. Practically every rural teacher will today experience but little difficulty in getting an abundance of materials pertaining to character education. It will pay any teacher to read the articles in both the *World Book Encyclopedia* and in *Compton's Pictured Encyclopedia*. If rural teachers could have access to the latest editions of these high-grade books, they would find many discussions of which they could make use. The biographical sketches in both of these young people's encyclopedias are of real value in the way of furnishing ideas and ideals. If the particular state in which the teacher is working publishes outlines of character-development procedures, these should of course be used. Many state departments of education now print excellent bulletins in which complete syllabi and procedures are presented. The suggestions which follow are not set down in any particular order, they are necessarily of a miscellaneous nature. Each teacher or student may select and stress the items of more special personal use and value.

1 *Set a good example.* The teacher, like the parent, is an example for better or for worse in any event and regardless of personal choice. No sensible person expects the teacher to be perfect, but in her ways of thinking and acting, in her controlling motives, in her emotional attitudes and habits, in all of her ideas, her ideals, and her habits she is constantly a pattern for imitation. Children naturally look to the teacher for guidance. Any right thinking teacher will try to make the influence of her personality as stimulating and as wholesome as possible.

2 *Set learning situations.* The teacher should form the habit of thinking that character attributes are acquired in the same way in which all other learnings take place. It is a case of stimulus and response, situation and reaction. The child learns to be honest by a long series of honest reactions in situations where there may be temptation to dishonest conduct. Character habits are formed and fixed by a multitude of habituating repetitions.

just as one learns any skill by obeying the laws which apply. The teacher and student are here referred to Chapter I in *The County Teacher at Work* and to other references listed in this book.

3. *Insist on good work.* The working spirit of any school has an important bearing upon the molding of character. No matter what teaching-learning procedures are used, it remains true that the business of learning cannot all be play. Children must form habits of work and of working according to schedule, at least in part. There are definite daily tasks to be performed in every good school, the way in which this work is done has large influence on character development. The teacher who is soft and vacillating in her requirements will never do a good job in character education. Every person of solid character finds that he must do a great many things which he would rather not do, just then, at any rate. In the education of the school there must be regularity, promptness, industry, and loyalty to the job. Children must form the work habit and the habit of doing their best.

4. *Provide for success.* Arrange the assignment of tasks, the allotment of projects and activities, the study and the recitation procedures, and the entire program of the school in such a way that every child does something well every day. Continual failure has a most disastrous effect on character. All children must succeed on some level and in some way. By the use of differentiated assignments even the poorest and the weakest will have something to do within the range of their abilities. A good school always has an atmosphere of successful accomplishment; this must include pupils of every grade of intelligence.

5. *Use the direct method judiciously.* Do not forget that while children can never be preached or scolded into good behavior, it remains true that there is a most important place for the direct inculcation of ideas and ideals. Much can be accomplished by judicious telling and by learning in various ways as to what constitutes good conduct. The rural teacher should never give moral lectures, but she can and should give direct moral instruction.

Children need information which they may get from the teacher, from books, and from other sources. William James in his *Talks to Teachers* said "Don't preach too much to your pupils or abound in good talk in the abstract. Lie in wait rather for the practical opportunities." In character building both the direct and the indirect methods need to be used constantly. Read a discussion of this problem in Ruediger's *Teaching Procedures* and in other books.

*6 Do not tolerate bad conduct.* The writer has known some rural teachers who have permitted unruly, disobedient children, mostly boys, to go on day after day doing things that the teacher knew were wrong. This is altogether bad because the child is becoming habituated more and more to wrong conduct, he becomes an evil influence in the school. Every child in the school should understand that he cannot go on with his misbehavior. The teacher must handle the situation firmly and do it very promptly. If punishment is needed, it must be administered unflinchingly. When wrong conduct is tolerated, the teacher becomes a party to the tearing down of character. If a teacher is indifferent or lacking in moral standards, the supervisor must take a hand in the affair for the good of the school.

*7 Know what is going on.* Many times the writer has visited rural schools when he was convinced that, for some reason, the teacher was apparently unconscious of some of the evil conduct of some of her pupils. It is true that certain teachers with certain types of personality are evidently unable properly to sense moral situations. These people are incompetent and should not be allowed to continue. In one way or another, and without any show of suspicion, the rural teacher should have full knowledge of the conduct of her pupils in the schoolroom and on the school grounds. A rural teacher needs good eyes and ears as well as moral judgment and moral insight.

*8 Be definite and positive.* This does not mean being a martinet or a stickler for mere form. It simply means having a program of suitable learning activities and the moral backbone to carry them out regardless of obstacles or opposition.

A successful rural teacher really needs a good deal of courage as well as patience. Sometimes patience ceases to be a virtue. A good teacher is firm, she is also fair and frank. She is open and aboveboard in all her dealings with her pupils. The children know what to expect and what the teacher will do in a given situation. Definiteness and positiveness on the part of the teacher will have a salutary moral effect upon the entire school.

9 *Remove unnecessary temptation* Every child should be given repeated opportunities to withstand and resist temptation, but sometimes teachers show poor judgment in permitting situations involving moral conduct to exist when there is extreme likelihood that many pupils will succumb and be guilty of wrongdoing. Undue temptations to cheating in doing school-work should never be allowed. Examinations should always be so conducted as to reduce temptation to the minimum. One of the favorable aspects of many modern teaching procedures is that they make for moral conduct instead of furnishing opportunity for moral defeat. Reduce lying and dishonesty to the very minimum. It is not a question of punishment, it is rather a question of reducing the occasions for punishment. Remember that the good qualities of our characters are developed by many repetitions of right acts of conduct. In this connection read William James's famous chapter on "Habit".

10 *Be firm and also kind* A teacher does not need to be harsh in order to achieve her ends. All she needs is to be persistently firm and firmly persistent. She should be kind and she should also temper her justice with mercy. The writer has known many successful teachers whose moral influence was unquestioned and who never found it necessary to scold, to talk in a loud tone, or to be anything but firm in a kindly way. When offenses occurred they were handled promptly. In these schools character was always in process of development.

11 *Encourage effort* If a child tries to do his best, he should receive credit whether he passes or not. He has succeeded to the best of his ability and is entitled to recognition. Perhaps he would have done more and better if only the teacher had care-

fully directed the work Often children fail, not because they are at fault, but rather because the teacher has done such a poor job of teaching In every school the children should have the inner satisfaction of knowing that if they really try, their teacher will understand Encourage all honest effort for its moral value, but show children how better to make their efforts count in results.

12 *You must answer this question. Is there change for the better?* That, after all, is the big question The teacher needs to use every available agency and tool to further pupil growth and development and to discover what changes are taking place, whether good or bad If there are evidences of deterioration, the teacher should quickly check these changes in the wrong direction In all character education, which is a part of all the work of the school, the teacher needs to be alert to note evidences of change Character is not built in a day, or a week, or a month, or a year, or a decade, it is really the work of a lifetime, even then some of us cannot be very proud of the job Character education produces changes in ideas, ideals, habits, desires, appreciations, and the like, it is the business of the teacher to further all changes for the better and to reduce all changes in the other direction to the lowest point

13 *Help each child to solve his own problems* To the child his personal problems are of the greatest importance It helps very certainly in character guidance if the teacher can sympathize truly with each child and actually assist him in solving his problems "I am sorry" may help, of course, but when the good neighbor said that he was sorry and then reached down into his pocket for a ten-dollar bill to show his sorrow for an unfortunate friend, it was a case of what we might call practical sympathy The child needs very definite and continued help in solving his moral, character-development problems

14. *Guide the child in forecasting consequences* Undoubtedly much wrongdoing and consequent character deterioration is due to the fact that the individual does not use his imagination properly and adequately in forming images of the possible effects

of certain contemplated acts of conduct. It is a good thing to form the habit of counting the cost before the expenditure is made. Pupils need constant practice in looking ahead to see how things will come out if they do so and so. Much of evil-doing and character weakening might be avoided if only individuals had learned how to forecast events and to prepare in advance against the time of need. Evil acts result in evil consequences. The child must learn that lesson.

15 *Teach that it pays to do right.* It is not difficult to show children that right conduct usually brings its own reward. In this connection make use of the world's best biography. There are plenty of opportunities to demonstrate that self-control, honesty, industry, courage, and loyalty are qualities of character which make for more satisfactory and happier living in the long run. Such great characters as Lincoln, Pasteur, Madame Curie, Edison, Horace Mann, Mary Lyon, Emma Willard, Alice Freeman Palmer, and many others clearly prove the value of moral character, associated as it often is with the purely intellectual achievements.

16 *Develop the suspended judgment.* There are opportunities every day in every school for children to learn the lesson that it is always unwise to jump at conclusions based on insufficient data of facts. In moral situations much damage may be done to oneself and to others by hasty generalizations. The habit of waiting until at least more evidence is in, when it is needed, is a good one to form. In character education it is important that the techniques of sound thinking be used in solving problems involving moral questions and values. The moral judgment is never completely formed. Pupils need repeated opportunity to use their moral judgments with the greatest care and with a spirit of tolerance.

17 *Clear up confusions.* A good way to weaken a child's character is to permit him to go on day after day without getting his lessons or without comprehending what he is trying to learn. It is the very plain duty of the teacher to clear up misunderstandings and to help the child to comprehend his lesson mate-

rials, no matter how long it may take or how much trouble it may be. Mental confusion does not contribute to normal character reactions. The tragedy is that so many pupils go on day after day with partially prepared work until they finally get the settled conviction that they cannot understand anything or do any work very well. That is a demoralizing state of mind.

18 *Discuss practical character problems* If a teacher will take pains to consider certain moral situations with her pupils in group meetings in a purely impersonal, objective way, showing pupils how to think out their conclusions, such practice will prove of real value as one means of character guidance. Often the occasion will develop from a reading, a history, or a geography lesson; a wise teacher can render a genuine service in this way if she will carefully refrain from moralizing and if she will always see to it that the whole exercise is conducted with the utmost tolerance and spirit of fair play.

19 *Stress objective attitudes* Teachers should aim to avoid the development of undue self-consciousness. Children must become neither priggish nor abnormally introspective. In all efforts to help the child to change his ideas, his ideals, and his habits it is well to attack personal problems which arise with as much objectivity as possible. There are decided elements of risk in an overdevelopment of the subjective attitude. The healthy, wholesome, normal mental outlook is one in which character problems are approached somewhat as we study any impersonal, purely objective problems. Early in life the child needs to learn the lesson of careful, impartial consideration of all problems, personal and impersonal, with a view to solving them on the basis of factual evidence.

20 *Make the most of the natural character-forming situations of the school* In a rural school there are many daily opportunities for profitable character-forming activities. In the use of problems and projects in practical civics and citizenship, in conducting a program of thrift enterprises, in the school society, in a system of pupil committees, in a truly socialized recitation, in general exercises, in supervised play, in health activities, in

the work of the social studies, in private interviews, in well-conducted class conferences, in a rational program of directed study, in the profitable use of the library, in the observance of special days, in a well-planned study of great personalities, in the use of various forms of creative expression, in the reading and language classes, in making use of excursions, and in many other ways the competent rural teacher will be able from hour to hour to shape the lives of the growing boys and girls.

21 *Develop a spirit of fair-mindedness* It is of the greatest importance that children early in life learn the lesson of charitable tolerance of the views and the ways of life of other people. It is so easy to form the habit of blaming others and of not being willing to get the other person's point of view. It is well to be objectively critical and to be careful in weighing evidence, but when other people are involved some sympathetic consideration of their inherent rights is always in order. In the regular conduct of the daily classes a teacher needs to be mindful of the mental attitudes which children are often unconsciously forming. A spirit of fairness, of fair play, is a mental attitude which should characterize the type of thinking developed and promoted by our schools.

22 *Certain habits are basic and desirable* It is not possible for a teacher to teach character in set lessons and in a formal way as she often teaches, or tries to teach, so many school subjects. It may be that formal methods will work to some extent in arithmetic, spelling, and other subjects, but character is not learned in any such way. Character education is going on constantly from moment to moment. If a teacher insists upon the habit of orderliness, of keeping personal and school property in good order, of taking good care of all property, of thinking before speaking, of speaking clearly and in low courteous tones, of seeing things straight as they really are, of working in systematic ways, of giving respectful and thoughtful attention—if a teacher can develop these habits without nagging or scolding she will render a genuine service. Such habits as those of labeling things, of writing good headings in the various subjects and

lessons, of preparing neat papers in proper form, of completing well work once begun, of reading for meanings, of doing one's best, of using the sense of responsibility, and of thoughtfulness and carefulness in general—such habits will go far to integrate and solidify a much needed type of American character.

23 *Teach pupils to profit by mistakes* An honest mistake is a good thing as a means of learning. Children should understand that certain types of errors in conduct are inexcusable or may often have disastrous personal effects. Of course mistakes of all kinds should be reduced to the minimum because they are so wasteful of time and effort; children need to learn by their mistakes so that they will not be making the same ones over and over again. Mistakes and errors should not be a cause of discouragement or of remission of effort; children should be taught to correct their errors in schoolwork or in conduct and to go right on with the least possible delay. Teach pupils to make careful plans, to forecast their needs, and to avoid mistakes as much as possible by careful thinking and by imaging of consequences. Pupils need to learn the lesson that in the building of character it is usually better to remember in time and thus to head off troubles due to forgetting.

24 *Merely talking is quite futile* It is very easy for the teacher to talk too much, to give too much advice, to say "don't do this" and "don't do that," to moralize, to scold, or to admonish children unduly. It is distinctly not so much the teacher's talk that is needed, it is rather the pupil's activity that really counts. It is the teacher's business to set the scene and to guide and stimulate the child in his efforts to learn the lessons in character. The best teachers are those who provide adequate learning situations and then quietly but persistently see to it that the child responds to the best of his ability. Talk less and teach more is good advice for many teachers. It will often be better to arrange to have the pupil get his ideas and ideals from good books. In character education a teacher should continually be giving children an opportunity to come into contact with great characters through the world's best literature. Let the

strong and noble personality make its impress upon the child's soul through the agency of the classic legend, or story, or other masterpiece. The teacher needs merely to make the introduction.

25 *Guessing at the truth is a bad habit.* The teacher will find that the more she can develop a respect for facts and a reverence for truth, the more successful will her other efforts become in the general program of character education. The writer used to feel that he did a real job of character education in his geometry classes. When a high-school student has really learned to demonstrate a proposition so that he knows he has proved the theorem, he will then have a higher conception and appreciation of all exact knowledge, and moreover, there will be a certain "carry-over" to moral values.

26 *What is right here and now?* It is not so much a question of abstract duty or of remote ideals not well understood, but rather a problem of what to do in particular circumstances. In all character education, the more specific, direct, and concrete the teacher can be, the better for the child. Ideas of abstract duty are indefinite and do not impel the child to action. The most successful program in building character is one which involves specific responses to specific moral situations. All general moralizing and abstract appeals to right conduct are usually unavailing and may actually do harm despite the best of intentions. "Every school at work, in the most intelligent way possible, upon its everyday problems is the ideal in mind." "Character education built upon the integration of values in the day-by-day choices of pupils as they meet them major life situations will, of course, permeate the whole curriculum."

#### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1. Make out a trustworthy and useful bibliography for the rural teacher on the subject of character education—twenty-five references.
2. Prepare a ten-minute talk on some phase of character education and present this talk in class or assembly.
3. Make out a questionnaire of twenty-five items, the correct answers to which will disclose important personality characteristics of a grade child.

4 Make out a 100-item objective test on this chapter, using four types of such tests

5 Show how the health and character education programs may mutually supplement and reinforce each other in a typical rural school

6. Make out twenty-five personal problem questions based on this chapter.

#### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

- 1 *Compton's Pictured Encyclopedia*, F. E. Compton Company, Chicago, 1935 (This beautiful and instructive set of books contains many articles and stories pertaining to character building)
2. GERMANE, C E , AND GERMANE, EDITH G —*Character Education*, Silver, Burdett and Company 1929
3. KILPATRICK, W H —*Foundations of Method*, Chapters 19 and 20, The Macmillan Company 1925
- 4 *Report of Committee of National Education Association, Department of Superintendence—Tenth Year Book*, 1932 Character Education
- 5 *Report of N. E. A. Committee, 1926—Education Bulletin 7—Character Education*—Superintendent of Documents 15¢
- 6 *Research Bulletin of the N E A —Education for Character, Part II, Improving the School Program*, May, 1934 64 pp 25¢
7. *World Book Encyclopedia*, W F Quarrie and Company. Chicago, 1935 (Read article on "Character Training" and note the cross references at end of article)

Investigate the Young People's Organizations mentioned in one topic Write to the Office of Education and to your State Department of Education In many states a special state program of character education is now being successfully conducted, and instructive and useful circulars and bulletins are published by State Departments of Education.

## CHAPTER XXIV

### HEALTH ACTIVITIES IN THE RURAL SCHOOL

**Purpose of this chapter.** In the first edition of this book Chapter X was entitled The Health of the Pupil. The discussions were chiefly concerned with the physical welfare of the child, and such topics as Tests of Hearing and Sight, Suspicious Symptoms, Undernourished Children, Children's Teeth, Adenoids and Tonsils, Value of Milk, and similar matters were given considerable attention. In this chapter, which stresses health *activities*, the author has a somewhat different point of view as well as a different purpose, in keeping with the general nature of the second part of this text, which treats of the problems of teaching and learning. The central interest and concern in this chapter are teaching and learning health through the use of a variety of procedures. The child's health is determined largely by his knowing what is right to do and by his actually doing the right things habitually because of a real desire to do them. He will neither *know* nor *do* unless he is interested. Health activities must therefore be well motivated. A program which consists in the learning and reciting of textbook materials will seldom secure the desired results in healthful living. The new objective is found in the nature of the teaching and learning processes. The child learns the ways of healthful living by his responses to health situations. The function of the teacher and the school is to furnish daily health situations, the pupil responses to which will develop ideas, ideals, and habits that make for health. *Active response is an absolute essential.*

**General aims of health education.** The aims of health education as stated in *Health Education—A Program for Public Schools and Teacher-Training Institutions*, the report of the Joint Committee on Health Problems in Education of the National Educa-

tion Association and the American Medical Association, 1930 (second edition), are as follows.

1 To instruct children and youth so that they may conserve and improve their own health

2 To establish in them the habits and principles of living which throughout their school life, and in later years, will assure that abundant vigor and vitality which provide the basis for the greatest possible happiness and service in personal, family, and community life

3. To influence parents and other adults, through the health education program for children, to better habits and attitudes, so that the school may become an effective agency for the promotion of the social aspects of health education in the family and community as well as in the school itself

4. To improve the individual and community life of the future, to insure a better second generation, and a still better third generation, a healthier and fitter nation and race

In a bulletin published by the Health Education Department of Rochester, New York, health objectives are stated as follows.

1. To conserve and improve physical fitness for life activities through a program of exercise, rest, and nutrition

2 To develop right attitudes and ideals relating to all phases of individual and community health

3 To make desirable health habits automatic through emphasis and practice

4 To seek correlations with other fields of school activity in the interests of child health

**Health standards for schools.<sup>1</sup>** Every pupil on leaving the elementary school should be as carefully trained in the fundamental habits of health as in the three R's. Without the former the others are of little value.

The real test of health education in the schools is in the health of the children. If there were excellent classroom teaching of health from the kindergarten to the high school, properly supported by co-ordinated activities of school physician, school nurse, parents, teachers, and all others playing a part in the

<sup>1</sup> The statements in this topic are found in a bulletin issued by the Office of Education, Department of the Interior, and entitled *Suggestions for a Program for Health Teaching in the Elementary Schools*. It may be secured from the Superintendent of Documents for ten cents.

training of children, what ought we to expect? It is difficult to say, because the experiment has never been tried consecutively for eight or nine years with the same children. Some day the time will come when the great majority of children, possibly 80 or 90 per cent of them, will reach a standard something like this:

- 1 All children well nourished, none more than 10 per cent below the required standard of weight according to height and age
2. Habits of personal cleanliness established
- 3 Good bodily resistance
4. Freedom from physical defects secured
- 5 Good sitting, standing, and walking postures
- 6 All teeth kept clean
- 7 Permanent teeth all present and in good condition.
- 8 Daily recreation in the open air
- 9 Habit of daily evacuation of the bowels.
- 10 Practical health knowledge that works
- 11 A sense of buoyant physical well-being
- 12 Partnership in the solution of school, home, and community problems in health

This goal may seem Utopian, but it is just as practicable and possible as it is to apply the scientific rules of agriculture and grow 125 bushels of corn from an acre of land that formerly produced only 40 bushels. A few have dabbled with the health education of children, but they have done very little along the lines of a co-ordinated and scientific program for the health education of the school child. Utopian as our goal may seem, many practical people have the vision and are dedicating their lives to its realization.

**Physical deficiencies of rural children.** Children in rural schools are certainly not essentially different from boys and girls in town schools, but the health of urban children is receiving much more attention. This is clearly not a square deal, as the health of growing children is a subject of national concern, the very success of our democracy and society in general, as well as the welfare of the individual and of the family, demands that this subject be given continued and increased attention. The eyes, ears, and teeth of children in country schools are often

defective. There is blurring of vision, near- and far-sightedness, and astigmatism. There, for example, was the twelve-year-old boy, so deaf that he could not hear ordinary conversation and whose eyes were so weak that he was obliged to hold his book within a few inches of his face. Notwithstanding his condition neither teacher nor parents had done anything about it, although the defects had existed for several years. In the same school a little eight-year-old girl had been unable to walk one morning. A paralysis of some sort affected her legs so that she was at least temporarily crippled. What was the cause? All bodily defects have a cause which it is the duty of teacher, parents, and county nurse to get at, if possible, with the aid of a scientific physician. Sometimes we find a child with running ears, a very serious condition, and it is common to find partial deafness due to infections from colds.

Many rural pupils suffer from toothache; their teeth have in many cases never received the attention of a dentist. Some parents think that it doesn't matter about children's first teeth—a not unusual but a serious error. Malnutrition is exceedingly common even where food is abundant, pale, weak, anemic children are to be seen practically in every rural school. Because of ill-fitting seats and desks, and for other reasons, spinal curvature, resulting in life-long troubles unless corrected, is all too common. Cases of diseased tonsils and adenoids are sure to be found if teacher and nurse make the proper examination. Every intelligent teacher should know the disastrous effects of neglected tonsils or adenoids. Children often complain of headaches day after day—headaches due to nervousness, to the absorption of poisons, or to improper diet. Nervous troubles are often present, but they are not so easy to detect. Speech defects prevail in nearly every good-sized school. Last, but by no means least, is the dread tuberculosis, which often gains headway without the knowledge of parent or teacher, who should be posted on the early danger signals and secure a medical examination before it is too late. This is only a partial list of common defects, but it is enough to show the seriousness of the situation.

**Precautionary and remedial work.** No rural teacher is doing her duty unless she makes a complete health survey of her school through the examination of individual children. She can find books which will tell her exactly how to do this, the county health nurse or some competent physician will aid her. The health of pupils is the first and most important concern of every rural teacher. The first month should not go by without finding out the chief physical defects, if any, of each child. This information should be set down on cards for future reference. School time should be taken to find out about eyes, ears, adenoids, and all else. The teacher will need to secure the co-operation of parents in certain cases, when possible, and it is often possible if the teacher uses good judgment in her tactics. Many parents are woefully negligent in such matters, the teacher must use tact, common sense, and caution. Many children will need to be taken to a good, conscientious doctor, perhaps to an ear, eye, nose, and throat specialist and to a dentist. Try your best to see that the child gets expert service before it is too late. It often happens that wrong personal habits and wrong home practices are at the bottom of the trouble. Some children will improve if they sleep longer and with their windows open. Some need to drink several glasses of milk every day, and some are not eating enough of other good food. Every rural school child should drink at least a quart of high-quality whole milk every day. Others are eating too much of sweets, such as candy, cake, pies, and cookies. Many a child will improve in health if his teeth are put in good condition. It has often happened that a child's whole outlook upon life has changed when his eyes have been fitted to a suitable pair of glasses, the tragedy is that so many children live on year after year suffering unduly and unnecessarily from defects which may readily be remedied.

**Limitations and opportunities of the rural situation.** Undoubtedly the rural environment is not always and altogether conducive to good health, although many people apparently think of the country as always a very healthy place in which to live. Conditions vary greatly in different states and in different

sections of each state. In some rural communities attention has been given to the subject of health and the efforts of the people in this direction have produced results. However, it is very likely true, even today after all the years of agitation and spreading of information and with the co-operation of many health-promoting agencies, that both the average rural dwelling house and the average rural school building at the present time are sadly lacking in the essentials for healthful living. To be sure, there is plenty of fresh air and often of sunshine out of doors, but these life-giving health requisites may not be found in many homes and schools. Homes and schools are often poorly ventilated; the lack of window space or improper use of curtains may shut out the sunlight. It is also true, of course, that millions of city dwellers live in places entirely unfit for human habitation. Just now there seems to be some prospect that such evil conditions for some tens of thousands of town dwellers may be greatly improved in the near future.

The rural situation is often worse than it needs to be. There are opportunities for improvement. Most of all are needed ideas plus ideals plus the necessary effort. Leadership is often conspicuously lacking. Certainly some money will also be needed; but even when funds have been available, little has been done because of a lack of the necessary knowledge or of the desire or ambition to make a change. A rural teacher who has the proper information, or the desire to get it, and who is enthusiastic for health improvement can do very much to change conditions. If this teacher has a strong and influencing personality results will be forthcoming. The writer has seen rural teachers clean up dirty buildings and outbuildings, keep the schoolroom air in much better condition, let in all possible light, have plenty of fresh, pure water, overcome malnutrition by the use of the hot lunch, more milk, and in other ways, secure the co-operation of the county nurse and of the mothers, and make a physical survey. There are plenty of rural-school limitations certainly, but there are also opportunities for improvement in every school if the teacher will only take advantage of them. She

certainly needs and should have the co-operation of the parents, taxpayers, board members, county superintendent, county nurse, and perhaps of the state board of health.

**Making a preliminary health survey.** For a more complete survey outline than there is room for here the student and teacher are referred to an article in *Hygeia* for June, 1931. The title is "The Rural Teacher's Opportunity"; the discussion deals with rural school conditions and what the teacher can do to improve such conditions. The concluding part of the article is a survey outline which is taken from the monthly bulletin of the Michigan Department, or Board, of Health. The four general divisions of this outline are Health Environment, Health Status of Children, Health Habits of Children, and Personal Qualities of Teacher. Under the first division the survey questions cover the subjects of water supply, toilets, windows and lighting, ventilation, cleanliness, temperature, and seating. The student or teacher will find this outline very useful. Every rural teacher should have such a guide or checking list of essential matters for ready reference at all times.

The rural teacher needs some means which she can use several times during the year to discover vital facts about a child's condition and habits, in order to ascertain if any gains are being made and to determine remedial measures in individual cases. The following thirty-four questions, arranged in miscellaneous order, will assist the teacher in getting at some of the most essential facts. First set down the name, age, and grade of the child, and the date. Then get answers to (1) Do you sleep with your window at least partly open? (2) When do you usually go to bed and when do you get up? (3) Do you sleep well or do you wake up a good deal? (4) Do you always eat a good breakfast? (5) What do you usually have for breakfast? (6) Do you drink coffee or tea? If so, how much? (7) What contagious diseases have you had? (8) Have you ever been vaccinated? (9) Have you ever been given antitoxin for diphtheria? Have you been inoculated with the Schick Test? (10) Do you have toothache? (11) When were you taken to the dentist last? What did the

dentist do? (12) Are you hungry for dinner? (13) What do you usually eat for dinner? For supper? (14) Do you eat much candy, cakes, cookies, and the like? (15) Have you a good toothbrush, and do you use it every day? (16) How often do you take a hot bath with plenty of water and soap? (17) Have you ever been troubled with earache? (18) Did your ears ever run, and if so for how long? (19) Can you hear well? (20) Do your eyes ever bother you? How? (21) When you read does the print sometimes look blurry or hazy? (22) Does your head ever ache and feel hot and dull? (23) Do you have sore throat very much? (24) Do you feel like working in school or not? (25) Do you like to play out of doors? (26) How much water do you drink with your meals and during the day? (27) Do you work at home? How much, and at what kind of work? (28) Can you hear readily what the teacher and children say in school? (29) Can you easily read what is on the blackboard from your seat? (30) When did you go to the doctor last? (31) Do you drink at least a quart of milk every day? (32) Do you always wash your hands before eating? (33) Do you feel rested when you get up in the morning? (34) Name the different kinds of food which you have eaten the past two weeks

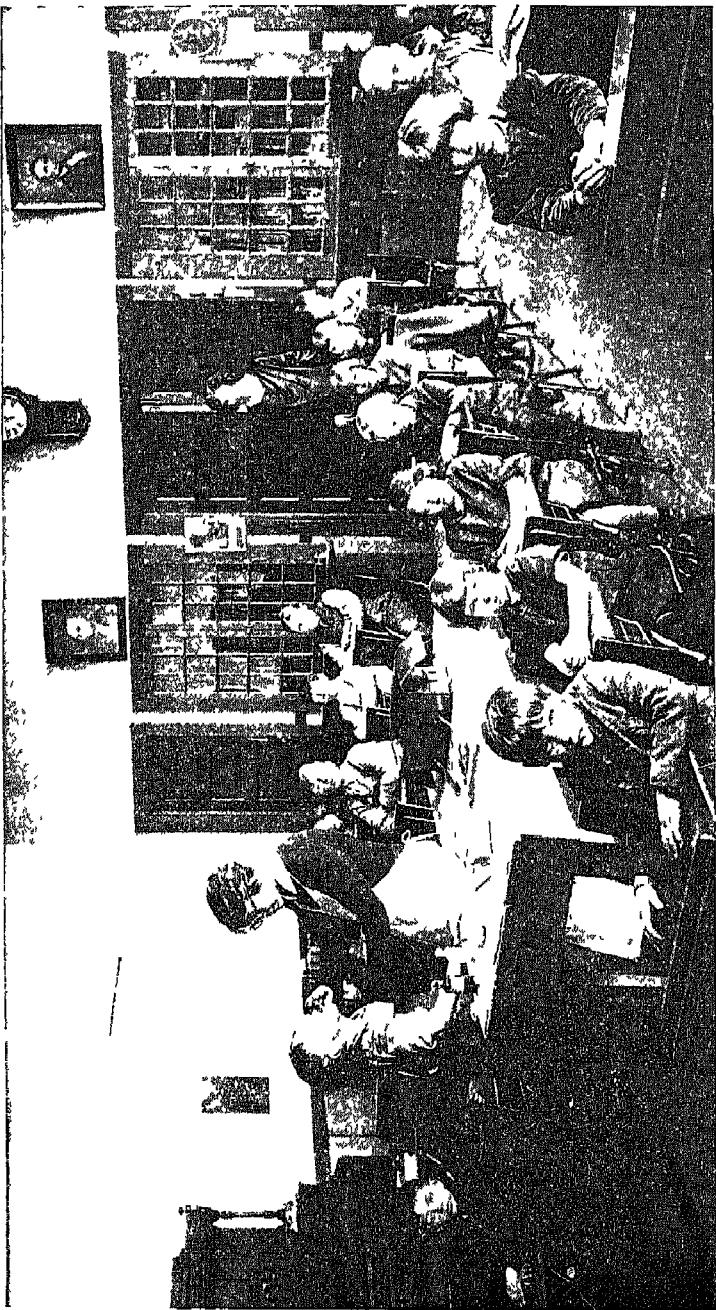
In addition to these answers, which the teacher must, of course, obtain with a great deal of tact and discretion, it will be of value for her to note on the pupil's health card also, the following facts, some of which are cited in *The Classroom Teacher*, by Strayer and Engelhardt<sup>1</sup> (1) Does the pupil have difficulty in respiration? (2) Has the pupil speech impediment? (3) Is this child sick often? (4) Does the pupil appear healthy? (5) Has the pupil cleanly habits? (6) Is the child's head free from vermin? (7) Is the child's tongue coated? (8) Is the child active or sluggish? (9) Does this pupil wear glasses? (10) Does the child show any such eye defects as redness or watering of the eyes, squinting, frowning, cross-eyes, holding book too near, mis-calling well-known words, and the like? (11) Has the pupil good

<sup>1</sup> STRAYER, G. D., AND ENGELHARDT, N. L.—*The Classroom Teacher*, American Book Company 1920

teeth? (12) Are his hands and face clean? (13) Are his clothes neat and clean? (14) Does the child have a handkerchief and does he use it?

The rural teacher should form the habit of recording various data regarding the physical condition of each child from time to time. Such a record is as important as any record of achievement in school subjects. Each child should have a good-sized card on which are recorded all facts pertaining to the health and the defects of the individual. When a child is absent because of sickness the record should be made in sufficient detail.

**Need for periodical health examinations** Some day every school child in America, in both town and country, will be given a thorough physical examination at the beginning of his school life and at regular and frequent intervals thereafter. We are a very long way at the present time from a realization of such a desirable program, but the time will come when this procedure will be taken as a matter of course, as it now is in some favored school systems. The teacher and the school nurse can make many tests and discover many facts concerning the physical condition of the child, such as weight and height records, data concerning health habits, and other needed information, but a trained and skillful physician is required to make examinations of heart, lungs, throat, blood, and urine and to give the other usual tests in a complete physical examination. The physician discovers foci of infection and evidences of malnutrition. He makes tests of the nervous system and he notes evidences of nervousness and lack of emotional balance. A well-qualified physician today is able to learn much about a child's mental health as well as his bodily conditions. It is certainly quite as desirable to know about a child's mental status as his physical, the two conditions are very closely related. An ounce of prevention is worth a great deal of cure, there is preventive psychiatry as well as preventive medicine. In one school system (San Diego, California), "a system of physical and medical examinations is applied at the first, fourth, seventh, and tenth grade levels." "Developmental difficulties are located early in



County nurse visits a rural school  
Thus is one means of promoting the health of rural school children

life and a health history of each pupil is carried forward to accompany his scholarship record" "Special examinations supplement the routine examinations in accordance with individual need, and the correction or treatment of difficulties is encouraged through a system of reporting and conference with parents" On this subject of health examinations teacher and student are here referred to the *Health and Growth Series* (3 or 6 books), published by The Macmillan Company These books are written in a style which appeals to children and the resulting interest and enthusiasm prompts the child to make an effort in forming needed health habits The teacher will find the manuals which accompany the series of very great aid in teaching. In the different books several pages are devoted to the nature of health examinations

**A comprehensive and adequate program.** To show what can be done in a modern progressive school system, we quote<sup>1</sup> from an article in the *Journal of Education* for January 6, 1936, by Superintendent Will C Crawford of San Diego, California.

Physical welfare and health development receive an emphasis co-ordinate with the social and intellectual phases in the program of the San Diego schools A well-developed health department with medical, dental, and nursing staff is provided, which is charged with responsibility for health protection, health education, and health development throughout the school system.

In addition to the usual health-inspection service, special attention is being given by the department to a program of health instruction. Health knowledge and health habits on the part of children are encouraged by nurses and staff members through classroom talks, personal conferences, school assemblies, and special classes in home nursing and first aid. Motion pictures, posters, and health-instruction materials are made available by the department to teachers, parent-teacher groups, community agencies, and to student clubs and organizations both in school and out

Great emphasis is placed upon home contacts. Local experience has shown that illness of pupil or family is the cause of 75 per cent of all absence in the elementary school, hence nurses call upon all second-day absentees and become the first contact between school and home in all cases of absence Cases are referred by the nurse to attendance

<sup>1</sup>By permission of the *Journal of Education*

workers or visiting teachers only when complicating factors are involved. As a result of the constant visiting in homes for attendance or advisory purposes, the nurse has become a familiar, and in most cases, a welcome visitor in every district and has paved the way for a co-operative and constructive health program.

The prevention and lessening of child-malnutrition conditions growing out of the depression has been an important phase of the department's activities and has resulted in numerous home contacts which have led to helpful discussion with parents regarding simple nutritious diets, mental hygiene difficulties, or physical defects which deplete children's vitality. Through co-operative contact with family welfare agencies, nurses have been able to secure adjustment of the diets of children under agency care, and have provided many malnourished children with milk, orange juice, or lunches at school.

Through co-operative relations established with the Board of Health, the medical profession, and the P.T.A., effective immunization and vaccination programs have been carried out yearly on a free or part-pay basis, traveling dental clinics have been established from time to time, and free medical and optical clinics have been developed which have contributed to the normal development of innumerable children during the past few years.

School children everywhere are greatly in need of just such a program of health. In rural communities particularly the need today for a much more comprehensive and adequate health program than is now found is one of the most conspicuous examples of the contrast between what is possible and what is accomplished. It takes money and leadership to give rural children a square deal in the promotion of individual health, but our national welfare demands that these essentials be forthcoming.

**Individual differences in health instruction.** Individual health training through all the grades is vastly more important than any crystallized course of study. The health instruction and training most valuable for any boy or girl depend on the needs of the individual. The girl with bad posture needs personal help. A boy much under-weight may need suggestions on taking more rest rather than doing strenuous work in a gymnasium. If we could deal with each child according to his needs from the kindergarten through the high school, we might expect to get a product in health at the end of his school life to be proud of. This principle of instruction should be the care of the

## HEALTH ACTIVITIES IN THE RURAL SCHOOL 507

health work through all the grades Every teacher and parent is hereby warned against accepting the most perfectly worked out course of study in health teaching in place of attention to the individual needs of the individual child<sup>1</sup>

Provision is made for individual differences in (a) range of information and activities, (b) drill in habit formation for the duller pupils, (c) scientific explanations and advanced projects for the gifted groups, and (d) self-testing and checking devices Work is provided not only for those of the average ability of the grade but also for the exceptionally dull and the exceptionally able

If there are children in the class so far below average in intelligence that they cannot grasp the theory underlying healthful living, they should be taught specific healthful ways of acting in many concrete situations The repetition of the fundamental health habits provided in the series is admirably suited to this group For example, the repetition of exercises in planning meals gives the children in the lower ranges of intelligence opportunity to master this subject The teacher should not be disturbed if the less gifted children do not master all the facts in their texts It is the right of every such child to have work suited to his capacity—work in which he can succeed If he acquires the essential health habits and a knowledge of where to seek advice concerning health problems, the teacher should be well satisfied The brighter children in the class can master the more technical parts of the text and can also do independent supplementary reading The texts provide a variety of material from which the teacher may select that which is best suited to the needs of individual pupils<sup>2</sup>

**Thinking and doing in health situations.** We cannot escape the necessity of reacting in some way to health situations for they are constantly arising From the time we awake in the morning until we go to sleep at night there is a constant succession of behavior responses of some sort Luckily for most of us, habit in most cases takes care of what we think and what we do We are fortunate, indeed, if we have a good set of physical and mental habits, those habits which make for mental and physical health and wholeness Often this is not true, as we can all testify William James said that "The hell to be endured hereafter, of which theology tells us, is no worse than the hell we

<sup>1</sup> UNITED STATES OFFICE OF EDUCATION—*Suggestion for a Program for Health Teaching in the Elementary Schools*

<sup>2</sup> CHARTERS, W. W., SMILEY, D. F., AND STRANG, RUTH M.—*The Health and Growth Series—(Teacher's Guide)*, The Macmillan Company 1935

make for ourselves in this world by habitually fashioning our characters in the wrong way Could the young but realize how soon they will become mere walking bundles of habits, they would give more heed to their conduct while in the plastic state We are spinning our own fates, good or evil, and never to be undone "<sup>1</sup> Dr James was thinking particularly of moral habits, but the same statements will also apply to health habits Bad physical habits cause a vast amount of suffering and disease The school, the home, and other educational agencies have a large responsibility in helping children and young people to form good habits of body and mind

Thinking right does not necessarily imply that anyone will do right in a given set of circumstances "If to do were as easy as to know what were good to do," said Portia, then "chapels had been churches, and poor men's cottages princes' palaces" But it is one thing to *know* and a much harder thing to *act* If we have the habit of chewing our food well, of drinking enough water and milk each day, or of sitting straight and standing erect, then we shall do these things automatically without the necessity of thinking Sometimes we must pass judgment in a given health situation, one of the functions of the school is to teach the child to make inferences or draw conclusions Shall I go skating this cold, raw evening even though I have not fully recovered my strength from an attack of the flu? Good judgment says that I had better wait a few days Shall I take a second helping of this rich food? Although urged to do so, previous experience tells me that I had better not In health instruction, the child should be taught both to think and to do Good habits should take care of most of our health conduct, but some problem solving is also required of everybody It is undoubtedly true that many, if not most, people do very little real thinking in relation to problems of health The condition of their bodies is almost wholly determined by their habits, some of which are no doubt good and others of a character to give trouble, sooner or later

<sup>1</sup> JAMES, WILLIAM—*Psychology*, Henry Holt and Company

**Relative ineffectiveness of most health instruction.** The writer has a clear memory of the type of physiology lessons which he had in both the elementary and the secondary schools. They were purely bookish and academic in character, with almost no influence upon the health improvement of any pupil. There were textbook assignments of so many pages and formal recitation activities consisting mainly of question-answer, reproductive responses of textual materials. There was much anatomy and physiology that did not function. Physiology charts were used and large colored plates gave misleading notions of the human body and its organs. Pictures showing the effects of alcohol were common and grotesquely exaggerated. So far as discoverable, these views had no particular effect on a desire to live a normal, healthful life. Most of the health instruction even at the present time is of little avail. Relatively few teachers understand the fundamental need for fixing health habits; moreover, the techniques for the development of such habits are usually lacking. In the majority of schools teachers do not succeed in producing a genuine, motivating desire for good health. Real interest is not aroused, and wholesome mental attitudes are not given much attention. Too often health information is in the form of fragmentary near-truths or near-facts. To make health instruction more effective there must be a radical change of objectives and of procedures. Children must become objectively health conscious, without the evil accompaniment of undue introspective self-consciousness.

**What is the best time for teaching health?** The teaching and learning of health should not be thought of as a formal procedure at all. Probably the most fruitful health activities will be quite informal, indirect, and incidental. The main requirement is a teacher who is wholesomely health-conscious herself, who has correct up-to-date information, or knows where to get it, and who realizes the enormous importance of habituation activities and exercises. The best teachers of health are vigilant and watchful for opportunities to make real in the lives of their pupils the essential truths and practices of healthful living. It is

doubtful if formal recitations should ever be used. There must be opportunities for group discussions, for purposeful reading, for well-directed study, for a variety of sensible testing procedures, but no time should be set aside for unthinking reproduction of textual materials. Teachers should make use of the best modern textbooks and workbooks. They should utilize some of the now abundant teaching materials. Pictures and posters are valuable. There are now many sources of bulletins, pamphlets, and other forms of teaching aids. The first book to secure is *Health Education*, which may be obtained from the National Education Association. Other sources of information are listed in the Appendix of this book. The *World Book Encyclopedia* and *Compton's Pictured Encyclopedia* are valuable reference books. What is the best time to teach health? The answer is *any time* and *all the time*, directly and indirectly, every day, during all the years of a child's school life.

**Some teaching-learning principles in health education.** We are gradually coming to understand that health is something to teach and to learn. Children must acquire accurate knowledge, they must come into possession of correct scientific information, which means that they understand and know the needful facts or ideas. But ideals, attitudes, habits, and skills are also essential and of vital importance. Now, ideas, ideals, and habits of health can be taught and learned as in any other field of human learning. This teaching and learning should not be a hit-or-miss process, it need not be if the teacher understands the underlying principles. Below are presented several of the well-recognized laws of learning of which the successful teacher makes daily, though indeed often unconscious, use. The laws of readiness, effect, and use have special application in the learning of health ideas, ideals, and habits. The laws of readiness and of effect are often ignored, and the repetition is often purposeless and mechanical. See the chapter on How We Learn and other chapters in this book which treat of teaching and learning procedures.

In order to make this discussion of teaching-learning prin-

ciples and procedures as applied to health education more definite, specific, and concrete, the various suggestions are here given in the form of pedagogical imperatives.<sup>1</sup>

1 *Make sure that the response to any health situation is associated with pleasing conditions and circumstances.* Habits of good health cannot be acquired by force or by mere repetition. Repetitions must be made interesting and attractive. Scolding and nagging do not secure results, their effects are negative or worse.

2 *Stress the fact that those fundamentally important habits which are connected with eating, sleeping, and the elimination of wastes must be started and fixed very early in life.* These habits have a direct bearing upon efficiency, successful living, and happiness throughout life. The most that the school can do is to teach correct ideas and ideals in these highly significant matters, but, in connection with the noonday meal at school, something may be done directly to establish good eating habits, at least

3. *Do not pay too much attention to misconduct, for the child may get real satisfaction and pleasure from the attention which he receives when he is violating the rules of health.* Here is a good place to ignore certain types of disobedience and to depend rather upon the building up of enthusiastic desire for something better through positive, objective teaching of what is right.

4 *Remember that the best form of approval is that which is spontaneous and natural.* It is right and even necessary that the child should know when his conduct is entitled to the praise of teacher or parent, but the danger lies in formal, more or less artificial commendation. Sometimes words are superfluous, the manner and facial expression constitute a sufficient reward. In any case the child must take pride in well-doing and in overcoming deficiencies.

<sup>1</sup> Many of these suggestions are found in *Health Education—a Program for Public Schools*, to which the author is indebted. Suggested ideas only have been utilized using different phraseology.

5 *See to it that children have a chance to try and to experiment even though they make mistakes* Skills are acquired only by independent individual trying and practice Teachers and parents often rob the child of a chance to learn by experience All health habits that have to do with eating, dressing, exercising, and posture must be acquired by a process of trial and error or success, to a greater or less degree A child learns through his mistakes and he is entitled to make them if they lead to ultimate success

6. *Try to make the school as favorable an environment as possible* Good health habits are often the result of imitation If parents and teachers are bad examples, the child is sure to suffer the consequences Scolding is futile at any time, but more particularly when the personal and social standards of the environment conflict with correct ideals of health conduct Example is stronger than precept in the realm of health habits, as it is in morals

7 *Be certain that any show of anger or other emotion on the part of the teacher when the child does wrong is fatal in its effect* When the teacher manifests any emotional excitement as the result of a child's misconduct, he is only adding fuel to the fire Calm, dispassionate treatment of the offender produces the best results In all teaching-learning processes the emotional accompaniment is a large factor, and has a direct bearing upon the net learning product Every child has a right to a just and fair consideration of all the modifying influences He may be right or wrong, or partly right and partly wrong

8 *You should know that the average child responds best when he sees that there is a good reason for such a response* Abstract reasons do not count The explanation must appeal to the child on his own level of understanding and experience Relate occasions and explanations to what the child naturally needs and desires, always trying to change the child's desires to correspond to his real needs.

9 *Do not depend very much upon negative suggestions* The best results are obtained by an objective emphasis upon a pro-

gram of desirable goals and activities. Restraint and prohibition in health, as in character, do not accomplish as much as attention to the worth-while, positive, and possible achievements.

10. *Take easy steps as a rule in the forming of habits* A little today and a little more tomorrow is the best way. No boy learned to skate or to swim well in a day. In forming any health habit the most important thing is persistence and the allowing of no exceptions. Any child may learn to eat a food he does not like if he takes only very small amounts and keeps on trying.

11. *Emphasize successes and not failures* Do not expect too much of children at any time. Be satisfied with small gains just so long as some progress is being made. Children are sure to forget and to go contrary to directions and perhaps often contrary to what they know is right. Teachers need much patience, but they must never lose sight of their goals. Both patience and persistence are constantly needed as well as fairness, frankness, and firmness, without being cross and peevish about it all.

12. *Make use of the law of substitution* When you are trying to uproot a bad habit you must make sure to put something new in place of the old. New interests, new activities, new desires must be substituted for that which we seek to destroy.

13. *Do not be so zealous in your effort to establish a new habit or to eliminate a bad one that your method and manner will be the means of producing other undesirable reactions* It is always best to be direct, not to talk any more than is necessary, and to be careful of the learning conditions and environment which are being set and which will suggest ideas and influence conduct.

**Development of interests, attitudes, ideals.** Knowledge of health facts and laws by itself is not enough to insure healthful living. The old saying that "knowledge is power" is only a half-truth. When knowing has been changed into power to do and when good health habits have been formed, we have taken a decided step in our progress on the road to health. But the most dynamic and motivating force in our lives, not only in the realm of health but in every phase of learning, is found in the de-

velopment of those interests, ideals, and desires which will initiate and control conduct. Nothing can take the place of a lifelong, genuine interest in matters of health which will prompt the individual always to seek new information and new and better ways of living. We will do those things which we greatly desire to do. One of the large functions of the school is to develop legitimate and wholesome desires through skillful teaching-learning procedures. Desires, attitudes, interests, and ideals are born of knowledge. It is essential that the school should give the child every opportunity to know the truth, the scientific facts, as to vitamins, calories, need for oxygen, avoidance of infection, care of the nervous system, and all the rest. If any child acquires an abiding interest and if he desires to know, he will learn of his own accord. In all health activities the teacher should make every effort to arouse and maintain a strong personal interest which will surmount all difficulties in the effort to learn the ways of health.

"An ideal is an idea (concept, meaning) which has a peculiar directive force over conduct because of the feeling of worth that attaches to it. An ideal is a master idea." "An ideal is an idea surcharged with feeling, and thus is made an effective end or goal or standard of conduct." "Good habits are important to a good character, but it should be insisted that character is more than one's capital of habits."<sup>1</sup> Very early in life, before the child enters school, and later, many personal health habits are initiated and fixed to a greater or less degree; no doubt these habits of eating, of sleeping, of elimination, and others form the basis for the later development by the school of all those health ideals and attitudes which will have so much to do with the shaping of anyone's physical and mental condition and make-up. The teacher should understand that the learning of ideas, ideals, attitudes, habits, and skills is a composite and mutually reinforcing process. Understanding and skillful performance go hand in hand.

<sup>1</sup> COLVIN, S. S., BAGLEY, W. C., AND MACDONALD, MARION E.—*Human Behavior*, The Macmillan Company.

**How is a health habit formed?** Let us suppose that the desirable habit to be formed and fixed is that of chewing one's food well. How is such a habit formed? Dr Bagley tells us that "the process of habit formation may be stated under three heads (1) *focalization* of consciousness upon what is to be learned, (2) attentive repetition of the activity, (3) *permitting no exceptions* to occur until the habit has been established." It sounds technical and it is not as easy as it appears. Focalization has to do with getting a clear and correct idea of what is to be done. What is meant by chewing one's food well and why do it? Here is a place for correct knowledge of the relation of chewing to the processes of digestion. The child must clearly understand the need for thorough chewing before he will have a strong desire to initiate the habit. Moreover, he must have a favorable attitude toward the new habit to be learned. "The attitude which one takes toward the habit to be formed is a fundamental factor in the effectiveness of the habit-forming process." It is of the utmost importance that there be the *will to learn*. If a child really wants very much to chew his food well because he sees that it is desirable to do so, he has already half won the battle. Teachers should use every possible means to secure a good start. Dr James said, "Launch yourself with as strong and decided initiative as possible." Dr Bagley states that "the importance of attitude in learning is brought out by some psychologists in the *law of readiness*."

Two weeks of chewing one's food well through thoughtful, purposeful, attentive repetition, without suffering any lapses to occur will in most cases get the habit very well under way. The first two weeks will be the hardest. There must be no half-way measures and no tendency to say, "Well, I will not count this time." No, to make chewing well a habit one must mean business. Any devices or expedients which one may use to prevent falling back into old ways should be adapted. It will not do for one to forget, so a card may be prepared with the proper reminder upon it, or, a string may be tied around a finger. A sheet of paper may be ruled for let us say a month, with columns

for the three meals of each day. Then a record may be made of the repetitions. When the child has such visible evidence of progress, he will be encouraged to continue. It is better not to attempt to form more than one good habit at a time. Every effort must be made to motivate the repetitions. If one method does not succeed then others must be used.

The importance of permitting no exceptions was never better stated than by William James,<sup>1</sup> who said "Never suffer an exception to occur till the new habit is securely rooted in your life. Each lapse is like letting fall a ball of string which one is carefully winding up; a single slip undoes more than a great many turns will wind again. *Continuity* of training is the great means of making the nervous system act infallibly right." In all this work of habit forming, and it is a very large part of all the learning in the elementary grades, teachers must realize that children do willingly what they like to do. That explains the habit-forming possibilities of plays and games. All the accompaniments of habit formation should be as interesting, as pleasant, and as attractive as it is possible to make them. First, the child should be shown exactly what to do and how to do it, and reasons should be given for doing the things which appeal to the child, then repetitions must be motivated in every possible and legitimate way.

**Which health habits?** Every rural teacher should make out a list of health habits which she can use in her own particular school. Some of these habits are of a general character and will need attention in the learnings of the entire group, while others pertain to the needs of individuals. Both good and bad habits are listed and given consideration in any modern series of health books. Many of the state courses of study have complete outlines of habits and of activities for developing them. Good personal habits relate to various matters of cleanliness, to care of the teeth, eyes, ears, hair, etc.; to posture, to selection and eating of food, to use of the handkerchief; to cheerfulness, sleep, exercise, and fresh air; to drinking of water and milk, emotional con-

<sup>1</sup>*Habit*, Henry Holt and Company, N. Y.

trol, regularity of elimination, and many other things. The teacher will also find that she must uproot or eliminate many bad habits, which can best be done by the method of substitution. Such bad habits as putting various unclean articles into the mouth, eating too fast, grouchiness, stooped postures, insufficient drinking, neglect of bathing, cracking nuts with the teeth, biting nails, using soiled handkerchiefs, picking the nose, coughing in another's face, and so on, to great length—all these must receive the parents' and the teacher's daily attention. This teaching should be carried on with the minimum of self-consciousness and the maximum of objectivity. Children need to become health-conscious, but not unduly self-conscious.

In order to know what habits are now being stressed in the best schools, teachers will find it very helpful to read the section on "Habits," pages 40-46, in the Teacher's Guide of the *Health and Growth Series*<sup>1</sup> for grades 3 and 4. There are many things mentioned on these pages to which any thinking teacher may very wisely and profitably give heed. Above all things, teachers should try to avoid any undue attitude of priggishness. The unduly self-conscious health attitude defeats its own purpose; the school should seek to realize the objectives of healthful living by impersonal, objective procedures.

**Possible teaching-learning activities.** The possibilities in the way of health activities on the part of teacher and pupil are practically without limit. Read the article entitled "The Choice and Use of Health Activities" in *Hygeia* for July, 1933, or "The Rural Teacher's Opportunity" in the same magazine for June, 1931. There is also a good discussion on "How the Rural School Can Promote Health in the Community" by Dr. W. W. Bauer in *The Nation's Schools*, November, 1933. Miss Jeanie M. Pinckney in the first article referred to above enumerates ten different types of activities and gives several examples of each. The general classes are hand construction, physical activities; self-expression; group activities; visual aids, excursions; writing, collecting, reading, experimenting. Among the examples under

<sup>1</sup> The Macmillan Company 1935

these headings we list a very few for illustration, as follows: Cutting out pictures of healthy people, cartoons of cleanliness practices in the home, relief exercises, first-aid practices, demonstrations of table manners and discussion and solution of problems relating to table manners; dramatizing getting ready for school, daily inspections, recording height and weight, accidents, sleep, and temperature of room, committees for window ventilation and bulletin board, word pictures, color flash cards, stereopticon slides on milk production, movies of posture and of mosquitoes, excursions to heating plant, parks and gardens, and to museums to see exhibits of Indian life, writing a health book, graph of rat's growth record; making of charts and calendars, collecting newspaper items and materials for a school museum, reading supplementary books, encyclopedias, and periodicals, experimenting, which will include "problems involving questions, observations, judgment, skills, testing and conclusions." At the present time any rural teacher will be able to make use of some activities at any rate which give greater reality and meaning to her health program.

**Learning health through group activities.** In one rural school of about thirty pupils the visitor arrived one winter day just before the afternoon recess on Friday. Teacher and pupils devoted the last quarter-day session to the school society. On this particular day, beside the regular literary program of singing, speaking, and other exercises, the time was devoted in part to the election of officers and of the members of several committees. These officers and committees held office for one month, thus giving everyone a chance to serve in some capacity, or in different ways, several times during the year. One committee kept the toilets in good condition, another looked after the ventilation by means of the windows, one pupil to each window; another committee read and recorded the temperature at frequent intervals and aided in stove-damper adjustments. Three children kept the blackboards in good condition and cleaned the erasers out of doors. Two pupils kept waste paper picked up in the building and on the grounds. The school had a good well;

two pupils kept the tank filled with a constant supply of fresh water. One boy was intrusted with keeping the water in the vaporizing pan at a good level. There were other committees who were actually elected by the group and not appointed by the teacher, although she had constant oversight and supervision. The teacher told the visitor that the pupils really enjoyed their responsibility and did their work as a rule very creditably. In other schools there is a Junior Red Cross or a Health Crusade, or a 4-H Club, or the Boy Scouts, or the Girl Reserves, or the Young Citizens' League, or the Knighthood of Youth. In all of these organizations health and character are the two principal objectives. Every rural teacher needs some such form of organization for the promotion of health and sanitation.

**Things for pupils to do.** The most important thing of all in the health program is well-directed and well-motivated pupil activity. What the pupil *does*, instead merely of what he thinks or knows, is the vital matter. In the Teacher's Guide to *The Health and Growth Series*, page 26, the authors say that

The Things to Do in every chapter are an essential part of the text. It is not an "extra". It emphasizes activities which are an integral part of the health curriculum. The exercises are diversified in order to appeal to individual differences in intelligence, interests, and environment. The teacher should encourage each pupil to do as many of the exercises as may be educative for him.

If Things to Do are carried out as suggested, health instruction becomes an integrated course involving to some extent reading, writing, arithmetic, geography, history, composition, oral English, and drawing. The teacher or superintendent cannot consider the time spent on health education as time totally withdrawn from the tool subjects because skill in reading, writing, and composition is being acquired while working on health problems.

In order to illustrate what it is possible for children actually to do to further their own health education, several samples of things to do are here taken from *Keeping Healthy*. The following shorter suggestions and directions are taken from various parts of the first book of the series named above.

1. Write all the things you want to do to get ready for morning inspection.
  - 2 Wash your hair in the same way that Dick washed his
  - 3 If you have no bathtub, plan a way in which you can take a warm, allover bath twice a week.
4. Read this story about clothing to your mother if she would like to hear it.
  - 5 Look through your other books to learn more about the kind of clothes people in other countries wear
  - 6 Suppose you were in Bill's or Betty's place and had five or ten cents. How should you spend it?
  7. Visit a farm or dairy to see where the milk you drink comes from and what is done to it before it reaches you. If you live on a farm, you can answer these questions now.
  - 8 Make a class collection of all the kinds of grain you read about in this book.
  9. Think of something pleasant to tell your family at the evening meal every night this week.
  - 10 With the help of your teacher write a play about Jean and her cold. Give the play before a lower class. You could have four scenes for the play.  
*Scene I.* Jean comes home from school and talks with her mother.  
*Scene II.* Jean plays out of doors.  
*Scene III.* Jean takes off her coat indoors and talks with her father.  
*Scene IV.* Jean's father and mother talk with each other after Jean goes to bed.  
Read the story again to find out just what Jean, her mother, and her father say in each scene.
  11. If you have a friend who has been very sick but is getting better, send him some picture puzzles or clay so that he will have something to while away the time with till he is well.
  12. Begin at the beginning of the list of habits you have made. Mark yourself on each one for this month.
  13. Make a poster of your vacation health habits for your room at home.
  14. Draw a map showing the best places to play in your neighborhood.
  15. Make a safety exhibit. Find or draw pictures showing how to prevent automobile accidents, cuts, scratches, falls, and burns.
  16. Watch the thermometer in your classroom. How can you keep it about 68°?
  17. Bring some fruit for your midmorning or noon lunch.
  18. Practice settling every quarrel or difference of opinion so that everyone will be satisfied. If you cannot get what you want, let the matter drop and become interested in something else.

**Individual checking records of health practices.** It is now common to use a variety of blanks, graphs, charts, and tabulations by which both teacher and child may have visible evidence of accomplishment, whether creditable or otherwise. For example, on pages 23 and 24 of *Keeping Healthy* in the *Health and Growth Series*, we find under Things to Do this direction, No. 9. "Have a contest to see which row in your class comes to school most often with clean hands and nails. Use a large sheet of squared paper for the record. Let each square stand for one child who has clean hands and nails. If four children in the first row have clean hands and nails, color four squares for them. You can use a different color for each row. Color new squares every day."

A sheet can be ruled for the diet record of each child for each day of the week, list such items as these down the left-hand side of the page. Did you chew your food well? Did you take at least 15 minutes for eating? Did you wash your hands first? Did you drink coffee? Did you drink five glasses of water today? Did you eat between meals? How many glasses of milk did you drink? The rural teacher should rule a form for her entire school on which she records all cases of sickness. Choose symbols for each type of sickness and insert the proper letter. C may stand for colds, for example. There will be as many columns as there are weeks in the year and as many horizontal spaces as there are children. The statements in this section are merely suggestive of many other records which may be made by the teacher or by the individual pupils.

**Measuring results in health achievements.** On page 196 of the 350-page book entitled *One-Teacher Elementary Schools*, published by the Department of Public Instruction of Pennsylvania, we find the following:<sup>1</sup>

#### 1 *Measurements for Teacher*

- (1) Am I setting before my pupils an example in health practices, in desirable attitudes toward healthful living (appearance, posture, health habits, annual health examination)?

<sup>1</sup> Courteous permission to use this has been given by the Pennsylvania State Department of Education.

(2) Am I providing for my pupils as healthful environment as possible in my room (ventilation, temperature 68°, humidity, cleanliness, tidiness, light, seat adjusted to pupil)?

(3) Do I visit the home that there may be a better understanding between the home and the school?

(4) Am I expecting results that affect the health of the pupils?

(5) How many of the following fourteen items listed under "Measurements for Pupils" have I given enough attention to secure results?

## 2 Measurements for Pupils

The purpose of this list is to help the teacher recognize conditions or activities which are related to the health of the pupils. By questioning herself on the results in these, she will have a clear realization of whether her teaching and influence are helping to maintain good or improving poor conditions found at the beginning of the year.

(1) Attitude of pupils toward health behavior (This is manifested by their interest and pleasure in health activities as shown in face and voice, or as expressed in words or acts)

(2) Appearance of pupils (cleanliness, tidiness, posture).

(3) Appearance of pupil's desk and floor underneath

(4) Use of playground by pupils.

(5) Conduct of pupils during lunch period

(6) Responsibility taken by pupils for certain duties which help maintain hygienic conditions at school and promote desirable attitudes toward health practices, e.g., adjusting shades, reporting temperature of room, preparation for lunch.

(7) Social adjustment with other pupils.

(8) Working attitude of the pupils.

(9) Decrease in absence due to illness and accident

(10) Correction of physical handicaps

(11) Immunization against diphtheria and smallpox.

(12) Increase in weight of pupils.

(13) Health-habit questionnaires, records, and other devices. (These may determine health habits formed, those in process of formation, and those still unformed by pupils)

(14) Health-knowledge tests appropriate to grade level given at beginning and end of terms (Such tests help to give teacher and children some measure of their achievement)

The Gates-Strang Health Knowledge Test is probably the most widely known. This test is designed for grades 3 to 8, and comprises 90 pages of over 500 points. It is published by the

Bureau of Publications, Teachers College, Columbia University,  
New York City

One of the Public School Achievement Tests, Battery C, forms 1, 2, 3, and 4, for grades 4 to 8, consists of tests in health and nature study. This may be obtained from the C. A. Gregory Company, 345 Calhoun Street, Cincinnati, Ohio. Send to this company for their general catalogue of all types of tests.

Interested teachers may send to the Public School Publishing Company of Bloomington, Illinois, for A Scale for Measuring Personal and Social Behavior, for grades 1 to 8. Many phases of health are given space, such as posture, exercise, food, sleep, and safety. Ask also for the general catalogue of tests.

Teachers and students should read pages 144-152 in *Health Education* on the subject of Measurement in Health Education and should write to the National Education Association, Washington, D. C., for lists and prices of health tests and for much other material pertaining to health education. Ask for the circular describing Health Education Publications.

**Emotional health and self-control.** The student and teacher will find the subject of mental hygiene discussed in *Health Education*, pages 87-94. The little book, *Your Mind and You. Mental Health*, may be obtained from the National Committee for Mental Hygiene, Inc., 50 West Fiftieth Street, New York City, for 30 cents. The secretary of this organization is Clifford W. Beers, the author of *A Mind that Found Itself, an Autobiography*. Every teacher should make a study of the subject of mental health and hygiene. Burnham's *The Normal Mind* is also a very good book to read. In every school there are children with unstable nervous systems. These children worry about their schoolwork and are subject to various moods, depressions, and emotional disturbances which interfere with achievement and progress. The teacher has a duty in the matter of mental health as well as in that of bodily welfare. The school system, the daily program of study and of class exercises, the manner of conducting tests, the general emotional atmosphere, all should contribute to calmness, poise, cheerfulness, and self-control. It is in

the field of mental hygiene that the teacher can do much by attention to individual needs. Many children are suffering from nervousness and emotional stresses because they are not properly nourished. They do not eat balanced meals; they are not getting sufficient vitamins and mineral salts because they do not eat enough fruit, vegetables, and milk. It often happens that the total of food calories for the twenty-four hours is below standard. Aside from malnutrition, which is common, in many homes and schools little effort is made to protect the child from the harmful effect of strained human relationships. Playground occurrences and incidents of the trips to school in the morning and back home at night may account for many mental troubles of sensitive, nervous children, who are frequently the victims of both heredity and environment.

Here are some guiding ideas for the teacher to keep in mind as precautionary or preventive measures in the realm of mental hygiene:

1 Teach your children to face the facts of life as they are, and bravely to find ways of overcoming personal difficulties. Show the dangers of purely imaginary solutions of real problems.

2 Arrange the program of study and activity so that every child actually succeeds on some decent and respectable level.

3 Study the behavior of individuals so as to discover their personality problems and then aid them in finding satisfactory solutions.

4 Make every effort to overcome malnutrition by giving correct information, the noonday warm lunch, securing the co-operation of mothers and others, and doing whatever else may be necessary.

5. Do not permit a child to continue doing poor work. Discover the causes and eliminate them. Give each child something to do that he is capable of doing.

6 Never permit problems of discipline to disturb the entire school. Settle cases quietly, firmly, individually.

7 Be alert to assure for each child a square deal in the school and on the playground. Do not permit the weaker children to be mis-treated or browbeaten.

8 Arrange to have the school program include adequate relaxation, rest, recreation, change, and freedom for self-expression. It is not uncommon for the dreary sameness of school life, with its uninteresting and deadening procedures, to produce a most detrimental mental condition.

9 Teach and train every child to stand up for his own rights, even to fight for them if forced to do so. School and home should make every effort to develop a spirit of real courage and proper independence.

10 See to it that the program of work and play is well-planned, objective, definite, and direct. The child needs to feel that he is taking part in a going concern, in an enterprise which is of genuine personal value to him. So far as possible, abnormal doubts, uncertainties, and misgivings should be eliminated.

11 Do not permit any system of marking or the use of report cards to have such a bad mental effect upon the child as to outweigh any other possible good results.

12 Try to maintain in the school at all times a spirit of friendliness and helpfulness. Children should feel free to go to the teacher when they are troubled with fears, worries, and doubts about their school experiences.

13. You, the teacher, will need to analyze your own personality to find out whether you have that emotional balance and control which is so important for all those who are engaged in schoolwork.<sup>1</sup>

**What any rural teacher can do.** There are many practical and helpful things which the average rural teacher can do in carrying out a program of health education, and among these are the following, stated imperatively and briefly:

1 Definitely understand and appreciate the fact that health and character education are the fundamental responsibilities of the home and the school and that they are inextricably interdependent. Intellectual education without the other two is ineffectual and often calamitous.

2 Utilize the modern Health Crusade, the Boy Scouts, the 4-H Club, a school society, or some other similar organization to aid in promoting both health and character objectives.

3 Work through a mothers' club, a P.T.A. or a similar organization to secure the co-operation of parents and to keep parents informed of health conditions and the needs of individuals and of the whole school.

<sup>1</sup> See *Health Bulletin for Teachers*, Vol. VI, No. 7, March, 1935, entitled "Emotional Hygiene," published by the Metropolitan Life Insurance Company. Procure a complete list of these important bulletins and of other health publications of this company.

4 Be a good housekeeper. This means knowing what to do in all matters of cleanliness and school sanitation and then doing it each day as a matter of habit.

5 Make all health activities interesting and attractive. This can be accomplished by using modern teaching-learning materials and procedures.

6 Know the symptoms of contagious disease and do not temporize or procrastinate when perhaps the welfare of the entire school is at stake. Post in a conspicuous place the large sheet from the State Board of Health, giving the facts.

7 Study the evidences of malnutrition which you note in your children and take steps toward improvement, particularly through the noonday meal and by securing a greater consumption of milk, fruit, and vegetables.

8 Make a complete health survey of your school, carefully record the facts, and keep the record up to date. In this important enterprise secure the co-operation of the county nurse, if there is one.

9 Collect as much useful material and information on the subject of health and health education as you can find. Procure a good-sized, strong pasteboard box in which to keep magazine articles, newspaper clippings, pictures, cartoons, etc. Add continually to your collection. Pupils can aid greatly in this project.

10. See that your reports to parents carry necessary and useful individual health information. You can procure blank forms for them. It is the duty of the teacher to keep parents informed regarding health conditions, character development, and scholastic achievements and progress. The old type of report card should be discarded.

11 Place the *Children's Charter* and the *Child's Bill of Rights* Poster on the bulletin board. Study and use these basic ideas.

12 Get a Classroom Growth Record wall chart (about 24 X 20 inches), post it up, and enter regular records of height and weight.

13 Use the suggestions concerning measurement in this chapter and send for specimen sets of objective tests.

14 Try to secure the best, most up-to-date textbooks, workbooks, and supplementary books on the subject of health. Perhaps your county superintendent can assist you in this regard. Read the advertisements in educational magazines and send for catalogues, price-lists, and other materials. Use such health workbooks as those published by the Webster Publishing Company of St. Louis. There is a book respectively for grades 1, 2, and 3, for 4, 5, and 6, for 7 and 8. Sixty or more pages,  $7 \times 10$ , in each book are filled with questions, directions, tests, and exercises which will keep the pupil profitably busy. The cost is small and each child will, by this procedure, be engaged in making a personal and permanent product which should mean much to him then and later.

15 Do not use any formal procedures in health education. Depend largely on carefully directed study activities and timely exercises, such as might arise in connection with the weather or a school-yard accident, combined with group discussions, omitting all recitations of the old type. Many activities for the development of habits must be utilized, but they will fail unless motivated by suitable interests and attitudes.

16. Correlate health activities with as many school subjects as possible. This problem is discussed in *Health Education*, which may be procured from the National Education Association or the American Medical Association. This book is the teacher's health bible. The price is \$1.25 (latest edition, 1930).

17 Teach children how to solve personal health problems, but avoid developing health self-consciousness.

18. For your own benefit as well as the good of your pupils, cultivate healthful living and practice the accepted ways of the efficient, happy life for yourself.

19 Purchase, or have the board buy with school funds, a simple first-aid outfit and learn the ordinary first-aid procedures and skills. This may be of the greatest service in any rural school when the need arises, as it often does.

20. Do not forget that very often the most effective health instruction is indirect and incidental, as well as individual, also.

The most fruitful and lasting learning is that which grows out of individual and immediate needs

21 You will find much instructional material relating to health in your school and in the community if you have the knowledge and the initiative which is necessary to find such things

22 Remember that today we know that health objectives include a study of mental hygiene and mental handicaps—mental health, in short. Mind and body are very closely related and mental health and physical health go hand in hand. Modern health textbooks discuss the subject of mental hygiene and mental health.

23. Make an effort not to teach any facts of anatomy or physiology which have no functional value or bearing on healthful living

24 Let your health program most certainly include the latest scientific, useful, and usable information concerning the selection of nutritious foods, the balancing of meals, the functions of vitamins and mineral salts in the diet, and the need for bulkage as a prerequisite to regular elimination

25. Use much discretion in securing the co-operation of parents, nurse, physician, dentist, board of health, or other agencies. Without the co-operation of parents not much can be done in building health habits

#### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1. If you had it in your power, with entirely adequate funds available, what would you do for the children in a rural school district to make the health situation as ideal as possible? Do not overlook any means or agency for constantly improving the personal health of every child

2. Make a practicable health program for an average rural teacher for one school year, including what she can do and what her pupils can do actually to improve health conditions

3. Using four different types of objective tests, make out a health-knowledge test which could be used at the end of the fourth-grade work. The test should comprise at least fifty most important items.

## HEALTH ACTIVITIES IN THE RURAL SCHOOL 529

4. Indicate as many different sources of health materials as possible which are available to the ordinary rural teacher. Include national associations and organizations and private companies, such as the Metropolitan Life Insurance Company.

5. What types of pupil-study activities, including the use of workbooks, are possible in carrying out a health program? When teacher and pupil engage in group discussions, what should be the nature of such class exercises, if we agree to omit the old oral, question-answer procedure as well as topical recitations?

6. Give twenty directions and suggestions to a beginning teacher on the procedures which she may use when there is at hand a three-book series of health texts for grades 3 and 4, 5 and 6, and 7 and 8.

### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

In the book entitled *Health Education A Program for Public Schools and Teacher-Training Institutions*, which may be obtained from either the National Education Association or the American Medical Association, the teacher or student will find extensive and valuable bibliographies on all phases of health instruction. This is the first book on health education for the teacher to procure.

The proceedings of the Health Education Conference held at Iowa City, Iowa, June 19-22, 1935, and entitled *Principles and Practices in School Health Education, 1935*, comprises 363 pages of the latest general discussions of health problems, much of the material relates to rural schools. This valuable report may be obtained from the National Education Association for \$1.50.

The latest complete series of health books (three- or six-book edition), entitled *Health and Growth Series*, was published by The Macmillan Company in 1935. Send to this company, New York, Chicago, Boston, Atlanta, Dallas, or San Francisco for their informational material. The three manuals, called *Teacher's Guides*, which accompany these textbooks, contain many useful suggestions concerning the teacher's part, methods of using the texts, units, habits, typical procedures, supplementary readings, and other topics. There are extensive lists of references.

## CHAPTER XXV

### MEASURING MENTALITY AND ACHIEVEMENT

**Old and new in measurement.** The older tests were indeed inadequate in many ways, especially if not properly conducted, but the new standardized and objective tests are not without some elements of weakness. The fact of the matter is that teachers should make use of both the old essay examination and the modern intelligence, achievement, and objective tests, as they can be made mutually supplementary in the realization of important and desirable educational objectives. Recent experimental studies have shown that the essay type of examination can be made more reliable if the questions are worked out very carefully and a key for scoring is provided at the same time. It is entirely possible to improve the essay examination by the use of scientific principles of measurement.

Twenty to thirty years ago not many school people questioned the validity or usefulness of the common essay type of examination, with its usual accompaniment of a marking system based to a considerable extent upon the personal judgment of the teacher. Today, however, we know that the exclusive use of such a measuring instrument is quite inadequate as the sole means of determining achievement and progress. It is difficult, often actually impossible, to discover individual deficiencies, by means of the traditional examination. Every teacher needs some reliable means by which she can ascertain the approximate status of each member of a class, in order to help him overcome specific weaknesses. Modern diagnostic, prognostic, aptitude, and practice tests, which are of a much more accurate specialized and objective character than the older tests, are the means of attaining more accurate educational measurements than were possible before.

The old essay examination had distinct values which should warrant teachers in still making some controlled use of it. Some of its weaknesses can be overcome. Questions can be greatly improved and scoring can be made more objective and accurate. The new objective tests do not ordinarily measure ability to organize subject matter, they do not usually test skill in seeing relations, drawing conclusions, or interpreting a situation or a group of factual statements. However, objective tests can be so constructed that they will demand from the student much more than the mere setting down of unrelated memory items, often of an insignificant and more or less irrelevant character. It is not easy to make out high-quality questions of either the old or the new variety. While the old examination often did not measure what it was supposed to measure—achievement and progress—it is likewise true that present-day objective tests may also fail to be reliable measures when carelessly prepared and administered. In the last analysis, success or failure in measurement is determined by the teacher's personality, teaching qualifications, and educational objectives. We have had altogether too much hit-or-miss testing, devoid of educational value and costly of time, energy, and money.

. **What can we measure?** In general terms it may be stated with fair accuracy that we can measure two things in the field of education: *intelligence*, or native capacity, and *achievement*, or progress in the work of the school. We now have tests for measuring both general intelligence and special intelligence or aptitudes. The symbol for the measure of general intelligence is the I.Q., or the figure representing the mental age. In the field of special intelligence we now have such aptitude or prognosis tests as the Stenquist mechanical-aptitude test and the Seashore musical-aptitude test. Of course no intelligence test measures anything except particular behavior reactions. It cannot measure anything of an innate character any more than we can measure electricity directly. We measure the effects or the results of electric energy, we measure the behavior responses of the individual which are the results of his experience and learning.

up to the time of giving the test. Achievement tests measure knowledge and reasoning and to some extent appreciation. A good achievement test discloses the pupil's knowledge, ability, and skill in some subject or portion of a subject. The purpose of a prognostic test, which is a variety of intelligence rather than of achievement test, is to predict in advance the child's possibilities of achievement in some particular field. The special type of prognostic test which we call the aptitude test now has rather wide use in vocational guidance. It is now possible, also, to do considerably more than heretofore in the measurement of personal attitudes and character traits. Various tests and rating scales at the present time do secure some useful data in determining an individual's power to judge in moral situations. We are gradually learning how to measure with some success what we call personality. The method is of course to study and determine the nature of the personality manifestations as shown in the individual's conduct.

A child begins school at six years of age with a mental equipment which is the combined result of his heredity plus his experience up to the date of enrollment. It is highly desirable that the teacher discover the child's capacities and abilities as soon as possible, in order to adapt teaching-learning processes to individual needs. Many, or most, rural teachers, even today, guess at the child's mental status and make use of trial-and-error procedures. This is no longer necessary, for by the use of modern tests, especially if they are repeated at intervals, the teacher may get a very trustworthy measure of the child's ability. As the work of the school goes on, the teacher can now use various types of achievement tests, diagnostic tests, spelling and writing scales, inventory tests, pretests, mastery tests, as well as the older type of test, to ascertain the results of her teaching and of the child's learning. She can test the child's knowledge, his memory, and his ability to think, to study, and to solve problems. She can discover his methods and habits of work, his power of appreciation; in general she need not guess nearly so much as formerly.

**Nature and function of norms.** A chief weakness of the older measures was the lack of generally recognized and accepted standards. In the use of modern measurements, which have become quite accurate, effective and common authoritative standards or norms are set up. These have been secured by giving tests to very large numbers of children to discover the average or normal tendency of different groups in various sections of the country. For example, if twenty-five thousand fourth-grade pupils are tested on a given list of words and the results carefully tabulated, an average result, mean, or norm will be ascertained indicating the performance of an average pupil in this subject and grade. It is not difficult to see that the setting up of a scientific standard, derived by experiments and repeated testing over a wide area and in many different schools, is far different from the use of a single teacher's personal, subjective standards. We now know quite definitely what an average fifth-grade pupil, for example, can do in spelling, in writing, in reading, in arithmetic, or in other subjects. These facts are known because of long-continued and repeated tests in many schools taught by many teachers. Modern tests are standard tests because they make use of authoritative, scientifically ascertained norms or standards. There are now several good writing and spelling scales on the market which enable teachers to measure age and grade abilities with much accuracy. "An age norm is the average score of a large number of unselected children at the given age." "Grade norms are the average scores of large groups of children in each grade."<sup>1</sup>

**Types of modern measures.** If the young teacher or student desires to know something of the enormous number and variety of tests and measures which have been developed during the past twenty years or less, it will be very informing to write to the C. A. Gregory Company of Cincinnati, Ohio, or the World Book Company of Yonkers, New York, or the Public School Publishing Company of Bloomington, Illinois, or other publishers. There are at the present time hundreds of achievement tests in

<sup>1</sup> LINCOLN AND WORKMAN—*Testing and the Use of Test Results*, The Macmillan Company 1935

the various subjects of the elementary school, as well as in those of the secondary school. We now have rate or speed tests, power tests, quality scales in handwriting, drawing, composition, and sewing; accuracy tests, range tests, survey tests, and tests of comprehension, organization, judgment, and other abilities. These tests seek to discover the abilities of pupils in the usual school subjects.

If the main purpose is to discover special weaknesses, as for example in comprehension and rate of reading, the tests are known as diagnostic tests. Such tests give the teacher exact knowledge of individual difficulties which will make specific remedial work possible. There are now large numbers of such tests in every subject of the elementary school. The Osburn Revised Inventory Tests in Arithmetic, for example, published by the Public School Publishing Company, are used extensively and successfully. They are easy to give and can be scored in two minutes with pupils assisting. These tests assume that we should teach a child what he does not know, but that we do not need to teach a child what he does know and can do. Intelligence tests, both individual and group tests, have been in use for a long time. The army group-intelligence tests were used extensively and with great advantage at the various cantonments during the war. Self-administering tests of mental ability have been found advantageous in simplifying intelligence testing. There are several of these on the market and they are relatively easy to use and to score.

**Characteristics of a true measure.** Many writers have set up criteria for judging the fitness of a given test or measuring device. No modern standard test is perfect, but modifications are constantly being made; these measures of pupil abilities are becoming increasingly reliable and useful. It is now understood that a scientific test should possess at least the following attributes as nearly as may be possible:

*First*, the test should be a measure of the knowledge, habit, skill, or other reaction that it is expected to discover or disclose. Validity is a prime quality of any dependable test.

*Second*, so far as may be, the test should be objective rather than subjective. Each question should usually have but one answer, the teacher's personal impressions should in nowise determine the mark. This is easy in arithmetic and with all factual material, but difficult in those subjects and topics where several answers may be equally good and correct.

*Third*, the test must give the same results every time, that is, it must be reliable. If the test cannot be depended upon for fairly uniform measurement it is useless. It is then not a standard instrument.

*Fourth*, the divisions of the scale and the values of the different parts of the test must be equal. On a foot rule it is one inch from two to three, and exactly the same from nine to ten. Such uniformity of valuation must be true of a reliable standard test.

*Fifth*, the children must be attracted by the test so that they will try to do their best. If they don't like it, the results will be unsatisfactory, whether because of the uninteresting character of the test itself or of the unskillful way in which the teacher administers it.

*Sixth*, a good test is relatively short and easy to give. If the teacher herself is to give the test, as should often be true, it must not be complicated or take too much of the teacher's time. If long and difficult, teachers cannot be induced to do the work well, they will find excuses for not doing it at all.

*Seventh*, the best tests cover as many grades as possible, the more the better, for then a rural teacher, for example, can compare more pupils with one testing and thus have a wider gauge of her school. The time element is an important consideration.

*Eighth*, a standard test should provide reliable norms. This is now generally done; it enables the teacher to compare her pupils with the average child of this country of given age, grade, and subject. This is obviously very desirable.

*Ninth*, if a test is well constructed, it will discover not only lacks or failures, but the specific causes for lacks or failures. The diagnosis of individual weaknesses, to pave the way for definite remedial work, is highly important; a scientific test realizes this

purpose. The diagnostic test is probably the most useful of all tests.

Tenth, extraneous elements or those not essential to the particular subject matter of the test, such as handwriting, punctuation, spelling, etc., do not affect the grade or mark, as may be the case in old-type tests. Writing and spelling may be measured at other times or in other ways; although, if it is so understood by all, they may sometimes also be judged on a single test.

**Modern measurement not infallible.** A teacher makes a mistake if she looks upon the standard test as a panacea for all the ills of the school. They are a most valuable means of ascertaining individual abilities and weaknesses, but they cannot, in the nature of the case, take the place of individual instruction and guidance in study and learning. Teachers will do well to bear in mind that intelligence, prognostic, and achievement tests are incapable of testing many elements of personality which are important from any point of view related to success in life. Intelligence tests are of the greatest value in determining a pupil's status in school, but great dependence should not be placed upon the results of a single test. In some school systems the I. Q. has been given altogether too much weight. No child should be marked as an inferior, wholly incapable of learning and doing certain things, because of the results of any one test—or even of many tests, for that matter. The good teacher has great faith in the need for and value of skillful teaching. Every child is entitled to a full opportunity to learn and do all that he can with his own particular abilities. The wise teacher does all she can for every pupil in her school regardless of the I. Q. It is now known that *nurture*, in the form of all sorts of educational opportunities, will do very much to neutralize or overcome the weaknesses and shortcomings with which a given child is supposed to be handicapped by *nature* or heredity. The intelligent teacher does not rely wholly on intelligence or other tests in her efforts to promote the progress of her pupils. Modern tests vary greatly in their validity and reliability. Teachers should secure expert advice in selecting tests, and they should try to find tests

which are adapted to their own special conditions. Even the best tests in the hands of a weak teacher may do more harm than good. It is impossible to work out standard tests, accompanied by the simplest, most direct instructions, which are foolproof.

What is the nature of intelligence? According to the latest edition of the *Webster's International Dictionary*<sup>1</sup> (1934), intelligence is "the capacity for knowing and understanding, especially as applied to the handling of novel situations", or, "the power of meeting a novel situation successfully by adjusting one's behavior to the total situation". Intelligence is not easy to define, perhaps it is incapable of brief accurate definition. Psychologists are not wholly agreed as to the exact nature of intelligence, but Binet, a French psychologist and the famous originator of distinctive tests of general intelligence, placed *sound judgment* as the central element of intelligence. Intelligence is the capacity, seemingly a product of both inheritance and experience, to take advantage of opportunities, or to adjust oneself to new situations or requirements by thinking. A person of intelligence uses persistent effort in steadfastly pursuing a fixed purpose leading on to successful accomplishment. It should be carefully noted that intelligence is *capacity* to respond, to learn, to know, to succeed; it is not merely the body of knowledge acquired as the result of experience. Stroud says<sup>2</sup> that "Intelligence may be defined as the ability to utilize past experience." Intelligence is *ability* to learn and to remember.

Undoubtedly the degree of any person's general intelligence is basically or essentially determined by the character of his heredity. We know that idiots and morons are "born short" and will never be made different by the most helpful environment; we also know that genius, or very superior intellectual capacity, is also a matter of inherent, innate ability to respond effectively to the environment. It is very likely a condition of inherited nerve

<sup>1</sup>Reproduced by permission of the publishers of *Webster's New International Dictionary*, Second Edition Copyright 1934, by G and C Merriam Company, Springfield, Mass.

<sup>2</sup>STROUD, J. B.—*Educational Psychology*, The Macmillan Company 1935

structure or a characteristic type of central nervous system which determines intrinsically how high one's I Q may be or become. It goes without saying that environmental influences have very great weight, but no amount of education can ever make a dull individual into a bright one. However, the dull student, for example, may achieve much by industry and effort, while the brilliant student, because of laziness or indifference, may actually fall very short of his possibilities in the way of learning. It is clearly always a case of inherited possibilities of learning, plus opportunities for learning, plus the way the individual uses those opportunities. No doubt all achievement is the product of response to environment. But the extent and the character of our responses are certainly limited, more or less, for everyone of us, by our native endowments.

Dr Thorndike believes that instead of general intelligence there are three phases or types of human intelligence: abstract, social, and mechanical. The author has known automobile mechanics who seemed to be and were highly intelligent and skilled in their particular field, but who had never been able to complete eighth-grade arithmetic, or if they entered high school, were floored by algebra or geometry. They possessed a high degree of mechanical intelligence, but were low in the realm of abstract intelligence.

The writer has known young teachers who apparently could be ranked high in social intelligence but whose I Q, determined by general intelligence tests, was below 100. These young women were very bright and keen in matters of human relationships and they possessed the happy faculty of liking people in general and of getting on well with parents, board members, pupils, and others. In abstract intelligence these teachers were relatively weak; in social intelligence they showed much evidence of being sure of themselves and of being able to acquit themselves with credit in social situations. The concept of general intelligence is a very useful one, but there are many qualifications and modifications which should be taken into the general reckoning.

**The grade of mentality varies greatly.** Children differ in a

multitude of ways, it is now understood that although differences are due both to heredity and education, the original native endowment or capacity has the largest influence. Education only accentuates differences already existing, the dullness of a dull child or the brightness of a superior child becomes increasingly manifest. Both children and adults differ in race, age, size, type of nervous system, quickness or slowness of response, temperament, type of memory, power and character of imagery, acuteness of the senses, habits, ideals, capacity for interest and attention, dependability, studiousness, cheerfulness, courage, sense of humor, temper, self-control, and social nature. They differ in what we designate as general intelligence, that is, the general mental capacity to get on in life or to make one's way in the world successfully in competition with one's fellowmen. Varying response to different situations is due in large measure to differences in natural capacity or intelligence.

Terman's classification of individual differences, based on intelligence quotients, is as follows:<sup>1</sup>

<i>Intelligence Quotient</i>	<i>Classification</i>
Above 140 .	Near genius or genius
120-140	Very superior intelligence
110-120	Superior intelligence
90-110	Normal, or average intelligence
80-90 .	Dullness, rarely classified as feeble-mindedness
70-80 .	Border-line deficiency, sometimes classifiable as dullness, often as feeble-mindedness
Below 70	Definite feeble-mindedness

It has been found by making a large number of intelligence tests that about 60 per cent of all children have an intelligence quotient falling between 90 and 110. Twenty per cent are below 90, and 20 per cent above 110. This table shows a more detailed distribution of the I.Q.'s of a considerable number of school children.

<sup>1</sup> TERMAN, L. M.—*The Measurement of Intelligence*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1916

I Q below 70	1 per cent	I Q 100-109	30 per cent
I Q 70-79	5 per cent	I Q 110-119	14 per cent
I Q 80-89	14 per cent	I Q 120-129	5 per cent
I Q 90-99	30 per cent	I Q over 129	1 per cent

The following classification is given in *Human Behavior* by Colvin, Bagley, and Macdonald

Below 25	Idiot	90-110	Normal
25-49	Imbecile	111-119	Bright
50-60	Moron	120-130	Very bright
75-89	Dull normal	Above 130	Superior

**Mental age and the I. Q.** We can now determine, then, about what average score a nine-year-old or a twelve-year-old child will make when the Stanford-Binet or some other good scale is used. Any twelve-year-old pupil can readily be tested and his mental age determined. If he secures the exact twelve-year average score he is said to be normal. If he makes the score of the average fifteen-year-old, his *mental age* is fifteen though he is *chronologically* only twelve. If on the other hand, a twelve-year-old is able to pass only the tests for the average ten-year-old, two years under age mentally, his mental age is ten years. If a six-year-old has a mental age of eight, then when he is eight chronologically his mental age will very likely have increased correspondingly; it will be approximately ten and two-thirds years. This relationship will persist up to the maturity of the individual. This is only another way of saying that the I. Q. remains fairly constant. Terman places the average maturity age at 16 and Thorndike at 22. For the large majority of people the mental age and the chronological age are about the same. There are also many persons whose mental ages exceed their chronological ages and many who are below normal. About two thirds of all people are normal, and one third are above or below normal.

I. Q. means *intelligence quotient*; it is secured by dividing the mental age by the chronological age. The I. Q. is a very convenient expression for a child's mentality. If a pupil is ten years old chronologically, but only eight years old mentally, his I. Q.

is said to be 80. The decimal point is not used. If another ten-year-old has a mental age of ten, his I.Q. is 100. If a third child ten years of age has a mental age of twelve, his I.Q. is 120. This first child is dull, the second medium or average, and the third bright or superior. The three situations are shown thus.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{I} - \text{I.Q.} &= \frac{\text{M.A.}}{\text{C.A.}} = \frac{8}{10} = 80 \\ \text{II} - \text{I.Q.} &= \frac{\text{M.A.}}{\text{C.A.}} = \frac{10}{10} = 100 \\ \text{III} - \text{I.Q.} &= \frac{\text{M.A.}}{\text{C.A.}} = \frac{12}{10} = 120 \end{aligned}$$

**Brightness and dullness.** Woodlow begins his very suggestive and useful book *Brightness and Dullness in Children* by giving a letter written by Francis Galton to his sister the day preceding his fourth birthday.

My dear Adele

I am 4 years old and I can read any English book. I can say all the Latin Substantives and Adjectives and active verbs besides 52 lines of Latin poetry. I can cast up any sum in addition and can multiply by 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, (9), 10, (11).

I can also say the pence table. I read French a little and I know the clock.

Francis Galton February 15, 1827

Although Francis misspelled February, he was a prodigy. He was a very bright, or superior, child, whose I.Q. would undoubtedly be around 175. In his book, *The Intelligence of School Children*, Dr. Terman gives the records or personal histories of dozens of children—dull, medium, and bright. Chapter XI deals with Case Studies of Forty-one Superior Children.

In nearly every school and practically in every class there are bright, medium, and dull pupils. Terman uses the terms *superior* and *inferior*. Both bright and dull pupils are retarded in the grades, but the superior child, notwithstanding common belief to the contrary, is retarded the most. Many a pupil with a superior mind, a high I.Q., is made to mark time because of the

rigidity of the graded system, and because his teacher does not possess the knowledge and the moral courage needed to place such a child where he belongs.

By the use of intelligence tests, repeated as often as necessary, and by the use of the various achievement or diagnostic tests, a teacher should ascertain early in the year the mental standing of each of her pupils. Dull pupils require much dull and, in general, entirely different treatment from those of superior mentality. This is no longer a field for guessing. It is a case for clear, definite diagnosis. The dull child is not to blame for his dullness and should not be scolded or ridiculed. The superior child should have a chance either to progress as rapidly as his superior abilities and his health will permit, or there should be an enrichment or differentiation of the content of the curriculum for the benefit of those who are able to do additional work or a higher type of work. In many schools the bright pupil is not given a fair chance. Often his teacher is not clearly conscious of the bright child's ability. Both the inferior and the superior child should have an opportunity to do their best; this can come about only under a teacher who has a knowledge of the problem of individual differences and of the standardized tests of intelligence and achievement.

**Content of intelligence tests.** The Binet-Simon scale contains a great variety of tests. Memory, for example, is tested by the repetition of sentences ranging from three to twenty-six syllables in length, and by the repetition of digit series ranging from two to seven digits each. There are several tests of "time orientation," including distinction between forenoon and afternoon, naming the days of the week and the months of the year, and giving the date. Eye-hand co-ordination is tested by drawing geometrical figures from copy; wealth of ideas, by naming as many words as possible in a given time, perception, by the description and interpretation of pictures; logical association, by the detection of nonsense in such statements as "I have three brothers—Paul, Ernest, and myself"; resourcefulness, by questions asking what one ought to do under given circumstances, as,

for example, if one's house is afire, if one is going somewhere and misses the train, etc. There are also tests of language comprehension, of knowledge about common objects, of ability to comprehend and use abstract ideas, and of other intellectual powers.<sup>1</sup>

**Advantages of intelligence and achievement tests.** Among the many advantages of standardized tests the following are important from the standpoint of teaching and learning.

1. They are of the greatest value for diagnostic purposes in discovering individual weaknesses and definitely pointing the way to necessary remedial procedures.

2. They furnish a more exact measure for determining the classification and promotion of pupils, although they are by no means the sole criteria for this purpose.

3. Educational tests used with large numbers of children afford reliable standards and norms; they may be used to measure much more accurately the achievements of pupils in the subjects of the curriculum.

4. The results of high-grade intelligence tests, when such tests are used often enough, are not materially affected by environmental factors. Although educational opportunities affect the I.Q. to a varying degree, it is entirely possible to determine a child's mental age with much exactness; there is no comparison between such modern testing and the use of mere personal opinion without the aid of objective procedures.

5. The objective quality of modern tests enables any teacher to obtain practically the same results each time, no matter what the subjective conditions of teacher or pupil may be. Objectivity in educational measurements is a quality greatly to be desired.

6. By the use of good tests a careful teacher is able to find the more essential, superior, worthy, or vital elements in any child's mental achievements and school progress. In other words, when scientific, standard, objective tests are employed the teacher gets more precise knowledge of the net products of her teaching and of the pupil's learning.

<sup>1</sup> Terman, L. M.—Article on "The Measurement of Intelligence" in *The World Book Encyclopedia*, W. F. Quarrie and Company, Chicago 1935.

7 When standard objective tests are used the influence of the particular school, or class, or teacher does not materially affect the grade of any individual child as so frequently happens when subjective methods of grading and the intervention of personal bias are permitted to have great weight. A bright child in a group of generally low mentality will be discovered, while inferior pupils in a generally bright class will likewise invariably be found.

8 Good modern tests are one of the best motivating agencies that the ordinary teacher can use. The incentive to work and to improve, which is inherent in judicious testing, and which is one of the common by-products, is an outstanding advantage of the testing movement, as we see it today.

**Revisions of the Binet-Simon Scale** Over fifty years ago Ebbinghaus tried unsuccessfully to measure intelligence, which he thought to be a general mental power. In 1905, Professor Alfred Binet of Paris devised his first successful scale for measuring intelligence, which he conceived to be a combination of many mental abilities. In 1908 and 1911 Binet and Theodore Simon, a Paris physician, perfected intelligence tests as one means of solving the problem of retardation. Their purpose was to single out the children who could not do ordinary school work. These tests have been widely used both in Europe and America. In the Binet-Simon Scale there were fifty-four tests, ranging from the third year up to adults. In the United States the old Binet-Simon Scale has been much improved by Dr. Lewis M. Terman of Leland-Stanford, Jr., University, by Goddard, and by Kuhlmann. The Goddard Revision was published in 1910, Kuhlmann's in 1912 and 1922, Terman's in 1916. The Yerkes-Bridges-Hardwick Point Scale appeared in 1915 and Herring's in 1922. The Herring Revision, published by the World Book Company, is considered a very good individual examination of mental ability and is based on the original Binet-Simon Tests.

The *Stanford-Binet Scale* or the *Stanford Revision* comprises ninety tests and is the net result of testing many thousands of children and carefully tabulating the results. Write to Houghton

## MEASURING MENTALITY AND ACHIEVEMENT 545

Mifflin Company for samples of these tests and for information concerning their use In the original (1911) Binet Scale the five tests for age five were as follows

- 1 Compares two weights
- 2 Copies a square
- 3 Repeats a sentence of ten syllables
- 4 Counts four pennies
5. Unites the halves of a divided rectangle

For the tenth year these five were used

- 1 Arranges five blocks in order of weight
- 2 Copies drawings from memory
- 3 Criticizes absurd statements
- 4 Answers difficult common-sense questions
5. Uses three given words in not more than two sentences

Teachers may secure any intelligence test published, and there are a score or more, by writing to C. A. Gregory Company, Cincinnati, Ohio

**Kinds of intelligence tests.** These tests are all either individual or group tests, another classification is into verbal and nonverbal or *performance* tests Originally intelligence tests were used mostly to determine low-grade mentalities, they were individual tests, which of course require much more time to administer Individual tests are, however, more exact but require greater skill on the part of the examiner When the World War came on it was found necessary to test very large numbers of soldiers, both literate and illiterate So the group intelligence tests, both verbal and nonverbal, were prepared at that time for this purpose and were used extensively In schools group intelligence tests have found a large place When necessary in exceptional cases, individual tests may and should also be used for more accurate measuring For examining large numbers of school children group tests are indispensable and they may be used successfully by any average teacher Both the testing and the scoring may be done quickly Both group tests and individual tests may be used with those who can read or under-

stand the given language and those who cannot. In using verbal or language tests, the examinee must either be able to read or to understand the spoken words. At the time of the World War the *Beta* test was used with the illiterate, or those who could not read or understand English. The verbal test was called the *Army Alpha*. The nonlanguage or performance tests were early used by immigration officers. These tests are standardized and provided with norms and time limits. Sometimes pencil and paper are used and sometimes not. In using the *Army Beta* sometimes the directions were given by means of various actions and manual signs by the administrator.

**Character or personality tests.** The student and teacher should study chapters 14 and 15 in Stroud's *Educational Psychology*<sup>1</sup> on the subjects of the Development of Personality and Studies in Personality. This author discusses the various means which have been used and are now being employed to measure personality traits. Chapter 16 in *Human Behavior* by Colvin, Bagley, and Macdonald will also prove very suggestive in studying this problem. This is a field in which many experiments are now being made and in which large numbers of tests, rating scales, and questionnaires have been devised. It is impossible to test personality in a general way. Personality is not an entity or a unitary something; instead, it is the sum total of a multitude of behavior characteristics and tendencies. All that can be done is to secure samples of behavior responses. There are now several tests of attitudes, of moral judgments, of interests, of a variety of conduct reactions, and other responses. The results secured in personality tests are, as a rule, not so dependable as those of intelligence and achievement tests. Nothing like the exactness of the diagnostic tests in school subjects has been obtained in the realm of character or personality testing. The objective methods of the behaviorists have a most fruitful field in the study of the behavior manifestations of what we designate as human personality. The best character tests are those which measure the performance or conduct reactions under specified conditions.

<sup>1</sup> STRoud, J. B.—*Educational Psychology*, The Macmillan Company, 1935.

One of the greatest difficulties is to obtain true measurements of behavior under normal situations in which artificial or manufactured conditions have been reduced to a minimum.

A number of years ago Paul F. Voelker<sup>1</sup> endeavored to find out whether it is possible to measure the development of ideals and to determine the procedures needed for such development. Most of the Voelker tests had to do with honesty. This investigator came to the conclusion that certain forms of direct teaching as found in such young people's organizations as the Boy Scouts do have a definite bearing upon the development of the ideals and habits of honesty. Symonds<sup>2</sup> gives a detailed account of the testing procedures which are used in the measurement of personality. The principal means employed are those which involve directed and detailed observation of behavior responses through the use of questionnaires, performance tests, and the like. Public schools in general are not using personality tests today nearly as much as they will, in all probability, during the next decade. It is important for any teacher to be a student of personality, for the establishment of wholesome, socially useful, and effective personality attitudes, interests, ideals, and habits is really the main job, after all. At the present time one of the conspicuous needs in the field of testing is a relatively reliable measure of the moral judgments and attitudes of children in order that teaching-learning procedures may be used to develop desirable character traits. Undoubtedly many measures of various types will be necessary in this field, but certainly all of them will be limited to a measurement of behavior reactions; personality cannot be measured directly just as it is impossible to measure intelligence directly.

**Accomplishment tests and ratios.** This topic might be worded "achievement tests and achievement quotients." The achievement or accomplishment quotient or ratio is found by dividing the subject, or achievement, or educational age by the pupil's

<sup>1</sup> VOELKER, P. F.—*The Function of Ideals in Social Education*, Bureau of Publications, Teachers College 1921.

<sup>2</sup> SYMONDS, P. M.—*Diagnosing Personality and Conduct*, Century Company, 1931.

mental age. A child's "accomplishment quotient is the ratio of the child's actual accomplishment in a subject-matter test or group of tests to his general mental ability. In other words, it shows the relationship of what the child actually does to what may reasonably be expected of him on the basis of his intelligence."<sup>1</sup>

Diagnostic tests, inventory tests, supervisory tests, prognosis tests, research tests, practice tests, subject tests and scales, instructional tests, quality, or product, and performance scales are all measures of a pupil's achievement or progress in school-work. The most useful measure of a teacher's instructional success is the progress of her pupils collectively and individually during a given period of time—a month, a term, or a year. Such a measure is a true diagnostic instrument, because it reveals particular difficulties and makes clear what needs to be done both with dull and bright pupils.

Achievement tests, including many achievement batteries (all subjects), such as the *New Stanford Achievement Test* both Primary and Advanced, Forms V, W, X, Y, Z, or the *New Metropolitan Tests*, are available for the use of any teacher. "Carefully derived age and grade norms, representative of school children throughout the country, are available." These have been obtained by giving tests to many thousands of children. The *Gates Primary Reading Tests* for the first two grades and the *Sangren-Woody Reading Test* for the five upper grades are good examples of modern achievement tests. It takes about 70 minutes to administer the *Stanford Primary Test* and about 150 minutes for the *Advanced*. The *Iowa Spelling Scale* or the *Morrison-McCall Spelling Scale* are good examples of scientific educational scales.

A child with a high I.Q. should usually make better progress in schoolwork than one whose I.Q. is much lower. But this is not always the case; it happens not infrequently that a child of only moderate intelligence surpasses the brighter schoolmate,

<sup>1</sup> LINCOLN, E. A., AND WORKMAN, L. L.—*Testing and the Use of Test Results*; The Macmillan Company. 1935.

and for various reasons. Two important determining factors are health and industry. Great brain capacity does not get us far in learning if there is lack of nervous energy or if there is a disposition to take life too easy. Lincoln and Workman state that "It must be remembered, however, that achievement is not determined by ability alone. Interest, earnestness, motivation, and other significant things and conditions are all factors in achievement."

The accomplishment quotient for a given subject is found by dividing the subject age by the mental age. For example, a pupil with a mental age of ten years and a subject age of twelve years in reading, has an accomplishment quotient in reading of 120. A pupil twelve years of age mentally may have a spelling age of only nine years. Then his accomplishment quotient in spelling is only 75. A child's general accomplishment quotient may be found by dividing his total educational age, the composite for all school subjects, by his mental age. If a child is doing normal work his general achievement quotient should be about 100. If this A. Q. is much below 100, the teacher should know the reasons back of the situation. The authors of *Human Behavior*, already referred to, say that "Investigation tends to show in general that persons with slightly lower than normal intelligence accomplish more than their theoretical expectancy, while those with high I. Q.'s very seldom surpass their expectancy. In other words, persons with I. Q.'s slightly below 90 very often have A. Q.'s above 100, while persons with high I. Q.'s very seldom have A. Q.'s above 100 and often fall below 100." Then the writers briefly consider the underlying causes, among which may be the fact that teachers give more attention to the duller pupils and are inclined to let the brighter ones shift for themselves.

**Prognostic and aptitude tests.** A prognostic test is a form of the intelligence test characterized by test items which will enable the examiner to obtain a more or less accurate idea of what a child will be able to do in the future in one or more school subjects or in some particular field of study or activity.

The aptitude test, much used today in vocational guidance, is a form of the prognosis test which is intended to discover a person's special adaptability for some particular type of work or life activity. Aptitude tests are used much more today in industrial circles than in schools. Every good intelligence test is of course also a prognostic test, to some degree. Today we have mechanical aptitude tests, such as the *Stenquist* musical aptitude tests, of which the *Seashore Test* is the best known, and others which have some predictive usefulness. It is of course highly desirable, if it is possible, to be able to discover early in life what particular field of human endeavor or achievement a young person is best fitted for. At the present time prognostic and aptitude tests are rather crude and inaccurate instruments of measurement, just as are the personality tests. As always in the past, we find young people today drifting more or less aimlessly into trades and professions, although scientific vocational guidance in many school systems has accomplished a great deal to help young people find their proper places.

**Practice or drill tests.** The name indicates the purpose of these tests. The *Courtis Standard Practice Tests in Arithmetic* have been widely used for many years. These practice tests are used in grades 4 to 8 and are well adapted to individualized instruction. The *Courtis* tests have to do with whole numbers; there are 48 graded lessons on cards. First the pupil is tested to discover his individual needs and then the appropriate practice material is provided to secure the desired skills. Scientific practice tests are now available in several school subjects such as reading, arithmetic, and writing, and these tests are now standardized to furnish the necessary drill to overcome individual weaknesses. The special value of such tests is that they are prepared with much exactness, are objective in character, and are provided with norms. Besides the *Courtis* tests two other well-known practice tests in arithmetic are the *Lennes Test and Practice Sheets in Arithmetic* and the *Economy Practice Exercises in Whole Numbers* by Studebaker, Knight, and Ruch. The *Gates-Pearson Practice Exercises in Reading*, and the *Leamer*

*Diagnostic Practice Sentences in Handwriting* are also good illustrations of modern practice tests. Serviceable practice tests are based on the principle that children should not work on what they now know or can do, but rather that interesting and attentive repetition for developing specific skills should follow definite diagnosis of specific needs. The first need is to find out what the pupil does not know and cannot do, then to apply the necessary remedial practice. As much as possible, pupils should be prevented from making mistakes, and as far as may be the drill activities should be well motivated. That is to say, pupils should see the need for what they are doing and have a desire to do it. Modern scientific practice tests disclose individual needs and provide practice to develop corresponding specific skills. Rural teachers will now find that many workbooks published by several different companies provide today for rather exact diagnosis and also for suitably motivated remedial practice. The rural teacher needs reliable materials for individual instruction; she can profitably make use of good practice or drill tests. It will pay any teacher to investigate the practical usefulness of drill tests. The use of some of this commercial, standardized material will add much interest to school work and will also enable the teacher herself to acquire proper objectives and correct standards.

**Instructional tests.** These are "tests used to aid in teaching, especially where some individualized instruction is used. Tests are prepared for special units of the subject rather than for the subject as a whole . . . Work books or practice exercises or instructional tests are carefully selected exercises grouped and arranged conveniently for drill purposes" <sup>1</sup>. Sometimes these tests are published by book companies for use with a particular textbook and sometimes they are of a more general character and adapted to different texts and to a variety of courses of study. Publishers are, in some cases, printing these instructional tests in the regular textbook or in a workbook which accom-

<sup>1</sup> LINCOLN AND WILSON, *Second Year Book of Education*, The Macmillan Company.

panies a particular text. One advantage of instructional tests, especially if they are adapted to a certain text, is that the teacher has at hand a convenient means of accurately measuring the actual accomplishments of individuals as the teaching and learning processes go forward. Pupils, themselves, are also able to judge of how well they know and can do the required work. It seems likely that publishers will increasingly provide good tests as an essential element of a serviceable textbook in the subjects of the elementary school. Good instructional tests measure speed, accuracy, comprehension, organization, judgment, appreciation, memory, problem-solving ability, and other powers and abilities in arithmetic, language, reading, and other subjects.

**Nature and use of scales.** Lincoln and Workman state that "a scale is (1) a test in which the items are arranged in order of difficulty, the increase in difficulty being equal for successive steps; (2) an instrument made up of carefully selected and graded samples of pupil performance, as a penmanship scale; (3) a series of lists of equally difficult items, as a spelling scale."

Two of these most widely used measures are the Ayres Scales—one *A Measuring Scale for Ability in Spelling* and the other *A Scale for Measuring the Quality of Handwriting of School Children*. A scale is a measuring standard or instrument by means of which the teacher may judge a pupil's finished product. In the *Ayres Scale for Handwriting* eight samples are given, ranging from the poorest, with a value of 20, up to the best, with a value of 90. This is the Gettysburg Edition of the scale, and may be obtained by writing to the Russell Sage Foundation, New York City. In using the scale the teacher slides the pupil's writing along the scale until it comes to the particular quality which it most nearly resembles. *Quality*, rather than *style*, should be kept in mind, as the criterion or standard for comparison.

The *Ayres Scale for Ability in Spelling*, is published by the same Foundation and contains 1000 words arranged by grades. Teachers should also get the monograph which accompanies the scale. "All the words in each column are of approximately equal

spelling difficulty. The steps in spelling difficulty from each column to the next are approximately equal steps. The numbers at the top indicate about what per cent of correct spellings may be expected among the children of the different grades. For example, if twenty words from column *H* are given as a spelling test it may be expected that the average score for an entire second grade spelling then will be about 79%. For a third grade it should be about 92%, for a fourth grade about 98%, and for a fifth grade about 100%."

Besides the Ayres scales in handwriting and spelling, *Thorndike's Handwriting Scale* is used extensively throughout the country. We also have the *Freeman Chart for Diagnosing Faults in Handwriting*. The *Buckingham Extension of the Ayres Spelling Scale* (1500 words) and the *Iowa Spelling Scales* for grades 2 to 8, a separate scale for each grade, are now well known. Often it is of value for each pupil to have his own copy of the scale. The *Morrison-McCall Spelling Scale* is a booklet of 16 pages containing eight spelling lists of 50 words each, for the use of the teacher.

There are many scales now on the market in reading, spelling, arithmetic, handwriting, composition, and some other subjects. *Woody's Arithmetic Scales* in the four fundamental rules are well known. The *Searchlight Problem Scales* or the *Buckingham Scale for Problems in Arithmetic* is made up of three divisions, of two forms, I and II, each. The three divisions are for grades 3 and 4, 5 and 6, 7 and 8, respectively. The *Woody-McCall Mixed Fundamentals* is designed for grades 3 to 8, inclusive. The *Hudelson Typical Composition Ability Scale* is adapted for grades 4 to 12, and is "an accurate instrument for the measurement of achievement and the classification of pupils. The even grading of the samples makes it a scale easy to handle." It consists of a series of compositions carefully graded which serve as examples for composition writing. The *Lewis English Composition Scales* are designed to measure attainment in letter writing. The compositions used were written by school children in grades 3 to 12, under standard schoolroom conditions. The

*Willing Scale for Measuring Written Composition* is designed for grades 4 to 9, inclusive. The *Thorndike-McCall Reading Scales* are prepared for use in grades 2 to 12, inclusive, and the entire series has nine equivalent and interchangeable forms.

The directions on one composition scale are as follows: "Compare the quality of your composition with the quality of the samples on the scale. Assign to your composition the numerical value of that evaluated sample which most nearly equals it in merit."<sup>1</sup> One writer states that "Teachers who use the composition scale will find themselves becoming more critical of the adequacy of the thought expressed in the compositions written by children, and possibly somewhat less concerned about the formal side of the work."<sup>2</sup> Every rural teacher should make use of writing, spelling, and composition scales at any rate. Standards for comparison, scientifically determined, are of great value to any teacher. Quality or product scales really take the place of achievement tests in subjects where these cannot be used. Modern scales are the result of extensive investigations and samplings of the work of pupils in all parts of the country. They have proved of much value to thousands of teachers.

**Techniques in modern testing.** Every teacher today needs to understand the methods of modern testing and to have some skill in the administration of tests. If possible, the young teacher should have at least a brief training course in tests and measurements. The essential principles of modern measurements are not difficult to master; no teacher is today fully equipped for her work without this necessary knowledge and skill.

1 No teacher should attempt to give any intelligence or achievement test until she has read the directions carefully.

2 Directions must be followed closely if the results are to be of much value. Here is a case where ability to do exactly as required has a direct relation to the value of the net results.

3 Teachers should learn how to give tests by watching others and by actually taking tests themselves. Then the learner

<sup>1</sup> HILLEGAS—*A Scale for the Measurement of Quality in English Compositions by Young People*.

<sup>2</sup> STRAYER AND NORSWORTHY—*How to Teach*

should give the tests to pupils under the direction of some person who knows the technique.

4. Secure the *Thorndike-McCall Reading Scale*—for grade 5, let us say, and carefully read the directions. They are very explicit and are in themselves a good test in silent-reading abilities. Part of the directions are for the pupil and part are for the teacher. The directions in the *Haggerty Reading Examinations*, the *Sangren-Woody Reading Tests*, the *Gates* or the *Pressy* tests, or in many others will illustrate the point just as well, so far as reading tests are concerned.

5. Tests are scored in a variety of ways, full directions accompany the test in every case. Keys are furnished with the tests, giving all possible correct answers if in any case there is more than one, these keys are used in scoring, thus making the results very exact. Read carefully the rules for scoring the *Otis-Self-Administering Test of Mental Ability*, Intermediate Examination, any one of the four forms. Then administer the test to a group of children or adults.

6. After the papers are scored the results are tabulated. The form of the tabulation is determined by the purpose of the test. In general, the facts should be presented so clearly that it will be relatively easy to make comparisons, showing the departures from the normal standards by individuals and by groups of pupils. Get one of the *New Stanford Achievement Tests*. There are five forms each for the Primary Examination, grades 2 and 3, and for the Advanced Examination, grades 4 to 9. The teacher needs the manual of directions, perhaps the guide for interpreting, and the school summary record. Not too much time should be spent on tabulations, but it is always necessary to compute the measures of central tendency, particularly the median scores. Then these scores should always be compared with the established norms.

7. The correct interpretation of the results of any test is an important matter. Interpretation has to do both with the group as a whole and with the individual. In order skillfully to take the readings, make the diagnosis, and suggest the remedy, ex-

pert interpretation may be needed. It may be clear that the grade of mentality of a given pupil is so low that he can never, by any possibility, complete the eight grades. In the case of another boy, his I. Q. is 120, but his A. Q. is only 85. Here correct interpretation will disclose causes and remedies. If scores are either very low or very high the teacher can often explain the situation because of her intimate acquaintance with her pupils. The chief value of tests lies in their diagnostic uses for remedial purposes.

8. Tests should be repeated as often as the needs of the pupils and of the teacher require.

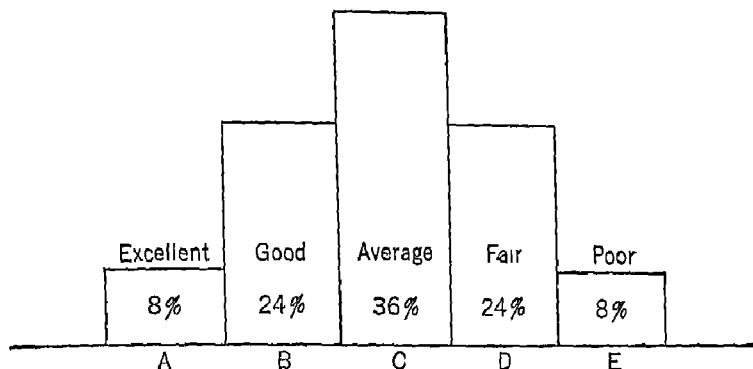
9. The teacher should aim to get and to keep a given child up to as high a level of attainment or accomplishment as his native capacities will warrant and permit. In order that a pupil may move on at his normal rate of progress the teacher must test him repeatedly to discover how much he is gaining.

10. Some tests will need to be repeated weekly, some once a month or once a term. The time factor should not decide this matter, but rather the child's mastery of the subject matter and the skill which he attains. When certain combinations have been taught and drilled upon, the teacher will need to test to ascertain the results of the teaching and drill.

11. Intelligence tests may not need to be repeated more than once each year, using a different type and form of test each time; but achievement tests should be given frequently if the teacher is to avoid guessing and to keep herself and her pupils up to standard effort and progress. Diagnostic and practice tests are of course in daily use in the best schools. The teacher certainly needs to make constant use of reliable scales where they are applicable. New-type, objective tests should be used constantly. Testing is an essential part of the instructional program of the school, and varied testing is always in order when needed.

**Normal and skewed curves of distribution.** When intelligence or achievement tests are given to large, unselected groups of children or adults, it is found that the results indicate a distribu-

tion of abilities which will approximate what is called a *normal distribution curve*. Instead of a grouping of individuals into good and bad, bright and dull, and the like, it is always found, in large and *unselected* groups, that there is a good-sized middle or average number and a grading down to the very good and the very weak on either side. It is quite common at the present time, particularly in secondary schools and colleges, to use the letters A, B, C, D, E, instead of per cent marks, to designate the grades of students. To illustrate, as a result of any given examination,



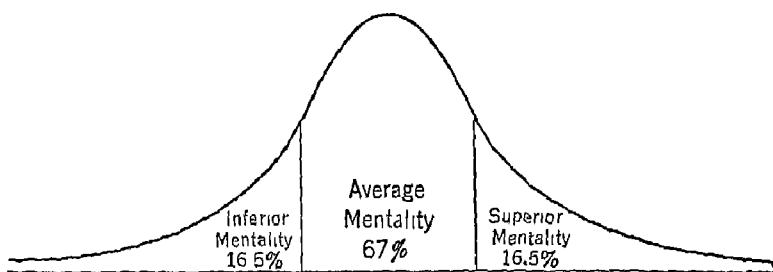
Graph of Normal Distribution

the members of a class of one hundred students of varying ability, might be arranged approximately as shown in the graph above.

It should be emphasized that such a normal distribution does not occur with this uniformity unless the numbers are relatively large and are of miscellaneous abilities. The regularity shown in the above graph is of course very unusual. If a list of words suitable to fourth-grade ability is given to an ordinary eighth-grade class, the above distribution of results does not obtain, because the group is selected. In the supposed case of the spelling test we would have a most decidedly skewed curve.

From the following diagram it is seen that about two thirds of any large and mixed group of either children or adults possess medium-grade intelligence, about one-sixth high-grade mentality,

and about one-sixth low-grade mentality. About two individuals out of three in any average good-sized group are of average or medium-grade mentality or intelligence. Here we have a good illustration of the normal distribution curve, it applies to the results of achievement tests equally well when there are large unselected groups.



The Normal Curve of Distribution

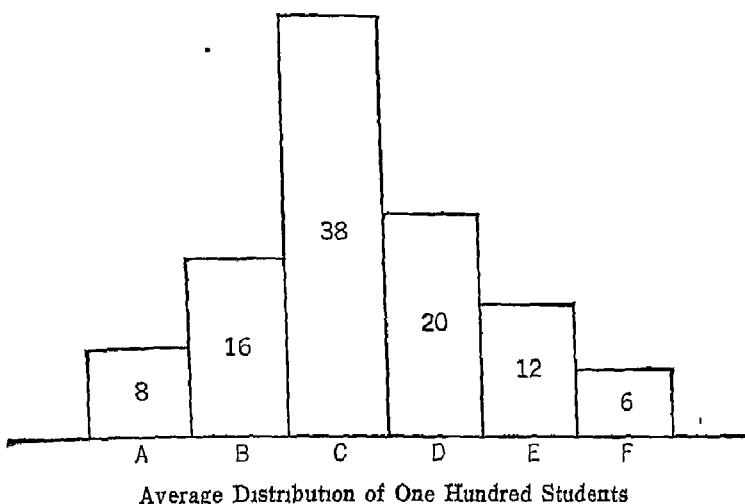
Let us suppose that a class of one hundred high-school freshmen, taken from ten different high schools, is given a standard test in common and decimal fractions and that we wish to tabulate the results and to graph the distribution curve. The following chart and diagram will be needed first of all.

		RESULTS OF THE TEST IN FRACTIONS	
A	95 to 100	5 + 1 + 1 + 1	8
B	90 to 95	5 + 5 + 5 + 1	16
C	85 to 90	10 + 10 + 10 + 5 + 1 + 1 + 1	38
D	80 to 85	10 + 5 + 5	20
E	75 to 80	5 + 5 + 1 + 1	12
F	Below 75	5 + 1	6
		Total	100

This chart is self-explanatory. Eight students did excellent work, and six students failed. Why did they fail? Approximately

three fourths of the class did work between 80 and 95 per cent.

When the number of scores for each group shown in the above distribution chart are graphed, they appear thus



Teachers will find that by the use of distribution tables and graphs they will get a clearer understanding and appreciation of the work they are doing and of the relative progress of their pupils. With some teachers, instead of an approximation to the normal distribution curve there may be either too many with very high marks or too many with the other extreme. Such a situation needs to be analyzed. Teachers should bear in mind that not every class shows a normal distribution in every test. In fact, a skewed distribution is very common. The type of subject matter, the character of the test, the ability of the teacher, and the ability of the members of the class will all, of course, have large influence. The results of one test may show a fairly normal distribution, in the next test the curve may be greatly skewed to the right, and in the third test the skewing to the left may be as decided as it was formerly to the right. In fact, in most classes the results of any test will disclose a de-

parture from the normal of greater or less degree. The larger the group tested and the more miscellaneous the abilities, the more nearly will one get a normal curve of distribution of scores.

**Indications of central tendencies.** By central tendency we mean some general, average, middle value or measure of a number of scores or marks representing the individual achievements of an entire group. Usually we think of the *average* of the series, found by dividing the sum by the number of cases. It has been and is common to get the average or arithmetical mean of the scores secured in any sort of an intelligence, achievement, or other test as *one* measure of the central tendency of the class. The three common measures of central tendency are the mean, the median, and the mode. The median score of a number of scores is simply that score which has the same number of scores above it as there are below it. The median in most cases is a truer measure of central tendency than the mean, or average, because it is usually less affected by the very high and the very low scores. In some cases the mean and the median scores are approximately the same in value, when that is true either may be used as of about equal validity.

In obtaining the median score the results are arranged first in order from the lowest to the highest, and the median is the middle one of the lot. In the following series of per cent marks, arranged in order of size, 73 is the median mark: 60-61-70-71-72-73-84-89-95-96-98. It should be noted that the median is not the arithmetical mean. The mean of this set of marks is 79. Note that five pupils did better than 73 and five did not do as well as 73. If there is an even number of scores the simplest, though possibly not the most mathematically correct, method is to take the average of the marks in the exact middle, for the median. For example, if we make slight changes in the above list of marks, and add one mark, we have 60-61-61-70-71-73-75-84-89-95-96-98. The median is now 74, the average of 73 and 75. In this latter case the mean becomes 77 $\frac{1}{2}$ .

Let us suppose that a class of twenty-five pupils is given a certain reasoning test in which there are 12 problems. The class

is allowed fifteen minutes. When the time is up the papers are collected and scored with the following results:

<i>Number of Problems</i>	4—5—6—7—8—9—12	Total 51
<i>Number of Pupils</i>	2—1—6—8—5—2—1	Total 25

These figures mean that two pupils solved four problems correctly, one solved five correctly, six solved six correctly, and so on through the entire class. The twenty-five pupils solved 175 problems, which is exactly an average of seven problems each. In this case the median point is somewhat more than seven, if computed very accurately. However, the midmost number is also seven, with three sevens above and four sevens below the middle number, ranging from 4 at the top to 12 at the bottom. Figuring on a 100 per cent basis, the average or mean per cent score of the above twenty-five is 58.3+ and the median per cent score is also 58.3, determined by taking the thirteenth score from either the top or the bottom.

Formerly teachers were content to secure the arithmetical mean in all cases. In any series of per cent standings such a mean may disclose the central tendency of the class, and again it may not. If the teacher desires to find a type result for purposes of comparison, the median is more useful than the mean for this purpose. In the above illustration the median point is approximately  $7\frac{1}{2}$  problems. The score made by the largest number of pupils in a frequency distribution is called the *mode*. In the above illustration the mode, or *modal point*, is seven problems worked correctly. It is impossible, of course, in this text, to go at all deeply into the mathematical phase of measurements. In fact, for the average teacher, certainly the rural teacher, there is no need for any complicated computation. It will be confusing and will usually have but little educational value. Leave the higher mathematics to the specialists.

**Comparison of traits and abilities.** Suppose that we wish to compare the abilities of an individual or of a class, in let us say spelling and reading. For example, what is the relationship between the silent reading skills of a given fifth-grade class and the

ability of the same class to spell words of average fifth-grade difficulty? The measure of resemblance between the reading and the spelling abilities of the fifth-grade class we designate as the *correlation*. If the pupils spell about as well as they read we say that there is a close or a positive correlation so far as these subjects are concerned. It may be about +0.90, for example. If the pupils are extraordinary spellers and very poor readers, or vice versa, the correlation may be say +0.25. The coefficient of correlation is the decimal expressing the relationship between the abilities or traits, and ranging from plus 1.0 through 0 to minus 1.0. If the ability or skill of the fifth grade in spelling and reading is precisely the same, which is very unlikely to be the case, the coefficient of correlation would be +1.0. If they can spell twice as well as they can read or if they can read twice as well as they can spell, the coefficient of correlation is +0.50. The coefficient of correlation is represented by the letter *r*. Stroud says that the correlation between intelligence test scores and school grades is about 0.50, on an average; this author suggests that the reason for this low correlation is that measures of intelligence are far from being exact and, moreover, that the grades given to pupils by teachers cannot be entirely accurate measures of their achievements or progress, even under the best of conditions. There is quite a close correlation between the scores obtained by the use of different intelligence tests, providing these tests are all made scientifically and then standardized. The author has repeatedly found a close positive correlation between the results of the *New Stanford Achievement Test*, Advanced Examination (which is a large battery of tests), and the *Otis Self-Administering Test of Mental Ability*. There is a close positive correlation between a high I.Q. and general ability to learn. There may, however, be a low correlation between the general intelligence and the social intelligence of, let us say, a thousand high-school seniors. In the very important matter of personality, Gates states that, "on the average, weakness in one trait implies weakness in others, mediocrity in one implies mediocrity in others, and strength in one strength in others."

But while no doubt there exists this close positive correlation, there are notable and not uncommon exceptions

### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1 Make out a testing program for a rural school of thirty pupils, one half of them in the first four grades. Name the different tests, find where they can be obtained, and compute the total cost. Include intelligence tests, batteries of achievement tests, diagnostic tests, practice tests, and scales.

2 Draw up a plan by which you can set down some systematic record of each child's personality. There should be spaces for indicating changes and developments from time to time. Name all the different means available to a rural teacher by which she can estimate pupil personality.

3 Let us suppose that a class of fifty eighth-grade pupils are given a test of twenty problems to measure their reasoning ability. No pupil works less than five correctly, and some pupils do from fifteen to twenty problems. Assume numbers of pupils for different numbers of problems, from five to twenty. Tabulate, make a graph, compute the median and the mean.

4 Give intelligence tests and achievement tests, *i.e.*, a battery, to a group of grade pupils. Compute the I Q's and the A Q's and then determine the correlations for each child and for the entire group.

5 Make out a set of twenty-five old-type, essay examination questions based on a three-months' study of the Colonial Period of American History. Arrange to give each question approximately the same weight and make sure that each answer can be expressed in from 100 to 200 words. Then make out a guide or key for scoring so that the subjective element will be reduced to the minimum. In other words, make the test as objective in character as possible.

### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

1. LEVINE, A. J., AND MARKS, L.—*Testing Intelligence and Achievement*, The Macmillan Company 1928.
2. LINCOLN, E. A.—*Beginnings in Educational Measurement*, Revised edition, J. B. Lippincott Company. 1927
3. LINCOLN, E. A., AND WORKMAN, L. L.—*Testing and the Use of Test Results*, The Macmillan Company 1935
4. MADSEN, I. N.—*Educational Measurement in the Elementary Grades*; World Book Company 1930

564 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

- 5 PRESSY, S. L., AND PRESSY, I. C.—*Introduction to the Use of Standard Tests*, Revised edition, World Book Company. 1931.
6. RUSSELL, CHARLES—*Classroom Tests*, Ginn and Company 1926
7. Terman, L. M.—*The Measurement of Intelligence*; Houghton Mifflin Company 1916.
- 8 WOODY, C., AND SANDBERG, P. V.—*Administration of the Testing Program*, World Book Company. 1933.

## CHAPTER XXVI

### PROBLEMS OF TESTING AND EXAMINATION

The last two chapters in this book dealing with (a) modern mental and educational measurements and (b) tests and examinations are interdependent and mutually supplemental. The subject of measurement in education is of great importance and has had a remarkable development during the past twenty years. The use of subjective *opinions* in the testing of teaching and learning is gradually giving way to *scientific measures* of a more objective character by which educational results are more accurately judged and measured than ever before. In Chapter XXV considerable attention was given to mental measures and to the formal educational or achievement tests. This last chapter has to do with many practical everyday problems in the general field of testing, such, for example, as making out test or examination questions and marking papers. The purpose of the present chapter is to present some of the more specific and definite details which the average rural teacher must take into account in the field of testing if she is to be successful. Much time and effort is often wasted, or worse than wasted, in the attempt to conduct tests of doubtful validity or educational usefulness. Tests and examinations are chiefly useful to rural teachers and to all teachers as a means of carrying on the necessary activities of teaching, studying, and learning. The main function of examinations is not that of securing a mark for record, classification, or promotion purposes.

**Why have examinations and tests.** There are many excellent reasons why the school should make use of a great variety of testing processes, there is not room to give them all here. The young teacher and student should read such books as Lang's *Modern Methods in Written Examinations*, Lincoln and Work-

man's *Testing and the Use of Test Results*, Yoakam and Simpson's *An Introduction to Teaching and Learning*; Crawford's *The Technique of Study*, Madsen's *Educational Measurement in the Elementary Grades*, and several others in order to understand the real functions of tests and examinations. The great purpose of tests is to promote more effective study and learning. The teacher must test in order to know what to teach; the pupil must be tested so that there will be a point of departure for further learning. A teacher makes use of pretests to find out what the pupil now knows and can do. This furnishes the basis for further teaching, studying, and learning. After pupils have studied, the teacher gives a mastery test to discover the exact status of the pupil's learning. The diagnostic test is the most useful of all tests from the standpoint of learning. Ruediger in his *Teaching Procedures* gives four purposes of tests. (1) diagnosis, (2) information to parents, (3) classification, promotion, etc.; (4) educational and vocational guidance. Teachers test to motivate and stimulate effort, to discover teaching weaknesses, to review, to develop a better learning attitude; to supply learning situations; to furnish a record and report card mark; to train pupils in working to overcome difficulties, to give special practice in written language, to check the extent and the quality of various readings, and for a number of other purposes.

**Educative values of examinations.** In considering the uses of tests there are many factors to take into the account. For example, the age and the grade have a vital bearing on the problem. In this topic only children of the upper grades are contemplated; any formal examinations in any case for lower-grade pupils are of course out of the question. For the older pupils a good examination acts as a stimulant and an incentive. The effect of a proper type of test given under favorable conditions is altogether wholesome. A test of the right sort impels a pupil to make the effort necessary to answer the questions. He cannot waste his time if he is to be successful. So through correct tests he learns to apply his mind without delay. This is a very useful habit for the school to establish. Further, if the teacher

knows her procedures and is a good manager, she will see to it that pupils do their best on *all* tests. The tendency to hurry through with doubtful answers must be discouraged at all times. Tests carelessly worked out should not be tolerated. Pupils must learn to be particular and as accurate as possible. A good test properly conducted makes for a habit of careful thinking. The essay type of examination calls for organization of materials, also, this is a valuable ability and habit for the school to develop in pupils. Through good examinations pupils learn to choose between important, central facts and unimportant or subsidiary items of knowledge. And again, suitable examinations develop habits of self-reliance and self-control. The pupil must depend on himself and use all of his mental resources if he is to produce a creditable result. Good essay examinations are also highly desirable exercises in written composition and should be so considered. Through such examinations children gradually learn to set their thoughts down in good order; thus the ability to use written language is developed.

**Attributes of an adequate test.** In the preceding chapter the teacher and student will find an enumeration and discussion of the marks of a scientific test. It is enough to say here that any test, whether standardized or not, formal or informal, objective or of the essay variety, should either accomplish certain definite purposes or not be used at all. A good test reveals certain conditions of knowledge and ability. If it is a diagnostic test it is so constructed that it will give exact, detailed, and specific information of a pupil's abilities and deficiencies or weaknesses. A proper test can be depended upon to show what it was intended to discover. If a teacher asks her pupils to enumerate the direct and the indirect causes of the Revolutionary War, the answer is plain. If a child of a given grade is given an example in long division of a certain degree of difficulty and if there is a certain time limit, determined by established standards or norms, the conditions are present for discovering what this child can do. If instead of an example, a problem involving the four fundamental rules is given and a time limit is again set, another

ability will be tested. A good test is carefully graded and adapted to the child's stage of advancement. It is interesting, it causes the child to put forth his best efforts. A good test question of the essay type is neither too hard nor too difficult. It is definitely limited in its scope. Too often tests are vague and uncertain because the teacher does not have precise objectives. Adequate tests are carefully graded and weighted; they are clear, concise, definite, interesting, dependable, adapted to the child's knowledge and ability, of proper length, useful, accurate, limited in scope, and designed to accomplish particular teaching-learning purposes.

**Types of tests and examinations.** Lincoln and Workman enumerate five definite kinds of tests: (1) Achievement or accomplishment, (2) Intelligence, (3) Character or personality; (4) Prognosis; and (5) Practice or drill. These writers include speed and power tests as well as diagnostic tests under achievement tests. They also class the aptitude test as a kind of prognosis test, which of course it is.

There are many bases for making a classification of tests. All tests are either oral or written, standardized or nonstandardized, objective or essay, formal or informal, mental (intelligence) or educational (mostly achievement tests). Standardized tests are either group tests or individual tests. Educational tests are either formal and standardized, informal and objective, or essay. The teacher and student should read the discussions of testing and measuring in Yoakam and Simpson's *An Introduction to Teaching and Learning* or in Adams and Taylor's *An Introduction to Education and the Teaching Process* in order to get a general survey of types of tests.

Of the new-type objective tests there are completion tests, true-false tests, multiple-response tests, matching and identification tests, and others. We now have power tests, speed tests, instructional tests, association tests, problem-solving tests, survey tests, vocational-guidance tests, mechanical-ability tests, performance tests, and many others. We have scales in great variety, particularly handwriting and spelling scales. Tests are

now used to realize many different educational aims and may best be grouped according to what they are intended to accomplish

**Value of old-type essay examination.** There are many teachers today who are using the new-type objective test almost exclusively. The writer believes that to be a mistake. Unless pupils are also given repeated and frequent opportunity to answer questions calling for organized thinking, they will be deprived of a valuable means of learning. The essay examination furnishes such opportunity and should be used for that purpose, at least. Let us freely grant that the old-type examination has many defects. The questions are often made out in a hurry and are entirely inadequate. The grading of the papers is necessarily inaccurate and more or less unfair. To grade answers of that kind and do it justly is often very difficult. Nevertheless, it is also true that the objective tests used by many teachers are not of a very high grade. They often call for unimportant, irrelevant, useless details—the mere lumber of the textbooks. They can of course be scored objectively and accurately. However, every rural teacher should make frequent use of essay-type examinations in order to train pupils in the use of written language forms, in composition, and in the ability to grasp, retain, and present entire topics of subject matter. Such test papers should be prepared very carefully, of course. With upper grade pupils, in such subjects as geography, history, civics, physiology, agriculture, and nature study, there are many occasions when a short, carefully prepared essay examination is not only proper but highly desirable. Many more illustrative questions could be given. Questions must be prepared with great care and the test conducted under good conditions. It is of course very true that in all of the subjects named objective tests may also be used with great advantage, but they should not be used as the only means of testing.

Below are given some of the usual types of essay-examination questions, using the language which has had common acceptance, but which may be greatly modified to suit conditions and circumstances.

## 570 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

- 1 Explain the construction and operation of the Babcock Milk Test.
- 2 Summarize the results of the French and Indian War.
- 3 Outline the system of federal courts.
- 4 Illustrate the effect of climate upon the occupations of people
- 5 Discuss the methods of maintaining fertility of the soil on the average general-purpose farm in the middle western states.
- 6 Compare general living conditions in rural Sweden with those of rural Argentina.
- 7 Review the subject of verbs, giving the necessary definitions.
- 8 Describe the method of harvesting and threshing grain on a very large wheat ranch in the West
- 9 Classify nouns and pronouns, and give three illustrations of each class
- 10 Justify Lincoln's attitude on the Reconstruction of the South

If the teacher and student will carefully consider the answers to these ten questions, or better, write out satisfactory answers, it will be seen that the difficulty of justly grading such responses is indeed very great, in most instances.

**New-type objective tests.** The teacher and student will find samples of the new-type tests in the author's *The Country Teacher at Work*. In the next topic samples of these objective tests are given for the benefit of those who may use this text. Objective tests are now very generally used in elementary schools, secondary schools, colleges, and universities. In *The Country Teacher at Work* the student will find a discussion of the advantages and the limitations of the new-type tests as well as general suggestions for conducting such tests. The obvious uses and benefits of new-type objective tests are as follows:

- 1 They are interesting; pupils as a rule enjoy writing the answers and aiding with the scoring.
- 2 They are accurate. Scoring is done objectively and without guessing.
- 3 They are often standardized. This means that both teacher and pupils are able to use a truly scientific measure. The standard test is provided with norms or standard scores.
- 4 They can be made comprehensive in scope so that the teacher will be able to secure a much greater variety and a better quality of responses indicating the pupil's knowledge and ability than she can by using the traditional examination.

## PROBLEMS OF TESTING AND EXAMINATION 571

5. They are stimulating and are thus useful in motivating the study activities of pupils

6. They do away largely with the uncertainties, the dishonesties, and the guessing commonly associated with essay examinations

7. The making of good objective tests has a most salutary effect on the teacher. She must study and think in order to prepare good questions

8. They can be given frequently because they need not take much time

9. Pupils can often help in the scoring, usually during a portion of a class period.

10. The use of commercial, standard tests is an exact, scientific procedure which usually has a wholesome educational influence on teacher and pupils

### Samples of new-type tests.

1 *True-false tests.* Underline *T* or *F*, cross out the other letter.

- a. Burgoyne was a general in the Civil War (*T-F*)
- b. Japan imports large quantities of silk from the United States. (*T-F*)

- c. Percentage means by the hundred (*T-F*)

- d. John Quincy Adams signed the Declaration of Independence. (*T-F*)

(*T-F*)

- e. The burdock is a perennial plant (*T-F*)

- f. The heart is larger than the liver (*T-F*)

- g. The twentieth amendment has to do with woman suffrage (*T-F*)

- h. The noun *news* takes a plural predicate. (*T-F*)

- i. The Vice President is an ex officio member of the Cabinet. (*T-F*)

2 *Matching tests.* Place the appropriate letter (*a*, *b*, or *c*, etc.) in each blank.

\_\_\_\_\_ 2000 pounds

*a* 36 square miles

\_\_\_\_\_ 4 pecks

*b* 160 square rods

\_\_\_\_\_ 366 days

*c* 320 rods

\_\_\_\_\_ a cubic yard

*d* a gallon

\_\_\_\_\_ 60 pounds

*e* a ton

\_\_\_\_\_ one acre

*f* a barrel

\_\_\_\_\_ one mile

*g* a bushel

\_\_\_\_\_ 4 quarts

*h*. 640 square rods

\_\_\_\_\_ a township

*i*. a bushel of corn

\_\_\_\_\_ 1 gross

*j*. 27 cubic feet

*k*. 12 dozen

*l* a bushel of potatoes

*m* a leap year

3 *One-choice recognition tests.* Underline the expressions in the parenthesis that make the statements true

- a. (Cartier, De Soto, Balboa) discovered the Pacific Ocean
- b. The largest city on the Great Lakes is (Cleveland, Chicago, Milwaukee, Toledo).
- c. (Moscow, Canton, Tokio, Peking, Yokohama) is the capital of Japan.

- d. There are (60, 32, 48, 96, 70) pounds in a bushel of wheat
- e. The term of a United States senator is (2, 4, 6, 8) years.
- f. The pylorus is found in the (liver, lungs, stomach, spleen, heart).
- g. Saratoga was a battle in the (Civil War, World War, Revolutionary War, Spanish-American War).
- h. Red clover is (a grass, a grain, a legume, a tuber).
- i. An adjective modifies (a noun, a verb, an adverb, a preposition).

4 *Completion tests.* Complete the following statements

- a. The three largest cities in the United States are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_

- b. The greatest meat-packing center in the world is \_\_\_\_\_
- c. Paris is located on the \_\_\_\_\_ River.
- d. The President during the War of 1812 was \_\_\_\_\_
- e. The superintendent of public schools in my state is \_\_\_\_\_
- f. The freezing point on a Fahrenheit thermometer is \_\_\_\_\_
- g. The Vice President of the United States is \_\_\_\_\_
- h. The distance in miles around a section of land is \_\_\_\_\_
- i. The number of acres in a township is \_\_\_\_\_
- j. The lake on which Cleveland is located is \_\_\_\_\_

5. *Single-expression response tests*

- a. Which was the greatest battle of the World War? \_\_\_\_\_
- b. How many oceans are there? \_\_\_\_\_
- c. With what instrument do we measure air pressure? \_\_\_\_\_
- d. How many feet are in a mile? \_\_\_\_\_
- e. To which class of forage crops does alfalfa belong? \_\_\_\_\_
- f. What kind of government has Switzerland? \_\_\_\_\_
- g. How many justices are in the United States Supreme Court? \_\_\_\_\_

- h. Which organ of the body makes gastric juice? \_\_\_\_\_

- i. A predicate is always what part of speech? \_\_\_\_\_

- j. What is the capital of Brazil? \_\_\_\_\_

6 *Multiple-choice recognition tests.*

- a. Underline cities which are *not* capitals of states Boise, Sacramento, San Francisco, Chicago, Albany, Madison, Milwaukee, Denver, Cleveland, Detroit, Lincoln, Helena, New Orleans, Toledo, Buffalo, Baltimore, Frankfort, Nashville, Louisville, Topeka, Little Rock, Atlanta.

## PROBLEMS OF TESTING AND EXAMINATION 573

b. Underline perennial weeds ragweed, quack grass, burdock, purslane, Canada thistle, dandelion, wild parsnip, pigweed, plantain, oxeye daisy, mullein, mayweed, sorrel, curled dock, mallow, bull thistle, wild oats, pigeon grass, morning glory, wild mustard

7. *Analogy tests.* Insert phrases or words in the blank spaces so as to make true statements

a. The Japan Stream is to the Pacific Ocean as the \_\_\_\_\_ is to the \_\_\_\_\_

b. The mayor is to a \_\_\_\_\_ as the \_\_\_\_\_ is to a county or the governor is to a \_\_\_\_\_

c. The Panama Canal is to North and South America as the \_\_\_\_\_ is to \_\_\_\_\_, Asia, and \_\_\_\_\_

d. The backbone of a man may be compared to the \_\_\_\_\_ of a tree.

e. The city of Washington is to the United States as \_\_\_\_\_ is to Russia

f. Hawthorne, Irving, Edna Ferber, Lowell, Holmes, Willa Cather are grouped together by the common bond of \_\_\_\_\_

g. Gastric juice is to the \_\_\_\_\_ as \_\_\_\_\_ is to the mouth.

h. As decimals are written to the \_\_\_\_\_ of the decimal point so \_\_\_\_\_ are written to the \_\_\_\_\_.

**Open-book examinations.** Study activities of pupils are determined by the objectives and the standards which control the thinking and the procedures of the teacher. If the teacher stresses memory results only, her pupils in their study will govern themselves accordingly. If a teacher makes much of problem solving, the children will gradually learn to use facts wherever found for the solution of problems. They will be continually on the lookout for problems and for data which will aid in drawing conclusions. The teacher determines very largely pupil activity and proportion and emphasis in study by the character of her questions and her directions.

For many years the author made use of open-book examinations as a part of his general testing system together with a variety of objective tests, both standardized and commercial, and many homemade tests. Such tests were often formulated by the students themselves as a part of their preparation. The open-book examinations at the close of a course were given sufficient time, so that the educational results were valuable and

definite. Clear and specific directions were made out for the conduct of these examinations; the questions were formulated with care and with certain learning aims in view.

By the use of open-book examinations as a part of the general testing program many of the objections to the old-time essay examinations are eliminated. There is but little opportunity for nervous dread and fear of failure, which has been and is so common and so harmful. Moreover, the occasion and the temptation to resort to dishonest practices is for the most part removed. As pupils are permitted and encouraged to use all sorts of reference books freely and as there is no demand for the mere reproduction of factual material, pupils feel at ease and are in a mental and physical condition to put forth their best efforts.

The writer has found that by a judicious use of open-book examinations pupils do much more purposeful and more selective reading. The questions are framed to stimulate research and the acquisition of facts to substantiate a point or a proposition. Facts are stressed in their relation to thinking and not in isolation regardless of relevancy and usefulness. Pupils learn by this method to make serviceable outlines and to marshal their material for the accomplishment of worthy ends. The writer has frequently observed students as they have worked on this type of examination; he believes that the net results have for the most part been very salutary from an educational point of view as well as for their bearing upon change of personality and development of character.

Sometimes the questions call for summaries, sometimes for the arrangement of propositions in an indicated order, sometimes for the use of indexes, sometimes for definitely prescribed use of dictionaries and encyclopedias, sometimes for an original developed paragraph, sometimes for the assembling of data concerning a field of investigation, and so on. It was a common practice with the writer to take one or more class periods during which the content and the management of the prospective examination were freely discussed. Explicit written directions

were given and strict observance was required. Such a procedure is in itself of much educational value. The exact reference books were named and the portions to be used were specifically indicated. Throughout the course pupils were consciously thinking of the day when the final paper was to be prepared, some of the daily or weekly assignments found a place in the open-book examination. Usually students were given the better part of a day to write the paper which concluded the work of the course. It should go without saying that such an examination should not be used as the only criterion for judging a pupil's mastery of a unit or of a series of related units. However, a first-class open-book examination is a genuine learning activity of much value; moreover, it is a more just and adequate test of knowledge, ability, and personal accomplishment than the old-time, unannounced, often stereotyped, ten-question, reproductive test, with its evil accompaniments of emotional upset and moral temptation.

The following are a few of the types of questions which may be suitable for such an examination:

1. Prepare a set of examples in long division, arranging them in order of difficulty.
2. Write a detailed outline of the subject of milk--its production, care, distribution, and products.
3. Using any available dictionaries, write out the definitions of twenty words which have come into common use in the past twenty years. Be prepared to define these words orally, so as to show their meanings. Do not memorize.
4. Prepare ten problems which will illustrate the four fundamental operations in common fractions. Indicate the steps in the solution of your problems.
5. Write a one- to two-page summary of the main points studied in the history class during the past month.
6. Using any available reference materials, make a good outline of corn from the farmer's point of view.
7. (a) Make an outline of sentences and write a definition of each kind. (b) Do the same for the eight parts of speech.
8. Prepare a useful ten-point bibliography on the subject of the Civil War, using any available references.

## 576 EVERYDAY PROBLEMS OF THE COUNTRY TEACHER

9 Look up the following words, indicate their pronunciation, and be ready to pronounce them (Here follows a list of 20 words commonly mispronounced)

10 Make out a list of essential equipment for an average rural school. Compute the cost by using your catalogue of school supplies.

11 Make out a 50-item true-false test on the physical geography of Europe

**Teaching—learning—testing.** The function of the teacher is to teach in order that pupils may learn. Much learning takes place, however, without any teaching activity whatever. The brighter pupils often teach themselves; that is, they furnish their own learning situations and conditions and then proceed to learn regardless of external effort or lack of effort to teach them. It was common at one time to use the terms instruct, drill, and test; it was stated that the function of education in school or elsewhere was to instruct, to train, and to inspire children and young people. It was thought that the result of instruction was knowledge, of training, skill, and of inspiration, character. Today, we are stressing the manifold ways in which children learn. Schools are arranging multitudes of more or less well-motivated learning situations. The modern emphasis is upon *learning*. The great function of the teacher is to guide and direct and to furnish adequate occasions for learning. The best teaching is found in this guiding, directing, and providing of adequate learning situations. But after a teacher has done her best to teach and after pupils have engaged in learning activities of whatever nature, there still remains the duty of the teacher to find out the net results of the teaching and the learning. Has the teacher succeeded? Have the children really learned? The only way to find out is to use the various testing procedures, of which there are very many. Assign, teach, direct, guide, study, drill, learn; then find out the results in knowledge, ability, skill, or appreciation by some testing process adapted to the particular learning product. How well can a child add when the sums are not more than 10? Test him. Does the class know the physical geography of Africa? Make out some test questions and find out.

Can Mary write a paragraph on what is found on a weather map? Have her write one and find out, or make use of an actual map. Can John spell ten required words? Have him write them from dictation or from memory. Can Jane sing the song of the morning? The only way is to have her sing and to discover the exact situation. Does this class appreciate the significance of "The Angelus"? Ask some questions calling for appreciation. Note that the type of test is determined by the particular learning to be tested. To call for an enumeration of the objects seen in "The Angelus" would hardly be a test of appreciation.

**What learnings can be measured?** Learning produces changes in the individual, the purpose of tests is to discover what changes have taken place and to what extent. It is possible now to measure mentality and achievement, the most recent pronouncement of the psychologists is that, in any event and in every case, all that we really measure with the best instruments yet devised is what has been acquired by experience, that is, what anyone, child or adult, has learned up to the time of the testing by his behavior or reaction to his environment. When we measure we get a sample of the person's behavior. We cannot measure mind directly. All we measure is performance or reaction under certain conditions or circumstances. For the most part all tests measure knowledge acquired, this means chiefly the memory products retained. Testing to find out what a child knows about geography, history, arithmetic, etc., is the most common form of testing. However, we can also test to find out what a pupil can do as well as what he knows. If we wish to find out if a child can add mixed numbers, we try him out with such examples. If we desire to test a child's problem-solving ability in any subject on a given level of attainment, we use the appropriate tests. We can find out today very easily and accurately what is the child's comprehension and speed in silent reading. If we wish to know how well he can read a poem aloud, obviously our test will consist in furnishing an opportunity for such oral reading. We can test for mechanical aptitude, for musical aptitude, for social intelligence, for abstract intelligence,

gence, and for aptitude in special school subjects. We can test for every type of skill in reading, arithmetic, handwriting, drawing; we can find out about a child's ability to solve problems in geography, in civics, in history, in arithmetic. Today through reaction and performance tests we can learn much about personality traits. At the present time it is possible to measure a great many and a great variety of learnings.

**Overdoing the business of testing.** There is abundant evidence that many teachers think chiefly of their work in terms of testing. The traditional recitation was and is today largely a testing exercise, although we now know that the so-called recitation period should be used chiefly as a teaching and learning opportunity and activity. It is quite possible for teachers to overdo both oral and written testing. In probably the majority of rural schools today the teacher assigns textbook lessons, usually in a single text, then, after the pupils have made futile and entirely ineffective efforts to learn little-understood lessons, they are called to the recitation seats where the teacher goes through the rather sorry and ridiculous procedure of testing for knowledge which the pupils do not yet possess. Teachers seem to delight in asking testing questions, both oral and written, when their time might better be spent in directing study and learning activities. They often test when there is no need for it. They seem to feel that they must test for every bit of factual material found in the text. Such is not the case. More time should be spent on teaching, which may well be interpreted to mean making provision for stimulating learning situations. By the use of first-class objective tests, the time devoted to testing may be greatly reduced. The main work of the school is to have children study skillfully and learn certainly and fruitfully.

**Special values of diagnostic tests.** If a rural teacher wishes to know the real value of diagnostic tests in arithmetic, for example, she should write to Scott, Foresman and Company of Chicago for their *Compass Diagnostic Arithmetic Tests* or to the Public School Publishing Company of Bloomington, Illinois, for the *Osburn Inventory Tests in Arithmetic*. Of course there are

many others. Write to the World Book Company, Yonkers, New York, for their catalogue of standard tests. At the present time it is entirely possible in such subjects as reading and arithmetic for a teacher to discover the particular difficulties of individual pupils. It is highly desirable that she do this. Often she can make out her own tests for purposes of diagnosis. Diagnostic tests are most valuable when used as individual tests. Good diagnostic tests are so detailed and minute in their analysis and there are so many items that the results are revealing as to the exact achievement of the pupil. A pupil may be able to multiply 21 by 2 but he would fail on 201 times 2, and the reason is obvious. A child might be able to add  $\frac{3}{4}$  and  $\frac{2}{3}$  but he could not add  $2\frac{3}{4}$  and  $1\frac{2}{3}$  because he has not as yet learned the necessary steps. A child might be able to add 2 and 1 but he could not add 2 and 0. He has not yet learned that particular item of skill and knowledge. It is more difficult to make satisfactory tests in reading than in arithmetic because reading skills are more numerous and more difficult to learn and to measure. Send to the Bureau of Publications of Teachers College, Columbia University, for lists and prices. Ask about the *Gates Silent Reading Tests* and the *Gates Primary Reading Tests*. Write also to the Public School Publishing Company, Bloomington, Illinois, and to Houghton Mifflin Company, Chicago. From the standpoint of learning, diagnostic tests are the most useful of all tests. Of course any diagnostic testing which is not followed by the appropriate remedial teaching is useless. During the past decade and more a great deal of testing has been a waste of time, energy, and money, because it has not been accompanied by suitable and necessary teaching and learning exercises or activities. Diagnostic testing and remedial teaching should be as closely associated as the inside and the outside of a saucer, for they are merely two phases of a complete teaching-learning cycle.

**Preparation of examination questions.** Teachers have sometimes prepared questions on the spur of the moment when the examination hour arrived. This is of course hazardous and does

not do justice either to the teacher herself or to her pupils. Examination questions should cover a specified portion of subject matter and not too large an area. The teacher should think of the outstanding, pivotal concepts which have been stressed in class periods. Pupils should be told in advance, at least the preceding day, how much and exactly what ground the examination is to cover. Then she should consider the time available and make out her questions with that amount of time in mind. In the average rural school, even for the very oldest pupils, any examination should usually not extend beyond an hour, a half-hour would no doubt be much better. In preparing the questions the teacher should always consider what the proper or correct answers should be. Often there are several equally good and acceptable answers. It might be well for the beginning teacher to write out the answer to each question and to time herself on each answer and on all of the examination. Usually in essay examinations the pupils should be given some choice of, say, three out of five or five or six out of eight or ten questions. The teacher should weight the questions and the corresponding answers. If possible, have each question usually of about the same weight and value so as to mark more fairly. Mark each answer on a scale of ten. Add the marks for each separate question, annex a zero to the total, and divide by the number of questions to determine the mark for the paper as a whole. Don't hurry pupils; but teach them to work expeditiously. Teachers should conduct many study and learning exercises on how most effectively to prepare examination papers. If possible, hectograph the questions. Make examinations relatively short and more frequent, if necessary. So far as possible, dispel all nervous strain or excitement. Eliminate all temptations to dishonesty. Take great pains to make out high-grade examination questions. Keep a large stock of them on hand. Homemade questions are usually the best ones to use.

**Methods of conducting tests.** Rural teachers should not think of examinations as formal, selective procedures to be conducted with more or less of ceremony or solemnity. That is

entirely the wrong attitude. In a rural school the chief and almost the entire function of tests and examinations is educative rather than selective. Pupils should learn to look upon all tests as merely a part of the general teaching-learning activity of the school. Days or half days should never be set aside for examinations. A class period of thirty to forty minutes should be the longest time for an examination or test, as a rule. Most of the objective tests will take only a few minutes, for the essay examination, often a single question which can be answered in five, ten, or fifteen minutes is best. A single paragraph today and another tomorrow, and so on, will give the teacher ample evidence upon which to do her grading. It is no doubt usually best to have test and examination questions very clearly and neatly hectographed so that each pupil may have a copy. Teachers should insist upon all tests being done carefully and neatly. Good paper and pencils should be used, pupils or the teacher should file the test papers. Tests should be conducted in good form and never hurriedly. In making use of all formal standardized tests, teachers will always find complete directions in the accompanying manual for conducting the tests, scoring the papers, and computing various individual grades which may be desired. The publishers have done a very creditable piece of work in preparing most of these tests; teachers should carefully read and follow the directions. Teachers should bear in mind that the *manner* of conducting examinations and tests may many times be of greater moment than the content of subject matter.

**How to mark test papers.** Of course the scoring of modern educational tests, whether standardized and formal or the new, nonstandardized, objective tests, is a procedure which is quite definite and certain and not governed by the subjective judgment of the teacher. It is also true that the grading of intelligence test papers is an exact business to be carried out according to very precise directions. Marking papers comes to be a more difficult problem only when the essay type of examination is used. Here are some specific suggestions concerning this part of a teacher's work.

1. Many answers are either entirely right or altogether wrong. If right, the mark is 10, on a scale of ten, using a percentage system. If wrong the mark is of course 0. A word is spelled either correctly or incorrectly. In the fundamental operations in arithmetic, the computation is perfect or it is not. The pupil either names the right capital of Russia or he does not.

2. Some answers are partly right and partly wrong. If a pupil is asked to discuss a topic in history or civics his answer may be worth 10 per cent if he covers the essential points. If he omits important items, he may get nine, eight, seven, or less. In solving a problem in arithmetic, the process may be correct, but with an error in computation. There should be an understanding as to how much credit shall be given in such cases. Or the answer may be correct and the reasoning may have some fallacy in it. Such an answer may be worth nothing or perhaps something, depending on the circumstances in the given case.

3. Young teachers are apt to mark too high because they lack standards, or knowledge, or judgment, or all three. Older teachers may give marks which are too low because of the breadth and accuracy of their knowledge, because of too critical a habit of mind, or because of a combination of personal qualities which may lead them to make a too minute and detailed analysis of pupils' answers. Such teachers habitually hew to the line and make no allowances.

4. If a pupil answers correctly in a given subject, so far as that particular subject matter is concerned do not penalize him because of misspelled words or incorrect English, unless, indeed, there may be some definite understanding in advance. John may spell all of his words correctly although his writing may be obviously and painfully bad. Mark him on writing at some other time or at least separate the spelling and the writing marks on the same paper. Mary may solve all of her problems and thus be entitled to 100 per cent. She may have made several errors in grammar and punctuation. Nevertheless, in *arithmetic* she has earned 100 per cent. However, some teachers give credit for neatness and form, which is proper if everyone knows before-

hand about the arrangement. Pupils are entitled to credit for what they have learned, know, and can do. Be careful not to mix credits for a certain achievement with penalties for some lack or deficiency.

5 There is a tendency today to use letters instead of per cent grades. Be sure that all—parents, pupils, and teacher—know exactly what each letter means and that all interpret them alike. It may be quite all right to mark *E*, excellent; *G*, good, *F*, fair, and *P*, poor, with an *F* in red for total failure. In many school systems today the letters *A*, *B*, *C*, *D*, *E*, and *F* are used, often with the associated *A-* or *A+* and *B-* or *B+*, and so on. *E* means a condition and *F* means complete failure. No elaborate system of any sort is needed in a country school. The essential matter is to see that each child has a square deal, that all are marked according to the same plan, and that each child is given a definite grade in accordance with his actual achievement. A teacher must know whether the written achievement of a child is excellent, or very good, or only good, or fair, or poor. Excellent may mean from 90 to 100 per cent, poor may mean 70 per cent or below that. It is very easy for marks of any kind to become a real hindrance instead of promoting the true ends of education.

6 In old-type examinations, questions vary greatly in difficulty. Some teachers habitually make out relatively easy questions and some are inclined to go to the other extreme. Teachers and schools differ to a marked degree in their examination standards, that is what makes the old-type test such an uncertain quantity. The only safe course so far as the individual pupil is concerned is to consider *all possible factors* which may affect the decision in classifying the child, in promoting him, or in not promoting him.

7 No teacher should delude herself into thinking that she can usually grade pupils as closely as a fraction of 1 per cent on the essay type of examination. We have heard of many cases, to illustrate, where the position and honor of valedictorian of a class has been determined by fractional per cents. One salutatorian received an average of  $88\frac{1}{2}$  per cent for the four years in

high school; the valedictorian was chosen because he had a mark of 88½ per cent! Such absurd and even tragical practices are enough to excite our ire, when we speculate upon an overworked and unjust examination and marking system.

8 In marking any pupil's paper do not permit extraneous influences, personal or otherwise, to determine the grade. Every child is entitled to what his paper is worth, whatever his social status, his conduct, or his previous school history. He has answered the questions, the teacher should honestly and impartially mark the paper to the best of her ability. If it were possible to mark every paper without knowing which pupil wrote it, the resulting grades would often be nearer the actual facts and the individual would receive fairer treatment.

9 Be cautious about making use of the normal distribution curve in determining the relative marks of a given group of pupils. At least be slow to distribute grades in accordance with the normal curve. In a rural school the classes are usually very small, the teacher knows each pupil so well that she is able to adapt her procedures more exactly and more justly to individual differences and needs. In a large mixed group of high-school freshmen, let us say 200, taking an ordinary eighth-grade spelling test of 100 words, the normal curve would probably apply with considerable accuracy. Perhaps about 10 per cent would receive a mark of 95 or better, about an equal number would get 80 or much lower, around 20 per cent might earn a mark between 90 and 95, another 20 per cent would have grades from 80 to 85; very likely approximately 40 per cent or two-fifths of the group (in this case about 80 students) would be graded somewhere from 85 to 90, or from a few points lower to a few points higher. But, by having a select class of very good spellers, the normal curve would not apply. Or by using exceptionally difficult words with an average group of students, the curve would be decidedly skewed. It should be noted that in such subjects as spelling the marking of papers is an exact procedure. In history and similar subjects, grading the essay type of examination is much more difficult, although the normal curve would also be applicable.

By using hard questions which are too difficult for the particular class, all the pupils in a class may fail; by using very easy questions all may succeed. Every teacher must adapt her teaching, including examinations, to the needs of her own particular group. If over half of a class fail, no doubt something is wrong with the examination, the pupils have not had a chance to prepare, or the teacher has not done enough teaching. If everyone gets a high mark, too high a mark, again something may not be properly adjusted. A teacher learns to make adjustments only through experience.

10 In a rural school the general problem of examinations and tests and this special problem of marking papers should be relatively easy, because the teacher can know the conditions so well. Do not let marks disturb you too much, interfere with teaching and learning, or come between you and any child. Do not bank too much on any single test. In marking papers, always consider the effect of success and failure upon the individual pupil. If marks are used judiciously, they can be made to motivate the work of the school to a considerable extent. Remember that it will not do at all for any pupil to receive failing marks time after time. Every effort must be made to have the pupil with low grades get better ones if at all possible. Undoubtedly all examinations and tests must be adapted to particular groups, at least to a considerable extent. There are no absolute standards applicable to all schools except such standards as those of honesty, and the duty of everyone to do his best. Mark papers so as to help pupils, not to weaken them. Rural teachers and all other teachers should make use of all examination and testing procedures to further the objectives of education and of teaching and learning. All artificiality and all unjust treatment of any pupil should be eliminated.

**Testing for classification and promotion.** In rural schools, if indeed in any schools, there should be no rigid system of classification or promotion. Pupils should uniformly and regularly be placed in classes where they can do the best work, they should be promoted whenever their achievement and progress

will warrant it. A child may be able to read well enough to be in the fifth- and sixth-grade class in reading, but his ability in arithmetic may be such that he properly belongs in the next lower class. There are many other factors which should be considered in classifying and promoting pupils beside the grades obtained by any testing. Chronological and mental ages, size, health, nervous stability and energy, family conditions, daily work, personality qualities as shown by industry and application, intelligence quotient, educational quotient, accomplishment ratio, teacher's judgment, ability to read with comprehension and speed—all of these and other factors should be carefully considered. The whole effect upon the child, his success or failure, his happiness or depression, his probable chances to go on, all these are important elements of the situation. The *Otis Classification Test*, published by the World Book Company, is a combined mental and achievement test for use in grades 4 to 9, inclusive. The achievement test comprises questions in reading, spelling, language and grammar, arithmetic, geography, history and civics, hygiene, vocabulary, music, and art. The test is self-administering; the time for each of the two parts is thirty minutes. The teacher will find norms included in the manual which accompanies the test. There are three forms, *A*, *B*, and *C*, each of the same character but with different items. The reliability coefficient of this test is high. Any teacher can get a specimen set for twenty cents. Rural teachers will do well to have on hand a good number and variety of tests which can be used as occasion demands. Rural teachers need such helps more than any other class of teachers.

**Summary of suggestions and cautions in the preparation and use of tests** The preceding discussion may be briefly summarized as follows.

1. Use tests chiefly as an essential part of the teaching and learning processes. They should react beneficially upon learning activities.

2. Cultivate a wholesome and proper attitude toward testing, so that the child will regard all testing exercises as an essential part of the school procedure.

## PROBLEMS OF TESTING AND EXAMINATION 587

3. Always give pupils abundant opportunity to prepare for tests  
Pupils should both *do* their best and *want* to do their best
4. Teach the older pupils to keep neat and correct records and graphs of their own test-achievement grades.
5. Tests should be clear, definite, specific, exact, and fair—never hurried or perfunctory
6. Bear in mind that not all learnings are measurable by any tests yet devised. Perhaps some of them never can be measured
7. Test questions should be such as will afford some measure of a pupil's ability to think, to do, to respond with certain skills, and to appreciate
8. Older pupils in the rural schools should be instructed in the methods of marking and scoring
9. The teacher should look upon tests as one of the best of agencies for gauging her own efficiency and indicating where she may improve
10. A specific or particularized assignment contributes to the good results of a test
11. Make profitable use of the tests which the publishers of textbooks furnish.
12. Make a collection of the best commercialized and standardized tests including mental tests, educational tests, and character tests, if satisfactory character tests are available
13. Do not use the results of any one test as a final record mark, or as a grade to place upon the report to parents
14. Pupils in rural schools should never be excused from tests and examinations. When they are excused, tests and examinations appear to the pupils to have no important educational function
15. Mark all papers very promptly and let each child know his grade.
16. Use test and examination papers as a basis for class discussions
17. Make good use of objective pretests to obtain information as to how much pupils know about, or can do with, a new unit of subject matter, that is, get an inventory of your class
18. Use handwriting and spelling scales at any rate
19. The time to make use of a good mastery test is when a particular portion of subject matter has been studied under the careful direction and supervision of the teacher
20. The results of a test should be analyzed, both as regards individuals, and as regards the class as a whole.
21. Do not permit pupils to form the habit of complaining about their grades, but be careful to give no cause for complaint or criticism of the teacher's judgment.
22. Old test questions will often be useful for review purposes and should, therefore, be saved.

23. The learnings that may grow out of testing procedures may be more important than the actual test results and grades.

24. Use a good quality of such materials as paper, pencils, pen, and ink, especially for tests that are to be filed for the year.

25. Pupils should not be obliged to write tests and examinations in the midst of various distractions.

### REVIEW, TEST, AND PROBLEM EXERCISES

1. Outline a complete testing program for an average rural school to guide the teacher in her teaching-learning activities for one school year.

2. Make a very careful and complete bibliography of tests and measures which you believe useful for a rural teacher. For each enumeration name the author, the title, the publisher, and the date of copyright, in that order.

3. Make out twenty-five examination questions of the essay type to cover the ground of this chapter. Arrange to have the questions of approximately equal value or weight.

4. Prepare a hundred true-false and a hundred one-word completion tests on this chapter. Write out the correct responses.

5. Construct an inventory pretest on American history in general to discover how much a ninth-year high-school class knows about the subject. Make your test objective and provide for at least one hundred items. Be sure that you know the answers.

6. Write a set of twenty good, practicable questions of the open-book type to be used when a class has completed a study of the geography of South America.

7. Carefully enumerate all of the difficulties and problems you can think of in the field of marks and marking, and then tell specifically how you believe these problems can be solved. Take into account various subjects and types of questions, as well as marks in relation to classification, promotion, and reports to parents. Use references. Consider the average rural school situation in working on this exercise.

### REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER'S READING AND STUDY

1. LANG, A. R.—*Modern Methods in Written Examinations*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1930
2. LEVINE, A. J., AND MARKS, L.—*Testing Intelligence and Achievement*, The Macmillan Company 1928
3. LINCOLN, E. A., AND WORKMAN, L. L.—*Testing and the Uses of Test Results*, The Macmillan Company. 1935

## PROBLEMS OF TESTING AND EXAMINATION 589

4. MADSEN, I. N.—*Educational Measurement in the Elementary Grades*, World Book Company. 1930.
5. PATERSON, D. G.—*Preparation and Use of New-Type Examinations*, World Book Company. 1925
6. RUCII, G. M.—*The Improvement of the Written Examination*, Scott, Foresman and Company 1924.
7. RUSSELL, CHARLES—*Classroom Tests*; Gunn and Company. 1926.



## APPENDIX

### PROFESSIONAL BOOKS FOR ELEMENTARY TEACHERS

1. ADAMS, J. E., AND TAYLOR, W. S.—*An Introduction to Education and the Teaching Process*, The Macmillan Company 1932.
2. ALMACK, J. C.—*The Beginning Teacher*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1928
3. ANDERSON, C. J., AND DAVIDSON, ISOBEL—*Reading Objectives*, Laurel Book Company 1925.
4. ANDERSON, C. J., AND SIMPSON, I. J.—*The Supervision of Rural Schools*, D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc 1932
5. ANDRESS, J. M.—*Health Education in Rural Schools*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1919
6. AYRES, M., WILLIAMS, J. F., AND WOOD, T. D.—*Healthful Schools*, Houghton Mifflin Company. 1917.
7. BAGLEY, W. C., AND MACDONALD, MARION E.—*Standard Practices in Teaching*, The Macmillan Company 1932
8. BARNES, INA—*Rural School Management*, The Macmillan Company 1923.
9. BORAAS, JULIUS—*Teaching to Think*; The Macmillan Company. 1922
10. BRANOM, M. E.—*A Teacher's Geography; Emphasizing the Problem Method*, The Macmillan Company. 1928
11. BREWER, J. M.—*Education as Guidance*, The Macmillan Company 1932.
12. BRIM, O. G.—*Rural Education*, The Macmillan Company 1924
13. BROWN, E. J.—*Everyday Problems in Classroom Management*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1933.
14. BRUECKNER, L. J., AND MELBY, E. O.—*Diagnostic and Remedial Teaching*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1930
15. BURNHAM, W. H.—*The Normal Mind*, D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc 1924.
16. BURTON, W. H.—*The Nature and Direction of Learning*; D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc. 1929.

- 17 BUTTERWORTH, J E.—*The Parent-Teacher Association and Its Work*, The Macmillan Company. 1928
18. CALL, ANNIE P —*The Freedom of Life*, Little, Brown and Company. 1905 (And other books by the same writer )
- 19 CARNEY, MABEL—*Country Life and the County School*, Row, Peterson and Company. 1912.
- 20 CARVER, T N., AND ADAMS, GLADYS M —*Our Economic Life*, The John C Winston Company 1929
- 21 CHARTERS, W W.—*The Teaching of Ideals*, The Macmillan Company. 1927
- 22 CHARTERS, W W—*Teaching the Common Branches*, Houghton Mifflin Company. 1924.
- 23 COLVIN, S S, BAGLEY, W C., AND MACDONALD, MARION E.—*Human Behavior*, The Macmillan Company 1929
24. COMMISSION ON THE SOCIAL STUDIES—*Report. Conclusions and Recommendations*, Charles Scribner's Sons. 1934.
- 25 CRAWFORD, C C.—*The Technique of Study*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1928
- 26 CUBBERLEY, E P—*Rural Life and Education*; Houghton Mifflin Company 1922.
- 27 DRESSLER, F B —*School Hygiene*, The Macmillan Company 1913
- 28 EELLS, H L, MOELLER, H C , AND SWAIN, C. C —*Rural School Management*, Charles Scribner's Sons 1924
- 29 EGGLESTON, EDWARD—*The Hoosier Schoolmaster*; Grosselt and Dunlap. 1902.
- 30 FISHER, IRVING, AND FISKE, E. L—*How to Live*, Funk and Wagnalls 1933
31. FREELAND, G E—*Modern Elementary School Practice*; The Macmillan Company 1926.
- 32 FREEMAN, F N—*Individual Differences, the Nature and Causes of Variations in Intelligence and Special Abilities*, Henry Holt and Company. 1934
- 33 GARDNER, EMELYN E , AND RAMSEY, ELOISE—*A Handbook of Children's Literature*; Scott, Foresman and Company 1927
- 34 GATES, A L.—*The Improvement of Reading. A Program of Diagnostic and Remedial Methods*, The Macmillan Company Revised edition 1936.
35. GEURKENS, K. W.—*Music in the Grade Schools Grades 1-6*, C C Birchard Company. 1934

- 36 GREER, CARLOTTA C.—*School and Home Cooking*, Allyn and Bacon 1933
37. GULICK, L H—*The Efficient Life*; Doubleday, Page and Company 1909
- 38 HOSIC, J. F., AND CHASE, S E—*Brief Guide to the Project Method*, World Book Company 1924
- 39 JAMES, WILLIAM—*Talks to Teachers on Psychology and Life's Ideals*, Henry Holt and Company 1902
- 40 KIRKPATRICK, M. G—*The Rural School from Within*, J B Lippincott Company 1918
41. KILPATRICK, W H—*Foundations of Method*, The Macmillan Company 1925
- 42 KITSON, H D—*How to Use Your Mind*, J B Lippincott Company Revised edition 1926
43. LANDIS, B Y, AND WILLARD, J D.—*Rural Adult Education*; The Macmillan Company 1933
- 44 LANE, R H—*A Teacher's Guide Book to the Activity Program*; The Macmillan Company 1932.
45. LANG, A. R—*Modern Methods in Written Examinations*, Houghton Mifflin Company. 1930.
- 46 LA RUE, D W—*Mental Hygiene*, The Macmillan Company. 1927.
47. LEVINE, A. J, AND MARKS, LOUIS—*Testing Intelligence and Achievement*, The Macmillan Company 1928
- 48 LINCOLN, E A.—*Beginnings in Educational Measurements*; J B. Lippincott Company 1924
49. LINCOLN, E. A., AND WORKMAN, L L—*Testing and the Use of Test Results*, The Macmillan Company 1935.
50. LOWTH, F J.—*Everyday Problems of the Country Teacher* Revised edition, The Macmillan Company. 1936
- 51 LOWTH, F J—*The Country Teacher at Work*, The Macmillan Company. 1930
52. LYMAN, R L.—*The Mind at Work*; Scott, Foresman and Company. 1924
- 53 MARTIN, G M—*Emmy Lou*, Grossett and Dunlap. 1902
54. MCKEE, PAUL—*Reading and Literature in the Elementary School*, Houghton Mifflin Company. 1934.
55. MCKEE, PAUL—*Language in the Elementary School—Spelling, Composition, Writing*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1934

56. McMURRY, F M—*How to Study and Teaching How to Study*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1909
57. MINOR, RUBY—*Pupil Activities in the Elementary Grades*, J. B. Lippincott Company. 1929
58. MONROE, W S, AND STREITZ, RUTH—*Directing Learning in the Elementary School*, Doubleday, Doran and Company. 1932
59. MOORE, ANNIE E.—*The Primary School*, Houghton Mifflin Company. 1925
60. MOOREHOUSE, FRANCES M—*The Discipline of the School*, D. C. Heath and Company. 1914.
61. MORGAN, J. J. B—*Keeping a Sound Mind*, The Macmillan Company 1934
62. MORTON, G. F—*Childhood's Fears Psychoanalysis and the Inferiority-Fear Complex*, The Macmillan Company 1925.
63. MOSSMAN, LOIS COFFEY—*Principles of Teaching and Learning in the Elementary School*; Houghton Mifflin Company. 1929
64. NATIONAL COUNCIL FOR THE SOCIAL STUDIES—Fourth Yearbook: *The Social Studies Curriculum*, McKinley Publishing Company. 1934
65. NATIONAL EDUCATION ASSOCIATION—Department of Superintendence, *Social Change and Education* Thirteenth Yearbook. Department of Superintendence. 1935.
66. NATIONAL EDUCATION ASSOCIATION—Department of Elementary School Principals—*Socializing Experiences in the Elementary School*; Fourteenth Yearbook 1935.
67. NATIONAL SOCIETY FOR THE STUDY OF EDUCATION—*The Activity Movement*, Thirty-Third Yearbook, Part II, Public School Publishing Company. 1934.
68. NATIONAL SOCIETY FOR THE STUDY OF EDUCATION—Thirty-Fourth Yearbook.—*Educational Diagnosis*, Public School Publishing Company 1935
69. NATIONAL SOCIETY FOR THE STUDY OF EDUCATION—*The Teaching of Geography*, ed. by G M. Whipple, Public School Publishing Company 1933
70. PATERSON, D G.—*Preparation and Use of New-Type Examinations*, World Book Company. 1925.
71. PATRI, ANGELO—*A Schoolmaster of the Great City*, The Macmillan Company 1917.

72 PRESSEY, S L—*Psychology and the New Education*; Harper and Brothers 1934

73 QUICK, HERBERT—*The Brown Mouse*, Bobbs-Merrill Company. 1914.

74 RATHBONE, JOSEPHINE L, BACON, F L, AND KEENE, C H—*Foundations of Health*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1932

75 REEDER, E H—*Simplifying Teaching*, Laidlaw Brothers. 1929

76 ROSE, MARY SWARTZ—*Teaching Nutrition to Boys and Girls*; The Macmillan Company 1932

77 ROUNTREE, W F, AND TAYLOR, MARY S—*An Arithmetic for Teachers* The Macmillan Company Revised edition 1932

78 RUCH, G M—*The Objective or New-Type Examination*, Scott, Foresman and Company 1929

79 RUGG, H, AND SHUMAKER, ANN—*The Child-Centered School*, World Book Company 1928

80 SEARS, J B—*Classroom Organization and Control*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1928

81 STEVENSON, J A—*The Project Method of Teaching*, The Macmillan Company 1921

82 STILLMAN, BESSIE W—*Training Children to Study*; D C Heath and Company 1928

83 STONE, K E—*Music Appreciation Taught by Means of the Phonograph*, Scott, Foresman and Company 1922

84 STORM, GRACE—*The Social Studies in the Primary Grades*, Lyons and Carnahan 1932

85 STORMZAND, M J, AND LEWIS, R H—*New Methods in the Social Studies*, Farrar and Rinehart 1935

86 STORMZAND, M J—*Progressive Methods of Teaching*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1934.

87 STORMZAND, M J, AND MCKEE, JANE W—*The Progressive Primary Teacher*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1928

88 STRANG, RUTH—*The Role of the Teacher in Personnel Work* Revised and enlarged edition Teachers College, Columbia University 1935

89 SYMONDS, P M—*Mental Hygiene of the School Child*, The Macmillan Company 1934

90 TERMAN, L M, AND ALMACK, J C—*The Hygiene of the School Child*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1929

- 91 TERMAN, L M.—*The Teacher's Health*; Houghton Mifflin Company 1913.
- 92 THOMAS, F W —*Principles and Technique of Teaching*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1927
93. THORNDIKE, E L, AND GATES, A. I—*Elementary Principles of Education*, The Macmillan Company. 1929
94. VOGT, P L—*Introduction to Rural Economics*, D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc 1925.
- 95 WALTON, G L—*Why Worry*, J. B. Lippincott Company. 1909 (And other books by the same writer)
- 96 WELLS, H G —*The Story of a Great Schoolmaster*, The Macmillan Company 1924.
- 97 WIGGIN, KATE D—*Rebecca of Sunnybrook Farm*, Houghton Mifflin Company 1903
98. WILKINSON, W. A—*Rural School Management*, Silver, Burdett and Company 1917.
99. WRAY, ANGELINA—*Jean Mitchell's School*, Public School Publishing Company 1902
- 100 YOAKAM, G A , AND SIMPSON, R G.—*An Introduction to Teaching and Learning*, The Macmillan Company. 1935.

#### ENCYCLOPEDIAS

1. *Compton's Pictured Encyclopedia*, 15 volumes. F E. Compton and Company, 1000 North Dearborn Street, Chicago 1936 Fabrikoid binding, \$74.50, buckram binding, \$67.50. Binding especially reinforced. (This encyclopedia is especially designed for school use; excellent on all elementary and high-school subjects, unusually strong on social science, elementary and general science subjects )
- 2 *The World Book Encyclopedia*, 19 volumes, 9218 pages, including maps and inserts. W. F Quarrie and Company, 35 East Wacker Drive, Chicago 1935 School price, \$69.00 (This is the largest, most complete, representative, and generally useful encyclopedia for young people )
- 3 *The Lincoln Library of Essential Information*, one or two volumes, 2174 pages of text, 100 pages of illustrations The Frontier Press Company, Lafayette Building, Buffalo, New York 1935. Red library buckram, 1-vol., \$15.50; 2-vol., \$19.50 (A reliable com-

pendum of useful information on a wide range of subjects. Send for The Lincoln Library Aid. No cost.)

### TEACHING-LEARNING UNIT MATERIALS

1. *Compton's Pictured Teaching-Unit Materials* F E Compton and Company, 1000 North Dearborn Street, Chicago. 1935 Price \$2.40 up, depending on quantity purchased An excellent collection of source material for teacher and pupils, giving background information together with sets of pictures in color (with detailed study information on each) on 18 of the most generally taught social-science subjects Send without cost for *An Introduction to the New Compton's Pictured Materials for the Improvement of Classroom Instruction*.
- 2 *Unit Teaching Materials*, including *Childcraft*, six volumes with Art Book and Guide. Volume six, *Activity Units*. (Sixteen units are outlined in detail) W F. Quarrie and Company, 35 East Wacker Drive, Chicago 1935 (Write company for prices and for information on a new series of teaching-learning units now in preparation. See introduction to volume six of *Childcraft* on "The Use of Activity in Learning," by H R. Vanderslice )
3. *Foundation Classroom Materials* Eight volumes or 16 volumes of *Book Trunks* and 40 teaching-learning units. Teachers may purchase from ten to forty units, as desired Child Development Foundation, Inc , 180 North Michigan Avenue, Chicago. 1936. Prices range from \$14.75 to \$59 50, depending on quantity of material and service purchased Individual units, 70 cents each.
4. **HILLEGAS, M B , BRIGGS, T H , and Sixty OTHER AUTHORS—***Classroom Teacher*, 13 volumes, The Classroom Teacher, Inc , 104 South Michigan Avenue, Chicago 1928 Revisions in process in 1936 Price, 13 volumes, \$49 50 A useful and widely used set of books dealing with teaching principles, procedures, and class management.

SUGGESTED DAILY PROGRAM (MODIFIED BLOCK PROGRAM) FOR ONE-TEACHER SCHOOLS—(Continued)

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION, COMMONWEALTH OF PENNSYLVANIA, HARRISBURG

TIME	MIN	GRADE	CLASS SCHEDULE	SELF-DIRECTED STUDY AND OTHER ACTIVITIES		
				Group C Grades 1, 2-3	Group B Grades 4-6	Group A Grades 7-8
12 00	20	All	Lunch period	Hands washed	Lunch eaten at desk or table except when weather is mild	
12 20	40	All	Play period	and pupils wish to eat on playground	Refuse from lunch given proper care	
1 00	15	1-3	English <sup>8</sup> 4 days Health Instruction <sup>9</sup> 1 day	Class Period	English 4 days Health Instruction 1 day	English 4 days Health Instruction 1 day
1 15	15	4-6	English <sup>8</sup> 4 days Health Instruction <sup>9</sup> 1 day	Activities growing out of classwork in English or Health Instruction	Class Period	Spelling and Word Study
1 30	20	7-8	English <sup>8</sup> 4 days Health Instruction <sup>9</sup> 1 day	Teacher checks work where needed		Spelling
1 50	5	1-6				
1 55	20	All	Spelling 3 days Handwriting 2 days			
2 15	15	All	Recess			

**SUGGESTED DAILY PROGRAM (MODIFIED BLOCK PROGRAM) FOR ONE-TEACHER SCHOOLS—(Continued)**  
 DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION, COMMONWEALTH OF PENNSYLVANIA, HARRISBURG

TIME	MIN.	GRADE	CLASS SCHEDULE	SELF-DIRECTED STUDY AND OTHER ACTIVITIES		
				Group C Grades 1, 2, 3	Group B Grades 4-6	Group A Grades 7-8
2 30	20	4-8	Reading <sup>3</sup> Group A 2 days Group B 3 days	Activities related to reading	Self-test in thought-reading 2 days Class period in reading 3 days	Self-test in thought-reading 3 days Class period in reading 2 days
2 50	25	1-3	Reading <sup>10</sup>	Class Period	Reading of reference materials related to History or other subjects	Library and Supplementary Reading <sup>12</sup> Activities
3 15	20	4-6	History-Civics 3 days Health Instruction <sup>9</sup> 1 day Art <sup>11</sup> for all grades 1 day	Initiation or continuation of activities requiring additional time 4 days Art 1 day	Class period 4 days Art 1 day	History-Civics 3 days Health Instruction 1 day Art 1 day
3 35	5	1-3	Teacher checks and directs activities of Group C		Activities growing out of History-Civics or Health Instruction 4 days, 15 minutes	
3 40	20	7-8	History-Civics 3 days Health Instruction <sup>9</sup> 1 day Art <sup>11</sup> for all grades 1 day	Self-tests in thought-reading 4 days Art 1 day	Last 10 minutes for free period 2 days and remedial work 2 days Art 1 day	Class period 4 days Art 1 day

**SUGGESTED DAILY PROGRAM (BLOCK PROGRAM) FOR ONE-TEACHER SCHOOLS**

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION, COMMONWEALTH OF PENNSYLVANIA, HARRISBURG

Time	Mrn	Block Schedule	Activities		
			Group C Grades 1-2-3	Group B Grades 4-6	Group A Grades 7-8
9 00	-	Informal Morning Survey <sup>1</sup> (as pupils arrive)			
9 15	15	Block I Morning Assembly <sup>2</sup> and Music			
9 30	60	Block II Arithmetic	Integrated or unit activities in reading, arithmetic and handwork		Arithmetic
10 15	15	Recess	Directed play or concrete activities—outdoors when weather permits	Reading newspapers or periodicals	
10 30	30	Block III Reading <sup>3</sup>	Teacher works with one grade while remainder of group studies reading		Spelling and Vocabulary Activities including use of dictionary
11 00	60	Block IV Geography-Science <sup>4</sup> Music <sup>5</sup> and Club Activities <sup>7</sup>	Activities related to social studies <sup>6</sup> including science, geography, history and civics adapted to ability of each grade If advisable the younger pupils may have longer noon period	Geography 3 days Science 1 day Music and Club Activities 1 day	

SUGGESTED DAILY PROGRAM (BLOCK PROGRAM) FOR ONE-TEACHER SCHOOLS—(Continued)\*  
 DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION, COMMONWEALTH OF PENNSYLVANIA, HARRISBURG

TIME	MIN	BLOCK SCHEDULE	ACTIVITIES		
			Group C Grades 1, 2-3	Group B Grades 4-6	Group A Grades 7-8
12.00	20	Lunch period	Hands washed	Lunch eaten at desk or table except when weather is mild	
12.20	40	Play period	and pupils wish to eat on playground	Refuse from lunch given proper care	
1.00	75	Block V English, <sup>8</sup> Tools English Expression or Health, <sup>9</sup> Spelling Handwriting		English 4 days	
2.15	15	Recess		Health Instruction 1 day	
2.30	45	Block VI Reading, <sup>3</sup>	Individual remedial reading activities <sup>10</sup>	Spelling and Handwriting exercises adapted to ability of each group Older pupils take responsibility for directing some play periods	Library Activities <sup>12</sup> The group working independently is given an assignment in self-testing thought-reading
3.15	45	Block VII History-Civics Health, <sup>9</sup> Art <sup>11</sup>		Continuation of unit in social studies including Art and Health	History-Civics 3 days Health Instruction 1 day Art 1 day

**SUGGESTED DAILY PROGRAM (MODIFIED BLOCK PROGRAM) FOR ONE-TEACHER SCHOOLS**  
 DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION, COMMONWEALTH OF PENNSYLVANIA, HARRISBURG  
 (Small superior figures, 1 to 12, refer to the explanatory notes.)

TIME	MIN.	GRADE	CLASS SCHEDULE	SELF-DIRECTED STUDY AND OTHER ACTIVITIES		
				Group C Grades 1, 2-3	Group B Grades 4-6	Group A Grades 7-8
9 00	15	All	Informal Morning Survey <sup>1</sup> (as pupils arrive)			
9 15	20	4-6	Morning Assembly <sup>2</sup> and Music Music 30 minutes a week Other Activities 45 min a week			Arithmetic
9 35	5	1-3	Arithmetic Activities related to reading		Class Period	Arithmetic
9 40	15	1-3	Teacher checks work of Group C		Class Period	Arithmetic
9 55	20	7-8	Arithmetic		Class Period	Arithmetic
10 15	15	All	Recess		Directed play or concrete activities—outdoors when weather permits	

SUGGESTED DAILY PROGRAM (MODIFIED BLOCK PROGRAM) FOR ONE-TEACHER SCHOOLS—(Continued)

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION, COMMONWEALTH OF PENNSYLVANIA, HARRISBURG

TIME	MIN	GRADE	CLASS SCHEDULE	SELF-DIRECTED STUDY AND OTHER ACTIVITIES		
				Group C Grades 1, 2-3	Group B Grades 4-6	Group A Grades 7-8
10 30	30	1-3	Reading <sup>3</sup>	Class Period	Library and Supplementary Reading <sup>12</sup> Activities 15 minutes Vocabulary Activities including use of dictionary 15 minutes	Reading newspapers or periodicals 15 minutes Spelling and Vocabulary Activities including use of dictionary 15 minutes
11 00	20	4-6	Geography 3 days Science <sup>4</sup> 1 day Music <sup>5</sup> for all grades 1 day	Library or Supplementary Reading <sup>12</sup> Activities 4 days Music 1 day	Class Period	Geography 3 days Science 1 day Music 1 day
11 20	15	1-3	Social Studies <sup>6</sup> 4 days Music <sup>5</sup> for all grades 1 day	Class Period	Geography 3 days, 25 minutes Science 1 day, 25 minutes	Geography 3 days, 25 minutes Science 1 day, 25 minutes
11 35	25	7-8	Geography 3 days Science <sup>4</sup> 1 day Club Activities <sup>7</sup> for all grades 1 day	Activities growing out of class experiences in social studies 4 days Club activities 1 day	Spelling 4 days, 15 minutes Music and Club Activities 1 day	Class Period

## EXPLANATORY NOTES TO THE PENNSYLVANIA PROGRAMS

1. The survey of the room includes temperature, light, tidiness, and attractiveness. An informal survey of pupils as they arrive is usually preferable. This includes general appearance of pupils and indications of communicable disease. In case of an epidemic or a threatened epidemic, the survey should be especially careful and include thorough scrutiny for symptoms of the threatened disease.

2. This period should be a bright spot in the day's experiences. The Bible selection to be read and song selections should be chosen with care. Additional exercises should be stimulating and interesting to the whole group and to those taking part, such as consideration of important news items, reports of interesting observations related to science.

3. The teacher will work with each grade in Group C separately and when advisable with individuals. In Groups A and B, there will be greater possibilities for combining grades, although in these groups, also, there will be cases that need individual help.

4. The materials and conditions found in the community should be considered by the teacher when determining units in science. The birds, trees, flowers, insects, and animals of the local region should be given first place. The work in agriculture for the eighth grade is included in the science period.

5. In addition to songs in morning assembly and at other appropriate times through the day, a period of thirty to thirty-five minutes for instruction in music is provided one day in the week. The teacher may divide the time between the older and younger pupils when the older group is able to work on more advanced lessons, with assigned work in music for the group not actively engaged in singing or other musical activity.

6. Social studies include the study of how man learns to live successfully as an individual and as part of a group. The block program provides greater opportunities to use large units of learning that may include history, civics, geography, and science.

7 This period may be given over to any club activities that provide experiences which the teacher thinks are meeting essential needs of the pupils. An Our Times Club or other club dealing with current affairs, should include worth-while activities related to the community in which the pupils live as well as those reaching into national and world relationships.

8. In this period, the teacher gives attention to developing abilities and skills in the use of written and oral expression and in spelling. Activities in any subject expressed in writing, in addition to the subject matter involved, should be considered an exercise in expression, spelling, and handwriting. Pupils should be encouraged to evaluate all their written productions on a basis of those points.

9 Two periods a week are given to health instruction. These periods may be on the same day if the unit lends itself to such an arrangement. Certain units in health may be developed by the whole school, each group sharing in this development through the assignment of portions of the unit that are within the ability and appreciation of the group involved. In short the principles underlying health care should permeate all the activities of school life. This is especially true in relation to safety education. Safe practices should be integrated with every activity of the program. A survey of safety hazards in rural communities should be made and reports given in English, health, civics, or other periods. The relief, recess, and noon periods, also, provide opportunities for health and physical education activities. Here the pupils should carry out the practices discussed in the health classes. Behavior during the lunch hour illustrates to a considerable degree, the effectiveness of health instruction. The teacher should be aware of the value of relief periods and take time for them when needed. A change of position through active mimetic exercises, simple games or songs, or a change in ventilation, frequently removes conditions unfavorable to work.

10. This program is arranged for those schools where Group C remains until the end of the school day. Teachers should keep in mind the fact that unless every condition is safe, young children should remain in school until the older pupils are ready to accompany them. In schools where primary pupils are excused early, the reading period of this group may be scheduled before those of Group A and Group B.

11 The work of the art period includes the development of skills

and appreciations that are needed to carry out integrated experiences with a subject other than art as the starting point

12 Pupils should be taught to develop library materials by the addition of booklets relating to units considered in the various subjects of study, and of suitable selections secured from magazines and other printed materials.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>The foregoing Pennsylvania programs, prepared by Miss Helena McCray, are reproduced by permission of the Department of Public Instruction, Commonwealth of Pennsylvania, Paul L. Cressman, Director of Instruction.

## INDEX

Abilities, comparison of, 561, 562, and grouping, 364  
Abstract duty, not impelling, 493  
Accomplishment ratios, 547, 548  
Account of treasurer, 249, 250  
Accumulating property, 352  
Accuracy developed by recitation, 459, 460  
Achievement graphs, 373; quotients, 547, 548, tests, advantages of, 543, 544  
Acquainted, need for getting, 32  
Acquiring art of management, 185  
Activities, criteria for judging, 416, 417; evaluating, 415, 416, group work in, 414; how provide all learnings, 411, in old and new school, 407, integrated, 380, learning in health education, 517, 518, major, 408, 409, need for materials, 413, 414, need for special drills, 411, types of, 408  
Activity program, 403, as related to good order, 415, initiating in rural school, 412, 413, in rural school, 410, 411, Pennsylvania, 598-606, principles of, 405, 406, slow introduction, 413, 414  
Activity, selecting and checking-up, 415, why use term, 407, unit on trees, 417-426  
Acts of conduct, importance, 478  
Adams, Fay, activity program, 405  
Adapting means to ends in character formation, 473, 474, recitations to individuals, 366  
Adequate tests, attributes of, 567, 568  
Adjusting window shades, 98, 99  
Adjustment periods, 179  
Administrative systems, 16, units, 17  
Adult learning, 316, 317  
Advance information, 27  
Advantages, and limitations of projects, 340-342; of intelligence tests, 543, of Morrison plan, 390, 391, of problem method, 329, 330  
Advertising the schools, 221, 222  
*Agencies Contributing to Rural Education*, a valuable bulletin, 482  
Agriculture, projects in, 346, 347  
Aims in health education, 495, 496  
Aims, in program making, 166, 167; of character education, 472, 473  
Air circulation, 126, 127  
Alertness developed by play, 138  
Alexander, James, 56  
Allegiance, pledge of, 265  
"All-night" habit, 466  
Alternation, of grades, 169, of subjects, 168  
America's educational problem, 3  
*A Mind That Found Itself an Autobiography*, 523  
Amusements, right and wrong, 74, teacher's, 73  
Analogy tests, 573  
Analysis of moral development, 136  
Analyze, the lesson, 436, your personality, 56  
Annual school meeting, 253  
Answers, reception of, 466, Yes and no, 465  
Appearance, attractive, 57  
Applying for a school, 82, 83  
Appreciation of beauty, 105, 106  
Aptitude and prognostic tests, 549, 550  
Arithmetical projects, 344-346  
Arousing interest in schools, 23  
Assignments, clear and definite, 37; differentiated, 365

Association, value of, 55  
 Athletic events, 152  
 Attention, and fatigue, 170, forced and free, 291, kinds of, 291, 292  
 Attitudes, emotional, 290, objective, 46  
 Attributes of personality, 43  
 Avoid entanglements, 73  
 Ayres Spelling Scale, description of, 553, 554  
 Bad conduct, not to be tolerated, 486  
 Bagley, W C, and Keith, J A H, on nature of teaching, 480, *Classroom Management*, 362, on habit formation, 515, on learning, 321; *Human Behavior*, 477; on Batavia System, 362, on methods of individualized instruction, 364, topical recitation, 461  
 Balanced curriculum, 159  
 Balanced meal, 209, 210  
 Ball game, learning of, 208  
 Ball games, 148, 149  
 Bancroft, Jessie H, 143  
 Bank, doing business with, 79  
 Baseball, 148  
 Basis of learning, 301  
 Batavia system, 362  
 Bauer, Dr W W, article on health, 517  
 Beautifying grounds, 88  
 Beauty, appreciation of, 105, 106  
 Be definite and positive, 486  
 Beebs, Clifford W, his book, 523  
 Be firm and kind, 487  
 Before school opens, 30  
 Beginnings of knowledge, 280, 281  
 Behaviorism, relation to character formation, 471, 472  
 Behavior, objective study of, 273  
 Behavior responses and learning, 297  
 Behavior responses, only, can be measured, 531  
 Benefits of a P T A, 226, 227  
 Be on time, 34  
 Best time for teaching health, 509, 510  
 Better teachers, need for, 21  
 Betts, G II, on questions, 463  
 Billett, Roy O, 378, 379, 380, 385, 393  
 Binet, Alfred, 544  
 Binet-Simon Scale, revisions of, 514, 545  
 Binet tests, samples of, 545  
 Biography and personality, 54  
 Birney, Miss Theodore W, 223  
 Blackboard problems, 102, 103  
 Blackboards, varieties of, 102, 103  
 Blau, Francis G, 171  
 Block program, Pennsylvania, 602-603  
 Board, and teacher, 75, meetings, 75, school, 29, working with, 39  
 Boarding place, characteristics, 30; getting settled, 33, information, 30; teacher in, 76  
 Bodily differences, 356, 357  
 Books for rural teachers, 591-596  
 Boraas, Julius, on thinking, 326  
 Boys' and Girls' Clubs, 237, 238; in health instruction, 518, 519  
 Boys' and Girls' 4-II Clubs, 250, 251, 252  
 Bianom, M E, on problem method in geography, 334-336  
 Brighter pupils, work for, 375  
 Brightness and dullness, 541, 542  
 Budget, for rural teacher, 81, making a, 80  
 Budgeting pupil's time, 371  
 Building and equipment, 87-115  
 Building cleaned, 31  
 Building, its condition, 29  
 Bulletin and poster boards, 110, 111  
 Burk, Frederick, individualized instruction in San Francisco State Teachers' College, 362  
 Burnham, W H, 56, 380  
 Business, and the school, 78, relations, 78-86; reputation, 78; with a bank, 79  
 By-laws of a rural P. T. A., 228

Cabinet room-heaters, 125  
California Curriculum Commission, 405  
*California Teachers' Guide to Child Development*, 416  
Call, Annie Payson, 61  
Can you start a fire? 127, 128  
Can we change personality, 51  
Care of floors, 90  
Care of yard, 87  
Carney, Mabel, quoted, 22  
Catching cold, 61  
Centralization, 1  
Central tendencies, indications of, 560, 561  
Change for the better, a vital matter, 48  
Changing personality, 51  
Character, and personality, 468, 469, and the I Q, 471, as related to behaviorism, 471, 472, can it be taught? 480, contagion of, 475, development, chief aim of education, 468, influence of heredity, 469, is acquired, 468, is caught, 49, 475, learning through mistakes, 492, need for nervous energy, 470, 471, not shaped by guessing, 493; problems, discuss practical, 490, tests, 546, 547  
Character education, 468, aims of, 472, 473, as related to examinations and promotions, 483, direct method, use judiciously, 485, effect of movies and radio, 476, 477; laws of learning, 479, 480, means and end, 473, 474, value of boys' and girls' clubs, 481; value of good school system, 482  
Character formation, basic habits, 491  
Character formed by action, 478  
Character-forming situations, making most of, 390  
Characteristics of a true measure, 534, 535, 536  
Charts of progress, 373  
Checking list of school supplies, 111-113  
Checking records in health practices, 521  
Check tests, use of, 372  
Child Development Foundation, 383  
Child's first experiences, 280, 281  
Circulation of air, 126, 127  
Classes, and grades, 162, grouping, 168  
Class exercises, for public programs, 261, on weeds, 495, 496  
Classification, and classes, 160, according to I Q's, 539, and promotion, testing for, 585, 586; flexibility in, 163, procedures, 160, test, Otis, 586  
Class records, need for, 36  
Cleaning building, when, 31  
Cleanliness and cleaning, 104, 105  
Clear up confusions, 489  
Clothing and health, 64  
Clubs, for young people, 237, 238; 4-H, 250, 251, 252  
Coaster slide, 147  
Codes, moral, 481  
Coefficient of correlation, 562  
Colds, 61, remedies, 62  
Collecting materials, 372  
Color schemes, 92, 93  
Combining grades, 161  
Commercial materials, collecting, 372  
Commission on ventilation, New York, 117  
Committee system, 250  
Community club, how to organize, 259, 260  
Community meetings, 257, general suggestions, 266-270  
Community singing, 261, 262  
Comparison of traits, 561, 562  
Compromising situations, 75  
Compton's Encyclopedia, 383  
Compulsion vs freedom, 474, 475  
Conditioned reflex, 279, 280  
Conditions, for study, 431, 432

Conditions vary, 8  
 Conduct, changed through learning, 304, 305, what is right, 474  
 Conducting tests, methods of, 580, 581  
 Conference and discussion classes, 164  
 Consciousness and attention, 292  
 Consolidation, problems solved by, 17  
 Constitution and by-laws, school society, 239, 241, 242  
 Consult county superintendent, 32  
 Contagion, of character, 475, of personality, 49  
 Content of intelligence tests, 542  
 Content of the course of study, 157  
 Contracts, or jobs, 368  
 Contact, teacher's, 84  
 Cooker, fireless, 203, 204, 205  
 Co-operation, 191, developed by play, 137, on first day, 36, need for, 218, with superintendent, 77, in teaching, 232, 233, 234  
 Co-operative farming, 11  
 Corporal punishment, 195  
 Correlation, 562, of subject matter, 168  
 Correlations, positive and negative, 562, representations of, 562  
 County newspaper, service of, 263, 264  
*Country Teacher at Work, The*, 81, 85, 89, 187, 344, 361, 363, 365, 366, 396, 447, 474, 475, 479, 481, 482, 485, 570  
 County playdays, 150-153; how organized, 152, 153  
 County superintendent, 22, 23, 53, and teacher, 77, consulting, 32  
 Course-of-study content, 157  
 Crawford, Will C., on health program, 505, 506  
 Critical conditions, 7; H G Wells quoted on, 9  
 Criticisms of supervisions, 198  
 Cubberley, Ellwood P., 4, 22; on rural service agencies, 13  
 Cultivation of imagination, 286  
 Curriculum, and our modern world, 158, and objectives, 156, 157; balanced, 159, construction a continuing process, 159, inadequacy, 20; rural school, 157  
*Curriculum Making in an Elementary School*, 417  
 Curriculums vary in different states, 158  
 Curves, causes of variations, 559; normal and skewed, 557, of distribution, 556  
 Cycle, teaching, 387-390  
 Dalton Plan, 363  
 Dampers, manipulation of, 128, 129  
 Damrosch, Walter, 477  
 Dangers of illiteracy, 24  
 Data for thinking, furnished by experience, 327, 328  
 Deficiencies, physical, of school children, 197, 498  
 Definite assignments, 37  
 Definitions of projects, 336-338  
 Depression, critical conditions of, 7  
 Deprivation of privileges, 196  
 Desks, school, 91-98  
 Detention, 196  
 Developing an inferiority complex, 478, 479  
 Develop suspended judgment, 489  
 Dewey, John, Pedagogic Creed, 404  
 Diagnosis, need for, 459, of difficulties, 56  
 Diagnostic and remedial procedures, 368  
 Diagnostic tests, special values, 578, 579  
 Diagram of jacketed stove, explanation of, 121-123  
 Diet, teacher's, 60  
 Differences in pupils, 355, 356  
 Differentiated assignments, 365  
 Directed-study class exercise, 439-441  
 Directing individual study, 365  
 Directing study activities, 428-449

Directions, reading and observing, 374  
Discipline and school tone, 48, in using activities, 415  
Discover leaders, 38  
Disorderly pupils, 189  
Disorderly teachers, 188  
Distribution curve, in selected groups, 557, normal, 557  
District system, 16, 17  
Don'ts, 74, 197  
Drill techniques, in activity program, 412  
Dull tests, 550, 551  
Dullness and brightness, 541, 542  
Dusting, 105  
Duty of school board, 29

Early arrival on first day, 33  
Educating all children, 24  
Education, arousing interest, 23  
Educational materials, 373, objectives, and the curriculum, 156, 157, problem, America's greatest, 3  
Educative values of examinations, 566, 567  
Effect, law of, in learning, 319  
Efficiency, mental, how improve, 292-295  
Elements in learning process, 302, 303  
Emotional, habits and attitudes, 290, health, 523, tone, 48  
Encourage effort, 487  
Encyclopedias, use of, in health work, 510  
Energy, nervous, needed, 59  
Engelhardt, N L, 502  
Enrollment, question of, 34  
Entertaining guests, 352  
Equipment, for hot lunch, 202, 203, information concerning, 30, inspection of, 30, playground, how procured, 148, school, 87-115  
Essay examination questions, samples, 570  
Essay examinations, 530, 531; values of, 569, 570  
Essentials, getting the, 371; of personality, 43, three important, 46  
Etiquette of flag, 264  
Evil of indifference, 219, 220  
Exactness cultivated by recitation, 460  
Exact words, in parliamentary practice, 252  
Examination, physical, 68, questions, preparation of, 579, 580, system as related to character education, 483  
Examinations, and tests, reasons for, 565, 566; educative values of, 566, 567, open-book, 573-575  
Exercise and recreation, 65  
Exercise, law of, in learning, 318, 319  
Experience, and learning, 305, 306; needed for thinking, 327, 328

Facing facts, 9  
Factional entanglements, 73  
Facts, need for facing, 9  
Failure and success, 359, 360  
Fair-mindedness, spirit of, 491  
Farmer, his plight, 10  
Farmers' organizations, 258  
Farm people, desirable, 11  
Farm problem, solution of, 11  
Fatigue, and attention, 170, and personality, 45  
Fiction, personalities of, 52  
Field of management, 184  
Fifteen rules of hygiene, 69  
Finance, 1  
Financial considerations, 78  
Financial support, 222, 223  
Fireless cooker, making and using, 203, 204, 205  
First day, something new, 35, what to do, 33-36  
First two weeks, 36-40  
Fisher, Irving, 69  
Five-step teaching cycle, 387-390  
Flag, information, 264, Pledge, words, 265

Flexibility in grading, 163  
 Flexible system, 370  
 Floors, 90  
 Flowers and plants, 107  
 Flues for heat and ventilation, 123-125  
 Following directions, 374  
 Formal and informal learnings, 303  
 Forming a health habit, 515, 516  
 Form new habits, 56  
 Forecasting consequences, guide child in, 488  
 Four-II Clubs, 13, 250-252, Pledge, 252  
 Framing and hanging pictures, 109, 110  
 Freedom, need for, 46  
 Freedom vs. compulsion, 474, 475  
 Function, of norms, 533, of question, 463, of textbook, 394; of the school, 218, 219  
 Futility of mere talk, 492  
 Galton, Francis, a prodigy, 541  
 Games, teaching new, 36; motivation of, 353  
 Gates, A. I., on law of effect, 319  
 Gates-Strang Health Knowledge Test, 522  
 Gaumnitz, Walter H., 3  
 Generalized comments on daily programs, 176-181  
 General notion, or concept, 287  
 General suggestions, on ventilation, 131, 132; school societies, 252-255  
 Geography, illustrative problem questions, 335, 336, lesson analyzed, 436, 437  
 Getting acquainted, 32  
 Getting ahead, 80  
 Getting essentials, 371  
 Getting money for schools, 222, 223  
 Getting together, 257  
 Giant stride, 146  
 Good beginning, 27  
 Good health a vital need, 58  
 Good judgment, developed by play, 136  
 Good mixer, 72  
 Good order, what is, 187, 415  
 Good sport, standards of, 153, 154  
 Good Times Club, 263  
 Goodykoontz, Bess, 1  
 Graded system, disadvantages of, 163  
 Grades, and classes, 162; grouping of, 160, 161  
 Grading answers to tests, 582  
 Graphs, achievement, 373  
 Group, activities, 414; activities in health work, 518, 519; games, 139, study activities, 435, 436; tests, 515, vs. individualized teaching, 355  
 Grouping by abilities, 364  
 Grouping classes, 168  
 Gloves, E. R., on inferiority complex, 478, 479  
 Guessing at truth, bad habit, 493  
 Guidance in thinking, 330-334  
*Guidebook in United States History*, 400, 401  
 Guiding principles in program making, 168, 169  
 Habit, and memory, 284; and routine, 190; of chewing sufficiently, formation of, 515, 516  
 Habits, and skills, 288, 289, forming and breaking, 56, good and bad, 59, health, ones to form, 516, 517; study, 432  
 Hanging pictures, 109, 110  
 Harmonious wall paints, 92, 93  
 Headaches, 63  
 Health achievements, measurement of, 521, 522; measures of, 522, 523  
 Health activities, 495-529; in *Keeping Healthy, the Health and Growth Series*, 520; emotional, 523, habit, how formed, 515, 516; which ones, 516, 517; and personality, 44  
 Health and clothing, 64  
*Health and Growth Series*, 521, on health examinations, 505; quoted on individual differences, 506, 507

*Health Education*, American Medical Association, 527, controlling idea, 495, Department of Rochester, New York, 496, development of interests, 513, 514, objectives of, 495-496, opportunities in rural community, 499, 500, Report of Joint Committee, 495, teaching-learning principles, 510-513, what the rural teacher can do points 1 to 25, 525-528

Health examinations, in *Health and Growth Series*, 505, in San Diego, California, 503, 505, need for, 503, 505, health habits discussed, in *Health and Growth Series, Teacher's Guide*, 517

Health instruction, articles in *Hygeia*, 517, best time for, 509, 510; individual differences, 506, 507; mostly ineffective, 509, through group activities, 518, 519

Health, of pupils, poor, a handicap, 58, practices, checking, 521; preventive measures, 499, program, described by Superintendent Will C Crawford, San Diego, California, 505-506, situations, thinking and doing, 507, 508, standards for schools, 496, 497; survey, 501, 502, 503, useful questions, 501, 502, work, value of doing, 495

Hearing lessons, 457, 458

Hearst, Mrs Phoebe A., 223

Heating and ventilation, summary of suggestions, 131, 132

Help child to solve conduct problems, 488

Hereditary influences, 274

Heredity, 274, basis of personality, 469, effect on character, 469

Higher-level assignments, 375

High school principal, 53

History, school, 37

Hit-or-miss learning, 308, 309

Hoffman, U J., 165, 171

Hold pupils responsible, 37

Homogeneous grouping, 364

Hosic, J E., on dynamic teaching, 339

Hot lunch, as a project, 347, 348, eating, 214, 215; equipment, 202, 203; nature of, 200; outline of, 210, 211, pint jar plan, 207-209; plan, 205, 206; practical suggestions, 207, 208, 209, prevalence of, 200

Household Finance Corporation, 81

Housekeeper, teacher as a, 103

How enroll pupils, 34

How individuals differ, 355, 356

How to organize a community club, 259, 260

*Human Behavior*, quoted on ideals, 514

Humor, sense of, 56

Hutchins, W J., moral code, 481

*Hygeia*, article on health activities, referred to, 517; on health work, 501

Hygiene, and the individual, 360; mental, 61, rules of, 69

Hyloplate, used for blackboard, 102

Ideals in character formation, 477

Ideas, and ideals, 477, general, 287

Illinois program, 172, 173

Illustrative procedure, parliamentary practice, 244-248

Imagery, 283

Images, kinds of, 285; percepts-concepts, 283

Imagination, 284, 285, cultivation of, 286

Imitation, force of, 50

Impersonating cabinet, 253

Importance of accuracy, recitation, 459, 460

Improvement of personnel, 1

Improving our mental efficiency, 292-295, rural health conditions, 499, 500

Inadequacy of curriculum, 20

Indications of central tendencies, 560, 561

Indifference, evil of, 219, 220  
 Individual checking records, health work, 521  
 Individual differences, discovering, 358, in learning, 315, 316, in learning ability, 358, 359, measuring, 358; mental and moral, 357, physical, 356, 357; the I Q, 530  
 Individual, emphasis on the, 163; performance tests, 545, projects, 368  
 Individualized instruction, 355  
 Individualizing instruction in rural schools, 366-375, plans for, 361-366  
 Individuals differ, 355, 356  
 Ineffective health instruction, 509  
 Inevitable reaction, 324  
 Inferiority complex, 478, 479  
 Influence, of hygiene, good and bad, 300; of inventions, 12, of personality, intangible, 50  
 Influential organizations, 13  
 Information, concerning flag, 264, concerning P T A, 231, how to secure, 27, 28  
 Inhibition, 278  
 Inhibitory centers, 278  
 Initiating an activity program, 412, 413  
 Initiative, developed by play, 137  
 Insist on good work, 485  
 Inspection of building, 29  
 Installing a ventilating system, 126  
 Instinct, as related to learning, 275, theory questioned, 275, 276  
 Instinctive behavior, 275  
 Instructional tests, 551, 552  
 Instruction, individualized, 355; materials of, 2, oral and textbook, 461, 462  
 Insurance, life, 85  
 Integrated units, 380, 381  
 Integrations of personality, 44  
 Intelligence and character, 471; and education, 538; basis of, 537, definitions of, 537, effect of heredity, 538, nature of, 537, 538, tests, content of, 542, tests, two classifications, 545, 546  
 Intentional and coincident learnings, 304  
 Interest, and motivation, 349, 350; in education, 23  
 Interest children first day, 35  
 Interested parent, 220, 221  
 Interesting taxpayers, 23  
 Interests, attitudes, ideals in health education, 513, 514  
 Intestinal stasis, 63  
 Introspective method, 273, 274  
 Inventions, influence of, 12  
 Inventory tests, Osburn, 534  
 I. Q. and A. Q., as related to character, 471; classification in *Human Behavior*, 510, how computed, 541; relation of, 549  
 Jacketed stove and flues, 123-125  
 James, William, on force of habits, 507, 508; on habit formation, 516; quoted, 176; *The Energies of Men*, 477  
 John Hancock Mutual Life Insurance Company, The, 81  
 Jumping outfit, 116  
 Keeping clean, 101, 105  
 Keeping free, 34  
 Keeping the treasurer's account, 249  
 Keep personal records, 39  
 Keep records, 36  
 Kilpatrick, W. H., on moral education, 479, 480, on new curriculum, 404, on thinking, 326  
 Kinds of activities, 408; of gatherings, 261, of meetings, 258; of tests, 534  
 Kinney, Laura, unit on trees, 417-426  
 Knowing progress of each pupil, 274  
 Knowledge of teacher, 272  
 Know what is going on, 486  
 Krackowizer, Alice M., on projects, 338

Language and thought, 288  
Large learning units, advantages, 383, 384  
Lathrop, Edith A., 162, 168, 171  
Law of effect, 319, of exercise, 318, 319, of readiness, in learning, 317, 318  
Laws of learning, as applied to character education, 479  
Leaders, discover them, 38  
Leadership, rural, 11, teacher, 190  
Learned behavior, 297  
Learning ability, variations, 358, 359  
Learning actions and ideas, 310  
Learning activities in health work, 517, 518  
Learning and conduct, 304, 305, and subject matter, 314, 456, 457, and good hygiene, 360, and teaching 321, and testing, 576, 577, and the I Q., 316, as memorization, 312, 313, as problem solving, 313, by doing, 310; by trial and error, 308, 309, curve of progress, 320, development of desire for, 307, 308, health through group activities, 518, 519, illustrated, 400, 401, individual variations, 315, 316, in rural school, 397-399, insightful, 315, involves purpose and meaning, 306, is individual, 359, law of effect, 319, law of exercise, 318, 319, laws of, 317, in character education, 479, 480, motivation of, 306, 307, need for willing attitude, 307, 308; nerve basis for, 301, not wholly mechanical, 301, 302; place of repetition in, 318, 319, plateaus in, 320, process, 297, 298, process, elements in, 302, 303, rote and rational, 311; requires responses, 305, 306; subjective element in 301, 302, through attention, 291, 292, through experience, 305, 306; through mistakes, 309, to do and to think, 310, units, kinds, 378, nature of 379, varieties of, 299, when does it occur? 299-301  
Learnings, concomitant, 304, formal and informal, 303, provision for, 411, varieties of, 297, which can be measured, 577  
Lesson hearing, 457, 458  
Life Extension Institute, 69  
Life in rural areas, 13  
Life insurance, 85  
Lighting problem, 98-102  
Limitations in health education, rural situation, 499, 500  
Lincoln, E. A., 548  
List, checking, for supplies, 111-113, of achievement tests, 548; of songs, 262  
Location of schoolhouse, 87  
Lombard, Ellen C., on P T A., 230  
Lunch from home, 212, 213, 214  
Lunch hour, organized, 215, 216  
Macdonald, Marion E., *Standard Practices in Teaching*, joint author, 461  
McKee, Paul, on need for special practice, 411  
McKenny, Charles, 54  
McMurry, C. A., 378  
McMurry, F. M., his classic book, 312, on study, 428  
Make clear assignments, 37  
Making collections, 351  
Making out a budget, 80  
Maintaining conditions, for study, 431, 432  
Major activities, 408, 409  
Major unit on trees, 417-426  
Management, field of, 184, of hot lunch, 214, 215  
Manipulation of dampers, 128, 129  
Manners, hot lunch, 214, 215  
Marking and promoting, 395-396  
Marking test papers, 581-585; use of letters, 583  
Marks, injustice of, 583, 584

Marks of a good test, 567, 568  
 Marks, reports, and character information, 483  
 Master ideas, 477  
 Mastery formula, 315, 386  
 Matching tests, 571  
 Materials, for activities, 413, 414,  
     for younger pupils, 373; of instruction, 2  
 Maturity ages, 540  
 Meal, balanced, 209, 210  
 Meaning, of recitation, 450, 451;  
     of study, 428, 429  
 Meaningful learning, 306  
 Meanings, and experience, 287;  
     nature and use, 287  
 Means of solution, 328  
 Measurement, of pupil's learnings, 577, 578, possibilities, 531, 532  
 Measurements, of reactions only, 531, 532, true, nature of, 534-536  
 Measures, of intelligence and achievement, 531, types of, 531, 532  
 Measuring health achievements, 521, 522  
 Mechanistic view of learning, 301, 302  
 Median, and average, 560, 561,  
     finding the, 560, 561, illustrated, 560, 561, mean and mode, 560,  
     561, scores, 560  
 Meeting people, 72  
 Meetings, kinds of, 258, of mothers, 234, 235  
 Memorization, a form of learning, 312, 313  
 Memory, and habit, 284, and imagination, 288  
 Mental age, 540; and chronological ages, 540  
 Mental efficiency, improving, 292-295  
 Mental health, 523, 524  
 Mental hygiene, 61, 371, suggestions on, 524, 525  
 Mental science, use of, 272  
 Mentality values, 539, 540  
 Methods of conducting tests, 580, 581  
 Metropolitan Life Insurance Company, 64, *Health Bulletins for Teachers*, 525  
 Minor, Ruby, 373  
 Minutes, writing up, 218, 249  
 Mixer, good, 72  
 Modern co-operation, 191  
 Modern life, training for, 2  
 Modern measurements, 530-562  
 Modern measures, not infallible, 536, 537, types of, 533  
 Modern testing, techniques, 554  
 Modern texts, 367  
 Modern type of daily program, 598-606  
 Modified block program, 598-600  
 Moisture, need for, 130, 131  
 Money, need for, 16, securing, 222  
 Monitorial assistance, 373  
 Monograph No 13, 393; on unit method, 385  
 Montessori, Maria, teaching devices, 363  
 Moral codes, weakness of, 481;  
     value, 481  
 Moral development, analysis, 136  
 Moral differences, 357  
 Moral influence, of teacher, 75, of teaching procedures, 482, 483  
 Moral judgment, 471, 475  
 Moral safeguard in play, 136  
 More money needed, 16  
 More than teach, 53  
 Morrison, H. C., 378; influence of, 384, 385, *Practice of Teaching*, 384, 385, teaching plan, 386, 394  
 Morrison plan, advantages, 390, 391  
 Morrison procedure, adaptations of, 388-390  
 Morrison's five steps, 387-389  
 Morrison's mastery formula, 315, 386  
 Mossman, Dr Lois Coffey, on learning, 302, 314  
 Mothers' meetings, 37, 234, 235

Motion pictures, 74, in rural schools, 263  
Motivated learning, 306, 307  
Motivated work, when? 350, 351  
Motivation, of games, 353; under unit plan, 392, 393  
Movements of pupils, 189  
Movies and radio, influence on character, 476

National Committee for Mental Hygiene, Inc., 523  
National Congress of Parents and Teachers, 223, 224  
National Education Association, book on health education, 496  
National salute, 265  
Native interests, 351, 352  
Nature, and use of scales, 552-554; of intelligence, 537, 538, of norms, 533, of P T A programs, 229, of problem, 325  
Nebraska bulletin, *Rural Education Looking Forward*, 229  
Need for a good start, 27, for a program, 165, for co-operation, 218, for diagnosis, 459; for facts, 9; for good health, 58, for good work habits, in activities, 414, 415, for health examinations, 503, 505; for moisture, 130, 131, for money, 16, for nervous energy, 59, for parliamentary practice, 238, for obedience, 197, for sleep, 66, for standards, 185, for ventilation, 117  
Needs in rural education, 14  
Nerve basis for learning, 276  
Nervous energy, effect on character, 470, 471, surplus needed, 59  
Nervous system basis of learning, 301  
Neural mechanism essential, 301  
"New America," article by H G Wells, 9  
*New International Dictionary*, on study, 429; on intelligence, 537  
New schoolmistress, 192  
Newspaper, country, service of, 263  
New-type tests, illustrations of, 571, 572, 573  
New York State commission on ventilation, 117  
Nip trouble in bud, 38  
Normal curve of distribution, 558  
Norms, nature and function, 533  
Nutrition, problem of, 60

Obedience, developed by play, 187; need for, 197  
Objective attitude, 46, cultivating, 56, stress, 499  
Objective method vs introspection, 273, 274  
Objective tests, advantages, 570, 571  
Objectives, health, 496, in study, 430, 431, of local P T A, 225, of the recitation, 451-454, of school society, 238, 239  
Objectivity and discipline, 56  
Obtaining a position, 82, 83  
"October's Bright Blue Weather," study lesson, 438, 439  
Old and new in measurement, 530, 531  
Old curriculum, inadequacy, 20  
Old methods of testing, 530  
Old schoolmaster, 191  
Old-type examinations, uses of, 569, 570  
"One old cat," 149  
Open-book examinations, 573-575, questions, 575  
Opportunity of teacher, in recitation, 458, 459  
Oral and textbook instruction, 461, 462  
Oregon program, 174, 175, 176  
*Organization of Curriculum for One Teacher Schools*, N E A. Bulletin, 416  
Organizations, influential, 13; of parents and teachers, 223-231; of young people, 482  
Organized lunch hour, 215, 216

Organizing a community club, 259, 260  
 Osburn, W. J., inventory tests, 534  
*Our Community Record*, outline, 401  
 Outline on hot lunch, 210, 211  
 Overcoming difficulties, 351  
 Overdoing the testing, 578  
 Overdoing written work, 374  
 Overlearning, value of, 315

Painting walls and ceiling, 92, 93  
 Parent and teacher co-operating, 232-234  
 Parent, interested, 220, 221  
 Parents' and teachers' organizations, 223-231  
 P. T. A., benefits from, 226, 227; getting started right, 226, movement, 223, 224, objectives of, local, 225, programs, 229, 230, suggested by-laws, 228, 229, topics for meetings, 230; types of activities, 226, 227, where to get information, 231, why organize, 224, 225  
*Parent-Teacher Magazine*, 231; *Manual*, 231; relations, 231, 232  
 Parkhurst, Helen, Dalton Plan, 363  
 Parliamentary procedures, how start, 244; illustrations, 244-248  
 Parliamentary training needed, 238  
 Participating citizenship, 237  
 Participation for development, 55  
 Passing grade, fallacy of, 395  
 Passing of recitation, 450  
 Pavlov, I. P., his experiments, 280  
 Pennsylvania program, 598-606  
 Pennsylvania State Department of Education, health measurements, 521, 522  
 People of the district, 28  
 People vary, 28  
 Percentage system, in marking tests, 582-584  
 Perception, and percepts, 282; result of interpretation, 282  
 Percepts—images—concepts, 283  
 Periodical health examinations, 503, 505  
 Persistent problems, 15  
 Personal appearance, 57  
 Personal character of teaching, 47  
 Personal records, keeping, 39  
 Personalities of fiction, 52  
 Personality, and health, 44; and fatigue, 45, attributes, 43, changing, 51, contagion of, 49, development, 55; defined, 469, growth each day, 55; integration of, 44, nature of, 469, not easy to measure, 50, records, 55; respect for, 470; score card, 54; scoring, 48; tests, 546, 547, what is it? 42  
 Physical and mental preparation, 32  
 Physical conditions, 186, deficiencies of children, 497, 498; development and play, 135, examination, 68  
 Pickard, A. E., *Rural Education*, projects, 346  
 Pictures, framing and hanging, 109, 110, selection of, 107, 108  
 Pinekney, Jennie M., article on health activities, 517  
 Pint jar hot lunch plan, 207-209  
 Plan for hot lunch, 205, 206  
 Plan for public exercises, 37  
 Plans for individualizing instruction, 361-366  
 Plans for seating, 95  
 Plants and flowers, 107  
 Plateaus of learning, 320  
 Play, a basis for education, 135; a moral safeguard, 136, and health, 135; and physical development, 135, significance of, 134, supervised, 139, teacher's part in, 138  
 Playdays, county, 150-153  
 Playground, 140, 141, apparatus, 141-147, baseball, 148, 149; conditions and needs, 141, 142; equipment, how to get, 148; selection of, 143; what to get, 143

Pledge of allegiance, 265  
Plight of farmer, 10  
Porter, Martha, on activity, 404  
Position, applying for, 82, 83  
Poster boards, 110, 111  
Posting the program, 181  
Power of suggestion, 476  
Practice manuals, using, 372  
Practice tests, 550, 551  
Predecessor, attitude towards, 40  
Preliminary health survey, 501-503, information, 27; inspection of premises, 27, 28, 29, program, 35  
Preparation, of examination questions, 579, 580, physical and mental, 32  
Present-day problems, 1-26  
Preventing failures, 366  
Principles in health education, 510-513, in making programs, 168, 169, of activity program, 405, 406, of ventilation, 119, 120  
Problem, means of solving, 328; nature and attributes, 325, of better teachers, 21, of insurance, 85, of nutrition, 60, of rules, 187, project method, 338, 339; questions, supply of, 370  
Problem method, advantages, 1-10, 329, 330, in geography, 334-336  
Problems, and motivation, 349, 350, and projects, reason for, 324, 325, and thinking, 326; imply thinking, 326, 327; in teaching, 328; solved by consolidation, 17, ten persistent, 15, visualizing, 32  
Problem-solving learning, 313  
Processes of recitation, 454, 455  
Professional books, list of, 591-596  
Profiting by mistakes, 309, 492  
Prognostic and aptitude tests, 549, 550  
Program, a compromise plan, 164; for rural schools, Pennsylvania, 598-606, for society, planning, 254; health, San Diego, California, 505, 506, Illinois, 172, 173; making, aims, 166, 167; on music, illustration, 248, 249, Oregon, 174, 175, 176; posting, and using, 181, provide for what, 180, 181; ready for first day, 35, why have a program, 165  
*Program of Health Teaching*, Bulletin of Office of Education, 496  
Programs, comments on, 176-181; of school society, 242, 243, old and new, 165; society, not too long, 254  
Progress charts, 373  
Progress of each child, 374  
Project, and problem method, 338, 339, hot lunch as, 347, 348; idea, broad and narrow interpretations, 339, 340, method, two interpretations, 339, 340, units, 382  
Projects, advantages of, 340, 341; and motivation, 349, 350, arithmetical, 344-346; definitions of, 336-338, in agriculture and nature study, 346, 347, kinds of, 342-344, limitations of, 341, 342; manual and intellectual, 342; simple and complex, 342; student-teacher, 348, 349  
Provide for success, 485  
Provide seatwork, 34  
Providing for learnings, 41  
Provision for excursions, 177  
Psychosis and neurosis, 276  
Public exercises, 37  
Pueblo Plan, 361  
Punish, why and when, 192, 193  
Punishment, corporal, 195; suitable, 194, 195; wrong forms, 193, 194  
Pupil, committees, 250; in recitation, 462  
Pupils, disorderly, 189, knowing about in advance, 29, manage society, 254, movements of, 189; prospective, 29, seating, 186; work well done, 37, younger, first day, 36

Pupil's health, remedial work, 499  
 Pupil's responses, 466  
 Purposeful learning, 306  
 Purposes of tests, 565, 566  
 Puzzling terminology, 377  
 Questions, and questioning, 463-466; examination, preparation of, 579, 580; for health survey, 501, 502; for study, 465; function, 463, good, 463; good and bad, 465, how answer, 465, kinds, 464, leading, 465, teaching, 464, tentative, 464; testing, 464, why ask, 464  
 Quotient, accomplishment, how computed, 549  
 Ragsdale, C E , on learning, 319; definition of personality, 469  
 Rational learning, 311  
 Raw materials for learning, 281, 282  
 Reaction or response to stimuli, 277, 278  
 Reasons for mothers' meetings, 234, 235  
 Reception of answers, 466  
 Recipes for hot lunch, 211, 212  
 Reciprocal relations, 281, 232  
 Recitation, and subject matter, 456, 457; as a conference, 164; as opportunity, 458, 459, discussion type, 164; meaning of, 450, 451; need for diagnosis, 459, objectives of, 451-454, passing of, 450, period, use of, 450, 451; processes, 454, 455, pupil in, 462; study, 455, 456; teacher's function in, 462, 463; the, 450-466, topical, 460, 461  
 Recognition tests, 572  
 Recommended recipes, 211, 212  
 Record books, well kept, 255  
 Records, class, 36; keeping personal, 39, looking up, 31; of health practices, 521  
 Recreation and exercise, 65  
 Reeve, Mrs Margaretta N , 227  
 Reference materials, for individual instruction, 369

Reflex action, 279  
 Reflex, conditioned, 279, 280  
 Register, study in advance, 31  
 Rehearsal for programs, 254  
 Relate school work to life, 38  
 Relation of teacher and pupil, 180  
 Remedial work in health education, 499  
 Remembering, how to improve, 285, 286  
 Remote ideals, of little value, 493  
 Remove unnecessary temptation, 487  
 Reorganization of administrative systems, 16  
 Reproof and personal criticism, 194  
 Reputation, business, 78  
 Respect for personality, 470  
 Responses, of pupil, 466; through habit and thinking, 298  
 Restitution, making, 196  
 Revisions of Binet-Simon Scale, 544, 545  
 Richmond, C K , 143  
 Richmond, Mildred B , 403  
 Right conduct, what is it? 474  
 Robert's Rules of Order, 253  
 Robinson, W. M , 228  
 Room heaters, 125  
 Rose, Dr. Mary Swartz, 201  
 Rote learning, 311  
 Routine and habit, 190  
 Rudiger, W C., 379; on Dalton Plan in *Teaching Procedures*, 364  
 Rules, of hygiene, 69, problem of, 187  
 Rural education, and rural life, 6; importance of, 5; meaning of, 6; outstanding needs, 14, problems, 15; significance of, 6  
*Rural Education Looking Forward*, Nebraska bulletin, 229  
 Rural, health situation, 499, 500; leadership, 11  
 Rural life, can it be made attractive, 25; conditions, 25, problem, 4; social-civic, 13  
 Rural P. T. A , footnote, 228

Rural-school, building, 89; curriculum, 156; opportunities, for character education, 483, problem, 4, supervision, 22  
Rural schoolhouse, 87-115  
Rural school, study in, 433; use of activities, 410, 411, use of teaching units, 397, 399  
Rural teacher, typical, 22  
Rural teachers, preparation, 21  
  
Sample constitution, 239, 241, 242  
Sandbin or sand pile, 144  
Sarcasm and ridicule, 193  
Saturdays and Sundays, 67  
Scale in measuring, definitions, 552  
Scales, lists of, 552-554  
Schedule of classes, 165  
School, and community meetings, general suggestions, 266-270, board, 29, desks, 94-98, equipment, 87-115, exercises, 261; function of, 218, 219; grounds, 87; history, 37; lunch, 212-214, lunch-hour, 215, 216, problems, teacher's responsibility, 55; publicity, 221, 222, routine in character education, 482, site, 87, supplies, checking list, 111-113, system in character development, 482; tone of, 48; visitation, 55, work and life, 38, work for programs, 261  
Schoolhouse and equipment, suggestions for improvement, 113, 114  
Schoolmaster, old, 191  
Schoolmistress, new, 192  
Schoolroom, air, 120, 121, beauty, 106, decoration, painting, 92, 93, ventilation, need for, 117  
School society, a training in democracy, 255; constitution and by-laws, 239, 241, 242; objectives of, 238, 239, programs, 242, 243  
Scientific method and attitude, 273  
Scoring tests, 555  
Score card for personality, 54  
Score yourself, 43  
Search, P W, *The Ideal School*, 361  
Seating arrangement, 95, problem, how settle, 35, of pupils, 186; of pupils, first day, 35  
Seats and desks, 94-98  
Seatwork, providing, 34  
Selection of pictures, 107, 108  
Self-activity, need for, 36  
Self and personality, 44  
Self-control, developed by play, 136  
Self-scoring materials, 43, 44  
Selling education, 221, 222  
Sensations furnish data for learning, 281, 282  
Sense impressions, 281, 282  
Sense of humor, 56  
Service of a country newspaper, 263, 264  
Set a good example, 484  
Set learning situations, 484  
Setting down memoranda, 33  
Significance, of play, 134, of rural education, 6, of study, 429  
Simon, Theodore, 544  
Singing, community, 261, 262, on first day, 35  
Situation and response, 277, 278  
Sizing up situation, 27  
Skills and habits, fixing, 288, 289  
Sleep, 66  
Smith System Heating Company, 123  
Smoke stack and vent-flue, 121  
Social and business relations, 72-86  
Social-civic life, 13  
Social-economic conditions, 12  
Solution of farm problem, 11  
Song books, low-priced, 262  
Songs, list for community meetings, 262  
Special drills needed in using activities, 411, 412  
Spirit of fair-mindedness, 491  
Standards, for evaluating activities, 415, 416, need for, 185, of a good sport, 153, 154, of health, 497  
Standard tests not infallible, 536, 537

Starting a fire, 127, 128  
 Starting a P T A , 226  
 Starting parliamentary practice, 244  
 Stasis, intestinal, 63  
 Stevenson, J. A , on project method, 337, 338  
 Stillman, Gladys, hot lunch, 200  
 Stimulate self-activity, 36  
 Stimulus and reaction, 277, 278  
 Stove with jacket, 123-125  
 Strayer, G. D , 502  
 Stroud, J. B , 546, on intelligence, 537  
 Student-teacher projects, 348, 349  
 Study, and recitation periods, 177,  
     as memorization, 438, 439, definitions  
     of, 428, 429, directed in  
     groups, 435, 436; group activities,  
     435, 436, habits, 432, individual,  
     434, 435, in rural school, 433,  
     meaning of, 428, 429, objectives  
     in, 430, 431; of things, 436;  
     problems motivate, 432, 433,  
     significance of, 429, summary of  
     suggestions, 441-448, supervised,  
     434, 435, thirty items of advice,  
     441-448; use of workbooks, 438  
 Study-guide sheets, 369  
 Study personality, 54  
 Study pupil's character, 55  
 Study questions, 465  
 Study recitation, 455, 456, geography  
     lesson, 436, 437, in agriculture,  
     439-441; using a poem, 438,  
     439  
 Study your pupils, 35  
 Study yourself, 56  
 Subject matter, and learning, 314,  
     and recitation, 456, 457; correlation,  
     168  
 Subjects and grades, alternation,  
     168, 169  
 Success and failure, 359, 360  
 Suggested topics for P T. A meetings, 230  
 Suggestion, power of, 476  
 Suggestions, for hot lunch, 207, 208,  
     209, for school and community  
     meetings, 266-270; for society  
     programs, 242, 243; general, on  
     testing, 586-588, on study, 441-  
     448  
 Suggestive budget, 81  
 Suitable conditions, for study, 431,  
     432  
 Summary of suggestions, on study,  
     441-448, on tests, 586-588  
 Sundays and Saturdays, 67  
 Superior and inferior children, treat-  
     ment of, 512  
 Supervised play, 139  
 Supervision, better needed, 22  
 Supervisors, criticisms of, 198  
 Suspension and expulsion, 194, 195  
 Sweeping and dusting, 105  
 Swings, 145  
 Symonds, P. M , diagnosing per-  
     sonality, 547  
 Synapse, nature, and function, 277  
 System, committee, 250  
 System of heating and ventilating,  
     installing, 126  
 Systems, administrative, 16  
 Table of mental groups, 539, 540  
 Talking in character education,  
     futility, 492  
 Task and plan and freedom, 46  
 Teacher, and board, 39, 75, a mem-  
     ber of woman's club, 71; and  
     county superintendent, 77; and  
     parent, 231, 232, function of, in  
     learning of pupil, 321, 322, in her  
     boarding place, 76, her leader-  
     ship, 190; her personality, conta-  
     gion of, 49; her health, 58-70  
 Teacher's amusements, 73; con-  
     tract, 84; example, 50, function,  
     in recitation, 462, 463, habits, 59;  
     health and personality, 44, house-  
     keeping, 103; opportunity, 458,  
     459, part in play, 138  
 Teachers, better, needed, 21; dis-  
     orderly, 188, health defects of, 59  
 Teaching, and learning, 321, char-  
     acter, 480, co-operation of parent

and teacher, 232-234, cycle, 387-390, health, traditional methods, 509, health, when, 509, 510, is personal, 47, not hearing lessons, 457, 458; procedures, effect on character, 482, 483; units, titles, 401

Teaching-learning principles, in health education, 510-513

Teaching—learning—testing, 576, 577

Teach pupils, not subjects, 56

Teach that it pays to do right, 489

Techniques in modern testing, 554

*Tenth Yearbook*, Department of Superintendence, on respect for personality, 470

Teriman's classification on basis of I Q's, 539

Teriman, L M., on general intelligence, 589, on intelligence tests, 542

Terminology, varying, 377

Testing, and learning, 576, 577; and marking, 395, 396, for classification, 585, 586, overdoing of, 578

Tests, aims in giving, 565, 566, and examinations, general suggestions, 586-588; and examinations, uses to pupil, 566, 567, and measurements, health instruction, 522, 528; classes of, 568, 569, diagnostic, values of, 578, 579, following the directions, 554, how conduct, 580, 581, instructional, 551, 552, interpretation of results, 555, 556, new-type objective, examples of, 571-573; objective, uses of, 570, 571; of achievement, examples of, 548, of personality, not well developed, 546, old and new, 530, 531; papers, marking, 581-585, practice or drill, 550, 551; standard, sources of, 533, 534, tabulating results, 555, when repeat, 556

Textbook, function of, 394

Textbooks, information about, 31

Thayer, V T., on recitation, 450

*The Classroom Teacher*, questions for health survey, 502, 503

Things to do, in *Health and Growth Series*, 519, 520, in health instruction, 519, 520

Thinking, and doing in health situations, 507, 508; and experience, 327, 328, and memorization, 438, 439; and problems, 326, guidance in, 330-334, subjective and objective, 327, when needed, 326, 327

Thorndike, E L, *Adult Learning*, 316, laws of learning, 317, on types of intelligence, 538

Thought and language, 288

*Thought Control in Everyday Life*, helpful book, 56

Threatening and nagging, 193

Three essentials task, plan, freedom, 46

Three R's, and four H's in the curriculum, 157, not enough, 21

Threlkeld, A L, on program for character, 373

Thrift, 80

Tobin, E J, on broadcasting education, 221, 222

Tone of school, 48

Topical recitations, 460, 461, suggestions on, 461

Topics for P T A meetings, 230

Township and county playdays, 150-153

Traditional school, 407

Training, for modern life, 2; in a democracy, 238

Training rural teachers, 21

Traits or acts, which, 478

Treasurer's account, 249, form, 250

Treasury department, booklet, on thrift, excerpt, 80

Trees, activity unit on, 417-426; and shrubs, 88

Trial-and-error learning, 308, 309

Tribute to P. T A by N. E. A., 224

Trip for preliminary inspection, 30, 31  
 Trouble, nip in bud, 38  
 True measures, nature of, 531-536  
 Two-level assignments, 365, 375  
 Two schools of thought, 377  
 Type of farm people, 11  
 Types, of class exercises, 179; of modern measures, 533, 534, of tests, 568, 569; of thinking, 327; of P T A activities, 226, 227  
 Typical rural teacher, 22  
 Unit assignments, 380  
 United States history, unit topics, 400  
 Unit plan, motivation through, 392, 393; not new, 378; of teaching, 377  
 Unit teaching materials, three sources, 383  
 Units, and unit assignments, 380; integrated, 380, 381, of learning, definitions, 379, learning, in rural school, 397-399; of administration, 16, of learning, two types, 377, teaching, advantages of, 383, 384, problem and project, 382, selecting and organizing, 382  
 Unselfishness, developed by play, 137  
 Urge to build, 352  
 Using check tests, 372  
 Using the library, 370  
 Value, of acquaintance, 55; of window ventilation, 129, 130  
 Values of new tests, 543, 544  
 Varied assignments, 389  
 Varieties of tests, 531, 532  
 Ventilation, need for, 117; principles of, 119, 120; use of teacher's judgment, 120, 121, window, value of, 129, 130  
 Visiting other schools, 55  
 Visualizing problems, 32  
 Voelker, P F, on measuring ideals, 547  
 Washable paint, 92  
 Washburne, C W, on activities, 405; Winnetka Plan, 363  
 Walls and ceiling, 92  
 Walton, G L, Dr., his books, 61  
 Waterman-Waterbury Company, 123  
 Watson, J B, behavioristic philosophy, 172  
 Weber-Costello Company, 103  
 Weeds, class exercise on, 430-441  
 Wells, H. G., on educational crisis, 8  
 What can be measured, 531, 532  
 What can we learn? 299  
 What can you do? 54  
 What is an activity program, 403, 404  
 What is good order? 187  
 What is personality? 42  
 When have we learned? 299, 300  
 When is work motivated? 350, 351  
 White, Emerson E, on knowledge and power, 160  
 Why air circulates, 126, 127  
 Why get together, 257  
 Why is learning necessary? 298, 299  
 Why organize a P T A? 221, 225  
 Willing attitude, in learning, 307, 308  
 Window shades, 98-102; rules for adjusting, 98, 99  
 Window ventilation, value of, 129, 130  
 Winnetka Plan, 363  
 Woodrow, Herbert, *Brightness and Dullness*, 511  
 Work and worry, 67  
 Workbooks, in health instruction, 527; used in study, 438; using, 372  
 Work habits, in activities, 414, 415  
 Working, for honors, 352; with board, 39  
 Workman, L L, 548  
*World Book Encyclopedia*, 69, 388  
 Worry and work, 67  
 Writing up the minutes, 248, 249  
 Written work, overdoing, 374

Yard, care of, 87  
Younger pupils, first day, 36  
Young people's clubs, 13, organizations, 237, 238, 481  
Young teacher, beginning, 27

*Your Mind and You, Mental Health*, useful book on mental hygiene, 523  
Your predecessor, not to be criticized, 40